

8-28-2000

# Programmatic Record of Decision, Volume 2 - Attachments 5 through 6B

CalFed Bay-Delta Program

Follow this and additional works at: [http://digitalcommons.law.ggu.edu/caldocs\\_agencies](http://digitalcommons.law.ggu.edu/caldocs_agencies)



Part of the [Environmental Law Commons](#), and the [Water Law Commons](#)

---

## Recommended Citation

CalFed Bay-Delta Program, "Programmatic Record of Decision, Volume 2 - Attachments 5 through 6B" (2000). *California Agencies*. Paper 326.

[http://digitalcommons.law.ggu.edu/caldocs\\_agencies/326](http://digitalcommons.law.ggu.edu/caldocs_agencies/326)

This Cal State Document is brought to you for free and open access by the California Documents at GGU Law Digital Commons. It has been accepted for inclusion in California Agencies by an authorized administrator of GGU Law Digital Commons. For more information, please contact [jfischer@ggu.edu](mailto:jfischer@ggu.edu).

STATE DEPOSITORY  
LAW LIBRARY

FEB 12 2001

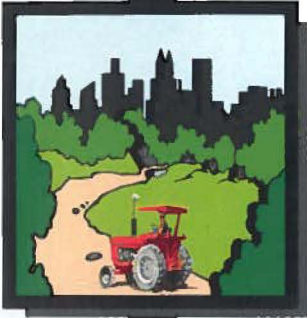
GOLDEN GATE UNIVERSITY



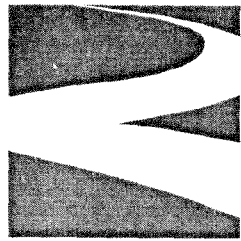
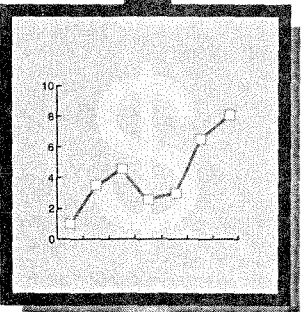
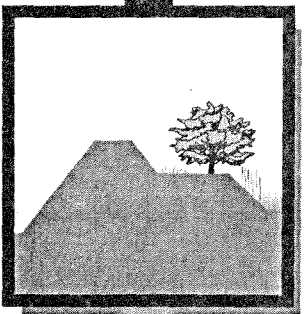
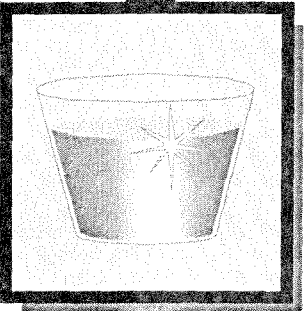
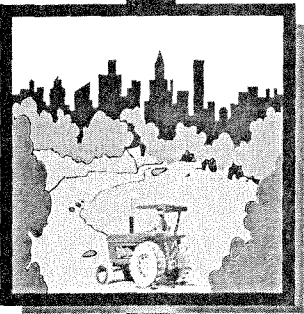
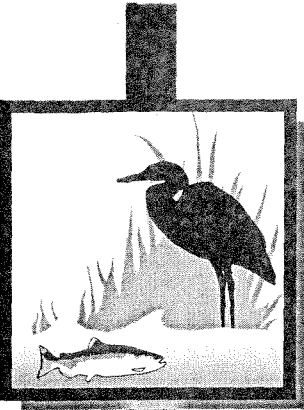
CALFED  
BAY-DELTA  
PROGRAM

# Programmatic Record of Decision Volume 2- Attachments 5 through 6B

August 28, 2000







CALFED  
BAY-DELTA  
PROGRAM

# Attachment 5

## Conservation Agreement Regarding Multi-Species Conservation Strategy

August 28, 2000



# **Conservation Agreement**

**by and among**

**the United States Fish and Wildlife Service,  
the National Marine Fisheries Service,  
the United States Bureau of Reclamation,  
the United States Bureau of Land Management,  
the United States Environmental Protection Agency,  
the United States Army Corps of Engineers,  
the Natural Resources Conservation Service,  
the California Resources Agency,  
the California Department of Fish and Game, and  
the California Department of Water Resources**

**regarding the**

**CALFED Bay-Delta Program  
Multi-Species Conservation Strategy**

**August 28, 2000**

# **CALFED Bay-Delta Program Multi-Species Conservation Strategy Conservation Agreement**

This agreement regarding the **CALFED Bay-Delta Program Multi-Species Conservation Strategy** ("Agreement") is entered into as of the Effective Date by and among the **United States Fish and Wildlife Service** ("USFWS"), the **United States Bureau of Reclamation** ("USBR"), the **United States Bureau of Land Management** ("BLM"), the **National Marine Fisheries Service** ("NMFS"), the **United States Environmental Protection Agency** ("EPA"), the **United States Army Corps of Engineers** ("USACE"), the **Natural Resource Conservation Service** ("NRCS"), the **California Resources Agency** ("Resources Agency"), the **California Department of Fish and Game** ("DFG") and the **California Department of Water Resources** ("DWR"). These entities may be referred to collectively as "Parties" and each individually as a "Party." USFWS, NMFS and DFG are referred to herein collectively as "the Fishery Agencies." USBR and DWR are referred to herein collectively as "the Water Agencies."

## Recitals

- A. In 1994, the Governor's Water Policy Council of the State of California and the Federal Ecosystem Directorate entered into a Framework Agreement to establish a comprehensive program for coordination and communication with respect to environmental protection and water supply dependability in the San Francisco Bay/San Joaquin River Bay-Delta Estuary. This Framework Agreement served as the basis for the **CALFED Bay-Delta Program** ("Program").
- B. The Program is a cooperative effort of eighteen State and federal agencies with regulatory and management responsibilities in the Bay-Delta to develop a long-term plan to restore ecosystem health and improve water management for beneficial uses of the Bay-Delta system. The Program's objective is to identify comprehensive solutions to the problems of ecosystem quality, water supply reliability, water quality, and Delta levee and channel integrity.
- C. The Program's mission is to develop a long-term comprehensive plan that will restore ecological health and improve water management for beneficial uses of the Bay-Delta system. The Program is also guided by solution principles adopted by CALFED agencies. According to these principles, a successful Program solution must reduce conflicts in the system, be equitable, be affordable, be durable, be implementable, and have no significant redirected impacts.
- D. On or near the Effective Date, the Resources Agency, USBR, USFWS, NMFS, EPA, NRCS, and the USACE will issue a **Record of Decision** ("ROD") and will certify the **Final Programmatic Environmental Impact Statement/Environmental Impact Report** ("EIS/EIR") prepared for the Program pursuant to the **National Environmental Policy Act** ("NEPA") and the **California Environmental Quality Act** ("CEQA"). Following issuance of the ROD, specific Program actions will be developed and implemented in accordance with applicable environmental laws.

E. Certain Program actions may result in adverse effects upon species of fish, wildlife and plants and their habitat. Among these species are species that are protected under the **California Endangered Species Act** ("CESA"), the **federal Endangered Species Act** ("FESA"), or both CESA and FESA.

F. The **CALFED Bay-Delta Program Multi-Species Conservation Strategy** dated July 2000 ("MSCS") was developed for the Program in accordance with FESA, CESA and California's **Natural Community Conservation Planning Act** ("NCCPA"). The MSCS is a comprehensive programmatic strategy for the conservation of numerous species of fish, wildlife and plants and their habitat based on key Program elements, such as the Program's Ecosystem Restoration Program and the Environmental Water Account. Implementation of the MSCS is intended to ensure that entities implementing Program actions will satisfy the requirements of FESA, CESA and the NCCPA. A primary purpose of this agreement is to allow the MSCS to serve as adequate compliance under NCCPA.

G. The USFWS' "Programmatic Biological Opinion on the CALFED Bay-Delta Program," dated August 28, 2000, NMFS' "CALFED Bay-Delta Program Programmatic Biological Opinion," dated August 28, 2000, and DFG's "Natural Community Conservation Planning Act Approval of the CALFED Bay-Delta Program Multiple Species Conservation Strategy," dated August 28, 2000, are each based, in part, on the MSCS.

H. To ensure that the MSCS is effective, and to ensure compliance with FESA, CESA and the NCCPA, the Program must be implemented substantially as described in the EIS/EIR, and the MSCS and Biological Opinions must be implemented and adhered to. FESA compliance shall be conducted in a manner consistent with applicable law and regulation.

I. The Parties anticipate that the State Water Resources Control Board ("SWRCB") will be executing this Agreement in the near future. The Parties recognize that the SWRCB has adjudicative responsibilities with respect to contested regulatory matters that are brought before it. The SWRCB's responsibilities include the requirement that the SWRCB and its members avoid bias, prejudice, or interest in the adjudicative matters before it; e.g., it cannot decide, before completion of any required hearing or equivalent proceeding, the outcome of a matter. This Agreement does not in any way require or commit the SWRCB to participate in proposing a project that will come before it for approval; nor does this Agreement require or imply that the SWRCB will approve a project that requires an adjudicative proceeding. Under this Agreement, the role of the SWRCB in connection with matters that may require an adjudicative decision is limited to promptly and diligently processing any applications, petitions, or other requests for approval. Nothing in this Agreement commits the SWRCB to an approval or disapproval of any project subject to the SWRCB's authority, nor to a term or condition in any approval of a project by the SWRCB.

### AGREEMENT

To ensure that the MSCS is implemented in a manner consistent with the statutory authority of each Party and the Program objectives, the Parties agree as follows:

## I. Definitions

The following definitions shall be used to interpret this Agreement. Terms not defined below, but defined in the MSCS, shall have the definition ascribed in the MSCS.

- A. Action-Specific Implementation Plans are plans developed for specific Program actions that provide information and analyses necessary for compliance with FESA, CESA and the NCCPA, as further described in Chapter 6.1 of the MSCS.
- B. Biological Opinions are the USFWS' "Programmatic Biological Opinion on the CALFED Bay-Delta Program," dated August 28, 2000, NMFS' "CALFED Bay-Delta Program Programmatic Biological Opinion," dated August 28, 2000, and DFG's "Natural Community Conservation Planning Act Approval of the CALFED Bay-Delta Program Multiple Species Conservation Strategy," dated August 28, 2000, or their successor documents.
- C. Covered Species are species for which the MSCS provides program-level compliance for the Program under FESA, the NCCPA, or both. Each Fishery Agency shall maintain a list of Covered Species in accordance with its statutory authority.
- D. Evaluated Species are all of the species of fish, wildlife and plants evaluated and addressed in the MSCS, many of which are Covered Species.
- E. EWA Agreement is the Environmental Water Account Operating Principles Agreement dated August 28, 2000.
- F. MSCS is the "CALFED Bay-Delta Program Multi-Species Conservation Strategy," dated July 2000, a Technical Appendix to the EIS/EIR. The MSCS is hereby incorporated by reference in this Agreement.
- G. MSCS Focus Area means the legal Delta as defined in California Water Code Section 12220, Suisun Bay and Marsh, the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers and their tributaries downstream of major dams, and the potential locations of conveyance and water storage facilities.
- H. Phase III refers to the period of time following the ROD and Certification encompassing the thirty-year planning horizon used in developing the CALFED plan, during which the Program actions will be implemented. Phase III will include site-specific environmental review and permitting.
- I. Program actions are actions that are within the scope of the Final PEIS/EIR and carried out or funded by CALFED Agencies as part of the Program.



- J. Program Agencies means the Resources Agency, DFG, DWR, the Delta Protection Commission, the Reclamation Board, the California Department of Food and Agriculture, the California Environmental Protection Agency, SWRCB, the Interior Department, USBR, the USFWS, the United States Geological Survey, BLM, EPA, USACE, United States Department of Commerce, NMFS, the United States Department of Agriculture, NRCS, the United States Forest Service, and the Western Area Power Administration. Program Agencies are agencies that are eligible to enter this Agreement.
- K. Regulatory Baseline is the regulatory baseline described in Section 2.2.7 of the ROD.

## II. Purpose

The purpose of this Agreement is to define and memorialize the Parties' commitments with respect to the MSCS and the process by which the Parties will comply with FESA, CESA and the NCCPA in the implementation of the Program.

## III. Cooperation

The Parties agree to cooperate in the implementation of the MSCS.

## IV. Implementation of Program Actions

Each Party that approves, funds or implements a Program action agrees to ensure that the action follows and adheres to the MSCS, is consistent with the Biological Opinions, and is consistent with all applicable legal requirements.

### A. MSCS Action-Specific Implementation Plans

The MSCS provides a program-level evaluation of the Program under FESA and the NCCPA, just as the EIS/EIR provides a program-level evaluation of the Program under NEPA and CEQA. The MSCS also requires the preparation of Action-Specific Implementation Plans ("ASIPs") for individual Program actions that may affect a Covered Species. ASIPs are intended to complement the project-level environmental review of individual Program actions under NEPA and CEQA that is anticipated in the EIS/EIR. Each ASIP is intended to fulfill the informational and substantive requirements of FESA, CESA and the NCCPA for each Program action. The use of ASIPs is integral to the MSCS and fundamental to compliance with the Biological Opinions. Each Party that approves, funds or implements a Program action that may affect a Covered Species therefore agrees to ensure that an ASIP is prepared for the action in accordance with Section 6.1 of the MSCS. An ASIP shall not be required for a Program action if the Party that approves, funds or implements the action determines, with the written concurrence of the applicable Fishery Agency(ies), that the action is not likely to adversely modify critical habitat designated pursuant to FESA or adversely affect a Covered Species.

## B. Incidental Take

The MSCS does not grant take authority to any Party for any Program action. However, the MSCS creates a simplified FESA and NCCPA compliance process based on the use of ASIPs. Under the MSCS, each Party will use a single ASIP to provide the information and analyses required to comply both with FESA and the NCCPA. An ASIP can then serve both as a biological assessment under Section 7 of FESA and as a **Natural Community Conservation Plan** ("NCCP") under the NCCPA. Under FESA, ASIPs will streamline consultations with the USFWS and NMFS regarding Program actions. The streamlined consultations are intended to result in the issuance of FESA incidental take coverage for Covered Species in accordance with Section 7 of FESA, where take may occur. Under the NCCPA, ASIPs will be components of the MSCS, which is a programmatic NCCP. As components of the MSCS, each ASIP will fulfill the requirements for an NCCP and may be used to obtain incidental take authorizations for Covered Species for Program actions under CESA. The Fishery Agencies agree to coordinate their review of ASIPs for Program actions and to follow the simplified FESA and NCCPA compliance process described in Section 6.1 and Section 6.2 of the MSCS.

## V. Cooperating Landowner Commitments

Many Program actions are expected to enhance or restore the habitat of endangered species and threatened species and to increase populations of such species. Many landowners may be concerned that FESA or CESA may restrict the use of land or water in the area where such Program actions are implemented. To address this concern, and to preserve compatible land uses, the MSCS provides a framework for making commitments to landowners who cooperate in the implementation of Program actions.

## VI. The Environmental Water Account

The **Environmental Water Account** ("EWA") is integral to the Program's Water Management Strategy and is critical to the success of the Program. The terms and conditions under which the EWA will be established are set forth in the "Environmental Water Account Operating Principles Agreement" dated August 28, 2000, and attached hereto as Exhibit 1 (the "EWA Agreement"). The Water Agencies and the Fishery Agencies agree to implement the EWA in accordance with the EWA Agreement. The other Parties agree to cooperate in the implementation of the EWA.

## VII. The Ecosystem Restoration Program

The Program's objectives for ecosystem restoration are to improve and increase aquatic and terrestrial habitats and improve ecological functions in the Bay-Delta Estuary and its watershed to support sustainable populations of diverse plant and animal species. The **Ecosystem Restoration Program** ("ERP") is the principal Program element designed to meet these objectives. Implementation of the ERP will be coordinated with by the **Science Program**, which will conduct pertinent research, and monitor and evaluate the implementation of ERP actions. The ERP and the Science Program are directly relevant and important for FESA, CESA and NCCPA compliance and are integral to the MSCS. To ensure that the ERP is implemented in a manner and

to an extent sufficient to sustain programmatic FESA, CESA and NCCPA compliance for all Program elements, the Fishery Agencies have collaborated to develop a single, joint list of MSCS-ERP Milestones ("Milestones") for Stage 1 of Program implementation. Each Fishery Agency included the Milestones in its Biological Opinions. The Milestones include ecosystem related water quality actions and may include specific Science Program actions. The Fishery Agencies agree that the identified Milestones, if achieved as specified in the Agencies' Biological Opinions, will define an adequate manner and level of ERP implementation for each stage of Program implementation. The Parties agree to seek funding for and to implement the ERP so as to ensure that the Milestones are achieved. To be successfully implemented, the ERP must be funded in the amount of at least \$150 million annually through Stage 1.

## VIII. Regulatory Commitments

### A. Program-level Regulatory Commitments

The Parties agree that the following regulatory commitments are being made as a part of the Program:

#### 1. Federal Program-level Regulatory Commitments

There will be no reductions in Central Valley Project ("CVP") and State Water Project ("SWP") Delta exports beyond those required under the Regulatory Baseline resulting from measures to protect fish required under FESA, provided that the conditions in Section VIII-B are met.

##### (a) Fishery Protection Assets

###### (1) Tier 1

Tier 1 measures are measures comprised by the Regulatory Baseline.

###### (2) Tier 2

Tier 2 measures are measures comprised by the EWA as described in the EWA Agreement, and the ERP.

###### (3) Tier 3

Tier 3 measures are additional water assets for fishery resources provided by the Parties without uncompensated reductions in water deliveries to CVP or SWP water users, as described in the EWA Agreement. Tier 3 measures may include water acquisitions from willing sellers or the consensual borrowing of water.

(b) Use of Tiered Fishery Protection Measures

To protect fishery resources under FESA, measures within Tier 1 and Tier 2 will be used first. Tier 3 measures will be used only when Tier 1 and Tier 2 measures are insufficient to avoid jeopardy, as determined by the USFWS or NMFS. Before Tier 3 measures are used, the USFWS and NMFS will consider the views of an independent science panel.

(c) Jeopardy

If, notwithstanding the use of all three tiers of fishery protection assets, the USFWS or NMFS conclude that the Program is likely to jeopardize the continued existence of a species listed as endangered or threatened under FESA, programmatic consultation regarding the Program will be re-initiated. In issuing its opinion on reinitiation, the Services will consider all available information, including the views of the independent science panel, and will specifically address the views of the panel. These programmatic regulatory commitments shall not apply to the resulting FESA consultation. However, if as a result of the consultation, it is determined that additional reductions in CVP/SWP Delta exports will be necessary to avoid jeopardy, the USFWS or NMFS, as applicable, will identify reasonable and prudent alternatives that require the minimum level of additional reductions in CVP and SWP exports necessary to avoid jeopardy.

2. State Program-level Regulatory Commitments

The Resources Agency has concluded that the fishery benefits of federal regulation, the ERP, the EWA and the commitment and ability of the Program Agencies to make additional water available should it be needed, will be adequate to protect Bay-Delta fisheries. The Resources Agency therefore commits to ensure that there will be no reductions beyond existing regulatory levels in exports to SWP and CVP water users resulting from measures to protect fish under CESA or the NCCPA. This commitment is intended to provide certainty and stability to water users, to the extent permitted by law.

3. Program Review

(a) Annual Review

To ensure that the Milestones are substantially achieved, the Fishery Agencies will collaborate with the Science Program in the annual process of developing annual, near and long-term ERP implementation plans and priorities and the assessment of the implementation of ERP actions, including progress toward achieving the Milestones. The Fishery Agencies will also collaborate with the Science Program in the annual review of the EWA.

(b) Milestone Revisions

The Fishery Agencies expect that the Milestones will need to be revised to reflect new information derived in the annual review process identified above. The Fishery Agencies will not approve revisions to the Milestones that would either cause or allow an effect upon Covered Species or habitat designated as critical under the FESA that was not considered in the Biological

Opinions, or which would otherwise require the reinitiation of formal consultation pursuant to 50 CFR 402.16. Consequently, the USFWS and NMFS expect that proposed revisions to the Milestones that they may approve will result in equal or better protection for Covered Species. Consequently, such revisions may be appended to the USFWS' and/or NMFS' Biological Opinions, as appropriate, through informal, rather than formal consultation pursuant to 50 CFR 402.13. DFG will incorporate its approved revisions to the Milestones by amending its Natural Communities Conservation Plan.

#### 4. Duration

The program-level regulatory commitments provided in this Section VIII extend from the Effective Date until September 30, 2004. Not later than 180 days prior to September 30, 2004, the applicable Parties will reinitiate formal consultation on the Program. The purpose of the reinitiation is to evaluate the efficacy of the EWA and progress toward achieving the Milestones in conserving and promoting the recovery of Covered Species. The reinitiation of consultation is expected to result in supplemental Biological Opinions, which could be appended to the original Biological Opinions. The Parties anticipate that sufficient fishery protection assets, either from existing sources or from water supply augmentation, will be available after September 30, 2004, in which event, this Agreement may be amended to extend the program-level regulatory commitments subsequent to and consistent with the findings of the supplemental Biological Opinions.

#### B. Conditions for Regulatory Commitments

In order for the regulatory commitments described in this Section VIII to be effective, the following commitments must be met:

1. The fishery protection elements of the Program must be implemented as described in the EIS/EIR, the Biological Opinions, and the ROD, including ERP and EWA implementation and full funding (at least \$150 million annually for the ERP, and an additional \$50 million annually for the EWA);
2. The Parties must provide Tier 3 measures if and when needed, as described in Section VIII.A.1;
3. Implementation of the Milestones in accordance with the Biological Opinions must be demonstrated; and
4. The initial and annual assets described in Article I, Section 2 of the EWA Agreement must be acquired for the EWA.

The Parties agree to take the actions necessary to meet these conditions. The Parties shall continuously monitor Program implementation to assure that the conditions set out above are met. In the event that any Party receives information from monitoring or any other source indicating that any of the conditions is not being met or will not be met, that Party shall notify the other Parties.

Upon such notification, the Parties will meet promptly to identify and assess measures which can be taken to remedy any noncompliance or anticipated noncompliance with the conditions, and shall immediately implement such measures. If the Fishery Agencies determine that a situation of noncompliance exists and the Parties are unable to remedy such noncompliance within such reasonable time as the Fishery Agencies may prescribe, not to exceed 60 days, the regulatory commitments will be suspended or terminated. Upon such a determination of noncompliance, formal consultation will be reinitiated and the Federal Fishery Agencies will issue new or amended biological opinions with conditions prescribing alternative regulatory requirements. If the compliance with the conditions set out above is subsequently achieved, the initial regulatory commitments may be revived and reflected through new or amended programmatic biological opinions.

Nothing in this provision will prevent the Fishery Agencies from exercising their authority described in Section VIII.A.1(c) of this Agreement.

#### IX. General Provisions

##### A. Public Officials Not To Benefit

No member of or delegate to Congress shall be entitled to any share or part of this Agreement, or to any benefit that may arise from it.

##### B. Availability of Appropriated Funds

###### 1. Federal Agencies

The commitments and obligations under this Agreement of each Party that is a federal agency is subject to the requirements of the federal Anti-Deficiency Act and the availability of appropriated funds. The Parties acknowledge that this Agreement does not require any federal agency to expend its appropriated funds unless and until an authorized officer of that agency affirmatively acts to commit to such expenditures as evidenced in writing.

The project schedules described in this document depend upon certain assumptions about state and federal budgets, optimized construction schedules, willing sellers and other contingencies. These assumptions may change as the CALFED Program progresses and appropriate revisions to the CALFED Program may be necessary. Consistent with federal law, nothing in this document constrains the discretion of the President or his successor from making whatever budgetary or legislative proposals he or his successors deem appropriate or desirable.

###### 2. State Agencies

The commitments and obligations under this Agreement of each Party that is a State agency is subject to the availability of appropriated funds. The Parties acknowledge that this Agreement does not require any State agency to expend its appropriated funds unless and until an authorized officer of that agency affirmatively acts to commit to such expenditures as evidenced in writing.



C. Statutory Authority

The Parties shall not construe this Agreement to require any Party to act beyond, or inconsistent with, its statutory authority.

D. Effective Date

The Effective Date of this Agreement is August 28, 2000.

E. Duration

This Agreement shall be in effect for thirty years following the Effective Date, unless extended by amendment or terminated.

F. Amendments

This Agreement may be amended by written agreement of all the Parties.

G. Addition of New Parties

Any Program Agency may execute this Agreement and thereby become a Party. Execution by a Program Agency shall not be construed as an amendment to this Agreement.

H. Withdrawal

Any Party may withdraw from this Agreement upon thirty days written notice to the other Parties. Notwithstanding withdrawal by any Party or Termination of the Agreement pursuant to Section I, below, each Party's agreement to meet the conditions set out in Section VIII.B shall remain in effect pending concurrence by the Fishery Agencies following appropriate consultation.

I. Termination

Only the Resources Secretary or the Secretary of the Interior may terminate this Agreement. Each may do so unilaterally upon thirty days written notice to the other Parties.

## EXECUTION

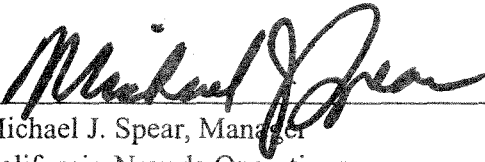
Having considered the contents of this document, its attachments and the documents supporting this decision, we hereby adopt this Agreement. By signing this document together, we exercise our respective authorities over only those portions relevant to our authority.




Having considered the contents of this document, its attachments and the documents supporting this decision, we hereby adopt this Agreement. By signing this document together, we exercise our respective authorities over only those portions relevant to our authority.

Signed and dated:

United States of America

  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Michael J. Spear, Manager  
California-Nevada Operations  
U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service

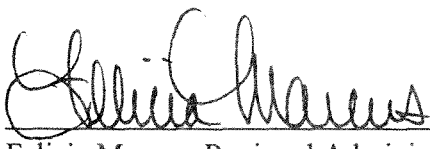
8/28/00  
Date

  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Lester A. Snow, Director, Mid-Pacific Region  
U.S. Bureau of Reclamation

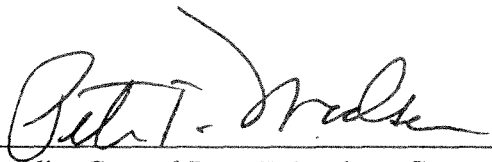
8/28/00  
Date

  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Al Wright, Acting State Director  
U.S. Bureau of Land Management

8/30/00  
Date

  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Felicia Marcus, Regional Administrator  
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency

8/28/00  
Date

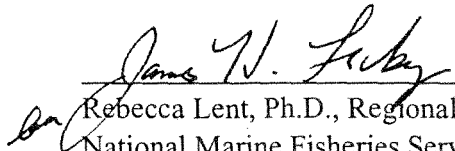
  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Brigadier General Peter T. Madsen, Commander  
South Pacific Division  
U.S. Army Corps of Engineers

8/28/00  
Date

  
Jeffrey R. York, State Conservationist  
Natural Resources Conservation Services

8-28-00

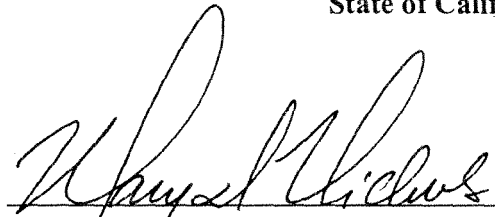
Date

  
Rebecca Lent, Ph.D., Regional Administrator  
National Marine Fisheries Service

8/28/00

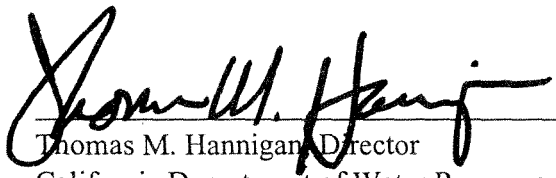
Date

State of California

  
Mary D. Nichols, Secretary  
California Resources Agency

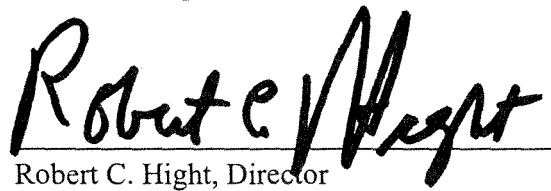
8/28/00

Date

  
Thomas M. Hannigan, Director  
California Department of Water Resources

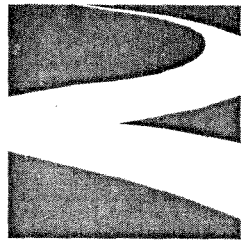
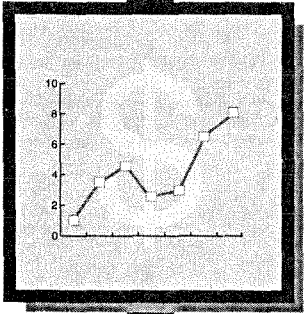
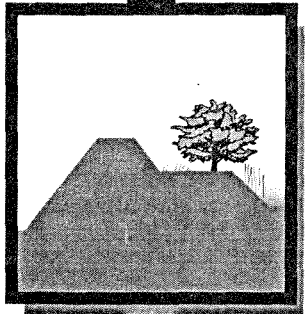
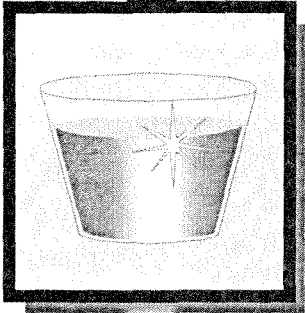
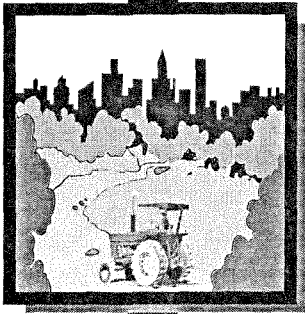
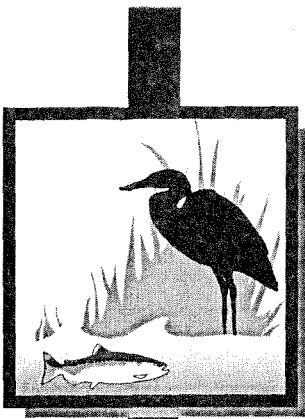
8/28/2000

Date

  
Robert C. Hight, Director  
California Department of Fish and Game

8/28/00

Date



CALFED  
BAY-DELTA  
PROGRAM

# Attachment 6a

## Programmatic Endangered Species Act

### Section 7 Biological Opinions

#### U.S. Fish and Wildlife

August 28, 2000







# United States Department of the Interior

FISH AND WILDLIFE SERVICE  
Sacramento Fish and Wildlife Office  
2800 Cottage Way, Room W-2605  
Sacramento, California 95825

IN REPLY REFER TO:

1-1-00-F-184

August 28, 2000

## Memorandum

**To:** Regional Director, U.S. Bureau of Reclamation, Mid Pacific Region  
Sacramento, California

**From:** Field Supervisor, Sacramento Fish and Wildlife Office  
Sacramento, California

**Subject:** Reinitiation of Programmatic Formal Consultation and Conference on the  
CALFED Bay-Delta Program (File No. 1-1-F-00-183)

This document transmits the Fish and Wildlife Service's (Service) programmatic biological and conference opinions based on the Service's review of the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED Program) and its effects on listed species and critical habitats in California. These opinions are provided in accordance with section 7 of the Endangered Species Act of 1973, as amended (Act) (16 U.S.C. 1531 et seq.). The Service originally concluded formal consultation on the CALFED Program on August 23, 2000. The CALFED Agencies requested reinitiation of formal consultation on August 28, 2000, to clarify language within the project description.

These biological and conference opinions are based primarily on information provided in: (1) the July 2000, Multi-Species Conservation Strategy; (2) the July 2000 Final Programmatic EIS/EIR for the CALFED Bay-Delta Program and its Technical Appendices; (3) the Environmental Water Account Operating Principles Agreement in Appendix E; (4) additional information contained in Service files. A complete administrative record of this consultation is on file in this office.

Wayne S. White

Attachment



## TABLE OF CONTENTS

Introduction .....	1
Study Area .....	7
Consultation History .....	8
Description of the Proposed Action .....	10
Levee System Integrity Program .....	12
Water Quality Program .....	15
Ecosystem Restoration Program .....	19
Water Use Efficiency Program .....	24
Water Transfer Program .....	27
Watershed Program .....	29
Water Management Strategy .....	31
Storage .....	32
Conveyance .....	35
Environmental Water Account .....	39
CALFED Science Program .....	44
Multi-Species Conservation Strategy .....	46
Governance Plan .....	50
Milestones .....	51
Summary of Key Planned Actions .....	54
Environmental Baseline .....	61
Effects of Proposed Action .....	89
Water Impoundments and Diversions .....	93
Agricultural Conversions and Related Operations: .....	95
Municipal and Industrial Development .....	99
Operations and Maintenance .....	102
Levee System Integrity Program .....	105
Water Quality Program .....	108
Ecosystem Restoration Program .....	110
Water Use Efficiency Program .....	111
Water Transfer Program .....	114

Watershed Program .....	115
Storage .....	117
Conveyance .....	122
Environmental Water Account .....	126
Science Program .....	128
Multi-Species Conservation Strategy .....	128
Cumulative Effects .....	129
Conclusion .....	142
Incidental Take Statement .....	143
Reporting Requirements .....	144
Reinitiation-closing Statement .....	145
Appendices .....	146
Literature Cited .....	146

## Introduction

This biological opinion addresses implementation of the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED Program). The CALFED Program was developed collaboratively by 18 Federal and State agencies (CALFED Agencies) with management and regulatory responsibilities affecting the San Francisco Bay/Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta Estuary (Bay-Delta). The co-lead agencies for the purposes of this biological opinion are the Bureau of Reclamation (Reclamation), Fish and Wildlife Service (Service), Bureau of Land Management (BLM), Geological Survey (USGS), Army Corps of Engineers (Corps), Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS), Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS), Forest Service (USFS), and Western Area Power Administration (WAPA). The State of California's Resources Agency is an applicant for the purposes of this consultation, and represents the California Department of Fish and Game (CDFG), Department of Water Resources (DWR) and the Reclamation Board.

CALFED Program implementation, in conjunction with the MSCS and programmatic biological opinions, will provide benefits in subsequent site specific consultations. Specifically, individual projects that qualify for consultation will be evaluated within the context of the program as a whole, which includes major elements designed to improve the environmental baseline and lead to the recovery of targeted species. These major elements will be subject to on-going monitoring, evaluation, and the application of adaptive management. Project specific biological opinions will take into account the environmental benefits that accrue from the CALFED Program. As a result, the Service and NMFS anticipate that implementation of the overall CALFED program will streamline the ESA compliance process, and benefits to listed species will reduce the need for additional provisions to satisfy legal requirements.

The CALFED Program is described in the main document of the Programmatic Environmental Impact Statement/Programmatic Environmental Impact Report (PEIS/PEIR), its technical appendices for program plans and strategies, and in its Implementation Plan and Phase II report. The **Description of the Proposed Action** in this programmatic biological opinion is based on these documents. Thus, the **Description of the Proposed Action** provides clarifications and details derived from the various documents comprising the PEIS/PEIR and is intended to provide a comprehensive description of the CALFED Program.

The PEIS/PEIR is a National Environmental Policy Act (NEPA) document that allows for future, tiered, site-specific NEPA analysis on CALFED Program actions. This programmatic biological opinion provides for a similar tiering process. Discrete CALFED Program actions will submit to tiered review under section 7 of the Federal Endangered Species Act (ESA), where appropriate.

The Multi-Species Conservation Strategy (MSCS) facilitates this process by describing a process for developing Action-Specific Implementation Plans (ASIP) consistent with the CALFED Program and ESA; and programmatic measures to avoid, minimize, and compensate for impacts to listed and proposed species, and species of special concern.

The CALFED Program has several programs designed to further the purposes of ESA. These programs are an inseparable part of the CALFED Program, and include the Ecosystem Restoration Program (ERP), MSCS, Water Quality Program (WQP), Environmental Water Account (EWA) and its Operating Principles, and implementation strategies including monitoring and adaptive management. Commitments to uphold the ESA by CALFED Agencies, combined with implementation of the programs and commitments as described in the **Description of the Proposed Action**, contributed to the Service's decision-making process leading to a **Conclusion** of no jeopardy or adverse modification. The no-jeopardy conclusion at this programmatic scale is not intended to, and does not, preclude the Service from making a future jeopardy determination for a project-specific action, based on the effects analysis. However, the (1) monitoring and adaptive management, (2) communication, cooperation, and outreach, (3) agency commitments regarding conservation, restoration, compensation, and commitments to work together to recover listed species, and (4) project-specific consultation all diminish the likelihood of future jeopardy opinions tiered under this programmatic biological opinion.

This consultation is intended to address in a comprehensive manner the numerous and widely varied actions related to the implementation of the CALFED Program. While CALFED Program actions are clearly interrelated and interdependent, many actions implemented by the various CALFED Agencies are not and should not be considered as stand alone actions. Nevertheless, the Service and NMFS have agreed with the other CALFED Agencies that to facilitate ESA compliance, the activities that are listed in the **Description of the Proposed Action** would be evaluated as a suite of actions all related in one form or another to the CALFED Program. Therefore, this biological opinion addresses the effects upon listed species resulting from the implementation of this suite of actions as a whole and also provides a strategy, or process, as to how ESA compliance on the individual activities that cumulatively make up the CALFED Program will be accomplished.

A number of key program actions related to the implementation of a variety of activities, especially those related to addressing the needs of listed species, are considered in developing this biological opinion at the programmatic level. These key program actions are critical to the overall determination of how implementation of this suite of actions may, or may not jeopardize listed species because the effects of the actions are evaluated in the aggregate. If key program actions are not implemented at this programmatic level, or new information becomes available,



consultation would be reinitiated at the programmatic level to ascertain how the lack of implementation of any action(s), or new information, affects the evaluation of effects upon listed species associated with the overall implementation of the suite of actions being considered and the subsequent conclusions made in this biological opinion.

The project-specific or tiered consultations that will follow this programmatic consultation will rely on implementation of the key program actions to direct the development and implementation of the project-specific actions. If the CALFED Program fails to implement conservation measures or if new information becomes available, reinitiation on the programmatic level may be necessary.

The Service and other CALFED Agencies have consulted on numerous large-scale projects and plans that impact species protected under the ESA. The results of these consultations have been biological opinions that stand on their own merits, establish thresholds to ensure survival and recovery of listed species, and establish a baseline for the effects considered by subsequent consultations. Of particular note are: the Service's October 15, 1991, biological opinion on the Friant Water Contract Renewals (Friant, Service file #1-1-91-F-22); the Service's December 27, 1994, biological opinion on Interim Water Contract Renewal (Interim, Service file #1-1-94-F-69); the Service's November 2, 1994, biological opinion on the Environmental Protection Agency's Water Quality Standards for the San Francisco Bay/Sacramento-San Joaquin Rivers and Delta (Service file #1-1-93-F-61), the Service's March 6, 1995, biological opinion on Reclamations's Long-term Operations Criteria and Plan [(OCAP), Service file #1-1-94-F-70]; and the Service's opinions on the Los Vaqueros Project—in particular the September 9, 1993, opinion (Los Vaqueros, Service file #1-1-93-F-35). This biological opinion is based on the understanding that the thresholds identified in those earlier opinions are a part of the baseline for this consultation. Actions that are not consistent with the project description in this document have not been analyzed for their impacts on the survival and recovery of listed and proposed species.

To implement long-range planning and to assure efficient and effective implementation of the CALFED Program and ESA, the CALFED Agencies, which includes the Service, NMFS, and CDFG (Fish and Wildlife Agencies), will continue coordination on: (1) development of ASIPs for future tiered CALFED Program actions; (2) identification and implementation of conservation actions needed to minimize the impact of the CALFED Program on listed species; and (3) continually monitoring, evaluating, and adapting the program based upon new information.

Although this document is intended to dovetail with the NEPA process, it should be noted that Categorical Exclusions from NEPA are not exempt from compliance with the ESA. The ESA guidance in this opinion is intended to be followed based on effects to listed species. Any ancillary or exclusionary language from laws other than the ESA should not be used to bear upon

any effects determinations that are made relative to listed species.

Numerous acronyms are used for actions and projects within the CALFED Program. In this document use of acronyms has been limited to those entities, acts, and descriptors that are referred to frequently. A list of these acronyms is provided on the following pages in Table 1.

**Table 1.** Acronyms used in this opinion

af	acre-feet
ASIP	Action Specific Implementation Plan
AWMC	Agricultural Water Management Council
BDAC	Bay-Delta Advisory Committee
BLM	U.S. Bureau of Land Management
BMP	best management practice
CALFED	Eighteen Federal and State agencies
CCA	candidate conservation agreements
CCWD	Contra Costa Water District
CDFG	California Department of Fish and Game
CEQA	California Environmental Quality Act
CESA	California Endangered Species Act
cfs	cubic feet per second
CMARP	Comprehensive Monitoring, Assessment, and Research Program
CNPS	California Native Plant Society
Corps	U.S. Army Corps of Engineers
CUWCC	California Urban Water Conservation Council
CVP	Central Valley Project
CVP-OCAP	Central Valley Project-Operations Criteria and Plan
CVPIA	Central Valley Project Improvement Act
CWA	Clean Water Act

DCC	Delta Cross Channel
DO	dissolved oxygen
E/I Ratio	Export-Inflow Ratio
EPA	U.S. Environmental Protection Agency
ERP	Ecosystem Restoration Program
ERPP	Ecosystem Restoration Program Plan
ESA	Federal Endangered Species Act
EWA	Environmental Water Account
FERC	Federal Energy Regulatory Commission
FONSI	Finding of No Significant Impact
FMWT	fall midwater trawl survey
Gap GIS	California Gap Analysis landcover geographic information system
GIS	geographic information system
HCP	Habitat Conservation Plan
IA	implementing agreement
ISI	integrated storage investigation
MAF	million acre-feet
"M" goal	maintain the species
MOU	Memorandum of Understanding
MSCS	Multi-Species Conservation Strategy
NCCP	Natural Community Conservation Plan
NEPA	National Environmental Policy Act
NMFS	National Marine Fisheries Service
NOD	Notice of Determination
O&M	Operation and Maintenance
OCAP	Operations Criteria and Plan

PG&E	Pacific Gas & Electric Company
pH	measure of acidity or alkalinity
PL	Public Law
PEIS/PEIR	Programmatic Environmental Impact Statement/ Programmatic Environmental Impact Report
ppb	parts per billion
ppm	parts per million
ppt	parts per thousand
"r" goal	contribute to recovery of the species
"R" goal	recovery of the species
Reclamation	U.S. Bureau of Reclamation
ROD	Record of Decision
Service or USFWS	U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service
SB	Senate Bill
SJRA	San Joaquin River Agreement
SRA	shaded riverine aquatic
SWP	State Water Project
SWRCB	State Water Resources Control Board
TAF	thousand acre-feet
TMDL	Total Maximum Daily Load
TOC	Total Organic Carbon
USDA	U.S. Department of Agriculture
USGS	U.S. Geological Survey
VAMP	Vernalis Adaptive Management Program
WAPA	Western Area Power Administration
WQCP	Water Quality Control Plan
WQP	Water Quality Program

WUE	Water Use Efficiency Program
-----	------------------------------

## Study Area

The area addressed in this biological opinion (Appendix A) includes the legal Delta, Suisun Bay and Marsh, lands within the Central Valley watershed, the upper Trinity River watershed, the southern California water system service area, San Pablo Bay, and San Francisco Bay. The CALFED Program study area also includes portions of the Pacific Ocean out to the Farallon Islands, and a near-shore coastal zone that extends from about Morro Bay to the Oregon border. This latter area is not addressed in this biological opinion.

This biological opinion addresses the following three distinct geographic subareas:

- MSCS Focus Area. This area (Appendix A, Figures A-1 and A-2) includes the legally defined Delta, Suisun Bay and Marsh, the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers and their tributaries downstream of major dams, and the potential locations of reservoirs.
- Other Service Areas. This area (Appendix A, Figure A-1) includes other State Water Project (SWP) and Central Valley Project (CVP) service areas that are located outside of the MSCS Focus Area and the Watershed Program Area.
- Watershed Program Area. This area (Appendix A, Figure A-1) encompasses the entire upper watersheds of the Central Valley including those areas located above and below major dams and outside the MSCS Focus Area and other service areas, and a portion of the upper Trinity River watershed.

A total of 126 listed and proposed species occur or potentially occur in the MSCS focus area (Appendix B).

(b) Use of Tiered Fishery Protection Measures

To protect fishery resources under FESA, measures within Tier 1 and Tier 2 will be used first. Tier 3 measures will be used only when Tier 1 and Tier 2 measures are insufficient to avoid jeopardy, as determined by the USFWS or NMFS. Before Tier 3 measures are used, the USFWS and NMFS will consider the views of an independent science panel.

(c) Jeopardy

If, notwithstanding the use of all three tiers of fishery protection assets, the USFWS or NMFS conclude that the Program is likely to jeopardize the continued existence of a species listed as endangered or threatened under FESA, programmatic consultation regarding the Program will be re-initiated. In issuing its opinion on reinitiation, the Services will consider all available information, including the views of the independent science panel, and will specifically address the views of the panel. These programmatic regulatory commitments shall not apply to the resulting FESA consultation. However, if as a result of the consultation, it is determined that additional reductions in CVP/SWP Delta exports will be necessary to avoid jeopardy, the USFWS or NMFS, as applicable, will identify reasonable and prudent alternatives that require the minimum level of additional reductions in CVP and SWP exports necessary to avoid jeopardy.

2. State Program-level Regulatory Commitments

The Resources Agency has concluded that the fishery benefits of federal regulation, the ERP, the EWA and the commitment and ability of the Program Agencies to make additional water available should it be needed, will be adequate to protect Bay-Delta fisheries. The Resources Agency therefore commits to ensure that there will be no reductions beyond existing regulatory levels in exports to SWP and CVP water users resulting from measures to protect fish under CESA or the NCCPA. This commitment is intended to provide certainty and stability to water users, to the extent permitted by law.

3. Program Review

(a) Annual Review

To ensure that the Milestones are substantially achieved, the Fishery Agencies will collaborate with the Science Program in the annual process of developing annual, near and long-term ERP implementation plans and priorities and the assessment of the implementation of ERP actions, including progress toward achieving the Milestones. The Fishery Agencies will also collaborate with the Science Program in the annual review of the EWA.

(b) Milestone Revisions

The Fishery Agencies expect that the Milestones will need to be revised to reflect new information derived in the annual review process identified above. The Fishery Agencies will not approve revisions to the Milestones that would either cause or allow an effect upon Covered Species or habitat designated as critical under the FESA that was not considered in the Biological

use efficiency measures, water transfers, and watershed management). In February 1996, the CALFED Program released 20 draft alternative solutions, each including hundreds of actions to help solve the Bay-Delta problems.

CALFED Agencies participated on management and technical teams (e.g., the MSCS teams, and the Ecosystem Restoration Program [ERP] Focus Group) and contributed to several planning documents developed during Phase II, including the Draft (March 1998) and Final (July 2000) PEIS/PEIR; and Administrative Draft (March 31, 2000), Draft (April 17, 2000) and Final (July 2000) MSCS, which serves as the biological assessment for the CALFED Program section 7 consultation.

In June 1996, the list of alternatives was refined to three conceptual comprehensive approaches. In September 1996, the CALFED Agencies released the Phase I Final Report and launched a two-year environmental review of the conceptual alternative solutions. This action concluded Phase I of the CALFED Program and moved it into Phase II.

From June 1996 to December 1997, the CALFED Agencies held hundreds of public meetings to continue to involve the public in the process. Technical staff from various agencies worked with stakeholders to further refine the list of alternatives.

From March 1997 to November 1997, the CALFED Agencies released draft reports for four programs that were common to all of the alternatives. These draft reports included: the Ecosystem Restoration Program Plan, the Water Quality Component Report, the Water Use Efficiency Report, and the Delta Levee System Integrity Program Report.

In December 1997, more than \$60 million in ecosystem restoration program projects were funded. This led to an additional \$24 million in ecosystem restoration projects being funded in February 1998.

On March 16, 1998, the CALFED Agencies released a draft PEIS/PEIR containing the refined draft alternatives. The release was followed by a 105-day public comment period, which ended on July 1, 1998. Additionally, during the March 16, 1998 to July 1, 1998 time frame, the CALFED Agencies conducted further technical analyses to develop the draft Preferred Program Alternative, while also hosting public meetings, hearings, and workshops to continue to get public input.

Upon such notification, the Parties will meet promptly to identify and assess measures which can be taken to remedy any noncompliance or anticipated noncompliance with the conditions, and shall immediately implement such measures. If the Fishery Agencies determine that a situation of noncompliance exists and the Parties are unable to remedy such noncompliance within such reasonable time as the Fishery Agencies may prescribe, not to exceed 60 days, the regulatory commitments will be suspended or terminated. Upon such a determination of noncompliance, formal consultation will be reinitiated and the Federal Fishery Agencies will issue new or amended biological opinions with conditions prescribing alternative regulatory requirements. If the compliance with the conditions set out above is subsequently achieved, the initial regulatory commitments may be revived and reflected through new or amended programmatic biological opinions.

Nothing in this provision will prevent the Fishery Agencies from exercising their authority described in Section VIII.A.1(c) of this Agreement.

## IX. General Provisions

### A. Public Officials Not To Benefit

No member of or delegate to Congress shall be entitled to any share or part of this Agreement, or to any benefit that may arise from it.

### B. Availability of Appropriated Funds

#### 1. Federal Agencies

The commitments and obligations under this Agreement of each Party that is a federal agency is subject to the requirements of the federal Anti-Deficiency Act and the availability of appropriated funds. The Parties acknowledge that this Agreement does not require any federal agency to expend its appropriated funds unless and until an authorized officer of that agency affirmatively acts to commit to such expenditures as evidenced in writing.

The project schedules described in this document depend upon certain assumptions about state and federal budgets, optimized construction schedules, willing sellers and other contingencies. These assumptions may change as the CALFED Program progresses and appropriate revisions to the CALFED Program may be necessary. Consistent with federal law, nothing in this document constrains the discretion of the President or his successor from making whatever budgetary or legislative proposals he or his successors deem appropriate or desirable.

#### 2. State Agencies

The commitments and obligations under this Agreement of each Party that is a State agency is subject to the availability of appropriated funds. The Parties acknowledge that this Agreement does not require any State agency to expend its appropriated funds unless and until an authorized officer of that agency affirmatively acts to commit to such expenditures as evidenced in writing.



Most CALFED Program elements are described in technical appendices to the PEIS/PEIR. Storage and Conveyance are described separately. The EWA is an operational strategy intended to improve fish protection while not adversely affecting water supply.

All aspects of the CALFED Program are interrelated and interdependent. Ecosystem restoration is dependent upon supply and conservation. Supply is dependent upon water use efficiency and consistency in regulation. Water quality is dependent upon water use efficiency and consistency in regulations, improved conveyance, levee stability and healthy watersheds.

The CALFED Program includes a framework guiding implementation that addresses the scope, complexity, and duration of the CALFED Program, and the relative uncertainty regarding the CALFED Program's approach in resolving issues in the problem areas. Implementation is supported by an Implementation Plan that describes Stage 1 actions, CALFED Program integration, governance, and financing. In addition, a Science Program is included to carry out monitoring, assessment and research; and a MSCS will be followed to achieve compliance with the ESA. Implementation of the CALFED Program will be guided by an adaptive management approach with monitoring of performance to help modify (adapt) future actions and contribute to decision making. Also, the CALFED Program will be guided by the principle of balanced implementation of CALFED Program elements.

The term of this programmatic biological opinion includes Phase III of the CALFED Program (30 years or more), provided the CALFED Program remains in compliance with this programmatic biological opinion. The Service will evaluate the CALFED Program's consistency with this biological opinion at numerous points in the future, including:

- During review of annual reports submitted by the CALFED Program.
- During subsequent, tiered informal and formal consultation on ASIPs.
- After 4 years of implementation when sufficient data is collected and analyzed to fully evaluate the effectiveness of the WMS, together with other conservation elements, in meeting the conservation objectives of the CALFED Program.
- At the conclusion of Stage 1 to assess the Program's compliance in achieving the conservation objectives established in the CALFED "Milestones."

If the Service determines that the CALFED Program is not in compliance with this biological opinion, the CALFED Agencies will reinitiate this programmatic consultation. In addition, refer to the Reinitiation Statement in this consultation for further reasons for reinitiation.

The following sections describe the CALFED Program and its elements in greater detail.

### *Levee System Integrity Program*

The Levee System Integrity Program's goal is to improve levees and levee management in the legal Delta and will investigate the level of levee work in Suisun Marsh, which together define its scope. All projects under the Levee System Integrity Program will be implemented to be fully consistent with other CALFED Program elements, including the ERP, Conveyance, and MSCS. Project-specific plans will incorporate appropriate elements of these other programs and strategies. Individual projects pursued under the Levee System Integrity Program, including each of the levee plans described below, will fully evaluate all alternatives during tiered environmental review and will fully analyze and address effects under section 7 or section 10 of the ESA. The Levee System Integrity Program is comprised of the following five elements in the Delta, and a plan for Suisun Marsh levees:

Delta Levee Base Level Protection Plan. The CALFED Program will provide funding to participating local agencies in the Delta to reconstruct certain Delta levees to a uniform, base-level standard. The tentative standard is the Public Law (PL) 84-99 Delta Specific Standard (PL 84-99). Constructing levees to the PL 84-99 criteria is a prerequisite for, but not a guarantee of, post-flood Federal disaster assistance. This plan will evaluate the estimated 520 miles of non-Federal levees in the Delta and recommend levee segments that should conform with the Delta Specific Standard criteria. In addition, a funding mechanism will be established to support the routine inspection and maintenance of levees in the Delta, and for emergency response.

Delta Levee Special Improvement Projects. These projects will target areas that will provide flood protection above base-level standards for some islands protecting public benefits such as water quality, the ecosystem, life and personal property, agricultural production, cultural resources, recreation, and local and Statewide infrastructure. The scope of the Delta Levee Special Improvement Projects encompasses the Delta and levees bordering the northern Suisun Bay from Van Sickle Island to Montezuma Slough. Maintenance of upgraded levees will occur in conformance with specific criteria, consistent with meeting ERP objectives.

Delta Levee Subsidence Control Plan. The goal of this plan is to minimize the risk to levee integrity from land subsidence, in coordination with other CALFED Program elements. Measures will be implemented to reduce, eliminate, or reverse subsidence within a "zone of influence" (approximately 0-500 ft) adjacent to affected levees. Subsidence control techniques include:

- Geotechnical engineering principles and practices in conjunction with proven construction methods.
- Modifying seepage control, dewatering efforts, excavations, and land management activities near levees to best manage levee integrity.
- Strategically locating and constructing stability and drainage berms.
- Restricting practices such as land leveling, ditching, and certain other ground surface modifications within the zone of influence.
- Promoting high ground water levels and vegetation growth, where appropriate, to limit subsidence due to oxidation.

Delta Levee Emergency Management and Response Plan. The goals of this plan are to enhance existing emergency management response capabilities in the Delta, and to develop a stable funding source for emergency response. Future planning will concentrate on improving funding, resources, and response by State and Federal agencies; integrating response by all levels of government; clarification of regulatory procedures; and improving dispute resolution procedures.

Delta Levee Risk Assessment and Risk Management Strategy. The goals of this strategy are to quantify the risks to Delta levees, evaluate the consequences, and develop an appropriate risk management strategy by the end of Stage 1.

Suisun Marsh Levee System Plan. The CALFED Program will evaluate whether to include the Suisun Marsh levee system in the Levee Integrity Plan, and, if included, what level of protection is appropriate. This plan will evaluate the appropriate level of protection for Suisun Marsh levees, evaluate the best method of protection, and implement the method during Stage 1. This plan may protect part of the levee system by rehabilitating and maintaining some levees to protect managed wetlands and develop new tidal wetlands. Implementation will incorporate ERP and MSCS actions, consistent with Service-approved recovery plans.

#### Proposed Levee System Integrity Program Stage 1 Actions

The CALFED Agencies will evaluate the following Levee System Integrity Program actions proposed for implementation in Stage 1. These proposed Stage 1 actions are representative of the overall set of proposed actions in the Levee System Integrity Program.

- Initiate the Levee Program Coordination Group. Develop and implement an outreach, coordination, and partnering program with local landowners including individuals, cities, counties, reclamation districts, resource conservation districts, water authorities, irrigation

districts, farm bureaus, other interest groups, and the general public to assure participation in planning, design, implementation, and management of levee projects (yr 1).

- Obtain short-term Federal and State funding authority as a bridge between the existing Delta Flood Protection Authority (AB 360) and long-term levee funding (yr 1-5).
- Obtain long-term Federal and State funding (yr 1-7).
- Conduct project level environmental documentation and obtain appropriate permits for each action/group of actions (yr 1-7).
- Implement demonstration projects for levee designs, construction techniques, sources of material, reuse of dredge material, and maintenance techniques that maximize ecosystem benefits while still protecting lands behind levees. Give priority to those levee projects which include both short (i.e., construction) and long-term (i.e., maintenance and design) ecosystem benefits, and provide increased information (yr 1-7).
- Adaptively coordinate Delta levee improvements with ecosystem improvements by incorporating successful techniques for restoring, enhancing, or protecting ecosystem values developed by levee habitat demonstration projects or ecosystem restoration projects into levee projects. Continue to develop techniques as major levee projects are implemented (yr 1-7).
- Fund levee improvements up to PL 84-99 criteria in Stage 1; e.g., proportionally distribute available funds to entities making application for cost sharing of Delta levee improvements (yr 1-7).
- Further improve levees which have significant Statewide benefits in Stage 1; e.g., Statewide benefits to water quality and highways (yr 1-7).
- Coordinate Delta levee improvements with Stage 1 water conveyance, water quality improvements (yr 1-7).
- Enhance existing emergency response plans; e.g., establish a revolving fund, refine command and control protocol, stockpile flood fighting supplies, establish standardized contacts for flood fighting and recovery operations, and outline environmental considerations during emergencies (yr 1-7).
- Implement current Best Management Practices (BMPs) to correct subsidence effects on levees. Assist CALFED Program's Science Program activities to quantify the effect and extent of inner-island subsidence and its linkages to all CALFED Program objectives (yr 1-7).
- Develop BMPs for the reuse of dredge materials (yr 1).
- Institute a program for using Bay and Delta dredge material to repair Delta levees and restore Delta habitat (yr 1-7).
- Complete total risk assessment for Delta levees and develop and begin implementation of risk assessment options as appropriate to mitigate potential consequences (yr 1-7).

- Complete the evaluation of the best method for addressing the Suisun Marsh levee system (yr 1-2).

### *Water Quality Program*

The CALFED Program's WQP will strive to create water quality conditions that fully support a healthy and diverse ecosystem and the multiplicity of human uses of water. The geographic scope of the WQP encompasses five regions: the legal Delta; the Bay Region which includes Suisun Bay and Marsh, San Pablo Bay, and the San Francisco Bay watershed; the Sacramento River Region, bounded by the ridge tops of the Sacramento River watershed or hydrologic region; the San Joaquin River Region which includes both the San Joaquin River and Tulare Lake hydrologic basins; and, SWP and CVP service areas outside the Central Valley.

The CALFED Program's Water Quality Technical Group has identified the following water quality parameters of concern to beneficial uses: mercury, selenium, trace metals (copper, cadmium, and zinc), pesticides (carbofuran, chlorodane, chloropyrifos, DDT, diazinon, PCBs, and toxaphene), drinking water disinfection by-product precursors (bromide and total organic carbon), dissolved oxygen and oxygen reducing substances, ammonia, salinity (total dissolved solids), temperature, turbidity and sedimentation, pathogens, nutrients (nitrogen and phosphorus), pH (alkalinity), chloride, boron, sodium absorption ratio, and toxicity of unknown origin. These parameters provide the focal points for developing and implementing the CALFED Program's water quality actions. The July 2000 Water Quality Program Plan, a technical appendix to the CALFED Program's Final PEIS/PEIR, provides a full description of the WQP. Individual projects pursued under the WQP will fully evaluate all alternatives during tiered environmental review and will fully analyze and address effects under section 7 or section 10 of the ESA.

### Water Quality Program Plan

The Water Quality Program, largely through its agency-stakeholder Water Quality Technical Group, has developed programmatic actions to address water quality parameters of concern and beneficial use impairments. Water quality impairments or problems and associated programmatic actions to treat these problems are described in the WQP Plan. The WQP Plan is organized by the following sections: low dissolved oxygen and oxygen depleting substances, drinking water, mercury, pesticides, organochlorine pesticides, salinity, selenium, trace metals, turbidity and sedimentation, toxicity of unknown origin, and a section on implementation strategy. The environmental water quality components, including proposed actions, were transferred to and are now administered under the ERP. However, to maintain consistency between the Draft PEIS and Final PEIS, CALFED Agencies have left the environmental components in the WQP Plan.

## Proposed Water Quality Program Stage 1 Actions

The CALFED Agencies will evaluate the following water quality actions proposed for implementation in Stage 1. These proposed Stage 1 actions are representative of the overall set of proposed actions in the WQP Plan.

### General Water Quality Actions

- Prepare project level environmental documentation and permitting as needed (yr 1-7).
- Coordinate with other CALFED Program elements to ensure that in-Delta actions maximize potential for Delta water quality improvements (yr 1-7).
- Continue to clarify use of and fine-tune water quality performance targets and goals (yr 1-7).

### Environmental Water Quality Action:

Conduct the following mercury evaluation and abatement work:

#### *Cache Creek:*

- Risk appraisal and advisory for human health impacts of mercury (yr 1-5).
- Support development and implementation of Total Maximum Daily Load (TMDL) for mercury (yr 1-7).
- Determine bioaccumulation effects in creeks and the Delta (yr 1-4).
- Source, transport, inventory, mapping and speciation of mercury (yr 1-7).
- Information Management/Public Outreach (yr 5-7).
- Participate in Stage 1 remediation (drainage control) of mercury mines as appropriate (yr 3-5).
- Investigate sources of high levels of bioavailable mercury (yr 4-7).

#### *Sacramento River:*

- Investigate sources of high levels of bioavailable mercury; inventory, map, and refine other models (yr 3-7).
- Participate in remedial activities (yr 7).

#### *Delta:*

- Research methylization (part of bioaccumulation) process in Delta (yr 1-2).
- Determine sediment mercury concentration in areas that would be dredged during levee maintenance or conveyance work (yr 3-7).
- Determine potential impact of ecosystem restoration work on methyl mercury levels in lower and higher trophic level organisms (yr 3-5).

Conduct the following pesticide work:

- Develop diazinon and chlorpyrifos hazard assessment criteria with the CDFG and the Department of Pesticide Regulations (yr 1).

- Support development and implementation of a TMDL for diazinon (yr 1-7).
- Develop BMPs for dormant spray and household uses (yr 1-3).
- Study the ecological significance of pesticide discharges (yr 1-3).
- Support implementation of BMPs (yr 2-7).
- Monitor to determine effectiveness (yr 4-7).

Conduct the following trace metals work:

- Determine spatial and temporal extent of metal pollution (yr 3-7).
- Determine ecological significance and extent of copper contamination (yr 1-3).
- Review impacts of other metals such as cadmium, zinc, and chromium (yr 1).
- Participate in Brake Pad Partnership to reduce introduction of copper (yr 1-7).
- Partner with municipalities on evaluation and implementation of stormwater control facilities (yr 2-5).
- Participate in remediation of mine sites as part of local watershed restoration and Delta restoration (yr 2-7).

Conduct the following selenium work:

- Conduct selenium research to fill data gaps in order to refine regulatory goals of source control actions; determine bioavailability of selenium under several scenarios (yr 1-5).
- Evaluate and, if appropriate, implement real-time management of selenium discharges (yr 1-7).
- Expand and implement source control, treatment, and reuse programs (yr 1-7).
- Coordinate with other programs (yr 1-7); e.g., recommendations of San Joaquin Valley Drainage Implementation Program, and CVPIA for retirement of lands with drainage problems that are not subject to correction in other ways.

Conduct the following sediment reduction work/organochlorine pesticides:

- Participate in implementation of the United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) sediment reduction program (yr 1-7).
- Promote sediment reduction in construction areas and urban stormwater, and other specific sites (yr 1-7).
- Implement stream restoration and revegetation work (yr 4-7).
- Quantify and determine ecological impacts of sediments in target watersheds, implement corrective actions (yr 4-7).
- Coordinate with ERP on sediment needs (yr 1-3).

Conduct the following work addressing dissolved oxygen (DO) and oxygen depleting substances (including nutrients):

- Complete studies of causes for DO sag in San Joaquin River near Stockton (yr 1-2).
- Define and implement corrective measures for DO sag (yr 1-7).

- Encourage regulatory activity to reduce nutrients discharged by unpermitted dischargers (yr 1-7).
- Develop inter-substrate DO testing in conjunction with the ERP (yr 2-4).
- Study nutrient effects on beneficial uses (yr 4-7).
- Develop, implement, and support measures to reduce pollutant (oxygen depleting substances, nutrients, and ammonia) discharges from concentrated animal feeding operations (yr 1-7).
- Support finalizing investigation of methods to reduce constituents that cause low DO for inclusion in TMDL recommendation by the Central Valley Regional Water Quality Control Board (yr 2).
- Support finalization of Basin Plan Amendment and TMDL for constituents that cause low DO in the San Joaquin River (yr 2).
- Support implementation of appropriate source and other controls as recommended in the TMDL (yr 3).
- Participate in identifying unknown toxicity and addressing as appropriate (yr 1-7).

#### Drinking Water Quality Actions

Actions specific to drinking water improvements:

- Work with Bay Area water suppliers as they develop a Bay Area Blending/Exchange Project (yr 1-7).
- Address drainage problems in the San Joaquin Valley to improve downstream water quality (yr 1-7).
- Implement source controls in the Delta and its tributaries (yr 1-7).
- Support ongoing efforts of the Delta Drinking Water Quality Council (yr 1-7).
- Invest in treatment technology demonstrations (yr 1-7).
- Control runoff into the California Aqueduct and other similar conveyances (yr 1-7+).
- Address water quality problems at the North Bay Aqueduct (yr 1-7).
- Conduct comprehensive evaluations, pilot programs, and full scale actions to reduce Total Organic Carbon (TOC) contribution through control of algae, aquatic weeds, agricultural runoff, and watershed improvements (yr 1-7).
- Improve DO concentrations in the San Joaquin River near Stockton (yr 1-3).
- Study recirculation of export water to reduce salinity and improve DO in the San Joaquin River. If feasible, and consistent with ERP goals and objectives, implement a pilot program (yr 1-4).

#### *Ecosystem Restoration Program*



The Ecosystem Restoration Program (ERP) will improve and increase aquatic and terrestrial habitats and improve ecological functions in the Bay-Delta estuary and its watershed to support sustainable populations of diverse plant and animal species. All CALFED Program elements will contribute in varying degrees to this goal, with the ERP being the principal CALFED Program element designed to restore the ecological health of the Bay-Delta system. The ERP includes actions throughout the Bay-Delta watershed, focusing on the restoration of ecological processes and important habitats. The CALFED Program proposes to improve ecosystem quality for the Bay-Delta system in order to reduce conflicts among beneficial uses of California's water. Individual projects pursued under the ERP will fully evaluate all alternatives during tiered environmental review and will fully analyze and address effects under section 7 or section 10 of the ESA.

The primary geographic focus area of the ERP is the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta, Suisun and San Pablo Bay, the Sacramento River below Shasta Dam, the San Joaquin River below the confluence with the Merced River, and their major tributary watersheds directly connected to the Bay-Delta system below major dams and reservoirs. This primary geographic focus area is divided into 14 ecological management zones (discussed in Ecosystem Restoration Program Plan Volume II). The secondary geographic focus area is the upper watersheds surrounding the primary focus area and Central and South San Francisco Bay and their local watersheds.

Success of the CALFED Program hinges upon the full and successful funding and implementation of the ERP, MSCS, other existing and tiered biological opinions, as well as other environmental commitments. Although it is anticipated that some ERP actions will be refined or altered, based upon new information and adaptive management, the successful implementation of nearly all actions is necessary to achieve the species recovery goals identified in the ERP. The ERP is not designed as mitigation for projects to improve water supply reliability or to bolster the integrity of Delta levees, although it is expected that the environmental benefits associated with implementation of the ERP will facilitate the review of such projects. Improving ecological processes and increasing the amount and quality of habitat are co-equal with other CALFED Program goals related to water supply reliability, water quality, and levee system integrity.

The ERP is comprised of a Strategic Plan and a two-volume restoration plan: Volume I which describes the ecosystem elements or attributes (ecological processes, habitats, species and species groups, and anthropogenic stressors) the program addresses; and, Volume II which presents the ecological management zones and proposed programmatic actions. The ERP would require individual section 7 consultations for actions which may affect listed species.

#### Ecosystem Restoration Program Strategic Plan and Goals

The ERP Strategic Plan contains the following goals and objectives:

- Goal 1: Achieve recovery of at-risk native species dependent on the Delta and Suisun Bay as the first step toward establishing large, self-sustaining populations of these species; support similar recovery of at-risk native species in San Francisco Bay and the watershed above the estuary; and minimize the need for future endangered species listings by reversing downward population trends of native species that are not listed.
- Goal 2: Rehabilitate natural processes in the Bay-Delta estuary and its watershed to fully support, with minimal ongoing human intervention, natural aquatic and associated terrestrial biotic communities and habitats, in ways that favor native members of those communities.
- Goal 3: Maintain and/or enhance populations of selected species for sustainable commercial and recreational harvest, consistent with the other ERP goals.
- Goal 4: Protect and/or restore functional habitat types in the Bay-Delta estuary and its watershed for ecological and public values such as supporting species and biotic communities, ecological processes, recreation, scientific research, and aesthetics.
- Goal 5: Prevent the establishment of additional non-native invasive species and reduce the negative ecological and economic impacts of established non-native species in the Bay-Delta estuary and its watershed.
- Goal 6: Improve and/or maintain water and sediment quality conditions that fully support healthy and diverse aquatic ecosystems in the Bay-Delta estuary and watershed; and eliminate, to the extent possible, toxic impacts to aquatic organisms, wildlife, and people.

There are several objectives under each goal. ERP goals and objectives are integrated with those of the CALFED Program's MSCS, WQP, and Nonnative Invasive Species Strategic Plan.

The ERP Strategic Plan also presents and describes:

- An ecosystem based management approach for restoring and managing the Bay-Delta ecosystem.
- An adaptive management process that is sufficiently flexible and iterative to respond to changing Bay-Delta conditions and to incorporate new information about ecosystem structure and function.
- The value and application of conceptual models in developing restoration actions and defining information needs, with examples of their development and use.
- Institutional and administrative considerations necessary to implement adaptive management, to ensure scientific credibility of the restoration program and to engage the public in the restoration program.

- Decision rules and criteria to help guide the selection and prioritization of restoration actions.
- Opportunities and constraints to be considered in developing a restoration program.

### Ecosystem Restoration Program Plan

The Ecosystem Restoration Program Plan (ERPP) is composed of two volumes. Volume I presents the elements or components of the ERP. These “ecosystem elements” are organized into four categories: ecological processes (e.g., central valley stream flows, Bay-Delta hydrodynamics, bay-delta aquatic foodweb); habitats (e.g., tidal perennial aquatic, saline emergent wetland, riparian and riverine aquatic); species and species groups (species designated for recovery, species designated for contribute to recovery, species assemblages designated for enhance and/or conserve biotic communities, harvested species to be maintained and/or enhanced); and, stressors (e.g., water diversions, nonnative invasive species, contaminants, gravel mining). Consult ERPP Volume I for the complete list and description of ERP ecosystem elements (total of 106 elements).

ERPP Volume II identifies over 600 programmatic actions to be implemented throughout the Bay-Delta estuary and its watershed over the 30-year period of the CALFED Program. Volume II also gives targets for the ecosystem elements (e.g., acres of tidal fresh emergent wetland to be restored). Volume II is organized by Ecological Management Zones. The primary ERP geographic focus area is divided into 14 Ecological Management Zones: Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta, Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay, Sacramento River, North Sacramento Valley, Cottonwood Creek, Colusa Basin, Butte Basin, Feather River/Sutter Basin, American River Basin, Yolo Basin, Eastside Delta Tributaries, San Joaquin River, East San Joaquin, and West San Joaquin. Each zone is further divided into Ecological Management Units. Under each Ecological Management Zone are the ecosystem elements and associated proposed programmatic actions and restoration targets that the ERP will address in that zone. There is also a section in Volume II that gives ERP targets, MSCS species goal prescriptions, and MSCS conservation measures for species and species groups ecosystem elements.

### Proposed Ecosystem Restoration Program Stage 1 Actions

CALFED Agencies will evaluate the following ERP actions proposed for implementation in Stage 1. These proposed Stage 1 actions are representative of the overall set of proposed actions in the ERP:

- Develop and implement an outreach, coordination, and partnering program with local landowners and individuals, cities, counties, reclamation districts, the Delta Protection Commission, resource conservation districts, water authorities, irrigation districts, farm bureaus, other interest groups, and the general public to assure participation in planning design, implementation, and management of ecosystem restoration projects (yr 1-7).
- Conduct project level environmental documentation and permitting as needed for each bundle of Stage 1 actions (yr 1-7).
- Fully coordinate with other ongoing activities which address ecosystem restoration in the Bay-Delta system; e.g., CVPIA, Four Pumps Agreement, Non-native Invasive Species Task Force (yr 1-7).
- Implement habitat restoration in the Delta, Suisun Bay and Marsh, and Yolo Bypass to improve ecological function and facilitate recovery of endangered species consistent with the goals of the ERP Strategic Plan and MSCS. Habitat restoration efforts in Stage 1 will: restore 2,000 acres of tidal perennial aquatic habitat; restore 200 acres of deep open water nontidal perennial aquatic habitat; restore 300 acres of shallow open water nontidal perennial aquatic habitat; enhance and restore 50 miles of Delta slough habitat; enhance and restore 50 to 200 acres of midchannel islands; restore 8,000 to 12,000 acres of fresh emergent (tidal) wetlands; restore 4,000 acres of fresh emergent (non-tidal) wetlands; restore 25 miles of riparian and riverine aquatic habitat; restore 1,000 to 2,000 acres of perennial grassland; and establish 8,000 to 12,000 acres of wildlife-friendly agricultural habitat. These actions represent approximately one-fourth of the acreage identified in the ERP to be restored during the 30-year implementation period (yr 1-7).
- Implement large-scale restoration projects on select streams and rivers (e.g., Clear Creek, Deer Creek, and the Tuolumne River) that would include implementation of all long-term restoration measures in coordination with the watershed management common program and monitoring of subsequent ecosystem responses to learn information necessary for making decisions about implementing similar restorations in later stages (yr 1-7).
- Implement an EWA that acquires water for ecosystem and species recovery needs, substantially through voluntary purchases in the water transfer market in its first few years and developing additional assets over time (yr 1-7).

- Pursue full implementation of ERP upstream flow targets, over and above EWA assets and regulatory actions, through voluntary purchases of at least 100,000 acre-feet of water by the end of Stage 1. Evaluate how the ERP water acquisitions and EWA water acquisitions will be integrated most effectively (yr 1-7).
- Complete targeted research and scientific evaluations needed to resolve the high priority issues and the uncertainties identified in the ERP Strategic Plan (e.g., instream flow, non-native organisms, and Bay-Delta food web dynamics) to provide direction for implementing the adaptive management process and information necessary for making critical decisions in later stages (yr 1-7).
- Establish partnerships with universities for focused research (yr 1-7).
- Acquire floodplain easements, consistent with ecosystem and flood control needs along the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers (yr 4-7).
- Continue high priority actions that reduce direct mortality to fishes (yr 1-7):
  - Screen existing unscreened or poorly screened diversions in the Delta, on the Sacramento River, San Joaquin River, and tributary streams based on a systematic priority approach.
  - Remove select physical barriers to fish passage.
- Continue gravel management, e.g., isolate gravel pits on San Joaquin River tributaries and relocate gravel operations on Sacramento River tributaries. Most gravel work would be implemented in subsequent stages with designs and plans for ecosystem reclamation of gravel mining sites (yr 1-7).
- Develop and begin implementing a CALFED Program comprehensive non-native (exotic) invasive species prevention, control, and eradication plan including the following (yr 1-7):
  - Implement invasive plant management program in Cache Creek.
  - Develop ballast water management program.
  - Develop early-response invasive organism control programs.
  - Evaluate CALFED Program implementation actions and how those actions may benefit non-native species to the detriment of native species or the Bay-Delta ecosystem.
- Provide incremental improvements in ecosystem values throughout the Bay-Delta system in addition to habitat corridors described above, e.g., pursue actions that are opportunity-based (willing sellers, funding, permitting), provide incremental improvements on private land through incentives, and develop partnerships with farmers on “environmentally friendly” agricultural practices (yr 1-7).
- Incorporate ecosystem improvements with levee associated subsidence reversal plans (yr 1-7).
- Evaluate the feasibility of harvest management to protect weaker fish stocks (yr 1-7).
- Implement projects on selected streams to provide additional upstream fishery habitat by removing or modifying barriers (yr 1-7).

- Assist in the preparation of detailed, ecosystem-based restoration and recovery plans for any priority species identified in the ERP Strategic Plan and the MSCS for which up-to-date plans are not available. Begin implementing appropriate additional restoration actions identified in these plans (yr 1-7).
- Identify and advance specific regional ERP goals (yr 1-7).

Additional draft ERP Stage 1 actions are presented by Ecological Management Zone in Appendix D of the ERP Strategic Plan.

### *Water Use Efficiency Program*

The Water Use Efficiency Program (WUE) relies on a combination of technical assistance, incentives, and directed studies for the four WUE program elements: Agricultural Water Conservation, Urban Water Conservation, Water Recycling, and Managed Wetlands.

Technical assistance programs and directed studies will begin for all four elements. Incentive programs will be designed to award CALFED Program grant funding for projects that demonstrate potential to provide the CALFED Program water supply reliability, water quality, or ecosystem restoration benefits.

The WUE Program includes water conservation and water recycling actions to facilitate efficient use of water at the regional and local level. Individual projects pursued under the WUE will fully evaluate all alternatives during tiered environmental review and will fully analyze and address effects under section 7 or section 10 of the ESA. The programmatic water use efficiency actions include the following:

### Water Conservation Related Actions

- Work with the California Urban Water Conservation Council and the Agricultural Water Management Council (AWMC) to identify appropriate urban and agricultural water conservation measures, set appropriate levels of effort, and, in the case of the urban effort, identify a proper entity and process to certify or endorse water suppliers that are implementing cost-effective feasible measures.
- Expand State and Federal programs to provide sharply increased levels of planning, technical, and financing assistance and develop new ways of providing assistance in the most effective manner.
- Assist urban water suppliers comply with the Urban Water Management Planning Act.

- Assist water suppliers and water users to identify and implement water management measures that can yield multiple benefits, including improved water quality and reduced ecosystem impacts.
- Identify and implement practices to improve water management on managed wetlands.
- Gather better information on water use, identify opportunities to improve water use efficiency, and measure the effectiveness of conservation practices.
- Identify, in region-specific Strategic Plans for Agricultural Areas, quantifiable objectives to assure improvements in water management.

#### Water Recycling Actions:

- Assist local and regional agencies comply with the water recycling provisions in the Urban Water Management Planning Act.
- Expand State and Federal recycling programs in order to provide increased levels of planning, technical, and financing assistance (both loans and grants), and develop new ways of providing assistance in the most effective manner.
- Provide regional planning assistance that can increase opportunities for use of recycled water.

#### Proposed Water Use Efficiency Stage 1 Actions

CALFED Agencies will evaluate the following WUE actions proposed for implementation in Stage 1. These proposed Stage 1 actions are representative of the overall set of proposed actions in the WUE Program.

- Expand existing State and Federal agricultural Water Conservation Programs to support on farm and district efforts. Expand State and Federal programs to provide technical and planning assistance to local agencies and districts in support of local and regional conservation and recycling programs (yr 1-7).
- Expand existing State and Federal conservation programs to support urban water purveyor efforts. Expand State and Federal programs to provide technical and planning assistance in support of conservation and recycling programs (yr 1-7).
- Utilize AB 3616 of the Agricultural Water Management Council to evaluate and endorse Agricultural Water Management Plans to implement cost-effective water management practices by agricultural districts. Identify and secure ongoing funding sources for

- Agricultural Water Management Council and its members seeking to actively participate in the development, review, and implementation of these plans (yr 1-7).
- Develop Urban Water Management Plan Certification Process - Select an agency to act as certifying entity, obtain legislative authority, carry out public process to prepare regulations, and implement program (yr 1-3).
  - Implement Urban BMPs Certification Process. Implement a process for certification of water suppliers' compliance with terms of the Urban Memorandum of Understanding (MOU) with respect to BMPs analysis and implementation for urban water conservation. Provide funding support for the California Urban Water Conservation Council (CUWCC) to carry out this function (yr 1-7).
  - Prepare a program implementation plan, including a proposed organizational structure consistent with the overall CALFED Program governance structure, for a competitive grant/loan incentive program for WUE (yr 1). This will include:
    - Incentives in the agricultural sector that will consider several factors, including: (i) potential for reducing irrecoverable water losses; (ii) potential for attaining environmental and/or water quality benefits from WUE measures which result in reduced diversions; (iii) regional variation in water management options and opportunities; (iv) availability and cost of alternative water supplies; and (v) whether the recipient area experiences recurrent water shortages due to regulatory or hydrological restrictions. Many of these factors are included in the Quantifiable Objectives for Agricultural Water Use Efficiency, and as such, the Quantifiable Objectives will be an important component of the agricultural incentive criteria.
    - Incentives in the urban sector will assist in identifying and implementing urban water conservation measures that are supplemental to BMPs in the Urban MOU process and are cost effective from a Statewide perspective.
    - Incentives for water recycling in the urban and agricultural areas.
    - Annual reporting and evaluation mechanisms to gauge effectiveness of the program.
  - Finalize and implement the methodology for Refuge Water Management which was described in the June 1998 "Interagency Coordinated Program for Wetland Water Use Plan, Central Valley, California" (yr 1-3).
  - Research effort to establish appropriate reference conditions for evaluating program progress, and to identify improved methods for WUE (yr 1-7).
  - Assess the need for additional water rights protections. Evaluate the need for additional State regulations or legislation providing protection for water right holders who have implemented WUE measures and subsequently transferred water to other beneficial uses (yr 1-4).



- Water Management. Develop State legislation that requires appropriate measurement of water use for all water users in California (yr 1-3).
- Create a Public Advisory Committee to advise State and Federal agencies on structure and implementation of assistance programs, and to coordinate State, Federal, regional and local efforts for maximum effectiveness of program expenditures (yr 1).

### *Water Transfer Program*

The CALFED Program's Water Transfer Program (WTP) will encourage the development of a more effective water transfer market that facilitates water transfers and streamlines the approval process while protecting water rights, environmental conditions, and local economic interests. CALFED Agencies have legal and regulatory responsibility for review and approval of most water transfers and also have jurisdiction over many of the storage and conveyance facilities required to make water transfers work. These agencies are in a position to improve or facilitate the operations of the water market by adopting policies and implementing programs that will allow transfers to be completed efficiently while protecting the environment. The Strategic Plan for Implementation provides direction and prioritization for implementation of the CALFED Program's Water Transfer Program, and includes the following actions:

### Interactive California Water Market Information Web Site

- Develop the On Tap on-line water market information source for California water transfers.

### Environmental, Socio-economic, and Water Resource Protection

- Recommend establishment of a California Water Transfers Information Clearinghouse to ensure that decisions regarding proposed water transfers can be made with all parties in possession of complete and accurate information and to facilitate assessment of potential third party impacts.
- Require additional water transfer analysis regarding direct and indirect impacts. The DWR, Reclamation, and the State Water Resources Control Board (SWRCB) will require transfer proponents to provide analysis of the direct and indirect impacts of a proposed transfer, in addition to CEQA, ESA compliance or other environmental requirements.
- Develop improved tracking protocols to ensure that water transferred to an instream flow can be tracked and then delivered to the intended destination.

- Work with stakeholders and the State Legislature to assist local agencies in development of groundwater management programs to protect groundwater basins in water transfer source areas.

#### Technical, Operational, and Administrative Rules

- Work to streamline the current water transfer approval processes through development of new tools, clarification of existing policies, refinement of processes and addition of staff and resources.
- Work with stakeholder representatives to clarify and define what water is deemed transferrable under what conditions.
- Work with stakeholder representatives to resolve conflicts over carriage water criteria.
- Work with stakeholder representatives to develop criteria that protect other legal users of water from injury as a result of refill of a reservoir after the transfer of stored water.

#### Wheeling and Access to State/Federal Facilities

- Improve forecasting tools and more widely disclose potential pumping and conveyance capacity in project facilities, including limiting factors and inherent risks.
- Work with stakeholder representatives to consider modification of policies and procedures for transporting non-project water through existing project water conveyance facilities.
- Work with stakeholder representatives to develop cost criteria associated with transporting transferred water through State or Federal conveyance facilities.

#### Proposed Water Transfer Program Stage 1 Actions

CALFED Agencies will evaluate the following actions proposed for implementation in Stage 1. These proposed Stage 1 actions are representative of the overall set of proposed actions in the Water Transfer Program.

- Develop an Interactive Water Transfer Information Web-site. CALFED Agencies will develop, implement, and maintain an interactive, publicly available web-site called On TAP (by the end of year 2000) (yr 1).
- Establish the California Water Transfers Information Clearinghouse to operate and maintain the On Tap web-site, collect and disseminate data and information relating to water transfers and potential transfer impacts, and perform research using historic data to understand water transfer impacts (by year 2001) (yr 1).

- Coordinate with CALFED Agencies to require water transfer applicants to provide additional impact assessment information (yr 1-4).
- Identify, arrange, fund, and carry out a specific number of targeted water transfers for in-stream environmental purposes as part of the ERP, with a goal of using these transfers to evaluate the effectiveness of and make any necessary improvements to the California Water Code Section 1707 procedures and tracking protocols (yr 1-3).
- Establish a groundwater assistance program to fund studies to gather groundwater data and to enable local entities to develop and implement local groundwater management/monitoring programs (yr 1-2).
- Develop a streamlined water transfer approval process including “pre-certification” of certain classes of transfers and expedited environmental review procedures (yr 1-6).
- Work with stakeholder representatives to clarify and define what water is deemed transferrable under what conditions (yr 1-3).
- Continue to work with stakeholder representatives to resolve conflicts over carriage water criteria (yr 1-3).
- Establish a refill criteria policy for reservoir storage based water transfers (yr 1).
- Begin forecast and disclosure processes of potential conveyance capacity in existing export facilities (Reclamation and DWR). This would be an on-going activity, occurring in conjunction with hydrologic forecasts (yr 1-7).
- Work with stakeholders to develop an agreed upon set of criteria and procedures governing the determination of transport system availability and costs, including the procedures to determine the fair reimbursement to the water conveyance facility operator (yr 1-3).

### *Watershed Program*

The Watershed Program will use a comprehensive, integrated, basin-wide approach with a goal to improve conditions in the Bay-Delta system. This Watershed Program will emphasize local participation and provide financial and technical assistance for local watershed stewardship, and promote coordination and collaboration among watershed efforts.

The geographic scope of the Watershed Program encompasses the entire scope of the CALFED Program. The Watershed Program will support activities that provide benefits to the Delta, Suisun Bay, and Suisun Marsh.

The Watershed Program covers a broad geographic range and currently lacks project-specific measures for evaluation. Individual projects pursued under the Watershed Program will fully evaluate all alternatives during tiered environmental review and will fully analyze and address

effects under section 7 or section 10 of the ESA. CALFED will ensure that appropriate measures to conserve special status species are included in all program actions.

There are five Watershed Program elements: coordination and assistance; adaptive management and monitoring; education and outreach; integration with other CALFED Program elements; and watershed processes and relationships. These elements, associated proposed programmatic actions, and an implementation strategy are described in the Watershed Program Plan.

The primary objectives of the Watershed Program are:

- Facilitate and improve coordination, collaboration, and assistance among government agencies, other organizations, and local watershed groups.
- Develop watershed monitoring and assessment protocols.
- Support education and outreach.
- Integrate the Watershed Program with other CALFED Program elements.
- Define the relationship between watershed processes and the goals and objectives of the CALFED Program.
- Implement a strategy that will ensure support and long term sustainability of local watershed activities.

Watershed activities will be supported that:

- are community based
- are collaborative and are consistent with the CALFED Program
- address multiple watershed issues
- are coordinated with and supported at multiple levels
- provide ongoing implementation
- include monitoring protocols
- increase learning and awareness.

#### Proposed Watershed Program Stage 1 Actions

The CALFED Program will evaluate the following Watershed Program actions proposed for implementation in Stage 1. These proposed Stage 1 actions are representative of the overall set of proposed actions in the Watershed Program Plan.

- Fund and implement community based watershed restoration, maintenance, conservation, and monitoring activities that support the goals and objectives of the CALFED Program (yr 1-7).
- Assist local watershed groups and government agencies to address common issues, including roles and responsibilities, funding support, technical assistance, information exchange, and to ensure effective communication and implementation among government agencies and stakeholder groups (yr 1-7).
- Implement a funding process and provide watershed stewardship funds to build the capacity of locally controlled watershed groups that ensure participation of local landowner groups (yr 1-7).
- Improve the use and usefulness of existing or future watershed information management functions to provide data and other information to people involved in watershed management (yr 3-7).
- Ensure the completion of project level environmental documentation and permitting; assist with documentation and permitting processes as appropriate (yr 1-7).
- Evaluate the benefits that accrue from watershed plans and projects designed to achieve CALFED Program goals and objectives (yr 3-7).
- Establish, fund, and maintain watershed restoration and maintenance assistance to aid local watershed groups and private landowners in project concept, design, and implementation (yr 1-7).
- Collaborate with other CALFED Program and non-CALFED Program elements on watershed related activities (yr 1-7).
- Provide appropriate information and assistance to stakeholders and the State Legislature to develop a Statewide umbrella Watershed Management Act (yr 1).

### *Water Management Strategy*

The Water Management Strategy (WMS) describes a framework to coordinate and integrate the water management tools in the program, evaluate the success of implementation efforts, and select additional tools needed to achieve the CALFED Program's water reliability objectives. The CALFED Program has identified three primary goals for the WMS: increase the utility of available water supplies (making water suitable for more uses and reuses); improve access to existing or new water supplies in an economically efficient manner, for environmental, urban and agricultural beneficial uses; and, improve flexibility of managing water supply and demand in order to reduce conflicts between beneficial uses and decrease system vulnerability.

The tools that will be used to achieve the goals and objectives of the WMS include: the WUE Program (agricultural, urban, and wetland water conservation and water recycling); the Water

Transfer Program; Conveyance, including South Delta Improvements; Storage; and, operational strategies, such as real-time diversion management and an EWA. In addition to these primary tools, the WMS will rely on additional CALFED Program tools to provide additional benefits. These include the Watershed Program, the Water Quality Program, and real-time monitoring through the Science Program.

### Storage

The CALFED Program has initiated the Integrated Storage Investigation (ISI) to provide a comprehensive assessment of alternative surface and groundwater storage options and their utility to overall water management.

Decisions to implement new or expanded surface and groundwater storage will be predicated upon completing site-specific feasibility studies and complying with all environmental review and permitting requirements. Individual storage projects pursued under the WMS will fully evaluate project-level alternatives that are consistent with the decision documents in conformance with the legal requirements of section 404, as implemented under the Memorandum of Understanding for section 404 of the Clean Water Act for the CALFED Program. The level of analysis required for specific storage projects will depend upon the programs and related commitments of the CALFED Program, including those related to water use efficiency, water transfers, and the ERP, being implemented. Direct and indirect effects, as appropriate, will be addressed under section 7 or section 10 of the ESA.

Site-specific studies of storage opportunities will be coordinated under the ISI. Specifically, the ISI will evaluate surface storage, groundwater storage, power facility re-operation, and removal of barriers to fish passage and, where appropriate, the potential for conjunctive operation of these different types of storage. These investigations will contribute to compliance with the requirements, within the Clean Water Act Section 404 Guidelines, and pursuant to the EPA and Corps Memorandum of Understanding.

The range of total new storage evaluated in Phase II was from zero up to about six Million acre-feet (MAF). Maximum Sacramento River off-stream or enlarged on-stream surface storage potential is estimated to be about three MAF of storage, while south of Delta off-aqueduct surface storage potential is estimated to be about two MAF of storage. Other types of surface storage considered in Phase II include San Joaquin River tributary storage and in-Delta storage. The CALFED Program will evaluate the feasibility of expanding two existing reservoirs and constructing a new off-stream reservoir with a total capacity of 950 thousand-acre-feet (TAF); and a major expansion of groundwater storage for an additional 500 TAF to one MAF. In

addition, the CALFED Program will study two potential reservoir locations through partnerships with local agencies.

The CALFED Program will continue to evaluate surface and groundwater storage opportunities; initiate permitting, NEPA and CEQA documentation; and proceed with construction, only if all conditions are satisfied. In addition, the CALFED Program will continue to refine and periodically update the WMS. ISI studies will evaluate the utility of specific storage projects in providing water quality, water supply reliability, and ecosystem benefits. This information, together with information gained from implementation of other CALFED Program elements and updated information on California's changing water management needs, will be considered in an Evaluation Framework. This Evaluation Framework will include: 1) a comprehensive hierarchy of objectives for the CALFED Program; 2) well-defined measures of performance associated with the achievement of objectives; and 3) a basis for comparison of alternative long-term water management strategies. The Evaluation Framework will provide a structure for periodically updating the WMS and determining appropriate levels of the future investment in various water management tools.

#### Proposed Stage 1 Storage Actions

The CALFED Program will evaluate the following Storage actions proposed for implementation during Stage 1. These proposed Stage 1 actions are representative of the overall set of proposed actions in the Storage Program. It is expected that each will require project-specific consultation under section 7 or a permit under section 10 of the ESA.

Groundwater Banking and Conjunctive Use The goal is to develop locally managed and controlled groundwater and conjunctive use projects with a total of 500 TAF to one MAF of additional storage. This effort includes developing partnerships with local agencies and landowners in both the north-of-Delta and south-of-Delta areas, and includes the potential construction of several south-of-Delta projects. Additional south-of-Delta and north-of-Delta projects, if feasible, could be constructed in later stages.

- Finalize agreements with new local project proponents for joint planning and development (yr 1).
- Begin feasibility studies (yr 1).
- Report on the performance of feasibility studies, implemented projects, and potential benefits and beneficiaries (yr 3).
- Implement early stages of the most promising projects (yr 1-5).

- Pursue implementation of additional projects (yr 1-7).
- Support legislation that supports groundwater management by local agencies at the sub-basin level.

Surface Storage CALFED Agencies identified a list of twelve potential surface storage projects that are in varying stages of the environmental review or feasibility process. Actions taken in Stage 1 will focus on completing the necessary studies (technical work and environmental reviews) needed before implementing or proceeding with the six surface storage projects:

- In-Delta storage project (approximately 250 TAF). CALFED will evaluate leasing or purchasing the Delta Wetlands project, and will evaluate initiating a new project, in the event that Delta Wetlands proves cost prohibitive or infeasible (Planning: yr 1-2, Construction: yr 3-7).
- Evaluate expanding CVP storage in Shasta Lake by approximately 300 TAF by raising the Shasta Dam by three to six feet (Planning: yr 1-4, Construction yr 6-7).
- Evaluate expanding Los Vaqueros Reservoir by up to 400 TAF with local partners as part of a Bay Area water quality and water supply reliability initiative. As an existing reservoir operated by the Contra Costa Water District (CCWD), the Los Vaqueros Reservoir is subject to a number of mandates, agreements, and requirements in existing biological opinions. CALFED intends to work with CCWD and interested stakeholders to assure that previous commitments, including local voter approval required for expansion, are maintained (yr 1-7).
- Evaluate off-stream storage at Sites Reservoir, with a project capacity of up to 1.9 MAF (yr 1-5).
- Evaluate additional storage options in the upper San Joaquin River watershed. Consider additional storage capacity of between 250-700 TAF (yr 1-6).
- Evaluate enlarging Millerton Lake at Friant Dam or a functionally equivalent storage program in the region. The CALFED Program will join local partners to evaluate this project in Stage 1 (yr 1-6).

Power Facilities Re-operation Evaluation Evaluate the potential to re-operate some hydroelectric facilities to produce ecosystem benefits and water supply. The following ISI actions may be taken:

- Identify beneficiaries and negotiate cost sharing agreements (yr 1-7).
- Work with CALFED Agencies, the Public Utilities Commission, the SWRCB, the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission, and interested stakeholders to identify re-operation opportunities (yr 1-2).



- Develop environmental documentation on re-operation (yr 3-5).
- Perform feasibility studies and economic analyses (yr 3-5).
- Obtain permits, negotiate operating agreements, and seek site specific authorization including section 7 authorization. This may require design of facilities modifications to accommodate new operational priorities (yr 5-7).

Fish Migration Barrier Removal Evaluations To compliment ERP efforts to improve fish passage, the ISI Fish Migration Barrier Removal Program will identify obstructions, such as small dams, and consider modification or removal in order to restore anadromous fish access to critical upstream spawning and rearing habitat. The following actions will be taken:

- Work with CALFED Agencies, the SWRCB, local water agencies, and interested stakeholders to identify opportunities for modification or removal of obstructions such as small dams (yr 1-2).
- Develop environmental documentation (yr 3-5).
- Perform feasibility studies and economic analyses (yr 3-5).
- Obtain permits, negotiate agreements, and seek site specific authorization as required. This may require design on facilities modifications or removal actions. (yr 5-7).
- Identify beneficiaries and negotiate cost sharing agreements (yr 5-7).
- Begin construction (if needed) and begin new operations if conditions and linkages are satisfied (yr 6-7).

### Conveyance

The CALFED Program will evaluate a through-Delta approach to conveyance based upon the existing Delta configuration with some modifications. The CALFED Program will evaluate the effectiveness of this conveyance approach, and add additional conveyance and/or other water management actions if necessary. The initial through-Delta conveyance will be continually monitored, analyzed, and improved to maximize the potential of the through-Delta approach to meet CALFED Program goals and objectives, consistent with the CALFED Program's Solution Principles. In the event of a finding that a through-Delta conveyance system is inadequate to achieve CALFED Program goals and objectives, additional actions may be implemented. The CALFED Program may also evaluate and pursue: 1) an isolated conveyance facility (a canal connecting the Sacramento River in the northern Delta to the SWP and CVP export facilities in the southern Delta); 2) source water blending or substitution; and/or 3) other actions through supplemental programmatic analysis.

As part of the Conveyance Program, the CALFED Program has incorporated the south Delta and north Delta regions to address conveyance improvements and related problems in Stage 1. Conveyance improvements for the South Delta set forth in the Final Programmatic EIR/EIS are identified as allowing SWP export capacity to increase from the current authorized levels with seasonal increases, as authorized in Corps Permit PN5820A. The proposed increases would allow up to 8,500 cfs pumping in 2003 and ultimately up to 10,300 cfs at the end of Stage 1. The EIR/EIS identifies a number of measures that will be part of the conveyance modifications including new fish screens, ecosystem restoration as part of the ERP, permanent operable barriers or their functional equivalent in selected South Delta channels, and other measures.

Improvements in export capabilities will be accompanied by associated operations which will maintain diversion capabilities for south Delta water users and provide for fish protection. CALFED implementing documents set forth a schedule for securing appropriate regulatory permits and completing a project-specific operations plan that addresses the potential impacts of increased pumping. This plan will need to reflect the nature and timing of the construction and operation of new project facilities and implementation of ecosystem improvements, and a more specific project description following completion of additional planning and environmental studies.

Decisions to implement conveyance actions will be predicated upon completing site-specific feasibility studies and complying with all environmental review and permitting requirements. Individual conveyance projects pursued under the WMS will fully evaluate all alternatives during tiered environmental review and will fully analyze and address direct and indirect effects under section 7 or section 10 of the ESA. Operational rules and facilities needed for use of additional export capability will be determined during ESA consultation on the project-specific environmental documentation prepared for the various conveyance elements.

#### Proposed Conveyance Stage 1 Actions (South Delta)

The CALFED Program will evaluate the following Conveyance actions proposed for implementation in Stage 1. These proposed Stage 1 actions are representative of the overall set of proposed actions in the Conveyance Program.

- Pursue construction and evaluation of a 500 cfs test facility at the Tracy Pumping Plant to develop best available fish screening and salvage technology for the intakes to the SWP and CVP export facilities (yr 1-7).
- Pursue authorization for construction of a new screened intake for Clifton Court Forebay for the full export capacity of the SWP (yr 1-7).

- Implement the Joint Point of Diversion for the SWP and CVP (yr 1-7).
- Evaluate and decide on whether to retain a separate CVP intake facility or to consolidate with the SWP facility. An intertie between Clifton Court Forebay and the Tracy Pumping Plant will be required if the export location is consolidated at Clifton Court Forebay and will be evaluated if exports continue at both locations. Also, evaluate and potentially implement an intertie between the projects downstream of the export pumps (yr 1-7).
- Evaluate increased SWP pumping by 500 cfs from July through September (yr 1-4).
- Facilitate interim SWP export flexibility up to 8,500 cfs, with appropriate environmental constraints including ESA requirements (yr 4).
- Obtain permits including ESA authorization to use full SWP capacity of 10,300 cfs, consistent with all applicable operational constraints, for water supply and environmental benefits (yr 7).
- For purposes of the project level environmental analysis for the South Delta Improvements, evaluate various operable barrier configuration alternatives or their functional equivalents. All barrier operations will be done in conjunction with water operations to avoid impacts to fish. Potential barriers include the installation of a permanent fish migration barrier at the Head of Old River, and the construction of three permanent flow control structures at Old River at Tracy, Middle River upstream of Victoria Canal, and at Grant Line Canal. The Grant Line Canal barrier would be constructed and operated in accordance with conditions and directions specified by the Service, CDFG, and NMFS. (yr 1-7).
- Monitor barrier effects on fish, stages, circulation, and water quality (yr 1-7).
- Evaluate the dredging of selected channel segments (yr 3-7).

#### Additional Actions Required During Stage 1 (South Delta)

- Implement south Delta ERP goals (yr 1-7).
- Consolidate, extend, and screen local agricultural diversions based on priority and initiate a screen maintenance program (yr 1-7).
- Develop a strategy to resolve regional water quality problems including actions to improve San Joaquin River DO conditions and the San Joaquin River drainage as described in the CALFED Program's Water Quality Program. Evaluate the feasibility of re-circulation of water pumped from the Delta by the CVP and SWP. If feasible, and consistent with the CALFED Program's ecosystem restoration goals and objectives, implement a pilot program (yr 1-7).
- Continue implementation of the Vernalis Adaptive Management Plan. Include development of a long-term plan describing actions of the San Joaquin River Group Authority to improve water management practices (yr 1-7).

### Proposed North Delta Stage 1 Actions

- Evaluate and implement improved operational procedures for the Delta Cross Channel to address fishery and water quality concerns (yr 1-4).
- Evaluate a screened through-Delta facility with a diversion capacity of up to 4,000 cfs on the Sacramento River to improve drinking water quality in the event the Water Quality Program measures do not result in continuous improvement towards CALFED drinking water goals. This evaluation would consider the effectiveness of water quality measures and how to operate the Delta Cross Channel in conjunction with this new diversion structure to improve drinking water quality, while maintaining fish recovery. If the environmental review demonstrates that this diversion facility is needed to address drinking water quality concerns, and can be constructed and operated without adverse effects to anadromous and estuarine fish, construction may begin late in Stage 1 subject to section 7 authorization (yr 1-4).
- Evaluate opportunities to resolve local flood concerns and create tidal wetlands and riparian habitat by constructing new setback levees, improving existing levees, and dredging channels in the north Delta, especially the channels of the lower Mokelumne River system. Any proposed channel modifications would be consistent with the CALFED Program's current direction on Delta conveyance and ecosystem goals (yr 1-7).
- Facilitate regionwide coordination of all CALFED Program related projects in the north Delta region (yr 1-7).

### Proposed Stage 1 Actions Throughout the Delta Region

- Evaluate how water supplies can best provide a level of public health protection equivalent to Delta source water quality of 50 parts per billion (ppb) bromide and three parts per million (ppm) TOC (yr 1-7). This will include an equivalent level of investigation and studies on all of the actions which could be used to achieve the CALFED Program's targets.
- Evaluate the CALFED Program's progress toward measurable water quality goals and ecosystem restoration objectives, with particular emphasis on fish recovery (yr 6-7).
- Conduct additional environmental review to determine if construction of an isolated conveyance facility component of a dual Delta conveyance (presently not an element of the CALFED Program's Preferred Program Alternative) is warranted. A decision to construct such a facility would require separate environmental review and alternatives analysis that has not been done as part of the CALFED Program's programmatic analysis (yr 1-7).

### Additional Actions Required During Stage 1 (Throughout the Delta Region)

- Fully implement actions, consistent with the MSCS, that mitigate for the direct and indirect environmental affects of project features and actions (yr 1-7).
- Improve flood control through levee improvements, levee setbacks, channel dredging, and floodplain restoration to be fully consistent with regional ERP actions (yr 1-7).
- Screen agricultural intakes to assure ecosystem protection (yr 1-7).

### Environmental Water Account

An essential goal of the CALFED Program is to provide increased water supply reliability to water users while at the same time assuring the availability of sufficient water to meet fish protection and restoration\recovery needs as one part of the overall ERP. As a means to achieve these objectives, the CALFED Program will provide commitments under the ESA and CESA to SWP and CVP export facilities only for the first four years of Stage 1. These commitments are based on fully providing water from existing regulatory means, a fully implemented EWA, flows and habitat restoration provided through the ERP, and the ability to obtain additional assets should they be necessary.

The EWA is a new water source provided to: (1) augment instream flows and Delta outflows; and (2) reduce Delta exports from CVP/SWP export facilities during key periods of fish and aquatic ecosystem concerns. The CALFED Agencies will also continue to work with other diverters in the Delta watershed to resolve local fishery-diversion conflicts based on the site-specific needs and opportunities for each diversion. The CALFED Agencies have crafted the EWA so that it has no effect on the existing water rights of other water right holders in the watershed.

Overall Purpose, Framework and Administration. The EWA will be established, as part of the EWA Operating Principles Agreement (see Appendix E, hereby incorporated as part of this project description), to provide water for the protection and recovery of fish in addition to water available through existing regulatory actions related to project operations. The EWA Operating Principles Agreement will be interpreted to be consistent with this project description. To the extent that the EWA Operating Principles Agreement provides greater specificity, the EWA Operating Principles Agreement will be the controlling document.

The EWA will be funded jointly by the State and Federal governments and will be authorized to acquire, bank, transfer and borrow water and arrange for its conveyance. EWA assets will be managed by the State and Federal fishery agencies (the Service, NMFS, and CDFG) in

coordination with project operators and stakeholders. Initial acquisition of assets for the EWA will be made by Federal and State agencies (Reclamation and DWR). Subsequently, it is anticipated that acquisitions may be made pursuant to a public process that may take advantage of other agencies or third parties to acquire assets.

Baseline Level of Protection. DWR and Interior will provide a baseline of environmental protection. The CALFED Agencies recognize that the SWRCB may adjust the CVP and SWP responsibilities for complying with the 1995 Delta Water Quality Control Plan (WQCP), as part of its on-going Bay-Delta Water Rights Hearings. The outcome of those hearings may affect the nature of this baseline. The CVP's and SWP's regulatory baseline, primarily for fish needs, identified as Tier 1 in the EWA discussion below, will include:

- **1993 Winter-run Salmon Biological Opinion (NMFS)**
- **1995 Delta Water Quality Control Plan (SWRCB)**  
At this time, the SWP and CVP are responsible for meeting flow related objectives contained in this plan. The CALFED Agencies recognize that the SWRCB may adjust or re-allocate the responsibilities for meeting the 1995 Delta Water Quality Control Plan, as part of its ongoing Bay-Delta Water Rights hearings. Adjustment of responsibility to meet the standards will not affect the baseline level of protection for purposes of the EWA.

The appropriate CALFED Agencies will develop a strategy to deal with the rare circumstances when the CVP obligation under the WQCP exceeds the 450 TAF annual cap for use of CVPIA Section 3406(b)(2) water. In the strategy, to be developed in conjunction with part of the Governor's Drought Contingency Plan, the Agencies will use their available resources to create an insurance policy to eliminate impacts to water users, while not adversely affecting other uses.

- **1995 Delta Smelt Biological Opinion (Service)**  
The export curtailment contained in the 1995 Delta Smelt Biological Opinion (item 2 on page 19), commonly referred to as the "2 to 1 Vernalis flow/export ratio", will be met by Section 3406(b)(2) of the CVPIA and EWA. This objective calls for the SWP and CVP to reduce combined exports, below what is allowed in the 1995 Water Quality Control Plan during a 31-day period in April and May. The 1995 WQCP allows exports to be 100% of the base San Joaquin River flow at Vernalis during the April-May pulse period. The CVP reduction in pumping will be conducted pursuant to the accounting policy for Section 3406(b)(2) of the CVPIA and/or through reimbursement by the EWA. The SWP

will be reimbursed by the EWA for its participation in reducing exports pursuant to the 2 to 1 Vernalis flow/export ratio.

The CVP and SWP will be operated pursuant to the terms of the San Joaquin River Agreement through 2011. While the SJRA is in effect, the exports may be reduced beyond what is called for by the 2 to 1 Vernalis flow/export ratio and San Joaquin River flows may be augmented by water acquired from upstream sources during that same time period. Such an augmentation will not be included as part of the SWP share of Vernalis flow. While operating per the SJRA, the SWP and CVP will also receive reimbursement from the EWA or pursuant to Section 3406(b)(2) for the additional curtailment. If the SJRA is not implemented for any reason, the operations will default back to the biological opinion operation, as per the terms of the SJRA.

- **Full Use of 800 TAF Supply of Water Pursuant to Section 3406(b)(2) of the CVPIA in Accordance with Interior's October 5, 1999 Decision, clarified as follows:**

*Water Resulting from Refill of Reservoirs ("Reset"):* Water which is available under the (b)(2) Policy as a result of refill of reservoirs following upstream releases ("reset") will not be used in a manner which results in increased export reductions. Upstream releases of (b)(2) water pumped by the SWP and made available to the EWA will not be subject to the "reset" provision.

*Export Curtailments which Result in Increased Storage ("Offset"):* Where a prescribed (b)(2) export curtailment results in a reduction in releases from upstream reservoirs and hence increased storage, the charge to the (b)(2) account will be offset to the extent that the increased storage will result in increased delivery (beyond forecast delivery at the time of the export curtailment) to south-of-Delta CVP contractors in the remainder of the water year. If such deliveries cannot be increased in that water year, such additional water stored in upstream reservoirs shall be available for other (b)(2) uses without charge to the (b)(2) account. Where the delivery to export users in the remainder of the water year will not be increased and end-of-year storage will be increased, there will be no offset to the charge to the (b)(2) account.

The Secretary of the Interior is expected to make a decision later this year on Trinity River flows, pursuant to the original Trinity authorization, the Trinity Restoration Act of 1984, and the CVPIA. The substance of the decision is unknown and therefore cannot be addressed at this time.

Other Environmental Protections The regulatory baseline above also assumes that other environmental protections contained in biological opinions, regulations or statutes remain in place. These protections include, without limitation, Level 2 refuge water supplies, as required by the CVPIA. The CVP will use its share of the benefits from joint point of diversion, to the extent available, to provide water required by its Level 2 refuge water supply mandates, but using such benefits will not create any limitation on the Level 2 supply available for refuges.

Operational Rules The ground rules for operating the EWA are detailed in the EWA Operating Principles Agreement, executed by DWR, Reclamation, CDFG, the Service, and NMFS. The ground rules are based on the principle that the EWA will provide flows allowing fish recovery while not resulting in uncompensated reductions in deliveries to south of Delta CVP/SWP contractors.

Asset Development Immediate development of assets for the first year is critical to EWA success. Initial water purchases and lease of groundwater storage will be secured from willing sellers by the end of 2000. In addition to assets to be acquired annually, as shown in a following table, an initial one-time acquisition of 200 TAF of south-of-Delta storage or its functional equivalent will be acquired from a variety of sources to assure the effectiveness of the EWA and provide assurances for SWP and CVP water supply/deliveries. This initial deposit will also provide collateral for the first year's borrowing. The related storage is intended to function as long-term storage for other EWA assets as they become available.

Borrowing agreements will allow the EWA to borrow water from the CVP and SWP for necessary actions during a water year as long as the water can be repaid without affecting the following year's allocations. To the extent practicable, borrowing from the SWP and CVP will be shared. The limitations on borrowing will be developed as part of the agreement. Source shifting agreements with south-of-Delta water providers for 100 TAF will be used to enhance the effectiveness of the EWA, and to help provide assurance that SWP and CVP water deliveries will not be affected by EWA operations. To provide regulatory stability during the initial period of Stage 1, the CALFED Agencies will provide a commitment, subject to legal requirements, that for the first four years of Stage 1, there will be no reductions, beyond existing regulatory levels, in CVP or SWP Delta exports resulting from measures to protect fish under the ESA and CESA. This commitment will be based on the availability of three tiers of assets:

**Tier 1** is baseline water, provided by existing regulation and operational flexibility. The regulatory baseline consists of the biological opinions on winter-run salmon and delta smelt, 1995 Delta Water Quality Control Plan, and 800 TAF of CVP yield pursuant to CVPIA Section 3406(b)(2).



Tier 2 consists of the assets in the EWA combined with the benefits of the ERP and is an insurance mechanism that will allow water to be provided for fish over and above Tier 1, when needed without reducing deliveries to water users. Tier 1 and Tier 2 are, in effect, a water budget for the environment and will be used to avoid the need for Tier 3 assets as described subsequently.

Tier 3 is based upon the commitment and ability of the CALFED Agencies to make additional water available should it be needed. It is unlikely that assets beyond those in Tier 1 and Tier 2 will be needed to meet ESA requirements. However, if further assets are needed in specific circumstances, Tier 3 will be provided. In considering the need for Tier 3 assets, the fishery agencies will consider the views of an independent science panel. Although the CALFED Agencies do not anticipate needing access to Tier 3 water assets, the CALFED Agencies will prepare an implementation strategy for Tier 3 by August 2001, establish a timely scientific panel process, and identifying tools and funding should implementation of Tier 3 prove necessary.

**Table 2.** List of EWA assets. Some assets may be replaced by functional equivalents, if determined to be appropriate by the EWA Managing Agencies (Service, CDFG, NMFS)

Action Description	Water Available Annually(Average)
SWP Pumping of (b)(2)/ERP Upstream Releases <sup>1</sup>	40,000 acre-feet <sup>2</sup>
EWA Use of Joint Point <sup>3</sup>	75,000 acre-feet
Export/Inflow Ratio Flexibility	30,000 acre-feet
500 cfs SWP Pumping Increase	50,000 acre-feet
Purchases - South of Delta	150,000 acre-feet
Purchases - North of Delta <sup>4</sup>	35,000 acre-feet
<b>TOTAL</b>	380,000 acre-feet
Storage acquisition	200,000 acre-feet of storage, filled when acquired in Year 1
Source-shifting agreement	100,000 acre-feet at any time

<sup>1</sup>The EWA and the SWP will share equally the (b)(2) and ERP upstream releases pumped by the SWP after they have served their (b)(2) and ERP purposes.

<sup>2</sup>The amount of water derived from the first four actions will vary based on hydrologic conditions.

<sup>3</sup>The EWA will share access to joint point, with the CVP receiving 50% of the benefits.

<sup>4</sup>This is the amount of water targeted for the first year; higher amounts are anticipated in subsequent years.

### *CALFED Science Program*

The CALFED Science Program includes implementing the Comprehensive Monitoring, Assessment, and Research Program (CMARP) as an integral aspect of the overall CALFED Program. The scope of the Science Program will encompass all elements of the CALFED Program: ecosystem restoration, water supply reliability, water use efficiency and conservation, water quality, and levees integrity. The purpose of the Science Program is to provide new information and scientific interpretations necessary to implement, monitor, and evaluate the

success of the CALFED Program. The Science Program will build on the work of the Interagency Ecological Program and other scientific efforts in the CALFED Program area.

The CALFED Program is organized around the concept of adaptive management because there is incomplete knowledge of how the ecosystem functions, the effects of human stressors on ecosystem structure and function, and the ecological and other effects of individual CALFED Program actions. Monitoring key system functions (or indicators), completing focused research to obtain better understanding, and staging implementation based on information gained are all central to the adaptive management process.

In order to better integrate scientific review into the CALFED Program, the Governor and the Secretary of the Interior will appoint an independent science board to provide oversight and peer review for the overall program. Also, specific independent science panels may be convened as standing bodies or on an as needed basis. For example, the Science Program will assist with convening an independent science panel to review implementation and operation of the EWA. In addition, the existing ERP Interim Science Board will likely become the ERP Science Panel, and provide ongoing independent review of the ERP.

#### Proposed Science Program Stage 1 Actions

The CALFED Program will evaluate the following Science Program actions proposed for implementation in Stage 1. These proposed Stage 1 actions are representative of the overall set of proposed actions for the Science Program.

- Periodic review and refinement of the monitoring, data assessment and research plan from a long term perspective (yr 1-7).
- Periodic review and refinement of the monitoring, data assessment and research plan from a short term perspective which would include all elements of the Phase III, Stage 1 Program (yr 1-7).
- Help management define triggers and time periods which determine the need for a change in program direction (yr 1-7).
- Continue to develop and refine conceptual models to be used in evaluating actions undertaken by the programs. In keeping with the adaptive management format, the models will be continually updated with information generated by program actions (yr 1-7).
- Evaluate the effectiveness of the adaptive management process on the program decision making process (yr 1-7).

- Review the progress toward achieving overall CALFED Program goals and objectives and whether individual programs are progressing at similar paces (yr 1-7).
- Complete monitoring identified by the Diversion Effects on Fisheries Team to provide feedback on actual diversion effects of south Delta pumps (yr 2-7).
- Design long-term, system wide, baseline monitoring with focused research to increase understanding of ecological processes and ways to reduce uncertainty; definition of needed studies is currently under development (yr 1-7).
- Provide available data on need to reduce bromides, total dissolved solids, total organic carbon, pesticides and heavy metals (yr 5).
- Provide available data on water quality in the south Delta and lower San Joaquin River (yr 1-7).
- Monitor and assess the impacts of water use efficiency measures on water demands and available supplies, and develop better information for water balances in the Bay-Delta system (yr 1-7).
- Prepare annual reports on status and progress, including such information as: status of the species and effectiveness of efforts to improve conditions, including EWA, ERP and water management strategies, and provide recommendations to maximize fishery benefits while minimizing impacts to water supply (yr 1-7).
- Analyze status and need for adjustments of actions for later stages (yr 5-7).
- Monitor and report land use changes, such as agricultural land conversion, resulting from CALFED Program actions (yr 2-7).
- Hire an interim science leader and subsequently hire a chief scientist (yr 1-2).
- Appoint an Independent Science Board and an independent science panel for the EWA (yr 1-2).
- Coordinate existing monitoring and scientific research programs (yr 1-7).
- Refine the set of ecological, operational, and other predictive models that will be used in the evaluation process (yr 1-2).
- Establish and refine performance measures and indicators for each of the program areas (yr 1-7).

### *Multi-Species Conservation Strategy*

The MSCS serves as a biological assessment for the CALFED Program and describes the CALFED Program strategy for achieving compliance with the ESA, CESA, and Natural Community Conservation Planning Act during implementation of the CALFED Program. As a biological assessment, it summarizes the CALFED Program and analyzes its effects on 244 listed, proposed, and candidate species, and species of concern. As a "conservation strategy" it outlines

conservation goals for species that will be effected by the Program, and identifies strategies for achieving those goals and ESA compliance.

### Conservation Goals and Prescriptions

The MSCS identifies conservation goals for 244 species as well as species prescriptions and conservation measures to achieve these goals. The CALFED Program has established a goal to recover 19 species, contribute to the recovery of 25 species, and maintain 200 species. A goal of “recovery” was established for those species whose recovery is dependent on restoration of the Delta and Suisun Bay/Marsh systems. Recovery is achieved when the decline of a species is arrested or reversed, threats to the species are neutralized, and the species long-term survival in nature is assured. Recovery is equivalent, at minimum, to the requirements for de-listing a species under ESA and CESA. The goal “contribute to recovery” was assigned to species for which CALFED Program actions affect only a limited portion of the species’ range and/or CALFED Program actions have limited effects on the species. To achieve the goal of contributing to a species’ recovery, the CALFED Agencies are expected to undertake some of the actions under its control and within its scope that are necessary to recover the species. The goal “maintain” was assigned to species expected to be minimally affected by CALFED Program actions. For this category, the CALFED Agencies will avoid, minimize, and compensate for any adverse effects to the species commensurate with the level of effect on the species. Actions may not actually contribute to the recovery of the “maintain” species; however, at a minimum, they will be expected to not contribute to the need to list a species or degrade the status of a listed species. The CALFED Agencies will also, to the extent practicable, improve habitat conditions for these species.

Specific prescriptions were developed to achieve the conservation goals described above for each species. The prescriptions incorporate the measures identified in State and Federal recovery plans, where available, other relevant information, and professional judgment. Prescriptions include measures to enhance habitats and species and are not directly linked to the CALFED Program’s adverse impacts.

As the CALFED Program proceeds during the next 30 years, it is anticipated that California’s landscapes could change significantly and that new information will be available through research and monitoring. Consequently, species goals and prescriptions will likely change through time through adaptive management, and as new recovery plans are finalized or updated.

## Framework for Federal Endangered Species Act Compliance

The CALFED Agencies will take actions necessary to meet the following conditions: 1) the fishery protections elements of the Program must be implemented as described in the EIS/EIR, including the ERP and EWA implementation and funding commitments (at least \$150 million annually for the ERP, and an additional \$50 million annually for the EWA); 2) Tier 3 measures must be provided, if and when needed; and, 3) implementation of the milestones must be demonstrated; and 4) the initial and annual assets of the EWA must be acquired for the EWA.

The program will be continuously monitored to ensure that it is implemented as intended and the elements necessary for regulatory commitments, i.e., conditions as described in the Conservation Agreement are implemented. In the event that information from monitoring or any other source indicates that any of the Program elements necessary for regulatory commitments are not being met or will not be met, notification will be provided, by the agency which developed the information, to the affected Agencies, as appropriate. Upon notification, the affected agencies will meet promptly to identify and assess measures which can be taken to remedy any noncompliance or anticipated noncompliance with the conditions, and will immediately implement measures. If the Service determines that a situation of noncompliance exists and the affected agencies are unable to remedy noncompliance within a reasonable time period that the Service prescribes, not to exceed 60 days, the regulatory commitments will be suspended or terminated. Upon a determination of noncompliance, formal consultation will be reinitiated and the Service will issue a new or amended biological opinion with conditions prescribing alternative regulatory requirements. If the compliance with the conditions set out above is subsequently achieved, the initial regulatory commitments may be revised and reflected through new or amended programmatic biological opinions. Nothing described here will affect the Service from exercising our regulatory authority.

There are several issues that have been subject to interpretation in the 1995 delta smelt opinion relating to OCAP. These issues will need to be resolved pursuant to any reinitiation of section 7 consultation concerning the joint operations of the CVP and SWP should the EWA not be fully implemented. These issues include but may not be limited to 1) the amount of allowable exports during the San Joaquin River pulse flow in April-May, either under the VAMP or the WQCP Vernalis flow requirements, 2) the amount or extent of actions that must be taken at the "yellow light" stage of incidental take to avoid or minimize the direct and indirect effects of project operations and to avoid reaching "red light", and 3) other actions that may be deemed necessary at the time of reinitiation to provide the regulatory protection for delta smelt, Sacramento splittail, spring run chinook salmon, and steelhead.

The MSCS describes program-level strategies to achieve compliance with ESA, including strategies to address the indirect effects of actions taken under the CALFED Program, and strategies for completing tiered consultations, when appropriate. The CALFED Program's compliance strategies will, in part, be developed and implemented as part of future CALFED Program projects tiered from this programmatic biological opinion.

Entities implementing CALFED Program actions which may effect listed species will be required to develop ASIPs. ASIPs will be developed for individual CALFED Program actions or groups of actions when enough detailed information is available about the actions to analyze fully their impacts on species and habitats, and develop appropriate measures to avoid, minimize, and compensate for impacts. Specifically, individual projects that qualify for consultation will be evaluated within the context of the program as a whole, which includes major elements designed to improve the environmental baseline and lead to the recovery of targeted species. These major elements will be subject to on-going monitoring, evaluation, and the application of adaptive management. Site specific biological opinions will take into account the environmental benefits that accrue from the CALFED Program.

Development of ASIPs will be coordinated with the wildlife agencies so that the particular set of measures necessary to be implemented to achieve FESA compliance will be incorporated as part of the proposed ASIP. The particular set of measures included will likely be unique to each ASIP. The MSCS describes programmatic avoidance, minimization, and compensation measures to be incorporated into ASIPs. However, ASIPs also may include additional measures not described in the MSCS, and possibly a set of ERP actions. For example, a levee improvement project in the Delta may include a particular set of MSCS avoidance, minimization, and compensation measures, additional measures unique to the proposed project, and ERP actions to restore wildlife habitat adjacent to or on the improved levee. ASIPs will be reviewed for compliance with the ESA through the section 7 consultation process, or through the section 10 habitat conservation planning process.

#### Service Area Effects

Implementation of the CALFED Program's Preferred Program Alternative related to water supply reliability will be determined largely in an incremental fashion through an adaptive management process. Because of this, it is not possible to accurately estimate the scope of potential service area effects on species and habitats. Project-level or site-specific impacts may not be known until Phase III of the CALFED Program (implementation). Therefore, the CALFED Program strategy for addressing indirect effects in the service areas includes identifying a short-term strategy based

on critical species needs for recovery and restoration, and a long-term strategy for dealing with impacts that cannot be predicted when the biological opinions are issued.

CALFED Agencies will use a two-step process to address potential service area effects that are currently unknown. First, CALFED Agencies will determine the potential presence and scope of any service area effects. Then, to address the effects it has identified, CALFED Agencies will integrate proactive, conservation planning approaches with specific conservation measures. To do this, CALFED Agencies will develop the four conservation measures listed below during Phase III.. These measures, as described in the MSCS on pages 4-17 and 4-18, attempt to address these effects at the project level and at the program level.

- Providing technical assistance and other support to entities preparing Habitat Conservation Plans (HCPs) or conservation programs addressing effects of land use changes in the service areas.
- Evaluating each future water supply reliability program or project during planning and including appropriate measures to address indirect effects in the ASIPs. This may include implementing the applicable conservation measures already in the MSCS to conserve species relative to service area effects or developing new measures.
- Developing or contributing to conservation programs to address the critical needs of species in CALFED Program service areas not already covered by conservation plans.

#### *Governance Plan*

The interim governance structure will be in place from the time of the Programmatic ROD until a long-term permanent structure is adopted through State and Federal legislation. For interim governance, CALFED Agencies propose adoption of the current CALFED Program structure being used during the planning stage, but adapted for implementation. The interim governance structure, including identification of how decisions will be made, will be set forth in a new Implementation MOU which the agencies will develop and execute by the time of the ROD. The current structure is made up of the Policy Group reporting to the Governor of California and the Secretary of the Interior, public advisory groups, the CALFED Program Executive Director and staff, and State and Federal agencies and teams. This structure, with additions and modifications, will serve to bridge the gap until a permanent commission is established.

Interim Program Management Responsibilities The Levee System Integrity Program management will remain with DWR, CDFG, and other existing agencies. The CALFED Program will continue to manage the ERP, in coordination with the appropriate agencies. The State and Federal fishery agencies (CDFG, Service, NMFS) will manage the EWA assets, in coordination with the ERP and



water project operations (Reclamation and DWR). CALFED Program will be assigned program management for the Watershed Program. The CALFED Program and appropriate agencies (such as Reclamation, EPA, DHS, DWR, and SWRCB) will manage the Drinking Water Quality Program. For the Water Transfer Program, CALFED Program will provide program direction, oversight, and coordination among CALFED Program areas and among agencies with jurisdiction over water transfers and use of project facilities. Agencies with jurisdiction over water transfers would retain authority to implement any changes in their own policies or procedures. DWR, Reclamation, and CALFED Program will manage the Water Use Efficiency Program. DWR, Reclamation, and CALFED Program will manage the Storage Program Element. DWR and Reclamation will manage the Conveyance Program element. CALFED Program will manage the Science Program (as consistent with the Implementation MOU).

### Milestones

Milestones are a list of ERP, MSCS, and Water Quality Program actions the CALFED Program will fully implement in Stage 1 to address covered species. Milestones are a subset of the ERP actions the fish and wildlife agencies expect will be implemented in Stage 1, to achieve the Program's conservation goals. The complete list of milestones appears in Appendix J. A full description of the function and significance of the milestones to this consultation is included in the Appendix.

The Program's objectives for ecosystem restoration are to improve and increase aquatic and terrestrial habitats and improve ecological functions in the Bay-Delta to support sustainable populations of diverse plants and animal species. The ERP, MSCS, and WQP are the principal Program elements designed to meet these objectives. Implementation of the ERP will be informed by the Science Program, which will conduct pertinent research, and monitor and evaluate the implementation of ERP, MSCS, and WQP actions. The ERP, MSCS, WQP, and the Science Program are directly relevant and important for FESA, CESA and NCCPA compliance. To ensure that the ERP, MSCS, and WQP are implemented in a manner and to an extent sufficient to sustain programmatic FESA, CESA and NCCPA compliance for all Program elements, the USFWS, NMFS and CDFG (the Fish and Wildlife Agencies") have developed Milestones for ERP, MSCS, and WQP implementation. The Milestones include Science Program actions that are relevant for ERP, MSCS, and WQP implementation. The Fish and Wildlife Agencies have concluded that the Milestones, if achieved along with expected additional ERP actions, define an adequate manner and level of ERP, MSCS, and WQP implementation for Stage 1.

The ERP, MSCS, and WQP are the Program's blueprint for the restoration of the Bay-Delta. The MSCS is not a separate blueprint or supplemental restoration program and does not supplant the ERP. The measures and goals in the MSCS are consistent with the ERP's measures and goals. However, the MSCS is a conservation strategy and a regulatory compliance strategy for the entire Program. The MSCS addresses the potential adverse effects and beneficial effects of all Program actions, including ERP actions and other Program actions such as levee system integrity actions, water conveyance actions and storage actions. Based in large part on the ERP, the MSCS' premise is that the Program as a whole, including all Program elements, will improve and increase aquatic and terrestrial habitats and improve ecological functions in the Bay-Delta. The ERP therefore serves two purposes: 1) to achieve Program objectives for ecosystem restoration and species recovery, and 2) to enable actions from all Program elements to be completed in compliance with FESA, CESA and the NCCPA through implementation of ASIPs.

To serve both of these purposes, ERP implementation must be informed both by the best available scientific information and by information about the implementation of other Program actions. Information about the implementation of other Program actions is necessary to ensure that they do not conflict or limit the success of the ERP. In addition, ERP restoration actions must be implemented concurrent, and at a commensurate level, with the implementation of other Program actions to ensure that the Program as a whole continues to increase aquatic and terrestrial habitats and improve ecological functions in the Bay-Delta. The Milestones are intended to establish, based on the best information currently available, a group of actions derived from the ERP, MSCS, and WQP that 1) establish an adequate level of implementation during Stage 1, 2) would not be inhibited by proposed Stage 1 actions in other Program elements, and 3) would enable proposed Stage 1 actions in other Program elements to be completed in compliance with FESA, CESA and the NCCPA through implementation of ASIPs.

The Program's development of annual, near-term, and long-term ERP implementation priorities and strategies will be based on the goals and objectives of the ERP Strategic Plan, the MSCS, FESA recovery plans, and implementation plans developed for specific ecological management zones, and will be informed by the Science Program. The Milestones represent the MSCS' goals and objectives with respect to the ERP. As with ERP implementation priorities and strategies generally, the Fish and Wildlife Agencies intend that the Science Program will provide information concerning the Milestones. Specifically, the Fish and Wildlife Agencies will seek review within the Science Program of 1) whether other Program elements conflict with implementation priorities and strategies so as to limit the success of the ERP, MSCS, and WQP, and 2) whether the implementation priorities and strategies will ensure that the Program as a whole continues to increase aquatic and terrestrial habitats and improve ecological functions in the Bay-Delta. As the

Science Program develops information about implementation, the USFWS, NMFS and CDFG will revise the Milestones as necessary, consistent with the FESA and the NCCPA.

The CALFED Program will develop annual ERP implementation plans using the ERP Strategic Plan for Ecosystem Restoration and the MSCS. Members of the Science Program, the Agency/Stakeholder Ecosystem Team ("ASET") the CALFED Program will work cooperatively to develop annual ERP implementation plans and to define the long-term priorities for the ERP. The Fish and Wildlife Agencies will participate fully in the process for developing annual ERP implementation plans. The Fish and Wildlife Agencies' participation will include, but not be limited to, participation in the ASET. Through participation in the annual ERP implementation plan process, the Fish and Wildlife Agencies will help ensure 1) that each plan is based on the best available information regarding ecosystem restoration and the Bay-Delta system, 2) that each plan will achieve substantial progress toward meeting the Milestones, and 3) that the Science Program will provide information to achieve applicable Milestones. As new information becomes available and conceptual models are tested and refined as part of this process, the Fish and Wildlife Agencies anticipate that priorities reflected in the Milestones may change, and that new issues or questions may emerge. Through the annual ERP implementation process, Science Program members, the CALFED Program, and ASET members may propose revisions to the Milestones based on pertinent new information. If the Fish and Wildlife Agencies determine that the proposed revisions are warranted and are consistent with FESA and the NCCPA, the Fish and Wildlife Agencies will revise the Milestones accordingly.

The Fish and Wildlife Agencies will not approve revisions to the Milestones that would cause or allow an effect to Covered Species or critical habitat designated under FESA that was not considered in the programmatic regulatory determinations, or would otherwise require the re-initiation of consultation under 50 CFR §402.16. Consequently, the USFWS and NMFS expect that their approved revisions to Milestones can be incorporated in each agency's programmatic biological opinions without re-initiating consultation under §7 of FESA. CDFG will incorporate its approved revisions to the Milestones by amending the CDFG Approval and Supporting Findings for the MSCS.

It will not be possible to gauge the progress of Milestone implementation for a few years, once Phase III begins. Consequently, over the first four years the Wildlife Agencies will base success of Program Implementation upon the criterion that the ERP is fully funded (at least \$150 million from dedicated funding sources annually through Stage 1 for the ERP, and an additional \$50 million EWA funding annually for the first four years). However, the criterion for success at the end of Stage 1 will be implementation of the Stage 1 Milestones.

The Program will submit an annual report to the Governor, the Secretary of the Interior, the State Legislature and the Congress that describes the status of implementation of all Program elements by December 15 of each calendar year. The report will document the status of all actions taken to meet Program objectives in Stage 1. Among the actions addressed in the report will be the completion of key projects and milestones identified in the ERP. Progress in achieving the ERP-MSCS Milestones will be included in the portion of the annual reports concerning the ERP.

### Summary of Key Planned Actions

If key program actions are not implemented at this programmatic level, or new information becomes available, consultation would be reinitiated at the programmatic level to ascertain how the lack of implementation of any actions, or new information, affects the evaluation of effects upon listed species associated with the overall implementation of the suite of actions being considered and the subsequent conclusions made in this biological opinion. The following key actions are considered relevant to this biological opinion and part of the project description and, are therefore, requisite in conducting the effects analysis:

#### *Program-wide*

1. The conservation actions described in the Description of the Proposed Action will be implemented, including, but not limited to, the Ecosystem Restoration Program Plan, the Water Quality Program Plan, the Watershed Program Plan, and the Multi-Species Conservation Strategy and, where applicable, its strategy for addressing indirect, service area effects. The determination of whether and to what extent a specific action results in indirect effects will be made on a case-by-case basis in accordance with legal requirements. These actions will be implemented consistent with the Science Program and adaptive management, as described in the **Description of the Proposed Action**.
2. CALFED Agencies will obtain funding sufficient to implement the conservation elements and strategies, as necessary, to implement this biological opinion.
3. The various CALFED Program elements, strategies, and projects will be implemented in concert with the ERP, MSCS, EWA, and WQP to achieve the multiple goals of the CALFED Program. The CALFED program will be implemented such that the net effects to species and their habitats are positive and are consistent and in conformance with State and Federal recovery plans.

4. To the extent that a CALFED action is not subject to section 7 and is likely to result in take of a listed species, a section 10 permit will be required.
5. The CALFED Program will utilize comprehensive monitoring and adaptive management to assess projects and programs.
6. The CALFED Program will implement projects to achieve the milestones (Appendix J) established for the ERP, MSCS, and WQP.
7. Discharges into surface water bodies and waterways resulting from CALFED Program actions will comply with the standards set forth in the Description of the Proposed Action for the biological opinion on the Environmental Protection Agency's Promulgation of Numeric Criteria for Priority Toxic Pollutants for the State of California; California Toxics Rule (CTR) (Service File No. 1-1-98-F-21), in accordance with applicable implementation plans.
8. Entities implementing CALFED Program actions will comply with all applicable environmental laws.
9. DWR, to the extent required by law, and Reclamation will consult on all new and modified water contracts resulting from a CALFED Program action that may affect listed species.

#### *Levee System Integrity Program*

10. Levee integrity improvement elements will be consistent with ERP actions and MSCS conservation measures, so that levee integrity and ecosystem and species recovery advance simultaneously.
11. The Service, NMFS, and CDFG will be involved in planning Levee System Integrity Program projects to ensure that ERP implementation is not impaired by levee program actions and adverse effects of levee actions are fully mitigated.
12. Development and implementation of CALFED Program plans for rehabilitating Suisun Marsh levees will be consistent with the goals of the ERP and MSCS, including State and Federal recovery plans.
13. Levee repair/improvements will be constructed using levee set-backs and soft-fixes (bio-technical solutions) to the extent practicable.

### *Water Quality Program*

14. The CALFED Program will implement projects to achieve the milestones established for the WQP in Stage 1.

### *Ecosystem Restoration Program*

15. The CALFED Program will implement projects to achieve the milestones established for the ERP in Stage 1.
16. The ERP will be implemented in a manner that will achieve species prescriptions and recovery goals of covered species by year 30 of the CALFED Program. Stage 1 milestones establish the trajectory for achieving recovery goals for the first 7 years.

### *Water Use Efficiency Program*

17. Development and implementation of the WUE will be consistent with the goals and objectives of the ERP and MSCS, including State and Federal recovery plans. Program actions and associated conservation measures will be planned in conjunction with the Service, NMFS, and CDFG, in compliance with FESA, CESA, and NCCPA, as appropriate. Program development will be coordinated with other CALFED Programs (WQP, ERP, MSCS, and Science Program).

### *Water Transfers Program*

18. CALFED Program actions subject to the FESA that will result in the transfer of water that may affect listed species will not be undertaken until consultation under section 7 or a permit under section 10 is completed. In any such consultation, the fish and wildlife agencies will determine whether adverse effects are likely to occur. Additionally, the EWA will not be charged for curtailed 3<sup>rd</sup> party transfer opportunities.
19. EWA, CVP, and Level 4 Refuge water supply transfers resulting from CALFED actions will have priority for conveyance over other transfer obligations (as consistent with the Operating Principles Agreement, for the EWA).

### *Watershed Program*

20. Development and implementation of the Watershed Program will be consistent with the goals of the ERP and MSCS, including State and Federal recovery plans. Program actions will be planned in conjunction with the Service, NMFS, and CDFG, in compliance with FESA, CESA, and NCCPA, as appropriate. Program development will be coordinated with other CALFED Programs (WQP, ERP, MSCS, and Science Program). Program actions will be funded so that it is assured that appropriate conservation measures for listed species will be included in program actions, as appropriate.

### *Water Management Strategy*

Specific key actions are provided for storage, conveyance, EWA, and other programs.

### *Storage*

21. Storage sites will be selected through a screening process which includes applicable environmental requirements.
22. Following the initiation of consultation, CALFED Agencies will comply with section 7(d) of the ESA, which prohibits making any irreversible or irretrievable commitment of resources, for any potential new storage site or modified storage site prior to achieving project-specific compliance under section 7(a)(2) of the ESA.
23. Tiered project specific analyses of potential storage improvements will identify and result in the selection of alternatives that are capable of being mitigated with appropriate mitigation sites and operational requirements; where the compensatory mitigation is highly likely to be successful; with the project specific compensatory mitigation implemented concurrent with, or in advance of, the adverse effects associated with construction and implementation of the project; where construction and operation of the project will not result in jeopardy to listed or proposed species or adverse modification of critical habitat; and where the project will not result in substantial degradation of the aquatic environment.
24. Any and all conveyance structures (e.g., canals, pipelines), recreation, roads, and similar developments associated with or proposed in conjunction with proposed expansions of existing storage facilities or proposed new storage facilities will be evaluated thoroughly for their impacts to Federal or State listed species and those species evaluated consistent with the MSCS. If, through the informal or formal consultation process, it is determined by the Service, NMFS, and CDFG (for State listed species) that project-related impacts would threaten the long-term viability of Federal or State listed species or those species

evaluated under the MSCS, the proposed project(s) will be modified or dropped from consideration.

### *Conveyance*

25. To the extent consistent with the Service's regulatory authority, any CALFED Agency that proposes to develop water for delivery or application outside current contract service areas would comply with ESA requirements under section 7 or 10, as appropriate, if listed species may be affected.
26. In proceeding with the South Delta Improvement Program, CALFED Agencies shall implement ecosystem restoration in the lower San Joaquin river and south Delta (generally, south of Empire Cut) in advance of or concurrent with impacts resulting from south Delta facility improvements.
27. When the CDFG, NMFS and Service, in consultation with the CALFED Agencies, determine that a diversion requires screening, CALFED Agencies will secure written agreements from willing land owners to allow access for screening of agricultural and municipal diversions to protect fish consistent with the screening priorities established by the CALFED Program. The agreement will provide that if monitoring is necessary, access for monitoring will be allowed with reasonable notification. If the CALFED Program is not substantially achieving screening program objectives, the CALFED Agencies will reinstitute informal or formal consultation.
28. When implementing EWA export reductions, the water cost associated with decreased exports will be charged against current facilities capabilities as constrained by current regulation. Any future increases in exports resulting from CALFED conveyance improvements will have operational rules developed through consultation with the fish and wildlife agencies to ensure consistency with EWA Operating Principles, and the goals of restoration and recovery for aquatic species.
29. In the interim, prior to installation of permanent operable barriers, DWR will apply for and obtain permits to allow the continued operation of the temporary barriers.
30. Prior to increasing pumping above current authorized levels, operational rules for use of additional export capability will be determined through an open CALFED process and ESA consultation on the project-specific environmental documentation prepared for the various conveyance elements. To offset potential impacts and to provide for recovery of



fishery populations, additional measures will be developed which would allow for protection of fish. These additional measures, which are phased over time, may include, but are not limited to (a) screening, (b) new standards which limit the timing and magnitude of exports and water supply releases at key periods of fish concern, or (c) a combination of the two. ESA coverage for such actions would come from separate consultation for OCAP or in consultations tiered from this opinion.

31. An isolated conveyance facility will be evaluated as an alternative in the event it is determined that a through-Delta system will not accomplish the CALFED Programs' goals for restoration and recovery of listed species, or its WQP goals. The study will be developed through a peer-review process to ensure objective analysis.

#### *EWA*

32. All EWA fixed assets (i.e., purchases) are acquired each year.
33. The EWA Operational Principles Agreement is signed and fully implemented.
34. The project agencies shall request clarification with the Service, CDFG and NMFS on any points that appear to be ambiguous related to fishery actions for the EWA.
35. If EWA assets are depleted and the Service, NMFS, and CDFG determine Tier 3 is necessary, Tier 3 assets will be available to protect fish.
36. As new water storage and conveyance projects are being planned, potential fishery impacts will be assessed. If necessary to offset potential impacts and to provide for recovery of fishery populations, operational rules will be developed which will provide for protection of fish. These operational rules may include but are not limited to (a) limits on the timing and magnitude of exports and water supply releases at key periods of fish concern, and (b) new sharing formulae to increase EWA assets, which would allow the EWA to offset impacts and implement restoration actions. ESA coverage for such actions would come from separate consultation for OCAP or in consultations tiered from this opinion, as appropriate.

#### *Science Program*

37. The Science Program will complete annual reports describing program progress and compliance of all CALFED program actions within this biological opinion.

### *Multi-Species Conservation Strategy*

38. CALFED agencies will consult with the Service or request technical assistance, as appropriate, to determine whether any future CALFED Program actions (including water transfers and permanent assignment of water) may affect listed or proposed species before signing a ROD or a FONSI which is tiered from the PEIS. This determination will consider both direct and indirect effects, if any, of specific actions. Evaluation of whether and to what extent the specific action results in indirect effects will be made on a case by case basis in accordance with legal requirements.
39. The list of evaluated species will be reviewed and revised periodically by the Service, NMFS, and CDFG to add and remove species, as appropriate, and to review the recovery objective (R, r, or m) for species for their appropriateness.
40. The Service will work closely with other CALFED agencies, water users and others, providing them with maps of listed species habitats within service areas. The Service will guide entities through the consultation process or provide technical assistance, as appropriate, to address project-specific effects.
41. Entities implementing CALFED Program actions will complete tiered, project-specific consultation with the Service, NMFS, and CDFG, as appropriate, through completion of Action-Specific Implementation Plans, as described in the MSCS.
42. The CALFED agencies will closely coordinate with the Service, NMFS, and CDFG during development and implementation of all ASIPs.
43. To the extent that the CALFED Program actions result in changes to land use practices and the impact analysis required by the MSCS shows effects to listed species, ESA, CESA and NCCPA compliance, as appropriate, will occur. The strategy for addressing impacts as described in the MSCS includes appropriate tools such as: (1) assisting with or contributing to completion and implementation of HCPs that address service area effects, as described in section 10(a) of the ESA; (2) including measures to address indirect effects in ASIPs and completing project-specific section 7 consultations on the ASIPs; (3) contributing towards or developing and implementing a conservation program that addresses species critical needs; and implementing the applicable conservation measures, relative to service area impacts, already in the MSCS.

44. The CALFED Program will monitor the baselines of the species addressed in this opinion. Monitoring (for the life of the CALFED Program's Preferred Program Alternative) will be implemented immediately to test and track the CALFED Program's objective that species' baselines are stable or increasing.
45. Any project-specific effects to listed species will be consulted upon following project-specific analysis and prior to the effect, and the CALFED agencies shall be adequately funded and staffed to complete tiered project-specific consultations from this opinion and track implementation of conservation actions.

## Environmental Baseline

Most of California's threatened and endangered species depend on native habitats that are declining in area and quality. Because these sensitive habitats may host threatened and endangered species, their loss or degradation can often adversely affect multiple species. Factors contributing to the environmental baseline are therefore grouped by habitat type in the analysis below. However, effects from environmental contaminants are typically less specific to particular habitats and are discussed separately. Population status for individual species is described in the species accounts found in Appendix C.

When the CVP began operations, approximately 30% of all natural habitats in the Central Valley had already been converted to urban and agricultural lands. This included loss of more than 80% of the riparian vegetation along the Sacramento River. By the time Shasta Reservoir (the first large CVP facility) began operation in 1944, many of California's natural habitats had been altered dramatically.

## Habitat Analyses

Acreage trends in the analyses below are based primarily on Küchler (1977) and GAP (1996). Küchler's (1977) map of California's potential natural vegetation (i.e., the potential climax vegetation which exists or has been estimated to exist and would occur if all alterations and disturbances to the respective environments, except reservoirs, were removed) was digitized into Geographic Information System (GIS) format. GAP (1996) included digital information about extent and distribution of habitats from 1990 LANDSAT Thematic Mapper satellite imagery. The minimum mapping unit in GAP data is 100 hectares (247 acres) for upland habitats and 40 hectares (99 acres) for wetland habitats. Because comparisons of acreage figures between the two studies are complicated by differences in habitat classification, percentage changes are approximate. In particular, the areas delineated as potential wetlands by Küchler (1977)

historically included habitats such as the large lakes of the Tulare Basin, which may be more comparable to the “open water” category of GAP data. Conversely, Küchler (1977) included artificial reservoirs in his map that did not exist prior to European settlement. Definitions of barren/alpine habitat also differ between the two studies. However, the two studies differ in estimation of total acreage by less than 0.1%. The estimated trends in habitat are identified in Table 3.

### Delta Aquatic

#### *Habitat Description and Associated Species*

The Delta is the uppermost part of the Sacramento-San Joaquin Estuary and is largely a tidally influenced freshwater system. During high flows of fresh water from the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers, the mixing zone between fresh and salt water is pushed downstream toward the Golden Gate. The position of the freshwater edge of the mixing zone (also known as X2), where the salt content (salinity) of the water is 2 parts per thousand, is determined by river flows and tides. Plankton (microscopic organisms floating in the water column) are most abundant in the mixing zone, so the vicinity of X2 is high-quality habitat for adult and larval fish that feed on plankton. Shallow aquatic habitats have been identified in the Delta Native Fishes Recovery Plan (Service 1996a) as essential to the long-term survival and recovery of Delta smelt and other resident fish. When the mixing zone is below the Delta in Suisun Bay, a large area of suitable shallow water habitat is in the mixing zone and water temperatures are favorable for growth of plankton.

Federally listed species associated with Delta aquatic habitats include Delta smelt (*Hypomesus transpacificus*), tidewater goby (*Eucyclogobius newberryi*), and Sacramento splittail (*Pogonichthys macrolepidotus*). Listed bird species, such as the California least tern (*Sterna antillarum browni*), or California brown pelican (*Pelecanus occidentalis californicus*), may travel through, winter in or visit Delta aquatic habitats. Delta smelt and Sacramento splittail seek shallow, tidally-influenced, freshwater (< 2 ppt salinity) backwater sloughs and edge waters for spawning. To assure egg hatching and larval viability, spawning areas also must provide suitable water quality (*i.e.*, low concentrations of contaminants) and substrates for egg attachment (*e.g.*, submerged tree roots, branches, emergent vegetation).

**Table 3. General Habitats Trend Analysis for CALFED Focus Areas\***, historic vs. current estimations. See text for description of estimations.

Habitat Type	Potential Habitat Estimation (acres) (Küchler 1977)	1990 Habitat Estimation (acres) (GAP 1996)	Percentage Difference**
Agriculture	minimal	9,764,504	Not applicable
Alkali Scrub	1,386,185	515,595	-63%
Chaparral	2,755,946	2,749,119	- %
Cismontane Woodlands	10,215,026	11,035,866	+%
Coastal Scrub	340,294	124,075	-64%
Coniferous and Mixed Forests	12,212,249	7,983,387	-%
Grassland	8,930,311	4,327,147	-52%
Riparian	1,192,649	158,944	-87%
Sagebrush	872,070	714,927	-18%
Salt Marsh	156,537	58,356	-63%
Tule Marsh	1,969,013	176,137	-91%
Urban	effectively zero	1,415,279	N/A
Water	156,778	350,116	+123%
Wet Meadow	category not used	57,369	N/A

\* Includes the ERP, MSCS, and Watershed Program Focus Areas

\*\*Figures are rounded to nearest whole number.

### *Habitat Trends*

Potential natural vegetation in the Delta included approximately 520,000 acres of tule marsh, covering 72% of the area of the Delta (Küchler 1977). Since the 1850's, the Estuary's tidal

marshes have experienced a cumulative loss of approximately 94 percent (Nichols et al. 1986, Monroe and Kelly 1992). In 1990, the Delta contained 597,624 acres of agricultural land and 49,450 acres of urban land, covering nearly 87% of the area of the Delta (GAP 1996). Tule marshes had been reduced to 8,904 acres, a decline of 98% from the estimate of Küchler (1977). All wetland and open water habitat combined covered only 71,387 acres, covering less than 10% of the Delta (GAP 1996). Most channels in the Delta have been dredged and shallow wetland habitats have been separated from the river by an extensive levee system.

Water flow and salinity in the Delta is strongly influenced by operations of the CVP and SWP including the Tracy Pumping Plant (CVP), the Banks Pumping Plant (DWR), and numerous smaller water diversions. The storage of runoff in reservoirs as well as diversions of fresh water move the mixing zone upstream, reducing habitat quality for Delta fishes. When river flows are low, and pumps are pulling in large amounts of water, the net flow of water is in the upstream direction in the channel, and fish can be entrained at the pumps and killed. In addition to direct mortality, upstream movement of water can delay migration and increase fishes exposure to predation, poor water quality, and other factors.

Several aquatic non-native species have been introduced to the Delta system (see Nichols et al. 1986). These non-natives have out competed many native species, replacing natural populations. For further information on non-native species, see the Cumulative Effects Section of the Chapter on Effects of the Proposed Action .

### *Delta Smelt*

The current environmental baseline for Delta smelt is established by the March 6, 1995, and the February 12, 1993, (Delta smelt and winter-run, respectively) biological opinions on the effects of long-term operation of the CVP and the SWP, the October 13, 1981, Corps export pumping guidance, the November 2, 1994, biological opinion on the Environmental Protection Agency's proposed Water Quality Standards for the San Francisco Bay/Sacramento-San Joaquin Rivers and Delta in conjunction with the 1995 Water Quality Control Plan, and the statutory mandate pursuant to Section 3406(b)2 of the CVP Improvement Act to manage 800 TAF of water for fish and wildlife purposes. Part of this environmental baseline requires Delta outflows between February 1 to June 30 to transport larval and juvenile delta smelt out of the "zone of influence" of the CVP and SWP export pumps and maintain the location of X2 at or downstream of three distinct points: the confluence of the Sacramento and San Joaquin rivers, Chipps Island, and Roe Island. The length of time X2 must be positioned at these set locations in each month is determined by a formula that considers the previous month's inflow to the Delta and a "Level of Development" factor, denoted by a particular year.

Compliance with the salinity criteria at Roe and Chipps islands can be achieved in any one of the following three ways: (1) the daily salinity value meets the requirement, (2) the system is operated on that day so as to meet the "flow equivalent," or (3) by using a 14-day moving average. The use of the 14-day moving average allows the mean location to be achieved despite the varying strength of tidal currents during the lunar cycle because any 14 day period would include the full range of spring and neap tidal conditions. Meeting the confluence standard can be achieved by meeting either implementation scheme 1 or 3 above.

Delta modeling conducted by a variety of individuals and agencies for the March 6, 1995 biological opinion analyzed approximately 73 years of hydrologic data from the Sacramento/San Joaquin Rivers and Delta. The analysis showed the average position of X2 would be either downstream of the targeted compliance point or would meet the compliance point through an increase in the number of days, over and above the minimum required, in many of the years. This compliance point has been maintained mainly because the export facilities have not had the ability to capture all of the unimpaired run-off and, thus, have been well below the Export-Inflow Ratio (E/I Ratio) providing better environmental conditions than the minimum required by existing regulations. Therefore, the Service was able to provide the CVP and SWP with a non-jeopardy biological opinion on the long-term operation of their projects. Additionally, the Service anticipated that the estuarine conditions for delta smelt would be improved by (1) the signing of the Framework Agreement leading to the Bay-Delta Accord that would require the CVP and SWP to make an equitable contribution to meet the revised water quality standards, (2) the obligation of Federal agencies carrying out programs for the conservation (recovery) of listed species as imposed by section 7 of the Act, and (3) the scheduled renewal or reopening of water contracts and licenses that would provide an additional opportunity to implement Recovery Plan objectives. Collectively, these actions would result in phased improvement to water quality-based habitat requirements.

Due to subsequent wet years, the regulatory requirements have been met every year since 1995. The CVP/SWP were able to meet the compliance point for X2. The CVP/SWP, because of favorable hydrologic conditions, did not need to manage the system to the E/I ratio all of the time. If these beneficial environmental parameters are maintained over time, it is likely that the species would be heading toward recovery. However, these benefits are offset by new projects that are being proposed which are described later. Therefore, rather than improving the environmental baseline with these good water years, it has simply been maintained. Table 4 identifies the number of required days X2 was to be at specific compliance locations and the actual number of days X2 was at or downstream of the required location. These data are based on preliminary data provided by the California Department of Water Resources, Operations Division. This analysis is consistent with how the Service evaluated the original project for which it issued the March 6, 1995 biological opinion (Service, 1995).

Adult Delta smelt spawn in central Delta sloughs from February through August in shallow water areas having submersed aquatic plants and other suitable substrates and refugia. These shallow water areas have been identified in the Delta Native Fishes Recovery Plan (Recovery Plan) (Service 1995) as essential to the long-term survival and recovery of Delta smelt and other resident fish. A "no net loss" strategy of Delta smelt population and habitat is proposed in this Recovery Plan.

Delta smelt are adapted to living in the highly productive Estuary where salinity varies spatially and temporally according to tidal cycles and the amount of freshwater inflow. Despite this tremendously variable environment, the historical Estuary probably offered relatively consistent spring transport flows that moved Delta smelt juveniles and larvae downstream to the mixing zone. Since the 1850's, however, the amount and extent of suitable habitat for the Delta smelt has declined dramatically. The advent in 1853 of hydraulic mining in the Sacramento and San Joaquin rivers led to increased siltation and alteration of the circulation patterns of the Estuary (Nichols *et al.* 1986, Monroe and Kelly 1992). The reclamation of Merritt Island for agricultural purposes, in the same year, marked the beginning of the present-day cumulative loss of 94 percent of the Estuary's tidal marshes (Nichols *et al.* 1986, Monroe and Kelly 1992).

In addition to the degradation and loss of estuarine habitat, the delta smelt have been increasingly subject to entrainment, upstream or reverse flows of waters in the Delta and San Joaquin River, and constriction of low salinity habitat to deep-water river channels of the interior Delta (Moyle *et al.* 1992). These adverse conditions are primarily a result of drought and the steadily increasing proportion of river flow being diverted from the Delta by the CVP and the SWP (Monroe and Kelly 1992). There is a correlation between the proportion of Delta smelt that reside in Suisun Bay and overall abundance. This relationship indicates that the summer townet index increased dramatically when outflow was between 34,000 and 48,000 cfs which placed X2 between Chipps and Roe islands. Placement of X2 downstream of the Confluence, Chipps and Roe islands provides Delta smelt with low salinity and protection from entrainment, allowing for productive rearing habitat that increases both smelt abundance and distribution.



**TABLE 4.** Number of days X2 was required at specific compliance stations and the actual number of days achieved shown by year.

Year	Location	# of required days Starting Feb. 1	# of actual days at*** or downstream
1995	Confluence	150	Essentially all year
	Chips Is.	150	Essentially all year
	Roe Is.	130	138
1996	Confluence	150	249
	Chips Is.	150	161
	Roe Is.	65	126
1997	Confluence	150	225
	Chips Is.	110	124
	Roe Is.	49	52
1998	Confluence	150	Essentially all year
	Chips Is.	150	262
	Roe Is.	115	167
1999	Confluence	150	203
	Chips Is.	143	159
	Roe Is.	51	73
2000	Confluence	150	100**
	Chips Is.	150*	100**
	Roe Is.	57*	60**

\* Estimated for 2000

\*\* As of May 10, 2000

\*\*\* These are estimated days based on electrical conductivity at Port Chicago, Mallard Slough, and Collinsville

The results of seven surveys conducted by the Interagency Ecological Program (IEP) corroborate the dramatic decline in delta smelt attributable to baseline conditions. Existing operations were meant to provide sufficient Delta outflows from February 1 through June 30 to transport larval and juvenile delta smelt out of the "zone of influence" of the CVP and SWP pumps, and provide them low salinity, productive rearing habitat. This zone of influence has been delineated by Water Resources's Particle Tracking Model and expands or contracts with CVP and SWP combined pumping increases or decreases, respectively (DWR and Reclamation 1993). Tidal action may enhance the hydraulic effects of exports which in turn may effect larvae and juveniles as far west as the Confluence.

According to seven abundance indices which provide information on the status of the delta smelt, this species was consistently at low population levels through the 1980's (Stevens *et al.* 1990). These same indices also showed a pronounced decline from historical levels of abundance (Stevens *et al.* 1990).

Specifically, the summer townet abundance index constitutes one of the more representative indices because the data have been collected over a wide geographic area (from San Pablo Bay upstream through most of the Delta) for the longest period of time (since 1959). The summer townet abundance index measures the abundance and distribution of juvenile delta smelt and provides data on the recruitment potential of the species. Since 1983, (except for 1986, 1993, and 1994), this index has remained at consistently lower levels than previously found. These consistently lower levels correlate with the 1983 to 1992 mean location of X2 upstream of the Confluence, Chipps and Roe islands.

The second longest running survey (since 1967), the fall midwater trawl survey (FMWT), measures the abundance and distribution of late juveniles and adult delta smelt in a large geographic area from San Pablo Bay upstream to Rio Vista on the Sacramento River and Stockton on the San Joaquin River (Stevens *et al.* 1990). The fall midwater trawl indicates the abundance of the adult population just prior to upstream spawning migration. The index that is calculated from the FMWT survey uses numbers of sampled fish multiplied by a factor related to the volume of the area sampled. Until recently, except for 1991, this index has declined irregularly over the past 20 years (CDFG unpublished data, 1999). Since 1983, the Delta smelt population has exhibited more low fall midwater trawl abundance indices, for more consecutive years, than previously recorded. The 1994 FMWT index of 101.7 was a continuation of this trend. This occurred despite the high 1994 summer townet index for reasons unknown. The 1995 summer townet was a low index value of 319 but resulted in a high FMWT index of 898.7 reflecting the benefits of large transport and habitat maintenance flows due to an extremely wet year.

The FMWT abundance index (128.3) for 1996 represented the fourth lowest on record. For 1997, the abundance index (360.8) almost tripled over last years results. In 1998, the summer townet index was 3.3 and the fall index was 417.6, which was up slightly from the 1997 index. Recovery criteria, including both abundance and distribution criteria based on numbers derived from the FMWT, have not been met to date. This limited data indicates that Delta smelt may not be moving toward recovery.

The Service issued a non-jeopardy biological opinion (1-1-95-F-110) for the Delta Wetlands Project after significant negotiations and changes to the proposed project description. The original project description significantly degraded the estuarine conditions by adversely affecting Delta hydrology and causing incremental up-stream shifts of X2. The Delta Wetlands Project, as modified, includes conditions to minimize up-stream shifts of X2 and adverse effects to Delta hydrology within the action area. The Service issued a draft jeopardy biological opinion for the Interim South Delta Program as the original project significantly degraded the estuarine conditions by adversely affecting Delta hydrology and causing incremental up-stream shifts of X2. The Service has also issued a biological opinion for the issuance of a water contract to the County of Sacramento for 35,000 af of water to be diverted from the American River. The opinion for Sacramento County evaluated a phased approach to delivery of new water with very small increments of water to be delivered for the first few years and that the larger amount would be fully evaluated in the context of a broader section 7 consultation when OCAP is reinitiated at the long-term contract renewal phase of CVPIA. Additionally, the Service just completed a consultation with Reclamation concerning additional supplies to Contra Costa Water District (CCWD) under their existing contracts consistent with CCWD's Future Water Supply Program. The outcome of this opinion specifically states that additional supplies over and above those which were authorized in the original biological opinions for the Los Vaqueros Project would not be authorized until a new biological opinion on OCAP was completed or Reclamation reinitiated consultation.

Regarding the operation of the existing consultation for the Los Vaqueros Project, during May and June of 1999, over 100,000 Delta smelt were incidentally taken at the State and Federal export facilities. However, none were found to have entered CCWD's intake at Old River during this same period. Pursuant to the operations plan in the Los Vaqueros biological opinion, there were no diversions during two weeks of the period in question; however, when diversions resumed, no smelt were found to pass through the screen in the monitoring program.

Delta smelt remained in the Delta for an extended period of time during the spring of 1999. It was hypothesized that it was a result of cooler water temperatures. The final summer townet index for 1999 is 11.9, an increase from the 1998 index of 3.3. However, this is still below the pre-decline

average of 20.4 (1959-1981, no sampling 66-68). The FMWT index for 1999 is 864 which is a moderate level.

Other projects, which have not undergone section 7 consultation, have been proposed and include East Bay Municipal Utility District amended contract renewal, development of a long-term contract with El Dorado County Water Agency, numerous Warren Act contracts, funding or facilitation of infrastructure improvements that will allow for additional withdrawals from CVP supplies with CVP facilities, or through other mechanisms. These projects likely would result in a deterioration of the environmental baseline, causing X2 to incrementally move up-stream if these projects proceed as proposed. Degradation of the environmental baseline may significantly affect recovery and survival of Delta smelt

### *Sacramento Splittail*

The decline in splittail abundance has taken place during a period of increased human-induced changes to the seasonal hydrology of the Delta, especially the increased exports of freshwater from the Delta and increased diversions of water to storage. These changes include alterations in the temporal, spatial, and relative ratios of water diverted from the system. These hydrological effects, coupled with severe drought years, introduced, non-native aquatic species, the loss of shallow-water habitat to reclamation activities, and other human-caused actions, have reduced the splittail's capacity to recover from natural seasonal fluctuations in hydrology for which it was adapted.

Analyses of survey data collected from 1967 to 1993 (Meng 1993, Meng and Moyle 1995), further analyses by the Service using data from 1967 through 1997 (Service, 1999), CDFG, University of California at Davis, and biologists from several different studies reveals the following trends:

(1) Overall, splittail abundance indices have declined. Meng and Moyle (1995) demonstrated that on average, splittail have declined in abundance by 60 percent through 1993. These data were updated by the CDFG to include the most current data available. The Service conducted the statistical analysis using the updated information. The results were similar. These updated data demonstrate that on average, splittail have declined significantly in abundance by 50 percent since 1984. The greatest declines (over 80 percent) were found from studies that sampled the shallow Suisun Bay area, the center of the range of the species (Meng and Moyle 1995). The updated information also shows a significant decline (43 percent) for the studies that sampled the shallow Suisun Bay area. The Bay study that began in 1980 in the lower Estuary, at the outermost edge of splittail range, showed the least percent decline (20 percent) (CDFG, unpublished data) through

1993. The Bay study analysis completed on the updated data also showed the smallest decline for study (6 percent). The number of splittail young taken at State and Federal pumping facilities (per acre-foot of water pumped), as of 1993, had declined 64 percent since 1984. With the updated data, the number of splittail young taken at State and Federal pumping facilities demonstrated a 97 percent increase. This percent increase is due to the unusually high salvage that occurred during 1995.

Splittail populations are estimated to be 35 to 60 percent of what they were in the 1940's, and these estimates may be conservative (Moyle in prep). Department midwater trawl data indicate a decline from the mid-1960s to the late 1970s, followed by a resurgence, with yearly fluctuations, through the mid-1980s. From the mid-1980s through 1994, splittail numbers have declined in the Delta, with some small increases in various years. This decline is also demonstrated in the updated Department data.

(2) Overall splittail abundances vary widely between years. Sommer *et al.* 1997 also found that splittail recruitment success fluctuates widely from year to year and over long periods of time. During dry years abundance is typically low. During the dry years of 1980, 1984, 1987, and 1988 through 1992, splittail abundance indices for young-of-the-year were low, indicating poor spawning success. Additionally, all year class abundances were low during these years. In 1994, the fourth driest year on record, all splittail indices were extremely low.

Wet years are assumed to provide essential habitat for splittail and allow populations to rebound from dry years. Successful reproduction in splittail is often highly correlated with wet years. Large pulses of young fish were observed in wet years 1982, 1983, 1986, and 1995. In 1995, one of the wettest years in recent history, an increase in all indices was recorded, as in 1986, which was another wet year following a dry year. However, young of the year taken per unit effort (for example, either the number of fish per net that is towed or the number of fish per volume of water sampled) has actually declined in wet years, from a high of 12.3 in 1978 to 0.3 in 1993. The updated data from CDFG demonstrate this same decline in wet years, from 37.3 in 1978 to 0.6 in 1993. The abundance indices of splittail during the years of 1995, 1996, and 1997 were 44.5, 2.1, and 2.6, respectively. In 1995, a very wet year, splittail abundances were high. However in 1996 and 1997, both wet years, abundance indices were low. A large splittail year class was produced in 1998, a wet year. However, overall splittail declines remain high (82 percent/43 percent with updated data) in the shallow-water Suisun Bay area, the center of its distribution..

(3) A strong relationship exists between young-of-the-year abundance and outflow (i.e., river outflow into San Francisco Bay after water exports are removed). As outflow increases, annual abundance of young-of-the-year splittail increases. Changes in outflow account for 55 to 72

percent of the changes seen in young-of-the-year splittail abundance, depending on which survey data are analyzed.

(4) Splittail are most abundant in shallow areas of Suisun and Grizzly bays where they generally prefer low-salinity habitats. Salinities in Suisun and Grizzly bays increase when, as a result of water exports or drought conditions, the mixing zone (the freshwater-saltwater interface) shifts upstream.

(5) Concentration of splittail in shallow areas suggests that they are particularly vulnerable to reclamation activities, such as dredging, diking, and filling of wetlands. The above data indicate that splittail abundances vary widely in response to environmental conditions, but the general population numbers are declining.

Changes in water diversions are most likely at the SWP. For the most part, the Federal pumping plant has operated at capacity for many years (pumping at rates up to 4,600 cfs), so increased exports at this plant are unlikely. However, the SWP pumping plant and the State Aqueduct have considerable unused capacity. The SWP currently pumps at rates up to 6,400 cfs and plans to increase pumping rates by more than 50 percent. Local private water diversions are relatively stable and export up to 5,000 cfs from about 1,800 diversions scattered throughout the Delta. The DWR (1992) reported past and projected SWP deliveries from Delta sources during the years of 1962 to 2035. In the 1980's, deliveries ranged from 1.5 MAF to 2.8 MAF. By 2010, deliveries of up to 4.2 MAF are planned.

If the exceedingly high take (millions of fish) at the export facilities that occurred in 1995 continues to occur in other wet years, the species may be precluded from recovery. In a good year such as 1995, splittail spawn in prolific numbers. These good years are needed to maintain the population of splittail in the Delta. However, the high take that occurs during these years, offsets the benefits that a strong year class may provide.

Those projects discussed in the Delta Smelt Environmental Baseline section have also under gone section 7 consultation for their effects to splittail (Note: the splittail listing is currently under litigation). Additional future deliveries made south of the Delta through SWP or CVP facilities, additional supplies provided to contractors or new water supply contracts that effect carryover storage in reservoirs, facilities that are developed to divert additional instream flows, or other water development projects that result in losses of instream flows, greater entrainment of splittail, or reduce the areal extent of floodplain inundation for splittail spawning will degrade the environmental baseline for splittail such an extent that it may preclude recovery for the splittail.

## Salt Marsh

### *Habitat Description and Associated Species*

The San Francisco Bay complex, including San Pablo Bay and Suisun Bay and Marsh, is the largest estuarine ecosystem in California. Tidal marshes consist of a low marsh dominated by California cordgrass (*Spartina foliosa*) or tules (*Scirpus* spp.), a middle marsh of pickleweed (*Salicornia virginica*), alkali bulrush (*Scirpus robustus*), or cattails (*Typha* spp.), and a high marsh of peripheral halophytes (plants which grow in salty soils) with infrequent tidal coverage. Federally listed species associated with salt marsh habitats include: bald eagle (*Haliaeetus leucocephalus*), California brown pelican (*Pelecanus occidentalis*), California clapper rail (*Rallus longirostris obsoletus*), California least tern (*Sterna antillarum browni*), and salt marsh harvest mouse (*Reithrodontomys raviventris*). Listed plants include soft bird's-beak (*Cordylanthus mollis* ssp. *mollis*), California seablite (extirpated) (*Suaeda californica*), marsh sandwort (*Arenaria paludicola*), and Suisun thistle (*Cirsium hydrophilum* var. *hydrophilum*).

### *Habitat Trends*

Originally, the San Francisco Bay complex included an estimated 181,446 acres of tidal marsh, including 46,405 acres in San Francisco Bay, 63,678 acres in San Pablo Bay, and 71,363 acres in Suisun Bay and Marsh (Service 1984). Küchler (1977) estimated that potential natural vegetation of salt marsh for the CALFED Focus Areas to be 156,537 acres with the San Francisco Bay complex having 96,583 acres of salt marsh; these figures omit the brackish marshes in the Suisun Bay area, which are categorized as tule marsh in Küchler's map.

In 1990, salt marsh and brackish marsh were estimated to cover 69,291 acres, including 54,088 acres in the Sacramento Basin (Suisun Bay and Marsh), 9,443 acres in the Delta, and 4,760 acres in the San Francisco Bay area (GAP 1996). This estimate probably includes large areas of diked marsh, particularly in Suisun Bay where non-tidal diked marshes are managed primarily for waterfowl. Dedrick (1993) estimated that about 30,100 acres of tidal marsh currently remain, representing 17 percent of historical marsh. Some salt marshes have been backfilled, eliminating the high marsh zones and adjacent upland habitat, others are narrow strips bordering dikes. Existing tidal marshes are fragments of the original marshes, and only a few large marshes remain.

## Riverine, Riparian, and Floodplain

### *Habitat Description and Associated Species*

Riparian forests of the Central Valley are dominated by Fremont cottonwood (*Populus fremontii* ssp. *fremontii*) and willow (*Salix* spp.) near the rivers, with western sycamore (*Platanus racemosa*), California box elder (*Acer negundo* var. *californicum*), and valley oak (*Quercus lobata*) dominating the less frequently flooded higher terraces. Floodplain habitats above the riparian zone typically do not support wetland vegetation, but are hydrologically linked to rivers and riparian forests by periodic flooding and can be considered with them as an ecological unit. Streams historically flooded during the winter rainy season sometimes dry up partially or completely during summer droughts. Several fish species migrate from ocean or estuary habitats to spawn in sloughs, tributary streams, or inundated floodplains throughout the Central Valley. Loss of appropriate spawning substrate has contributed to the decline of several fish species. Sacramento splittail, which migrate upstream to spawn in flooded riparian and floodplain vegetation, have also declined. The endangered shortnosed sucker (*Chasmistes brevirostris*) and Shasta crayfish (*Pacifastacus fortis*) are found in mountain and foothill streams.

The federally threatened Valley elderberry longhorn beetle (*Desmocerus californicus dimorphus*) occurs in riparian habitats of the Sacramento Valley, Sierra foothills, some Delta levees and tributaries, and the San Joaquin Valley and has declined with loss of habitat. Federally endangered least Bell's vireos (*Vireo belli pusillus*) have not nested anywhere in the Central Valley for several decades, and endangered southwestern willow flycatchers (*Empidonax traillii eximius*) are restricted to the South Fork of the Kern River near Lake Isabella. The federally endangered riparian woodrat (San Joaquin Valley woodrat) (*Neotoma fuscipes riparia*) and riparian brush rabbit (*Sylvilagus bachmani riparius*) are now largely or completely restricted to Caswell State Park on the Stanislaus River, which is the largest remaining tract of riparian forest in the northern San Joaquin Valley. The federally threatened California red-legged frog (*Rana aurora draytoni*) has now been extirpated from 75% of its historic range, mostly in the Central Valley. The endangered California freshwater shrimp inhabits slow-moving freshwater streams in Marin, Sonoma, and Napa counties.

The endangered bald eagle is found along rivers and riparian habitats and is increasing in numbers throughout portions of its range. The Federal candidate species McCloud River redband trout (*Oncorhynchus mykiss* ssp.) and California tiger salamander (*Ambystoma californiense*) are also found in portions of this habitat. Federally listed plant species include Chinese Camp Brodiaea (*Brodiaea pallida*), found along serpentine streams, red hills vervain (*Verbena californica*), Contra Costa wallflower (*Erysimum capitatum* ssp. *angustatum*), Antioch Dunes evening-primrose



(*Oenothera deltooides* ssp. *howellii*), and Pitkin marsh lily (*Lilium pardalinum* ssp. *pitkinense*), which may be found along streams in oak habitats. The yellow-billed cuckoo (*Coccyzus americanus*) has been petitioned for listing under the ESA.

### *Habitat Trends*

Potential natural vegetation within the CALFED Program Focus Areas includes an estimated 1,192,649 acres of riparian habitat, including 837,147 acres in the Sacramento Basin, 288,551 acres in the San Joaquin Basin, 48,123 acres in the Tulare Basin, and 18,828 acres in the Delta (Küchler 1977). Historical acreages of riparian forest have been independently estimated at 1,600,000-2,000,000 acres in the Central Valley (Warner and Hendrix 1985) and 902,000 acres in the San Joaquin and Tulare Basins (San Joaquin Valley Drainage Program 1990, adapted from Hall 1886 and Küchler 1977).

In 1990, riparian habitat within the CALFED Program Focus Areas covered an estimated 159,792 acres (GAP 1996), representing a reduction of 87% from the potential natural vegetation described in Küchler (1977). Regional reductions in riparian habitat were 92% in the Sacramento Basin, 91% in the San Joaquin Basin, 24% in the Tulare Basin, and 86% in the Delta. An estimated 2% of the historical riparian habitat remains on the Sacramento River (McGill 1979, McCarten and Patterson 1987). As a result, riparian-dependent species include several of the most critically endangered species in the Central Valley.

### Freshwater Wetlands

#### *Habitat Description and Associated Species*

Freshwater wetlands are characterized by a specialized community of aquatic dependent plant species such as the common tule (*Scirpus acutus* var. *occidentalis*), broadleaf cattail (*Typha latifolia*), sedges (*Carex* spp.), spike-rush (*Eleocharis* spp.) and rushes (*Juncus* spp.). Wetlands are usually defined by the types of plants, types of soils, and inundation duration. Wetland types in this category include deep and shallow freshwater marshes, wet meadows, seasonal wetlands, saturated freshwater flat, and vegetated shallows.

Federally listed species associated with freshwater wetlands are: Aleutian Canada goose (*Branta canadensis leucopareia*), bald eagle (*Haliaeetus leucocephalus*), the proposed Buena Vista Lake shrew (*Sorex ornatus relictus*), California red-legged frog, marsh sandwort (*Arenaria paludicola*), giant garter snake (*Thamnophis gigas*), and San Francisco garter snake (*T. sirtalis*).

*tetrataenia*). The California tiger salamander (*Ambystoma californiense*), a Federal candidate species, breeds in freshwater wetlands.

The bald eagle occurs widely throughout the study area. After severe declines due largely to pesticides such as DDT, its numbers have been increasing following new pesticide regulations. Ecosystem degradation in the Central Valley may limit the extent of their recovery in the Central Valley. Eagles use riparian and wetland habitats for resting and foraging. Recovery of bald eagles may be limited by availability of nest trees in riparian and woodland habitat and by declining wetland habitat. California red-legged frogs have been virtually extirpated from the floor of the Central Valley, despite their historic presence in the Central Valley in numbers large enough for commercial harvest. They currently remain only in foothills of the Coast Range and isolated drainages in the Sierra Nevada. The giant garter snake occurs in scattered populations from Butte County south to the central San Joaquin Valley. The Aleutian Canada goose winters in restricted areas of the Sacramento and San Joaquin Valleys. The Buena Vista Lake shrew is restricted to remnant wetland areas near the Kern Lake Preserve and Kern National Wildlife Refuge. The San Francisco garter snake has been reduced to 5 populations that are unprotected, unstable, or declining. Marsh sandwort populations in San Francisco and Santa Cruz Counties have been extirpated by urban development.

Wet meadows may provide habitat for the Kneeland Prairie penny-cress (*Thlaspi montanum* var. *californicum*), water howellia (*Howellia aquatilis*), and Hickman's cinquefoil (*Potentilla hickmanii*).

### *Habitat Trends*

Potential natural vegetation within the CALFED Program Focus Areas included an estimated 1,969,013 acres of tule marshes (Küchler 1977). Independent estimates of historic wetland acreages range from 1,500,000 acres (Warner and Hendrix 1985, cited in San Joaquin Valley Drainage Program 1990) to 4,000,000 acres in the Central Valley (Service 1978), and 1,093,000 acres in the San Joaquin and Tulare Basins (San Joaquin Valley Drainage Program 1990, adapted from Hall 1886 and Küchler 1977).

Freshwater emergent wetlands occupied about 554,000 acres of the Central Valley in the 1940s (Frayner et al. 1989, Central Valley Habitat Joint Venture 1990). By 1990, only 176,137 acres remained (GAP 1996), representing a reduction of 91% from the potential natural vegetation described by Küchler (1977). Regional reductions in freshwater emergent wetlands were estimated at 91 % in the Sacramento Basin, 92 % in the San Joaquin Basin, 92% in the Tulare Basin, 93% in the Delta, and 91% in the San Francisco Bay area.

The hydrology of many of the remaining wetlands has been altered from seasonal to permanent inundation. This change has altered plant communities and facilitated the invasion of introduced aquatic predators such as bullfrogs, bass, and sunfish. These species compete with or prey upon several listed species, including California red-legged frogs and giant garter snakes.

## Vernal Pools

### *Habitat Description and Associated Species*

Vernal pools are seasonal wetlands that are unique to the Mediterranean climate region of California and northwestern Baja California and are most abundant in California's Central Valley. Many of the endangered plants and invertebrates that inhabit vernal pools have sporadic and disjunct distributions (i.e., they occur in relatively few pools at a given location and some of these locations are widely separated from each other).

Vernal pools are distinguished by their hydrology and their relationship to adjacent habitat. First, the Mediterranean climate of the region results in most rain falling during the winter. On locally flat land the water tends to pool after each rainfall in small depressions on the land surface. Over time the soils where the wetting and drying continue year after year develop a layer below the surface that becomes resistant to water. In some soils a hardpan of mostly lime develops. In others there is a layer where clay particles have built up. The pools gather water that falls as rain over a small area of relatively flat land and then hold it at the surface until it evaporates during the summer, providing a unique habitat type. Most of these vernal pools are found on sites where the soil has been in place for thousands of years. Over thousands of years a group of species has developed adaptations to the annual wetting and drying cycle and the mineral content of the water in the pools. Other species near pools (particularly co-adapted pollinators) interact with the plants and animals found in the pools themselves. The area comprising the pools, the areas of catchment where the water gathers as rain falls, and the associated species found in the habitat near the pools form a unit that is referred to as a "vernal pool complex". Conservation of vernal pool species depends on maintaining the ecosystem functions of the entire complex.

Federally listed plant species associated with vernal pools include Butte County meadowfoam (*Limnanthes floccosa* ssp. *californica*), Sebastopol meadowfoam (*L. vinculans*), Calistoga allocarya (*Plagiobothrys strictus*), Napa bluegrass (*Poa napensis*), Sonoma alopecurus (*Alopecurus aequalis* ssp. *sonomensis*), Colusa grass (*Neostapfia colusana*), Contra Costa goldfields (*Lasthenia conjugens*), Sonoma sunshine (*Blennosperma bakeri*), few-flowered navarretia (*Navarretia leucocephala* ssp. *pauciflora*), Lake County stonecrop (*Parvisedum leiocarpum*), many-flowered navarretia (*N. l.* ssp. *plieantha*), succulent owl's-clover (*Castilleja*

*campestris* ssp. *succulenta*), Greene's tuctoria (*Tuctoria greenei*), Crampton's tuctoria or Solano grass (*T. mucronata*), hairy Orcutt grass (*Orcuttia pilosa*), Sacramento Orcutt grass (*O. viscida*), San Joaquin Valley Orcutt grass (*O. inaequalis*), slender Orcutt grass (*O. tenuis*), Hoover's spurge (*Chamaesyce hooveri*), and Loch Lomond button-celery (*Eryngium constancei*). White sedge (*Carex alba*), Burke's goldfields (*Lasthenia burkei*), and Kenwood marsh checker-mallow (*Sidalcea oregana* ssp. *valida*) may also be found associated with vernal pool complexes. Most of these species are patchily distributed within the Sacramento and/or San Joaquin Valleys in vernal pool complexes. Calistoga allocarya, few-flowered navarretia, and Loch Lomond button celery are restricted to Napa County. Conservancy fairy shrimp (*Branchinecta conservatio*), longhorn fairy shrimp (*B. longiantenna*), vernal pool fairy shrimp (*B. lynchi*), delta green ground beetle (*Elaphrus viridis*), California red-legged frogs, and vernal pool tadpole shrimp (*Lepidurus packardii*) are federally listed animal species found in vernal pool habitats. The Federal candidate species California tiger salamander also breeds in vernal pools.

### *Habitat Trends*

Holland (1998) mapped the distribution of vernal pool complexes in the Central Valley. Vernal pools are scattered throughout the grassland habitats mapped by Küchler (1977) and GAP (1996) but occur at too fine a resolution to have been adequately mapped as a distinct habitat type by those studies. Holland (1978) estimated that vernal pools occurred historically at varying densities over an estimated 31 percent (4.15 million acres) of the Central Valley, and the Service estimates that 60-85% of historical vernal pool habitat had been eliminated as of 1973 (59 FR 48136).

### Inland Dune

#### *Habitat Description and Associated Species*

The Antioch Dunes are Pleistocene, wind-deposited sands adjacent to the San Joaquin River east of the City of Antioch in Contra Costa County. Exploitation of the dunes dates back to 1885, with the establishment of a pottery works. Subsequent activities that eliminated and degraded habitat included sand mining, agricultural conversion of sandy soils adjacent to the dunes, industrialization, urban expansion, power line right-of-way and fire break maintenance, and off-road vehicle recreation. Large numbers of black locust and other weedy, non-native plants have invaded the disturbed dunes, displacing endemic species from much of their habitat. Special-status species associated with Antioch Dunes are Contra Costa wallflower, Antioch Dunes evening-primrose, and Lange's metalmark butterfly.

## *Habitat Trends*

For the Antioch Dunes, a 1908 U.S. Geological Survey map shows approximately 190 acres of dune deposits along approximately 2 miles of river front, averaging about 0.17 mile in width (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1984, Howard and Arnold 1980). Today, approximately 70 acres of the original habitat remain, but most is severely degraded and lacks natural dune topography. Since 1980, the Service has owned and managed 60 acres of habitat and buffer as a satellite to the San Francisco Bay National Wildlife Refuge Complex and has negotiated agreements with adjacent landowners (including the Pacific Gas and Electric Company) to protect an additional 20 acres (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1984, Howard and Arnold 1980). The Service has removed the locust trees within the refuge boundary and is actively restoring the dunes.

## Interior Grasslands

### *Habitat Description and Associated Species*

Grasslands in the Central Valley were originally dominated by native perennial grasses such as purple needlegrass or tussockgrass (*Nassella pulchra*) and alkali sacaton (*Sporobolus airoides*). Currently, most grasslands in the Central Valley are dominated by introduced annual grasses of Mediterranean origin and a mixture of native and introduced forbs. Please refer to the San Joaquin Valley Native Species Recovery Plan (Service 1998) for a complete description of this habitat and list of common and scientific names of plants and animals.

Federally endangered or threatened blunt-nosed leopard lizards (*Gambelia sila*), San Joaquin kit foxes (*Vulpes macrotis mutica*), giant kangaroo rats (*Dipodomys ingens*), Tipton kangaroo rats (*D. nitratoide nitratoide*), and Fresno kangaroo rats (*D. n. exilis*) occur in arid grasslands in the San Joaquin and Tulare Basins. Grasslands are used by the federally listed Aleutian Canada goose and the proposed mountain plover (*Charadrius maontanus*) for wintering areas. The threatened Alameda whipsnake (*Masticophis lateralis euryxanthus*) is found in grasslands adjacent to chaparral and scrub in Alameda and Contra Costa Counties. The Kern primrose sphinx moth (*Euproserpinus euterpe*) occurs locally in agricultural fields and grasslands in the Walker Basin in Kern County. Reintroduced California Condors (*Gymnogyps californianus*) (in the southern San Joaquin Valley) range widely and may forage in grassland habitat. Federally endangered or threatened plants, such as Bakersfield cactus (*Opuntia treleasei*), California jewelflower (*Caulanthus californicus*), Hartweg's golden sunburst (*Pseudobahia bahiifolia*), San Joaquin adobe sunburst (*P. peirsonii*), Ben Lomond wallflower (*Erysimum teretifolium*), Keck's checkerbloom (*Sidalcea keckii*), and San Joaquin wooly-threads (*Lembertia congdonii*) occur in isolated populations within grassland habitat in the San Joaquin and Tulare Basins. Other listed

plants include Clara Hunt's milkvetch (*Astragalus clarianus*) and Tiburon mariposa lily (*Calochortus tiburensis*) (in serpentine grasslands). The endangered San Joaquin adobe sunburst (*Pseudobahia personii*) is restricted to grasslands on adobe clay soils in the San Joaquin Valley. The large-flowered fiddleneck (*Amsinckia grandiflora*) occurs in grasslands on a few sites in Alameda, San Joaquin, and Contra Costa Counties. Showy Indian clover (*Trifolium amoenum*) originally occurred in grasslands from Mendocino to Santa Clara Counties, but is now extirpated from all but one site in Sonoma County.

### *Habitat Trends*

Less than 1% of remaining grassland areas in the Central Valley contain enough native grass species to be labeled either valley sacaton or valley needlegrass grasslands (GAP 1996).

### Alkali Desert Scrub

#### *Habitat Description and Associated Species*

Alkali desert scrub is dominated by low succulent chenopod shrubs including iodine bush (*Allenrolfea* sp.), saltbush (*Atriplex* spp.) and seepweed (*Suaeda* spp.). This habitat occurs most commonly on fine-textured, alkaline, or saline soils in areas of impeded drainage. Please refer to the San Joaquin Valley Native Species Recovery Plan (Service 1998) for a complete description of this habitat and list of associated plant and animal species.

Federally endangered or threatened blunt-nosed leopard lizards, San Joaquin kit foxes, giant kangaroo rats, and Fresno kangaroo rats occur in arid grasslands in the San Joaquin and Tulare Basins. Reintroduced California condors, a federally listed species, (in the southern San Joaquin Valley) range widely and may occur in alkali desert scrub habitat. Bakersfield cactus, Hoover's woolly-star, Kern mallow (*Eremalche kernensis*), palmate-bracted bird's-beak, and San Joaquin woolly-threads occur in isolated populations within alkali desert scrub habitat in the San Joaquin and Tulare Basins.

### *Habitat Trends*

Regional declines in alkali scrub habitat range between 63 and 90 percent. Much of the remaining alkali scrub that is suitable habitat for wildlife exists in small, fragmented, and widely distributed patches in the San Joaquin and Tulare Basins. The Küchler mapping designation of San Joaquin saltbush was used to represent the alkali scrub portion of the CALFED Focus Areas and totals

1,386,185 acres (Küchler 1977). By 1990, the potential natural vegetation of alkali scrub was reduced to 515,595 acres or a 63% reduction.

## Oak Woodlands

### *Habitat Description and Associated Species*

Several different types of oak woodlands occur in the Central Valley and central coast regions of California. Oak woodlands in the CALFED Program Focus Areas include stands dominated by: valley oak (*Quercus lobata*), mostly along rivers and streams on the valley floor and lower foothills; blue oak (*Q. douglasii*) and gray or digger pine (*Pinus sabiniana*), at low to middle elevations in foothills of the Sierra Nevada and Coast Ranges; coast live oak woodland (*Q. agrifolia*) in valleys and hills of the Coast Ranges; canyon live oak (*Q. chrysolepis*) and interior live oak (*Q. wislizenii*), near some CVP reservoirs; and Oregon white oak (*Q. garryana*) in and near service areas between Redding and Red Bluff. Transitional communities of mixed oaks, other hardwoods, pine, and chaparral occur among many of these woodland types (Forest and Rangelands Assessment Program 1988, Griffin 1977). These oak woodlands correspond to the valley oak savanna, Oregon oak forest, mixed hardwood forest, and blue oak-digger pine forest mapped by Küchler (1977), and can be considered to comprise a "cismontane woodland" category.

Federally listed species associated with oak woodland include: bald eagle, California condor, and California red-legged frog. Reintroduced California Condors (in the southern San Joaquin Valley) range widely and may occur in oak woodland habitat. California red-legged frogs occur in oak woodland in foothills of the Coast Range and isolated drainages in the Sierra Nevada. The candidate California tiger salamander occurs in oak woodland at the fringes of the Central Valley and in the Coast Ranges. The frogs and salamanders live in burrows in these woodlands during dry parts of the year. Suitable habitat for these burrows is essential to their survival. El Dorado bedstraw (*Gallium californicum* ssp. *sierrae*), California jewelflower (*Caulanthus californicus*), Mariposa pussy-paws (*Calyptridium pulchellum*), and San Mateo woolly sunflower (*Eriophyllum latilobum*) may be found in oak/chaparral habitats and Layne's ragwort (*Senecio laynei*) may be found in serpentine oak woodlands.

### *Habitat Trends*

Potential natural vegetation within the CALFED Program Focus Areas included an estimated 10,199,652 acres of cismontane woodland habitat. In the 1940s, woodland dominated by oaks and other hardwoods covered approximately 2,970,000 acres in the Sacramento Basin, 1,720,000

acres in the San Joaquin Basin, and 950,000 acres in the Tulare Basin (Weislander 1945). In 1990, cismontane woodland habitat within the CALFED Program Focus Areas was estimated at 8,424,391 acres (GAP 1996), representing a 17% decline from potential natural vegetation (Küchler 1977).

### Evergreen Hardwood and Coniferous Forests

#### *Habitat Description and Associated Species*

Coniferous and evergreen hardwood forests generally occur at higher elevations in the Sierra Nevada and Coast Ranges, on the margins of the Central Valley. This category comprises several forest types. Moist coastal forests in San Mateo and Santa Cruz Counties are dominated by redwood (*Sequoia sempervirens*) and Douglas-fir (*Pseudotsuga menziesii*). Montane forests in the Coast Ranges and Sierra Nevada are dominated by a variety of conifers including ponderosa pine (*Pinus ponderosa*), Jeffrey pine (*P. jeffreyi*), Douglas-fir (*Pseudotsuga menziesii*), California red fir (*Abies magnifica*), and white fir (*A. concolor*). In the Coast Ranges, forest stands may be dominated by evergreen hardwoods such as Pacific madrone (*Arbutus menziesii*), tan oak (*Lithocarpus densiflorus*), and California laurel (*Umbellularia californica*). Dry regions support woodlands and savannas dominated by pinyon pine (*P. monophylla*) and California juniper (*Juniperus californica*). On drier sites, stands may be dominated by cypress (*Cupressus* spp.) and fire-dependent species such as Monterey pine (*P. radiata*) and knobcone pine (*P. attenuata*).

Federally listed species associated with coniferous and evergreen hardwood forests are California condor, bald eagle, marbled murrelet (*Brachyramphus marmoratus*), and northern spotted owl (*Strix occidentalis caurina*). The California condor and bald eagle may occur over wide areas and are not specifically limited to coniferous forest. The Sierra Nevada bighorn sheep (*Ovis canadensis californiana*) may be found at higher elevations. The northern spotted owl and marbled murrelet require large tracts of old-growth coniferous forest as nesting habitat and are threatened by conversion to short-rotation forestry practices. Northern spotted owls occur in forests along the western and northern edges of the Sacramento Valley, and marbled murrelets can occur in Santa Cruz and San Mateo Counties. Other species which may be affected include the California spotted owl (*Strix occidentalis*), Yosemite toad (*Bufo canorus*), and mountain yellow-legged frog (*Rana muscosa*), which were recently petitioned for listing.



## *Habitat Trends*

Potential natural vegetation within the CALFED Program Focus Areas included an estimated 12,212,249 acres of coniferous and mixed forest habitat (Küchler 1977). In the 1940s, coniferous forest covered approximately 3,507,000 acres in the Sacramento Basin, 877,000 acres in the San Joaquin Basin, and 414,000 acres in the Tulare Basin (Weislander 1945). In 1990, coniferous and mixed forest habitat within the CALFED Program Focus Areas was estimated at 10,594,862 acres (GAP 1996), representing a 13% decline from potential natural vegetation (Küchler 1977). Hidden within these totals is a shift from commercially valuable redwood and Douglas fir to juniper and other less merchantable conifers. This shift has contributed to declines of species that need habitat with large trees.

## Chaparral

### *Habitat Description and Associated Species*

Chaparral habitats in the Coast Ranges are characterized by dense thickets of common chamise (*Adenostoma fasciculatum*), manzanita (*Arctostaphylos* spp.), ceanothus (*Ceanothus* spp.), scrub oak (*Quercus berberidifolia*), and other shrubs. Chaparral occurs mostly on steep slopes and ridge tops that have thin soils and are hot and dry during the summer. Moister variants of chaparral habitat occur in gullies and on cooler, north-facing slopes (Hanes 1977). The Alameda whipsnake, Presidio clarkia (*Clarkia franciscana*), Presidio or Raven's manzanita (*Arctostaphylos hookeri* spp. *ravenii*), and pallid manzanita (*A. pallida*) are found in chaparral habitats in Alameda, Contra Costa, and San Francisco counties. Other areas may contain Stebbin's morning glory (*Calystegia stebbinsii*), El Dorado bedstraw, white-rayed pentachaeta (*Pentachaeta bellidiflora*), San Benito evening-primrose (*Camissonia benitensis*), and showy Indian clover.

Patches of serpentine, volcanic, and granitic soils occur sporadically along the western flanks of the Sierra Nevada. Listed species associated with this soils are: Chinese Camp brodiaea, Mariposa pussypaws (*Calyptridium pulchellum*), Santa Clara Valley dudleya (*Dudleya setchellii*), Metcalf Canyon jewelflower (*Streptanthus albidus* ssp. *albidus*), San Mateo thornmint (*Acanthomintha duttonii*), fountain thistle (*Cirsium fontinale* var. *fontinale*), Red Hills vervain (*Verbena californicum*), Layne's ragwort, Tiburon jewelflower (*Streptanthus niger*), Presidio clarkia (*Clarkia franciscana*), and Springville clarkia (*C. springvillensis*).

El Dorado County gabbro soils support the following listed chaparral species: Stebbins' morning-glory, Pine Hill ceanothus (*Ceanothus roderickii*), Pine Hill flannelbush (*Fremontodendron californicum* ssp. *decumbens*), El Dorado bedstraw, and Layne's butterweed. The five El Dorado

County plant species occur primarily in the Pine Hill intrusive complex, a unique and localized geologic formation composed of gabbroic rocks. The Pine Hill intrusion occupies approximately 25,700 acres, and serpentine soils occupy an additional 10,000-15,000 acres in western El Dorado County. These species have a scattered distribution within chaparral and oak woodland Hill intrusion. Both gabbro and serpentine soils strongly influence plant distributions because of nutrient imbalances and other characteristics that favor the growth of plants specifically adapted to these conditions (59 FR 18774; Kruckeberg 1984).

Outcrops of the Ione Formation are primarily restricted to an area of about 35 square miles in Amador County. These outcrops form barren, gravelly, kaolinic soils that are inhospitable for most plants. Kaolin clays are relatively poor at holding several important plant nutrients. The Ione buckwheat (*Eriogonum apricum* var. *apricum*), Irish Hill buckwheat (*E. a.* var. *prostratum*), and Ione manzanita (*A. myrtifolia*) grow in openings within chaparral vegetation on lateritic soils crusts (cement-like crusts of yellow iron oxide) developed under a subtropical or tropical climate during the Eocene. Ione soils exhibit soil properties typical of those produced under tropical climates such as high acidity, high aluminum content, and low fertility (Singer 1978). These soils and the sedimentary deposits with which they are associated also contain large amounts of commercially valuable minerals including quartz sands, kaolinitic clays, lignite (low-grade coal), and possible gold-bearing gravels (Chapman and Bishop 1975). Ione buckwheat and Ione manzanita can tolerate the acidic, nutrient-poor Ione soils and are essentially restricted to this soil type.

### *Habitat Trends*

Fire suppression and reduced fire frequency have caused changes in the structure and species composition of large areas of chaparral. Longer intervals between fires has led to an increase in later successional species and slow-maturing species, greater standing biomass and dry fuels, and larger, more intense fires. Where fire is less frequent, many chaparral species decline. Also, roads, agriculture, and urban development have fragmented the habitat of some species. Changes in fire frequency and fragmentation and have contributed to the decline of several species.

Urban development increases local fire suppression efforts as well as directly removing chaparral habitat. Urban development in the foothills of the western Sierra Nevada, through expansion of residential neighborhoods and road construction and maintenance, has destroyed or degraded numerous populations of listed plants. Residential and commercial development around the communities of Cameron Park and Shingle Springs have caused the greatest losses in gabbro soils habitat. Fifteen active surface mines occur on private land near Ione, where the habitat of listed

plants continues to be degraded. Mining for quartz sand, clay, lignite, laterite, and gravel have destroyed a large proportion of the original habitat.

### Coastal Scrub and Coastal Grasslands

#### *Habitat Description and Associated Species*

Coastal scrub is characterized by California sagebrush (*Artemisia californica*) and coyote brush (*Baccharis pilularis*), and the coastal grasslands are generally dense grasses in low lying areas or sparse grasses mixed with forbs on hilltops and ridges (balds). Coastal sagebrush occurs mostly on steep slopes and thin soils, and coyote brush is found in deeper soils with minimal slopes. The coastal grasslands are characterized by a mix of native and European grasses. Coastal scrub is typically found adjacent to and interspersed with coastal grasslands.

Callippe silverspot butterfly (*Speyeria callippe callippe*), Mission blue butterfly (*Icaricia icarioides missionensis*), and San Bruno elfin butterfly (*Incisalia mossii bayensis*) are federally listed species that are largely restricted to coastal scrub and coastal grassland on mountains in San Mateo County, including San Bruno Mountain, Montara Mountain, Milagra Ridge, Sweeney Ridge and Skyline College. Isolated colonies also remain locally in San Francisco, Solano, Alameda, Contra Costa and Marin Counties.

Coastal scrub and grasslands may include the federally listed Sonoma spineflower (*Chorizanthe valida*), yellow larkspur (*Delphinium luteum*), and Baker's larkspur (*D. bakeri*).

The Alameda whipsnake is found in coastal sage scrub and chaparral adjacent to grasslands in Contra Costa and Alameda counties. The habitat of this species has been subject to over 150 years of urbanization and over 100 years of fire suppression. The populations of this species are extremely disjunct and genetic exchange between the 5 remaining populations is extremely low or unlikely.

The following serpentine endemics, are found on serpentine outcrops in these habitats: Bay checkerspot butterfly (*Euphydryas editha bayensis*), Clara Hunt's milkvetch, coyote ceanothus (*Ceanothus ferrisiae*), fountain thistle (*Cirsium fontinale* var. *fontinale*), Marin dwarf-flax (*Hesperolinon congestum*), Metcalf Canyon jewelflower (*Streptanthus albidus* var. *albidus*), San Benito evening-primrose, San Mateo thornmint (*Acanthomintha duttonii*), San Mateo woolly sunflower (*Eriophyllum latilobum*), Santa Clara Valley dudleya (*Dudleya setchellii*), showy Indian clover, Tiburon paintbrush (*Castilleja affinis* ssp. *neglecta*), and white-rayed pentachaeta.

Zayante soils are endemic to Santa Cruz County and occur predominantly near the communities of Ben Lomond, Felton, Mount Hermon, Olympia, and Scotts Valley, as well as the Bonny Doon area. Zayante soils are deep, coarse-textured, poorly developed, and well drained (USDA Soil Conservation Service 1980). A unique habitat within the Zayante sand hills ecosystem is sand parkland characterized by sparsely vegetated, sandstone-dominated ridges and saddles that support a wide array of annual and perennial herbs and grasses. Scattered ponderosa pine trees are often present. Species occurring in this habitat are Ben Lomond spineflower (*Chorizanthe pungens* var. *hartwegiana*), robust spineflower (*C. robusta*), and Ben Lomond wallflower (*Erysimum teretifolium*).

The following serpentine endemics, are found on serpentine outcrops in these habitats: Bay checkerspot butterfly, Clara Hunt's milkvetch, coyote ceanothus, fountain thistle, Hickmann's cinquefoil, Marin dwarf-flax, Metcalf Canyon jewelflower, Red Mountain campion, San Benito evening-primrose, San Mateo thornmint, San Mateo woolly sunflower, Santa Clara Valley dudleya, showy Indian clover, Tiburon paintbrush, and white-rayed pentachaeta.

### *Habitat Trends*

Much of the former coastal scrub and grassland in the San Francisco Bay Area is urbanized. The majority of the remaining natural habitat is largely restricted to ridges and mountains that are difficult to build on. Coastal scrub and its associated grasslands in San Mateo County have largely been destroyed or degraded by urbanization. The remaining isolated fragments are expected to be developed in the near future. In addition to urbanization, habitat modifications through changes in hydrology and fire frequency, as well as invasion of non-native species, are still affecting most habitats. The map developed by Küchler (1977) estimates that potential natural vegetation within the CALFED Program Focus Areas included 340,294 acres of coastal scrub habitat. In 1990, coastal scrub habitat within the CALFED Program Focus Areas had been reduced to 124,075 acres (GAP 1996), representing a decline of 64% from the potential natural vegetation estimated by Küchler (1977).

Although serpentine habitats are naturally fragmented and separated by areas of different geology and soils, serpentine habitats in the San Francisco Bay area have been severely reduced and fragmented by urban development and related activities in recent decades (Kruckeberg 1984; 57 FR 59053).

## *Role of Contaminants in the Decline of Species and Habitats*

### Drainage Water and Selenium Contamination

Soils on the west-side and southern end of the San Joaquin Valley are derived from marine sediments in the Coast Range and contain naturally high levels of arsenic, boron, chromium, molybdenum, and selenium, which are toxic or potentially-toxic trace elements. Evaporation has caused high concentration of these elements in near-surface soils and groundwater in those areas, and application of irrigation water increases these concentrations. Subsurface clay, underlying these contaminated soils, impedes vertical and lateral movement of irrigation water percolating below the root zone (Moore et al. 1990), causing a drainage problem.

To move contaminated water out of these saturated soils, deep ditches have been dug or subsurface drainage systems installed. The drainage systems take away harmful salts and excess moisture, thus lowering the water table to below the root zone for most crops. The effluent from these drains often contains salts, trace elements, and agricultural chemicals. Subsurface agricultural drainage water collected in such systems is pumped away or allowed to drain into surface ditches and canals, eventually discharged into ponds for evaporative disposal, or creeks or sloughs tributary to major streams and rivers. On average, approximately 0.7-0.8 acre-feet of subsurface drainage water is generated annually per acre of irrigated agricultural land on the west side and southern end of the San Joaquin Valley (San Joaquin Valley Drainage Program 1989). The historic and continuing discharge of subsurface drain water into surface waters of the San Joaquin Basin has resulted in degradation of surface- and groundwater quality through salinization and contamination by elevated concentrations of toxic or potentially toxic trace elements and agricultural chemicals.

In the drainage-impaired areas, evaporation ponds and agroforestry plantations are used for disposal of contaminated drain water. In 1990, 28 evaporation ponds (about 7,400 total acres) were utilized to dispose of drain water in Merced, Kings, Kern, and Tulare Counties. These ponds received approximately 30,000-40,000 acre-feet per year from a total of about 55,000 acres of irrigated lands (San Joaquin Valley Drainage Program 1990). Since 1990, the total acreage of evaporation ponds/basins has declined from about 7,000 acres to about 5,000 acres. The ponds are regulated by the Regional Water Quality Control Board by means of Waste Discharge Requirements (e.g., Order No. 93-136) that require creation of clean wetlands to mitigate unavoidable toxic impacts to breeding waterbirds.

Agroforestry disposal of drain water involves irrigation of various combinations of salt tolerant crops, shrubs, and trees with subsurface drainage wastewater. More than 40 agroforestry

drainage water disposal sites were established between 1985 and 1990 (Moore et al. 1990). Given current trends in rising ground water elevations and the general lack of acceptable disposal options other than agroforestry sites, it is expected that the expansion of agroforestry sites will exponentially accelerate within a 5-10 year planning horizon. Although it has been established that agroforestry plantations (like evaporation basins) are wildlife magnets in the extensively cultivated landscape of the San Joaquin Valley (Moore et al. 1990), the potential for contaminant hazards remains poorly documented. A small set of waterbird eggs collected by the Service from just two agroforestry sites in 1996 yielded the highest rates of selenium-induced embryonic malformation ever reported in the scientific literature (Skorupa 1998) and established that the method of furrow irrigation being used was attracting breeding waterbirds.

The extent and severity of the drainage problem in the western and southern San Joaquin Valley continues to worsen. Between 1991 and 1997 the acreage of land in the southern San Joaquin Valley with shallow groundwater rising to within 5 feet of the soil surface--having a drainage problem--has increased from 159,000 acres to 359,000 acres (DWR 1997); therefore, in the past 6 years, an additional 200,000 acres of agricultural lands have been added to the inventory of parcels requiring a disposal option for drainage water to stay in production. Land retirement (retirement from irrigation) is being planned in this area (on a willing seller basis) to remove the lands with the greatest drainage problem from production.

### Pesticides

Insecticides, herbicides, and rodenticides have been used for decades throughout the Central Valley, including the CVP service area. Farmers have used insecticides to eliminate crop damage caused by harmful insects and herbicides to reduce crop competition with weeds and other undesirable plants. Rodenticides have been used primarily to reduce or eliminate populations of ground squirrels and other burrowing rodents that can damage flood control levees and water delivery systems.

Beginning in the 1950's synthetic organochlorine (DDT, dieldrin, aldrin, endrin, toxaphene, lindane, chlordane, heptachlor, and Mirex) and organophosphate (*e.g.*, carbaryl and carbofuran) pesticides were extensively and increasingly used. Several organochlorine compounds persist in the soil for many years. In the Central Valley, the California brown pelican, American peregrine falcon, osprey, bald eagle, and California condor were seriously affected by DDT. Use of DDT was banned in the United States in 1972, and all of these species have increased their populations since that time. However, some birds may still be contaminated as a result of illegal or foreign application of DDT.

The quantity of pesticides used in the State--over 120 million pounds in 1980 alone (California Department of Food and Agriculture 1981)--is, in part, a result of the types of crops grown. For example, traditional cotton production uses more pesticides than production of any other crop (Service, undated). Acreage devoted to cotton production in the Tulare Basin increased by 330% between 1940 and 1980. During 1978, about 1.7 million acres in the Central Valley were devoted to cotton production, more acreage than for any other crop (~27% of the irrigated acreage in the Central Valley). The vast majority of the Central Valley's cotton production occurs within the San Joaquin Valley (Reclamation 1984). Of the almost 70 million pounds of pesticides applied in the Central Valley during 1980, a substantial proportion was used to produce cotton in the San Joaquin Valley (California Department of Food and Agriculture 1981).

## **Effects of Proposed Action**

This section discusses the effects of the proposed action on listed, proposed, and candidate species and their critical habitat, including the effects of actions that are interrelated and interdependent with the proposed action that will be added to the environmental baseline. Cumulative effects, which are discussed separately after this section, are the effects of future State, local, or private activities, not involving Federal activities, that are reasonably certain to occur in the action area. Effects are analyzed on an ecosystem level, including all species that could be impacted by the actions. Specific information on individual species can be found in the species accounts in Appendix C. Species of Concern are included in Appendix C for the purposes of providing technical assistance for these species. Specific information on habitat types and trends can be found in the Environmental Baseline section of this opinion.

## **Direct and Indirect Effects**

Direct effects include those effects that are the direct result of the proposed action. Indirect effects are caused by or result from the proposed action, are later in time, and are reasonably certain to occur. Direct and indirect effects include the effects of interrelated actions (actions that are part of the larger proposed action and depend on the larger action for their justification) and interdependent actions (actions having no independent utility apart from the proposed action).

## **Scope and Distribution of Effects**

The direct and indirect effects of the CALFED Program can occur in the legal Delta, Suisun Marsh and Bay, lands within the Central Valley watershed, the Santa Clara Valley watershed, the upper Trinity River watershed, the southern California water system service area, San Pablo Bay,

and San Francisco Bay by actions such as water impoundments and diversions, agricultural conversion and related operations, urban development, and operations and maintenance of the CALFED Program. Listed species and critical habitat occur throughout the study area on (1) native habitats, (2) agricultural lands, and (3) marginal habitats surrounding reservoirs, conveyance facilities, pumping plants, urban centers, and agricultural lands. Activities associated with the CALFED Program may thus directly or indirectly affect listed species or their critical habitat. For example, upstream water diversions affect the aquatic and riparian species downstream of the diversion. In addition, upland habitats supporting listed species are being converted to agricultural or urban land uses facilitated by availability and use of CVP/SWP water supplies. The CALFED Program may contribute to this habitat loss by improving the supply and reliability of CVP/SWP water.

### Timing of Effects

CVP/SWP water is diverted year-round, although the majority is delivered during the spring and summer growing seasons. Water impoundments capture heavy winter and spring run-offs, and diversions reduce water available during other parts of the year. Many species of fish require adequate flows during sensitive periods of their life cycle. Flood flows and spring runoff enhance the ecosystem when they: (1) scour out blocked channels to allow upward migration of fish, (2) supply cool, fresh water needed for spawning, (3) inundate essential spawning habitat to allow for spawning, and (4) assist out-migration of juvenile fish.

Activities associated with agricultural operations often occur during sensitive periods of terrestrial species' life cycles. Ground disturbance and pesticide application often occur during reproductive effort and juvenile growth. Breeding, feeding, and foraging of listed species can be disrupted by agricultural operations during mating, denning, nesting, whelping, or other reproductive behavior.

Loss of adequate flows needed to sustain listed and proposed aquatic species can reasonably be expected to reduce appreciably the likelihood of survival and recovery of those species. However, this should not be the case given the assumptions that (1) the CALFED Program will be implemented in a manner consistent with achieving the recovery goals for listed species identified in the MSCS; (2) actions identified in the ERP will be implemented; (3) the EWA will be implemented as described; (4) flow objectives identified in the ERP will be achieved; and (5) any future storage and conveyance improvements will undergo future tiered section 7 consultation to ensure these improvements are consistent with the conservation needs of listed species and the conservation aspects of the CALFED Program, including the ERP, EWA, MSCS, and Water Quality Plan.



Agricultural operations during the breeding seasons of terrestrial species can reasonably be expected to reduce the likelihood of survival and recovery of listed and proposed species. However, this should not be the case given the assumptions that (1) any site-specific direct and indirect effects to listed species associated with projects that trigger consultation requirements under section 7 or section 10 will be consulted upon following project-specific analysis and prior to the effect; (2) implementation of the ERP, MSCS, and recovery plans will be an integral part of project-specific consultation; (3) ongoing monitoring and mapping of listed and proposed species baselines is occurring through the Science Program; and (4) listed species baselines are increasing, or at least stable, based upon monitoring.

### Nature of the Effects

The pumping, delivery, and application of CVP/SWP water can adversely affect various aspects of the biology of listed species, including reproduction, growth, survival, migration, predator avoidance, and foraging. Conversion of habitats resulting from the construction and operation of CVP and SWP facilities has eliminated or greatly reduced habitat available to listed species. Activities such as water impoundments and diversions, agricultural land conversions and related operations, municipal and industrial development, and operations and maintenance are likely to continue to directly and indirectly affect listed species and their habitat. A detailed description of the nature of the effects of the pumping, delivery, and application of CALFED Program water follows. See Table 5 (following page) for habitats adversely affected by CALFED Program activities. A more complete explanation of habitat trends can be found in the Environmental Baseline section of this opinion.

**Table 5.** Activities associated with the CALFED Program and the habitats that may be directly or indirectly adversely affected. Actual effects would be determined during tiered project-specific review. An "X" denotes those activities that have the greatest impact on the habitat type, although the other activities may have an impact as well.

Habitat Type	Levee Integrity Program	Water Quality Program	Ecosystem Restoration Program	Water Use Efficiency Program	Water Transfer Program	Watershed Program	Storage	Conveyance	Science Program
Delta Aquatic Habitats	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Vernal Pool Habitats			X		X	X	X	X	X
Freshwater Wetland Habitats	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Riparian Habitats	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Coastal Beach/ Lagoon/Dune Habitats			X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Salt Marsh Habitats	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Interior Grassland Habitats	X		X	X	X	X	X	X	X
Alkali Scrub Habitats				X	X	X	X	X	X
Oak Woodland Habitats				X	X	X	X	X	X
Evergreen Hardwood and Coniferous Habitats				X	X	X		X	X
Chaparral Habitats				X	X	X	X	X	X
Coastal Scrub/ Grassland				X	X	X	X	X	X

## *Water Impoundments and Diversions*

Water impoundments and diversions include: construction and upgrading of dams, levees, pumping plants, and conveyance facilities; diversion of water out of the natural water course; and conveyance of the water to a different location. These activities have caused the loss and degradation of listed species habitat such as Delta aquatic habitat, wetlands, riparian corridors, coastal beaches and lagoons, and salt marshes. Diversions reduce the water available to water-dependent listed species such as Delta fishes and riparian- and wetland-dependent species.

The direct and indirect effects of water impoundments and diversions include the following:

1. Effects of impoundment, pumping and conveyance on fish include: direct mortality from pumping activities; mortality when listed fish and their predators are drawn into confined areas (such as the Clifton Court Forebay), leaving them vulnerable to predation; entrainment of fish into water diversion facilities where they are killed by the pumps; reverse flows of waters in the Delta and San Joaquin River which confuse fish and disrupt migration; diversion of fish into canals from which they cannot return to suitable breeding and foraging habitat; prevention of upstream migration by dams; dewatering of portions of the San Joaquin River upstream of its confluence with the Merced River that has eliminated native salmonids from the upper San Joaquin watershed; alteration of the magnitude, timing, and duration of flows; prevention of heavy spring run-off; constriction of low salinity habitat to deep-water river channels of the interior Delta; destruction of spawning, rearing, and refugial habitat; scouring of spawning areas by high flow releases from dams; changes in the hydrologic patterns in Delta waterways; movement of the mixing zone (X2) upstream from compliance points to the interior of the Delta, where foraging and breeding habitat is poor in quality and limited in area; delays in correcting Delta flow problems, caused by time lags of one to three days between water releases from CVP/SWP reservoirs and arrival of water in the Delta; water temperature fluctuations; and loss and degradation of shallow water habitat and salt marsh habitats.
2. Flow regulation affects vegetation structure by preventing regeneration of riparian corridors, changing salt marsh vegetation by altering salinity variability patterns, and degrading coastal lagoons. The vegetation in marshes around Suisun Bay has been increasingly converted from brackish to saltmarsh species due to the diversion of freshwater from the Delta, which has been further exacerbated by droughts. In addition, seasonal and annual variation in flows has been dampened, reducing the

effectiveness of dramatic vegetation shifts that is favored by some listed and sensitive plants and animals.

3. Construction of dams, pumping and conveyance facilities, and levees, as well as preparation of these sites for construction, have footprint effects that cause: direct loss of riparian bottomlands, salt and freshwater marsh and shallow water habitats, grasslands, vernal pools, and other upland habitats; flooding of riparian valleys and degradation of downstream riparian corridors; changes in hydrology and potentially to aquifers; and altered dispersal patterns of terrestrial species due to impassible barriers.

Construction of new facilities, raising existing dam elevations, and modifications of operating parameters of existing facilities may increase the amount of water available, thereby facilitating the continued conversion of native habitat as described below. Project-specific information is needed for a full determination of impacts of new facilities or modifications of existing facilities and operations, so these actions are not covered in this opinion.

Decline of habitats and species numbers would be expected to continue if the volume or reliability of water diversions and impoundments increase. In the absence of adequate conservation and recovery measures, degradation of listed species habitats and lack of recovery of certain listed species would be expected to continue as long as significant amounts of water continue to be impounded and diverted.

Water impoundments and diversions have ultimately led to the listing of many species and can reasonably be expected to reduce the likelihood of survival and recovery of listed and proposed species. However, this should not be the case given the assumptions that: the CALFED Program will be managed in a manner consistent with the ERP, MSCS, and Water Quality Program; flow standards identified in the Water Management Strategy, including the EWA and its Operating Principles will be met; CALFED Agencies do not implement additional discretionary actions (e.g., new contracts, contract amendments, facility construction) that would incrementally increase diversions and alter hydrologic and environmental conditions in the Delta until consultation on OCAP or other existing biological opinions is reinitiated and new consultations are completed; conservation actions and assumptions described in the **Description of the Proposed Action** of this opinion are fully implemented; discharges into surface water bodies by CALFED Agency water contractors resulting from CALFED Agency water impoundments and diversions will comply with the standards set in the biological opinion on the California Toxics Rule (file number 1-1-98-F-21); CALFED Agencies will consult on changes in quantities of deliveries, and in purpose of use under water contracts subject to ESA compliance from Agriculture to

Agriculture/Municipal and Industrial, where listed species may be affected; monitoring is implemented which shows that the baselines of the species in Appendix C are stable or increasing.

*Agricultural Conversions and Related Operations:*

Agricultural conversions and related operations that will likely be either directly or indirectly facilitated by the CALFED Program include: conversion of native habitats to agricultural fields; conversion of land use to more water intensive purposes; disposal of agricultural drainwater; application of pesticides; and mowing and harvesting operations. Agricultural conversion and related operations have contributed to the loss and degradation of listed species habitat such as Delta aquatic habitat, vernal pools, wetlands, riparian habitats, coastal habitats, grasslands, alkali scrub, oak woodlands, rare serpentine soil habitats, and Antioch dunes habitat. Most of the other types of habitats considered in this opinion have also been affected to some degree by agricultural operations.

The direct and indirect effects of agricultural conversions and related operations subject to section 7 consultation may include the following:

1. Direct loss of upland, riparian, and wetland habitats when native habitats are converted to irrigated agriculture either with associated CVP/SWP allocations or in anticipation of CVP/SWP allocations (e.g., via water transfers, water freed-up by water conservation actions). Conversion of native habitats such as vernal pools and associated uplands occurs by means of plowing and deep-ripping and reduces or eliminates the habitat's suitability for listed species.
2. Potential direct loss of upland, riparian and wetland habitats with the use of new water supplies from raising dams of existing project facilities, from building new project facilities, and from changes in operations improving water supply reliability.
3. Conversion of native habitats to irrigated agriculture indirectly facilitated by the CALFED Program via the following means:
  - a. Use of groundwater augmented by the CALFED Program via 1) recharge from the application of CVP/SWP water to agricultural land; 2) recharge from adjacent project facilities; or 3) recharge from CVP/SWP water applied to water banks.

- b. Use of tail water produced from application of CVP/SWP water to agricultural land.
  - c. Use of recycled water on agricultural land produced from application of CVP/SWP water to municipal and industrial development.
  - d. Use of additional water, locally or through water transfers, made available through the Water Use Efficiency Program.
4. Degradation and fragmentation of remaining habitat, potentially without regard for the need of dispersal corridors, greatly reduces its value for listed species.
  5. Effects to aquatic habitats from agricultural run-off including siltation of stream habitat and reduced water quality.
  6. Effects from agricultural drainwater contamination, an unwanted byproduct of irrigating poorly drained soils on the westside of the San Joaquin Valley include: reduced water quality (*e.g.*, high concentration of total dissolved solids); degradation of surface- and groundwater quality through salinization and contamination by elevated concentrations of toxic or potentially toxic trace elements (*e.g.*, arsenic, boron, chromium, molybdenum, and/or selenium); direct loss of habitat from construction of on-farm disposal options such as evaporation ponds and agroforestry plantations; and adverse biological effects in native species associated with drainage-contaminated habitats. The effects of selenium poisoning on avian species include: gross embryo deformities, winter stress syndrome, depressed resistance to disease due to depressed immune system function, reduced juvenile growth and survival rates, mass wasting, loss of feathers (alopecia), embryo death, altered hepatic enzyme function, and mortality. The potential effects of selenium on mammal species include: gross embryo deformities, reduced longevity, winter stress syndrome, depressed resistance to disease due to depressed immune system function, reduced juvenile growth and survival rates, food aversion and mass wasting, loss of hair and nails, reduced reproductive success, skin lesions, respiratory failure, lameness, paralysis, and mortality. Little information is available for the effects of selenium on reptiles and amphibians. Due to the close phylogenetic relationship between birds and reptiles, reptiles are likely to be similarly effected by selenium as birds. Effects of selenium on fish include: gross embryo deformities, growth inhibition, depressed immune response, mass wasting, changes in blood parameters and tissue structure, edema, reduced activity and

feeding, reduced survival, and mortality. The synergistic effects of selenium and mercury include embryo deformities, embryo death, reduced juvenile survival, behavioral abnormalities, depressed immune response, mass wasting, and mortality.

7. Insecticides, herbicides, and rodenticides applied to agricultural lands can adversely affect listed species by: direct mortality; secondary poisoning of predators and scavengers; degradation of habitat quality following herbicide application; loss of prey base after pesticide application; reduced water quality; impacting native habitat through pesticide and herbicide drift; and loss of pollinators.
8. Effects to terrestrial species include: loss of upland refugia near aquatic habitats; altered migration and dispersal patterns of animals due to large tracks of agricultural land; reduced likelihood of seed dispersal across agricultural fields; reduced survival in degraded habitats within and around agricultural operations; and reduced survival due to necessary operations such as mowing and harvesting.

Land conversion from native habitat to farmland is facilitated in part (directly or indirectly) by the supply of water, and continues to occur. The California Department of Forestry and Fire Protection (1988) predicted a net loss of 775,000 acres of native habitat in the Central Valley from 1980-2010. Between 1990 and 1996, a gross total of approximately 72,700 acres of native habitat were converted to farmland in 30 counties in the Conservation Program Focus area (California Department of Conservation 1994, 1996, 1998). Net trends in agricultural acreage were negative over this period due largely to land idling in the southern San Joaquin Valley. To identify trends over a longer period, we analyzed DWR land use data collected from 1972 to 1998 for 21 counties in the Central Valley and Central Coast. Although complicated by non-synchronous surveys and inconsistencies in survey area, analysis of these data indicates that net conversion of native habitat to agricultural and urban uses has averaged about 24,000 acres annually. Gross losses of native habitat have been considerably larger, because the net loss includes substantial increases in the "native" category from long-term idling or retirement of farmland. These recently created native lands may not constitute high-quality habitat for listed species. Expansion of agriculture into marginal or upslope lands continues to affect native habitat. The Service has identified at least 9,820 acres of endangered species habitat on 16 sites in Fresno, Kern, Madera, Merced, and Tulare Counties that have been lost to unpermitted conversions between 1997 and 1999. Changes to more intensive farming practices (from dryland farming to irrigated agriculture or from discing to deep-ripping) also can increase the severity of agricultural impacts on endangered species. Continued conversion of native habitats is one of the

greatest threats to the survival of listed species in the Central Valley. The number of listed species in California continues to rise, in large part due to the loss and degradation of habitat from agricultural conversion. Conversions will continue to occur as irrigated/cultivated agriculture in the Central Valley continues to expand.

The effects of CVP/SWP water deliveries on groundwater recharge may have indirect effects on native habitats. The CVP/SWP supplies a significant portion of the irrigation water contributing to aquifer recharge by surface diversion irrigation. In addition, the CALFED Program will evaluate options for increasing groundwater storage in aquifers in the Central Valley.

Groundwater pumping is used in many areas of the Central Valley to substitute for or supplement surface diversion irrigation water during dry years (Williamson *et al.* 1989). As a result, the CALFED Program may contribute to effects on irrigated farmlands and urban uses of water in the Central Valley. Any future evaluation regarding the adverse effects associated with land use changes would take into consideration the very complex interactions between surface and ground waters, the lack of data in many areas as to sources of water used at different times and in different years for irrigation and urban purposes, and the general lack of complete information on groundwater basin characteristics and use, and the complex economic and other factors related to groundwater use conditions.

Decline of habitats and additional listing of species is expected to continue if conversion of native habitat for agricultural purposes continues. Degradation of listed species habitats and lack of recovery of certain listed species is expected to continue as a result of continued agricultural operations and indirect effects of those operations.

Agricultural conversions, which can be an indirect effect of water impoundments and diversions, have ultimately led to the listing of many species and can reasonably be expected to reduce the likelihood of survival and recovery of these species. However, this should not be the case given the assumptions that: site-specific effects to listed species will be consulted upon following project-specific analysis and prior to the effect; implementation of the ERP, MSCS, and recovery plans will be an integral part of site-specific consultation; CALFED agencies will work closely with the water users, providing them maps of listed species habitats within their service areas and guiding them through the consultation process to address site-specific effects; conservation strategies identified in the MSCS for service-area impacts will be in place for districts or areas receiving water made available through the CALFED Program; the Water Management Strategy, including the EWA, are implemented consistent with operating principles and species recovery goals; CALFED agencies will not implement additional discretionary actions beyond those listed in the OCAP biological opinion, this biological opinion, or any other previously completed biological opinion (e.g., new contracts, contract amendments, facility construction) that would



incrementally increase diversions and alter hydrologic and environmental conditions in the Delta until consultation on OCAP is reinitiated and completed; CALFED agencies and contractors comply with all programmatic and tiered opinions related to the CALFED Program; the CALFED Program will ensure full implementation of the conservation actions described in the **Description of the Proposed Action** of this opinion, including the ERP, MSCS, and Water Quality Program; discharges into surface water bodies by CALFED agencies resulting from CALFED Program-related water impoundments and diversions will comply with the standards set in the biological opinion on the California Toxics Rule (number 1-1-98-F-21); CALFED agencies will consult on all changes in quantities of deliveries and in purpose of use under water contracts subject to ESA compliance from Agriculture to Agriculture/Municipal and Industrial, where listed species may be affected; and Science Program monitoring is implemented which shows that the baselines of the species in Appendix C are stable or increasing.

### *Municipal and Industrial Development*

Municipal and industrial development facilitated by the CALFED Program could include the following: conversion of native habitat to municipal and industrial uses; conversion of agricultural land for municipal and industrial uses; construction of infrastructure and supportive networks; pesticide and herbicide application; and recreational uses. Municipal and industrial development has contributed to the loss and degradation of all of the habitats described in the Baseline section of this opinion.

The direct and indirect effects of municipal and industrial conversions that may be facilitated by the CALFED Program include the following:

1. Direct loss of upland, riparian and wetland habitats when native habitats are converted to municipal and industrial land use either with associated CVP/SWP allocations or in anticipation of CVP/SWP allocations (e.g., via water transfers, water freed-up by water conservation actions or land retirement). Conversion of native habitats to municipal and industrial development eliminates the habitat's usefulness for listed species.
2. Potential direct loss of upland, riparian and wetland habitats can occur with new supplies from raising dams of existing project facilities or from building new project facilities.
3. Conversion of native habitats to municipal and industrial development may occur via the following means:

- a. Use of groundwater augmented by the CALFED Program via (1) recharge from the application of new water supplies to agricultural land; (2) recharge from adjacent new facilities; or (3) recharge from water applied to water banks.
  - b. Use of recycled water produced from application of CALFED Program water to municipal and industrial development.
- 4. Degradation and fragmentation of remaining habitat, potentially without regard for the need of dispersal corridors, reducing its value for listed species, including extreme degradation of rare habitats found only in a certain region (*e.g.*, serpentine and gabbro soils).
- 5. Recreational disturbance effects including: off-road vehicle use which disturbs and degrades habitats such as dunes; recreational use of beaches that degrades habitat; trampling by hikers, dogs, and horses; disturbance to the normal behavioral patterns of native species; and other human recreational disturbances that degrade upland habitat and disrupt the natural cycles of native species.
- 6. Development of infrastructure and supportive activities including: road construction and maintenance which eliminates, fragments, and disturbs habitat; energy development that eliminates upland habitat; freshwater discharges from waste water facilities that alter salt marsh habitats; fire suppression for protection of human habitations, resulting in degradation of fire-dependent habitats such as chaparral; clearing of uplands for fire breaks; power line installation and maintenance; and waste disposal sites that eliminate habitat such as serpentine soils.
- 7. Effects from urban development including: increased erosion; increased roadkill incidence; increased pesticide use; increased predation by pets and introduced animals such as red foxes; and reduced water and air quality.

It has been estimated that between 12,000 and 50,000 acres of land are converted from agricultural use to urban use per year in the Central Valley of California, a number that is expected to increase in the future (Sokolow, 1997). Conversion of agricultural land to urban use between 1995 and 2040 has been predicted to exceed 1,000,000 acres (Thompson et al. 1995). Between 1990 and 1996, approximately 101,700 acres were converted to urban land use in 30 counties in the Conservation Program Focus area (California Department of Conservation 1994,

1996, 1998). This figure includes 49,705 acres of farmland, 20,476 acres of grazing land, 113 acres of water, and 31,366 acres of other land (predominantly native habitat). Urban lands are unsuitable habitat for many species that are able to persist in agricultural landscapes, and are virtually impossible to restore as wildlife habitat. Because one acre of irrigated agricultural land requires more water than that same acre in urban use, conversion of agricultural land to municipal and industrial use frees up some water that might be used to convert additional native habitat. Reducing water deliveries during drought is also more difficult on urban lands than on agricultural lands, so agricultural to urban conversions reduce the flexibility of the CALFED Program to respond to water shortages.

Several rare habitat communities (such as those on gabbro soils and serpentine soils) are currently under increasing pressure to be developed for municipal and industrial uses. Decline of habitats and species numbers is expected to continue as urban expansion persists and the population of California continues to rise. Degradation of listed species habitats and lack of recovery of certain listed species is expected to continue as a result of indirect impacts from urban centers.

Municipal and industrial development, which can be an indirect effect of water impoundments and diversions, can reasonably be expected to reduce the likelihood of survival and recovery of these species, because once the development has occurred, the opportunity of utilizing the land to contribute to survival and recovery is foreclosed. However, this should not be the case given the assumptions that: site-specific effects to listed species will be consulted upon following project-specific analysis and prior to the effect; implementation of the ERP, MSCS, and recovery plans will be an integral part of site-specific consultation; CALFED agencies will work closely with the water users, providing them maps of listed species habitats within their service areas and guiding them through the consultation process to address site-specific effects; conservation strategies identified in the MSCS for service-area impacts will be in place for districts or areas receiving water made available through the CALFED Program, where appropriate; the Water Management Strategy, including the EWA, are implemented consistent with operating principles and species recovery goals; CALFED agencies will not implement additional discretionary actions (e.g., new contracts, contract amendments, facility construction) that would incrementally increase diversions and alter hydrologic and environmental conditions in the Delta until consultation on OCAP is reinitiated and completed; CALFED agencies and contractors comply with all programmatic and tiered opinions related to the CALFED Program; the CALFED Agencies will ensure full implementation of the conservation actions described in the **Description of the Proposed Action** of this opinion, including the ERP, MSCS, and Water Quality Program; discharges into surface water bodies by CALFED agencies resulting from CALFED-related water impoundments and diversions will comply with the standards set in the biological opinion on the California Toxics Rule (number 1-1-98-F-21); CALFED agencies will consult on all changes in

quantities of deliveries and in purpose of use under water contracts subject to ESA compliance from Agriculture to Agriculture/Municipal and Industrial, where listed species may be affected; Science Program monitoring is implemented which shows that the baselines of the species in Appendix C are stable or increasing.

### *Operations and Maintenance*

Operations and maintenance activities include mowing, levee maintenance, dredging, pest control, erosion control, and flood control. Operations and maintenance activities can contribute to loss and degradation of most of the habitats listed in the **Environmental Baseline** section, but have the most impact on Delta aquatic habitats, vernal pools, wetlands, riparian habitats, grasslands, and alkali scrub.

The direct and indirect effects of operations and maintenance activities can include the following:

1. Canal maintenance or dredging that disturbs wetland habitat, increases siltation, and disturbs the normal behavior of listed aquatic species.
2. Direct mortality from vehicle traffic, mowing, and burning on levees and near canals.
3. Flood control (including flow restrictions, levee maintenance and installation of riprap) can interfere with the natural regeneration processes of forests and alter other upland and wetland habitats by removing vegetation or changing patterns of disturbance and sediment deposition.
4. Continued disturbance of habitats around facilities through maintenance activities prevents reestablishment of native habitat and disturbs hibernating or denning species.
5. Insecticides, herbicides, and rodenticides applied around facilities can adversely affect listed species through: direct mortality; secondary poisoning of predators and scavengers; degradation of habitats following herbicide application; loss of prey base after pesticide application; reduced water quality; pesticide and herbicide drift; and loss of pollinators.

Degradation of listed species habitats and mortality and disturbance of listed species is expected to continue as a result of continued operations and maintenance activities associated with CALFED Program facilities.

Operations and maintenance activities can reasonably be expected to reduce the likelihood of survival and recovery of these species. However, this should not be the case given the assumptions that: O&M plans are developed and implemented by CALFED Agencies and are consistent with section 7(a)(1) of the ESA; CALFED agencies will ensure full implementation of conservation actions described in the **Description of the Proposed Action** of this opinion, including the measures identified in the ERP, MSCS, and Water Quality Program; site-specific effects to listed species will be addressed through project-specific analysis and implementation of avoidance, minimization, and compensation measures in compliance with the MSCS and this opinion; implementation of and conformance with the ERP, MSCS, and recovery plans will be an integral part of management actions; discharges into surface water bodies resulting from CALFED Program water impoundments and diversions will comply with the standards set in the biological opinion on the California Toxics Rule (Service File # 1-1-98-F-21); monitoring is implemented which shows that the baselines of the species in Appendix C are stable or increasing.

#### Duration

The temporal effects of the CALFED Program can be divided into three types, based on duration of effect.

1. Short-term events whose effects are relaxed almost immediately. Routine maintenance activities tend to be short-term events.
2. Sustained, long-term events whose effects are not relaxed. Water flows vary from year to year depending on available flows and contract deliveries. The continued impoundment, pumping, and diversion of water has long-term effects on species dependent on historical water flows.
3. Permanent events that set a new threshold for some feature of a species' environment. The construction of dams and the corresponding loss of a riparian corridor and the surrounding land due to flooding is an example of a permanent event. Conversion of land for intensive agricultural uses or urban centers also permanently removes that habitat for use by listed species dependent on that habitat.

The CALFED Program was initiated to provide a steady water supply to water users. As such, the effects of the CALFED Program tend to be sustained events or permanent changes.

#### Disturbance Frequency, Intensity, and Severity

Water is diverted every year to fulfill various water rights and water contracts. Most agricultural fields are irrigated every year, although the intensity of irrigation may vary from year to year depending on available water. Some fields are fallowed each year. In the event of a prolonged low-flow period, the effect of continued diversions on listed species would be greater. Pesticides are applied every year, often more than once a year, on most fields.

Conversions of habitat indirectly caused by the CALFED Program could reduce the range of many listed species. Listed species may or may not be able to recover from repeated disturbance, depending on the sensitivity of the species, the severity of the disturbance, and the other stressors in its environment. Listed species tend to be more sensitive to disturbance and habitat loss, simply due to their restricted range. Each species will react differently to the disturbance. Refer to the individual species accounts in Appendix C for explanation of the reasons for decline and sensitivity to disturbance.

Even relatively small land conversions indirectly caused by the CALFED Program in rare habitats such as gabbro soils, serpentine soils, dunes, and vernal pools can significantly reduce the range of already rare species. This can be especially true of listed plant species that are dependent on specific soil types for survival, as well as the animal species that utilize those plants.

The disturbances and habitat loss that could be caused by the CALFED Program could leave species more vulnerable to other stressors in their environment, such as floods, drought, fires, disease, pollution, and predators. Species with severely restricted ranges become vulnerable to inbreeding, hybridization with other subspecies, and genetic drift. Severe or moderate disturbances can decrease the recovery rate of a species or reduce the chances of recovery. Many direct, indirect, interrelated, and interdependent effects of the CALFED Program are expected to occur.

## Effects of CALFED Program Elements

### Levee System Integrity Program

The Levee System Integrity Program includes programs to: reconstruct Delta levees to a uniform base-level of protection; provide above base-level flood protection for some Delta islands; minimize risks to levee integrity due to subsidence; enhance existing emergency management response; prepare a Delta Levee Risk Assessment and Risk Management Strategy; evaluate the appropriate level of protection for Suisun Marsh levees and evaluate the best method of protection; and facilitate funding and the permitting process for these projects. Similar programs have been implemented throughout the CALFED Program study area in the past by the Corps of Engineers, DWR, and local jurisdictions. Programs that have affected listed species include PL 84-99, Sacramento River Flood Control System Evaluation, Sacramento Bank Protection Program, American River Watershed Investigation, and numerous other smaller programs and local projects. Such activities in the past have caused habitat loss, fragmentation and degradation; habitat conversion; disrupted vital behavior such as reproduction, foraging and escape from predators, and resulted in direct take through construction and maintenance activities. Similar projects have impacted Delta aquatic habitats, vernal pool habitats, wetlands (permanent, seasonal, freshwater, brackish), riparian corridors, grasslands and coastal habitats. Site-specific information has not yet been developed for projects to be implemented under the Levee System Integrity Program, so these actions are not covered by this opinion. Discussion of effects of the program are based on the types and scope of projects expected.

#### Direct effects:

Projects to reconstruct levees to a uniform base-level of protection, increase protection above base-level, and to minimize subsidence and increase levee integrity may result in take through construction activities. Listed species may be killed or injured by construction equipment, during dredging, excavation, and fill, and may suffer vehicular mortality from increased traffic from construction and personnel vehicles accessing construction areas. Dewatering during construction may result in stranding and mortality of aquatic species. Normal behavior patterns may be disrupted by construction activities, impairing breeding, feeding and sheltering. Listed species may be displaced into unsuitable habitats and may suffer increased risk of vehicular mortality, predation, intra- and interspecific competition, disease, and starvation. Use of dredge materials in levee repair could mobilize contaminants bound to Bay and Delta sediments and could result in death or injury of listed species. Contaminants released during dredging and use of dredge materials may result in impaired reproduction, foraging, and sheltering, and increased susceptibility to disease and predation.

Habitat modification as a result of construction activities may also impair essential behaviors such as breeding feeding, and sheltering. Habitat may be lost or degraded due to construction activities. Vegetation may be cleared and grubbed from construction areas, resulting in a loss of habitat (both temporary and permanent), protective cover, retreat sites, movement corridors, and foraging areas. Removal of vegetation may result in increased flows, runoff, erosion, and siltation.

Increasing base levels of protection may result in standardization of levee profiles, resulting in increased levee footprints. Construction of expanded levee profiles may result in loss of habitat on and adjacent to existing levees, including loss of riparian vegetation, wetlands, agricultural lands that provide habitat values, grasslands, and aquatic habitats. Techniques to increase levee integrity, such as stability and seepage berms, will also increase levee footprint/profiles and may result in loss and degradation of habitats. Other methods to control seepage, such as eliminating or relocating canals, waterways, and seasonal and permanent wetlands near levees, may result in temporal and permanent loss of habitat. Geotechnical engineering practices (such as geotechnical fabric, soil over rock designs) may decrease a levee's ability to support vegetative cover and result in permanent loss or degradation of habitat. Levee protection techniques that result in an impermeable surface or subsurface may result in loss of vegetative cover, loss of retreat sites for listed species, and loss of prey species that support listed species. Installation of impermeable surfaces and subsurface eliminate soil crevices and burrows that provide retreats from predators, retreats from temperature extremes, estivation sites for listed species and prey of listed species (such as tree frogs, bullfrogs, lizards), and also results in a loss of small mammal prey species. Replacement of vegetation with hard structures (e.g., rock riprap) may result in loss of foraging habitat, movement corridors, loss of vegetative cover and subsurface retreat sites, may present barriers to normal movements, and may increase runoff, siltation, and contamination of waterways.

#### Indirect effects:

Reconstructing levees to a uniform or to increased levels of protection, and to increase levee integrity may preclude restoration actions that are considered necessary for recovery. Reconstruction of existing levees may preclude consideration of setback or cutoff levees that would restore natural hydrologic regimes and processes essential to provide functioning ecosystems upon which listed species depend. Implementation of a levee integrity may also restrict and preclude restoration of habitat in the vicinity of reconstructed levees, contributing to loss of movement corridors and continued fragmentation of habitat.



Indirect effects of levee improvements include alteration of the timing, magnitude, frequency and duration of water flows. Levee integrity improvements to control seepage may change hydrology of surface and ground waters. Increased flood protection may facilitate conversion of habitat to urban or agricultural uses, or may cause conversion to more intensive agricultural uses (i.e., irrigated pasture converted to row crops, vineyards, or orchards).

Indirect effects of bringing levees to the PL 84-99 standard (or other standards with similar effects) include maintenance activities required for eligibility for post-flood Federal disaster assistance. Maintenance activities are intended both to maintain levee integrity and to maintain ease of inspection so that damage such as boils, slumping, erosion, and subsidence can be easily detected. Maintenance activities include road repair, removal of woody vegetation, mowing, burning, disking, grading, herbicide application, and rodent control, including use of burrow fumigants and poison baits. Listed species may be killed or injured during any of these activities. Vegetation control may remove or degrade habitat and result in loss of cover, increased predation, loss of foraging areas, and retreat sites. Removal of vegetation may contribute to erosion, increased runoff, siltation, and contamination of waterways and wetland and aquatic habitats. Removal of vegetation may also alter hydrology by increasing runoff, timing, magnitude, frequency and duration of flows. Continued maintenance and vegetation control may prevent and preclude reestablishment of habitat on or in the vicinity of levees. Maintenance activities may disturb or disrupt essential behavior such as feeding, breeding and sheltering. Individuals may be displaced into unsuitable habitats and may suffer increased risk of mortality due to predation, vehicular strikes, increased inter- and intraspecific competition, disease, and starvation. Non-target species may be killed or injured by use of herbicides and pesticides. Use of herbicides and pesticides may contaminate wetlands or waterways and may result in impaired reproduction, foraging, and sheltering, and increased susceptibility to disease and predation.

In addition to maintenance activities, repairs under the PL 84-99 program, or similar programs, may result in take of listed species. Eligibility for public assistance may increase the frequency, number of sites, and acreage of impact of repair activities. Additional funding may also increase the frequency and amount of repair activities. If disturbance frequency exceeds the recovery rate of the affected species, declines in species numbers, reproduction, and distribution may occur.

Levee repair, improvement, and construction projects could ultimately lead to the listing of many species and could reasonably be expected to reduce the likelihood of survival and recovery of listed and proposed species. However, this should not be the case given the assumptions that: the conservation actions described in the Description of the Proposed Action will be fully implemented, including, but not limited to, the ERP, the Watershed Program, and the MSCS; CALFED agencies will request adequate funding for the conservation programs as necessary to

implement this biological opinion; adaptive management will be used to assess projects and programs and if found to interfere with recovery, the project or program will be modified or terminated; implementation of, and conformance with, all recovery plans will be an integral part of all site-specific consultations; the CALFED Agencies will closely coordinate with the Service during development and implementation of all O&M Plans and Resource Management Plans; any site-specific effects to listed species will be consulted upon following site-specific analysis and prior to the effect, and the Service and the CALFED Agencies are adequately funded and staffed to complete tiered site-specific consultations from this opinion and track implementation of conservation actions.

### Water Quality Program

The Water Quality Program is designed to provide good water quality for environmental, agricultural, drinking water, industrial, and recreational beneficial uses, and to achieve continuous improvement in the quality of water of the San Francisco Bay-Delta estuary. The success of the Water Quality Program, however, will depend upon close coordination with other CALFED Programs.

Paired with the Watershed Program, the Water Quality Program would improve overall water quality by reducing the loading of constituents (e.g., heavy metals, pesticides, residues, salts, selenium, pathogens, suspended sediments, temperatures, bromides, and total organic carbon) that enter Delta tributaries from point and non-point sources. Moreover, elements from these two Programs could reduce adverse concentrations of contaminants contained in receiving waters. The long-term impacts of the Watershed Program on water quality are expected to be beneficial. By reducing the mass of pollutants reaching the Delta from tributary streams, the program would improve in-stream water quality and provide benefits to CALFED target species. In-stream water quality would be improved in the Sacramento River and San Joaquin River Regions, and the reduced contaminant load in Delta outflow would benefit species in the Bay Region.

The Water Quality Program would result in general water quality benefits when paired with the Water Use Efficiency Program. The Water Use Efficiency Program provides incentives for water conservation and water recycling. Water use efficiency could reduce diversions from Delta channels and subsequently reduce the loads of contaminants returned to the channels thereby benefitting CALFED target species through reduced entrainment and impingement. Because one of the goals of the Water Use Efficiency Program is to focus on achieving benefits related to flow timing, reduced diversions could aid in the dilution of agricultural tailwater when discharged to a stream.

The Water Transfer Program could affect water quality, positively or negatively, depending on the timing of the water transfer. Water transfers could change river flows and subsequently, water temperatures. In addition, the source of water for a transfer and the timing, magnitude, and pathway of that transfer could affect species positively or negatively, depending on how that transfer occurs. Beneficial water quality impacts from water transfers would occur when the transfer would decrease concentration of contaminants through increased stream flow or through the transfer of water from a higher quality source. Because water transfers have the ability to positively or negatively affect water quality, analysis of water transfers will be evaluated on a case-by-case basis.

Improvements to Delta levees, under the Levee System Integrity Program, would result in short-term adverse effects on water quality during the waterside construction phase of the project. Toxic substances contained in old levees or in channel sediments could be released during levee work or while dredging. However, levee improvements would likely reduce the risk of failure during earthquakes and floods or as a result of gradual structural deterioration. A catastrophic levee failure could result in rapid sea-water intrusion thus increasing salinity in the Delta. This in turn could cause adverse effects to listed species habitats, food base, and behavior.

Surface water storage along with Delta conveyance improvements could adversely effect water quality by increasing turbidity during the construction phase. Excess sediment could be discharged into the various waterways which in turn could cause increased predation on native species or inhibit their ability to successfully forage. The storage of water in surface reservoirs could also adversely affect water quality. As new reservoirs are constructed, previously dry lands would become inundated and trace elements, including mercury, could become mobilized and then released to streams and the Delta. Water stored on Delta islands could increase Total Organic Carbon production. Surface water storage could also adversely affect Delta hydrology. Reservoirs typically are use to store water during abundant spring flows for later use in dry months or years. Thus, spring flows would be reduced or eliminated compared to unimpaired flows, and flow during dry periods would be increased.

However, surface storage could also provide environmental benefits if operated during periods of environmental concern (e.g., during upstream migration periods, when fish are spawning, etc.). Surface water storage could increase flexibility to provide for additional fresh-water releases and Delta inflows that could improve Delta water quality for ecosystem protection. These benefits would be most apparent in dry months and seasons when additional water would be needed to meet environmental needs, such as attraction flows and reduced in-stream temperatures. Upstream storage releases could also augment Delta outflows when needed to control sea-water intrusion and optimize estuarine conditions for the ecosystem and dependent fish species (as

indicated by the position of X2). Because water storage operations would have the ability to positively or negatively affect water quality, each storage facility must be considered on a case-by-case basis.

Overall, the Water Quality Program is designed to reduce the discharge to waterways of contaminants from municipal and industrial wastewater, urban and agricultural runoff, and drainage from abandoned mines. This reduction, in the long-term, would improve water quality in the Bay-Delta system and improve habitat conditions for CALFED target species.

### Ecosystem Restoration Program

The ERP is intended to achieve “recovery” or “contribute to recovery” of listed species in the Bay-Delta watershed through the implementation of restoration actions. The ERP identifies over 600 programmatic actions addressing several ecosystem elements that will be implemented throughout the Sacramento-San Joaquin River basin and Bay-Delta. Thus, fish, wildlife, plants, and the ecosystems upon which they depend would benefit from implementation of the ERP in a number of ways.

The ERP would restore and maintain ecological processes and structures that sustain healthy fish, wildlife, and plant populations. In conjunction with other programs such as CVPIA AFRP and the EWA, the ERP would increase the abundance and distribution of desired aquatic species including, but not limited to, delta smelt, Sacramento splittail, and sturgeon. In the first stage of ERP implementation, these aquatic species would begin a trajectory toward recovery from improved and reestablished ecosystem processes, including streamflow, sediment supply, floodplain connectivity, stream temperature, and biological productivity. Restoration of aquatic areas through setback levees and biologically constructed levee fixes would increase species habitat, and new fish screens would reduce entrainment losses. Likewise, the ERP would provide benefits to terrestrial vegetation and wildlife. The ERP would result in net increases in area for target habitat supporting plant and wildlife species, including special-status species. Measures would protect natural habitats from future activities and would reconstruct the historical pattern of habitats in the CALFED Program regions. Major categories of these actions, organized by Ecosystem element, and their effects on listed species are identified below.

The MSCS contains a detailed accounting of both the adverse and beneficial effects of ERP actions on specific species and their habitats. The effects analysis in the MSCS is incorporated into this document by reference.

## Water Use Efficiency Program

The Water Use Efficiency Program contains measures designed to manage the use of new and existing water supplies. These include measures to: support ongoing urban and agricultural sector processes for certifying and endorsing local agency implementation of cost-effective efficiency measures; provide technical and planning assistance to local agencies and districts in developing and implementing water use efficiency measures; and, institute a competitive grant/loan incentive program to encourage water use efficiency investments in the urban/industrial and agricultural sectors. The four WUE Program areas include Agricultural Water Conservation, Urban Water Conservation, Water Recycling, and Managed Wetlands. Important linkages exist between the WUE Program and other CALFED programs. Many of these programs, and their effects, are discussed in detail under the respective portions of this opinion. Conversions of native and agricultural habitats and related operations either directly or indirectly facilitated by increases in water supplies made through conservation can include: conversion of native habitats to agricultural use; conversion of agricultural land to more water intensive purposes; conversion of agricultural land to urban use; pesticide application and runoff, and contaminant loading; and, changes in hydrology, water flow timing and structure. These operations have contributed to the loss, degradation or conversion of listed species habitat such as riparian corridors, annual grasslands, certain types of agricultural lands, vernal pools, aquatic and coastal habitats. Most of the other habitats discussed in this opinion have been impacted by water conservation measures to some degree.

### *Direct effects of agricultural water conservation:*

Implementation of the WUE Program may include implementing measures on existing agricultural lands and waterways, such as: lining canals and waterways with concrete or other impermeable surfaces to prevent or decrease seepage and percolation; constructing covered canals or pipelines to prevent evaporative losses; control and removal of vegetation in and adjacent to canals and waterways to decrease loss of water through evapotranspiration; and regrading and leveling of agricultural lands to improve distribution uniformity of irrigation water. Listed species such as the giant garter snake may be killed or injured by heavy equipment during construction activities necessary to line canals, construct pipelines, mechanically remove vegetation, and grade and level agricultural lands. Dewatering during construction results in stranding and mortality of aquatic species. Normal behavior patterns will be disrupted by construction activities, impairing breeding, feeding and sheltering. Listed species may be displaced into unsuitable habitats and may suffer increased risk of vehicular mortality, predation, intra- and interspecific competition, disease, and starvation.

Methods of decreasing losses of water during conveyance may result in loss of natural habitat associated with irrigation and drainage canals, including seasonal and permanent wetlands and riparian vegetation along and adjacent to waterways. Water use efficiency programs for agricultural water uses will result in a reduction of agricultural irrigation and drainage water to support natural habitat areas. Lining or burying canals and waterways and removing vegetation along canals and waterways will result in loss and degradation of habitat, loss of protective cover, foraging areas, retreat sites, and movement corridors. Loss of cover and habitat along waterways may disrupt normal movements and present barriers to dispersal. Increased vegetation control associated with water use efficiency programs results in increased frequency of disturbance of listed species and their habitats. If disturbance frequencies are greater than the recovery rate of the species and/or its habitat, declines in species numbers, reproduction, and distribution may occur. Non-target species, including listed species and their prey, may be killed or injured by use of herbicides and pesticides. Increased use of herbicides and pesticides contributes to bioaccumulation of contaminants throughout the food chain. Use of herbicides and pesticides will contaminate wetlands or waterways and may result in impaired reproduction, foraging, and sheltering, and increased susceptibility to disease and predation. Grading and leveling of land to improve distribution uniformity of irrigation water may result in the loss of permanent and seasonal wetland habitats.

Many species depend to some extent on agricultural lands and the habitat that irrigation and drainage water provide. Due to loss of the majority of native wetland habitats in the Sacramento and San Joaquin Valleys, the federally threatened giant garter snake (*Thamnophis gigas*) is largely dependent on habitat associated with agricultural waterways. Water use efficiency programs could result in significant loss and degradation of giant garter snake habitat. Giant garter snakes use waterways and canals as habitat and as movement corridors but are highly dependent on and associated with vegetative cover for protection from predation and temperature extremes. Agricultural waterways now provide the only movement corridors between some populations of giant garter snakes, as well as the only movement corridors between protected habitat on state and federal wildlife refuges. Loss of habitat along waterways that may result from water use efficiency programs may lead to fragmentation of giant garter snake habitat, isolation of populations, loss of genetic exchange between populations, and potentially to local extinctions of small genetically isolated populations.

*Indirect effects of agricultural and urban water conservation:*

Agricultural and urban water conservation could indirectly result in conversion of native habitats to irrigated agriculture, or conversion of agricultural lands or native habitats to urban uses. Conversions could be facilitated by: use of groundwater augmented by conserved water via

recharge from the application of conserved water to agricultural land; use of tail water produced from application of conserved water to agricultural land, and use of recycled water on agricultural land produced from application of conserved water to municipal and industrial development. Loss of upland, riparian and wetland habitats may be expected as a result of conversions made possible by increased water availability.

Conversion of habitats may result in: loss of upland refugia near aquatic habitats; altered migration and dispersal patterns of animals; reduced likelihood of seed dispersal across agricultural fields; reduced survival in degraded habitats within and around agricultural operations; reduced water quality; lack of reproductive areas; reduced forage; increased mortality from operations such as mowing and harvesting; and interference with vital behaviors. Additional impacts that will result from conversion to residential use include: increased direct mortality; predation by pets; competitive interactions with domestic animals, and; interruption of vital behaviors through increased light, noise, and increased contact with humans and domestic animals.

The conversion of native habitats to agricultural lands indirectly caused by increased water availability acquired through conservation measures; can increase the acreage of agricultural lands to which insecticides, herbicides, and rodenticides are applied. This can adversely affect listed species by: direct mortality; secondary poisoning of predators and scavengers; degradation of habitat quality following herbicide application; loss of prey base after pesticide application; reduced water quality; impacting native habitat through pesticide and herbicide drift; and loss of pollinators. Conversion of natural habitats and agricultural lands to residential/industrial use will produce similar effects. If an increase in available water allows conversion to irrigated agriculture in areas of poorly drained soils an increase in the effects from agricultural drainwater contamination may be expected, as described above.

Implementation of water efficiency measures may eventually lead to reduced diversions. Fish entrainment may decrease as a result of reduced pumping and diversions. A net reduced demand for water could allow more flexibility in timing, such that diversions could be reduced to minimize entrainment of fish during critical life stages. Water use efficiency programs could also make more water available for instream flows, and improve management of water for managed wetlands. Reduction in agricultural and urban runoff may improve water quality in the Delta and its tributaries and subsequently decrease the effects of contaminants on listed species and their habitats. Improved water efficiency may also reduce the need for other storage and conveyance projects, and thereby avoid the potentially large environmental effects of implementing those programs.

Site-specific information is needed for future implementation of specific measures under the WUE Program, so these actions are not covered by this opinion. However, the following measures are expected to minimize the effects of the WUE Program: project level environmental documentation and review; coordination with the Water Quality Program; coordination with ecosystem improvements; incorporation of techniques to restore, enhance, and protect ecosystem values; and implementation of MSCS measures to avoid, minimize, and compensate take of listed species. These measures, in addition to implementation and coordination with the ERP are expected to have a net benefit to ecosystems and listed species.

Water conservation projects could ultimately lead to the listing of species and could reduce the likelihood of survival and recovery of listed and proposed species. However, this should not be the case given the assumptions that: the conservation actions described in the **Description of the Proposed Action** will be fully implemented, including, but not limited to, the ERP, the Watershed Program, and the MSCS; CALFED agencies will request adequate funding for the conservation programs as necessary to implement this biological opinion; adaptive management will be used to assess projects and programs and if found to interfere with recovery, the project or program will be modified or terminated; CALFED agencies will work closely with water users, providing them with maps of listed species habitats within their Service areas and guiding them through the consultation process to address site-specific effects; CALFED Agencies will encourage the completion of HCPs encompassing the affected areas; implementation of, and conformance with, all recovery plans will be an integral part of all site-specific consultations; the CALFED Agencies will closely coordinate with the Service during development and implementation of all O&M Plans and Resource Management Plans; any site-specific effects to listed species will be consulted upon, as appropriate, following site-specific analysis and prior to the effect, and the Service and the CALFED Agencies are adequately funded and staffed to complete tiered site-specific consultations from this opinion and track implementation of conservation actions.

### Water Transfer Program

The Water Transfer Program proposes a framework of actions, policies, and processes that, collectively, will facilitate water transfers and the further development of a Statewide water transfer market. Water transfers may encourage a more efficient use of water. For example, a water transfer based on the temporary fallowing of a particular field may produce revenue that could be used to improve the irrigation systems on that same field when it is brought back into production. The water that is no longer required for irrigation, when the field is fallowed, may be transferred for beneficial use elsewhere. Additionally, water transfers can provide benefits to the ecosystem by establishing a mechanism to 1) move water assets into and out of an EWA, once created, 2) move water from storage facilities (surface or groundwater) to provide in-stream



flows for the environment beyond the minimum requirement as well as provide salinity variability and reduced entrainment and impingement impacts associated with reduced or rescheduled diversions, and 3) provide water quality benefits by augmenting existing in-stream flows during agricultural return flow practices.

However, water transfers can also cause adverse effects to the environment primarily through changes to riverine flow and export. If transfers between agricultural and urban uses are timed differently from “usual” operation or out-of-basin transfers are made, water may not be available for use by fish and wildlife during key feeding or breeding times. This could also result in reduced habitat abundance attributable to reduced flow effects and/or reduced transport and attraction in response to reduced flow effects. Increased entrainment attributable to flow effects on species movement and distribution could also occur. Ground water transfers, or surface water transfers based on groundwater substitution, could result in land subsidence, degradation of groundwater quality, or impacts on vegetation dependent on groundwater.

Decline of habitats and species numbers is expected to continue if water transfers are made without regard to species needs. Degradation of listed species habitats and lack of recovery of affected listed species is expected to result if this consideration is not taken into account..

Poorly-timed water transfers could ultimately lead to the listing of many species and could reasonably be expected to reduce the likelihood of survival and recovery of listed and proposed species. However, this should not be the case given the assumptions that: the conservation actions described in the **Description of the Proposed Action** will be fully implemented, including, but not limited to, the EWA, the ERP, the Watershed Program, and the MSCS; agencies will request adequate funding for the conservation programs as necessary to implement this biological opinion; adaptive management will be used to assess projects and programs and if found to interfere with recovery, the project or program will be modified or terminated; the CALFED Agencies will closely coordinate with the Service during water transfer planning, any site-specific effects to listed species will be consulted upon following site-specific analysis and prior to the effect. The magnitude of transfers not addressed in the OCAP review and resulting from CALFED Program actions will be fully analyzed and addressed under section 7 or section 10 of the ESA, as appropriate.

#### Watershed Program

The Watershed Program would encompass the entire geographic extent of the CALFED Program. Any actions funded or otherwise guided by the Watershed Program through technical or financial assistance and coordination may impact any of California’s biological communities

(Table 1). Actions implemented in association with the Watershed Program has the potential to affect numerous species of animals and plants throughout the geographic area of the CALFED Program, including those evaluated under the MSCS.

If implemented correctly, the Watershed Program may result in minimal adverse effects to fish, wildlife, and plant species. An effective Watershed Program may ultimately be largely beneficial to biotic communities throughout the State of California by funding and providing technical assistance and coordination to promote positive actions and planning efforts within local watersheds to restore and maintain the health and integrity of ecosystems. An effective Watershed Program could minimize habitat fragmentation by supporting carefully designed land-use planning within watersheds. High water quality within watersheds could be another beneficial result of an effective Watershed Program. Restoration projects funded, or otherwise guided, through an effective Watershed Program could provide net benefits to local watersheds and their associated ecosystems. Habitat connectivity could be restored by restoration efforts throughout a watershed, thereby reducing habitat fragmentation and improving ecosystem integrity. An effective watershed program would be largely beneficial to the environment as a whole, though some direct adverse effects, however temporary, would likely result with the implementation of the Watershed Program. Foraging, reproduction, and dispersal of wildlife species inhabiting local watersheds could be disrupted by various watershed projects.

Watershed restoration projects would be largely beneficial in restoring habitat, dispersal corridors, and overall ecosystem function. However, direct adverse effects may be a temporary result of restoration activities. Foraging, reproduction, and dispersal could be disrupted by temporary disturbances like excessive noise during restoration activities (e.g., operation of heavy equipment), alteration of streambed, bank, and floodplain habitat to facilitate restoration, and frequent visual, auditory, and physical disturbances caused by vehicular and human traffic to, from, around, and within restoration areas. Individual species may be harmed or killed by the same disturbances mentioned previously.

Restoration projects within stream channels and adjacent corridors may temporarily result in increased inputs of sediments due to earth moving activities associated with restoration efforts. Aquatic or semi-aquatic species inhabiting stream reaches where sediment loads are increased may experience reproductive failure; siltation/sedimentation could lead to mortality of eggs/larvae of certain species (e.g., California red-legged frog, foothill yellow-legged frog, salmonid fishes, aquatic invertebrates) through suffocation.

Any temporary increases in sediment loads below restoration areas where earth moving activity has occurred may also reduce populations of organisms at the base of the food web, thereby

affecting food availability for primary and higher order consumers utilizing the stream and associated riparian corridor. A reduced availability of food locally may adversely affect the overall fitness of fish and wildlife species, if only temporarily.

### Water Management Strategy

#### Storage

CALFED is currently considering twelve separate surface water storage projects. These actions, especially new surface storage reservoirs, would result in losses of various habitat types. Habitat loss, alteration, and fragmentation caused by surface storage actions throughout the geographic area of the CALFED Program would likely adversely affect species of animals and plants, including those evaluated under the MSCS.

New reservoirs would transform biotic communities within watersheds, both downstream and upstream of dams. Streams that were once naturally/historically intermittent (dry for part of the year) are converted to perennial streams below dams which eliminates species adapted to an intermittent hydrological regime. New reservoirs also typically introduce both native and non-native species into watersheds where they did not occur previously. Introductions of non-native species (e.g., bullfrogs, centrarchid fishes, ictalurid fishes, salmonid fishes) can have catastrophic effects on local populations of native species due to competition, predation, or introduced diseases.

Expanding the capacity of existing reservoirs results in additional loss of natural habitat upstream of dams, increases fragmentation of habitat, and increases the extent of impassable barriers to movement and dispersal of native land-dwelling species not capable of flight. Even species capable of swimming (e.g., many invertebrates, reptiles, amphibians, and some mammals) are usually incapable of crossing large bodies of water (i.e., reservoirs). The presence of non-native predators found in most, if not all, reservoirs only adds to the effectiveness of reservoirs as barriers to movement and dispersal. Ultimately, habitat fragmentation and the introduction of non-native species can create barriers to gene flow which can threaten the long-term viability of local populations of native species of both animals and plants.

New reservoirs, and at least some reservoir enlargements, would be accompanied by the installation of conveyance conduits to facilitate water transfers. The construction of conveyance structures would lead to additional losses, alterations, and fragmentation of habitat. Conveyance structures, particularly open-water canals, constitute impassable barriers to movement and dispersal for the vast majority of species incapable of flight. The potential effects of conveyance

structures are discussed in the effects section addressing the Conveyance element of the CALFED Program.

Ultimately, new and expanded surface water storage facilities could result in significant increases in both the rate and extent of growth/development throughout localities/regions benefitting from an effective increase in water supply.

In addition, reoperation of existing hydropower facilities for the primary purpose of water supply could result in changes in the timing and magnitude of flows downstream of the facilities. Thus, effects associated with new or expanded surface reservoirs also apply to these facilities. In addition, effects associated with any changed service areas may include land conversions (as described earlier in the document), including in modifications to the area of origin.

Specific effects of five of the twelve actions currently under consideration by CALFED Agencies, Los Vaqueros Reservoir Enlargement, Shasta Reservoir Enlargement, Millerton Reservoir Enlargement, Sites Reservoir, and Delta Wetlands (new reservoirs), are discussed qualitatively below. Because project-specific information is unavailable to quantitatively evaluate the effects of these actions, project-specific section 7 consultation is required for all storage projects and their associated effects.

#### A) Los Vaqueros Reservoir Enlargement (Contra Costa County)

Los Vaqueros Reservoir, an off-stream reservoir with a storage capacity of 100 TAF, may be enlarged by up to 400 TAF. An expanded Los Vaqueros Reservoir could result in the loss of as much as 3,340 acres of grasslands, woodlands, and riparian habitat, including mitigation land associated with the reservoir which was established to minimize adverse effects to the California red-legged frog (*Rana aurora draytonii*), San Joaquin kit fox (*Vulpes macrotis mutica*), and Alameda whipsnake (*Masticophis lateralis euryxanthus*). The potential effects of expansion of Los Vaqueros Reservoir are currently being evaluated. Concerns regarding expansion of this reservoir include: (a) expansion could threaten the viability of the local population of California red-legged frogs that depend on the mitigation area and remaining habitat around the reservoir for survival; (b) viability of San Joaquin kit foxes (*Vulpes macrotis mutica*) could also be threatened by an expanded Los Vaqueros Reservoir due to additional habitat loss and fragmentation, and potential elimination of a corridor between the northern and southern kit fox range; (c) enlargement of Los Vaqueros could result in impacts to other species as well, including those evaluated under the MSCS [e.g., California tiger salamander (*Ambystoma tigrinum californiense*)].

An enlargement of Los Vaqueros Reservoir may be followed by proposals for interconnections (conveyances) between Los Vaqueros and Mokelumne River, Hetch Hetchy Reservoir, or South Bay Aqueducts to store and distribute water from a variety of sources throughout the Bay Area. Reservoir interconnections would require new conveyance structures, which would result in multiple effects along and adjacent to conveyance corridors. As described above, installation of conveyance structures leads to loss, alteration, and fragmentation of all habitats traversed by the conveyance structures. Conveyance structures can be impassable barriers to movement and dispersal of both plant and animal species, including threatened and endangered species and those evaluated under the MSCS [e.g., San Joaquin kit fox and Alameda]. Ultimately, barriers to dispersal can inhibit gene flow within and between populations of plants and animals, which can be detrimental to the long-term viability of affected populations.

#### B) Shasta Reservoir Enlargement (Shasta County)

By raising Shasta Dam by as much as 6.5 feet in elevation (an approximate 300 TAF increase in storage capacity), at least 2,000 acres of habitat would be lost due to inundation. A portion of the McCloud River (protected under California State law) would be lost. All species inhabiting the 2,000 acres of habitat would be displaced, thereby intensifying inter-specific and intra-specific competition for resources locally. Mountain yellow-legged frogs (*Rana boylii*), and possibly tailed frogs (*Ascaphus truei*) could be directly affected due to habitat loss. Frogs upstream of the expanded reservoir could be adversely affected by non-native species (e.g., bullfrogs). Other animal and plant species may also be adversely affected by an enlarged reservoir due to habitat loss and fragmentation. Any enlargement of Shasta Reservoir would likely reduce the abundance and distribution of the Shasta sideband snail (*Monadenia troglodytes*), Shasta clarkia (*Clarkia borealis* spp. *arida*), and Shasta snow-wreath (*Neviusia cliftonii*).

When used to augment flows in the lower Sacramento River in the appropriate seasons, water stored in Shasta Reservoir may benefit aquatic species downstream (e.g., threatened and endangered fishes). An expanded Shasta Reservoir could also provide additional water for such environmental purposes.

#### C) Millerton Reservoir Enlargement

Millerton Reservoir, located on the San Joaquin River near Fresno, California, may be enlarged to a capacity of 1,240 TAF. An enlarged Millerton Reservoir may improve water-supply reliability and enhance flexibility to maintain instream flows and water quality in the San Joaquin River downstream of Friant Dam. The proposed enlargement may also improve the ability to manage San Joaquin Valley conjunctive use operations, regional water transfers, and flood control.

Approximately 3,500 acres of natural habitat would be lost as a result of reservoir enlargement. Numerous plant and animal species could be affected by an enlargement of Millerton Reservoir, including those evaluated under the MSCS.

#### D) Sites Reservoir

The establishment of the proposed Sites Reservoir, a new off-stream storage reservoir with a proposed storage capacity of 1.8 MAF, would result in the loss of at least 900 acres of oak-woodland and 70 acres of potential habitat for federally listed vernal pool crustaceans [i.e., vernal pool fairy shrimp (*Branchinecta lynchi*), vernal pool tadpole shrimp (*Lepidurus packardii*)]. In addition to impacts to vernal pool crustaceans, Sites Reservoir may negatively affect other species of animals and plants, including those evaluated under the MSCS [e.g., California Red-legged frog (*Rana aurora draytonii*), western spadefoot toad (*Schaphiopus hammondi*), California tiger salamander (*Ambystoma tigrinum californiense*), and adobe lily (*Fritillaria pluriflora*)].

As stated above, new reservoirs can completely transform biotic communities within watersheds, both below and above dams. Streams that were once naturally/historically intermittent (dry for part of the year) are typically converted to perennial streams below dams (through surface or ground water input) which eliminates species adapted to an intermittent hydrological regime. New reservoirs also can introduce both native and non-native species into watersheds where they did not occur previously. Introductions of non-native species (e.g., bullfrogs, centrarchid fishes, ictalurid fishes, salmonid fishes) can have catastrophic effects on local populations of native species due to competition, predation, or introduced diseases.

The seven remaining off-stream reservoirs being considered have been deferred, but may be revisited in the future, beyond Stage 1 of the CALFED Program. Montgomery Reservoir will be evaluated as an off-stream reservoir alternative to the proposed Millerton Reservoir enlargement. Schoenfield and Thomes-Newville Reservoirs, and the proposed Colusa Reservoir Complex could be evaluated later as an alternatives to the proposed Sites Reservoir. Currently, information is inadequate at this time to conduct any meaningful analyses of effects for any of the deferred reservoir projects mentioned above. However, the general effects for new surface reservoirs described above would be expected to result from any of these projects, should they be implemented in the future. Although the proposed Ingram Canyon Reservoir is to be deferred as well, an initial effects analysis specific to the proposed Ingram Canyon Reservoir is provided below.

Although deferred from Stage 1 of the CALFED Program, CALFED Agencies are conducting estimates of costs, benefits, and impacts of the proposed Ingram Canyon Reservoir. This new

reservoir, if approved, would be located south of the Delta in Ingram Canyon, Stanislaus County (approximately two miles west of the California Aqueduct and 32 miles south of Banks Pumping Plant). The proposed Ingram Canyon Reservoir would have a holding capacity of 820 TAF, and would function similarly to the existing San Luis Reservoir to add flexibility to Delta export operations under optimal biological and water quality conditions.

At least 3,500 acres of grassland, oak savanna, oak woodland, and chaparral habitat would be lost. In addition, at least 5 miles of intermittent stream would be lost due to inundation. All species of plants and animals living within the 3,500 acres to be inundated and intermittent stream would be adversely impacted by the proposed Ingram Canyon Reservoir, including those species evaluated under the MSCS [e.g., California red-legged frog, California tiger salamander, western spadefoot toad (*Scaphiopus hammondi*)]. The long-term viability of the San Joaquin kit fox could be threatened by the proposed reservoir through direct habitat loss, habitat fragmentation, and by the occlusion of an essential dispersal corridor maintaining gene flow between fox populations to the north and south of the proposed reservoir site.

#### F) Delta Wetlands

The Delta Wetlands proposal consists of converting two Delta islands comprising 11,000 acres, Webb Tract and Bacon Island, into surface storage facilities (reservoirs) and restoring two islands, Bouldin Island and Holland Tract, comprising roughly 9,000 acres to natural habitat. Together the two new reservoirs would provide approximately 250 TAF of water storage capacity. These new reservoirs are expected to improve flexibility in managing Delta fishes and water quality problems. Any modifications to the project description for this facility as described in our current biological opinion (File 1-1-97-F-76, May 6, 1997) would require revised consultation under section 7 of the ESA.

Restoring 9,000 acres across two Delta islands to natural habitat would likely benefit some plant and animal species living in the Delta that require natural riparian woodland and other natural habitat types for survival. The proposed reservoirs may provide habitat for migrating and some resident waterfowl.

However, the potential quality of water stored over peat soils underlying Delta islands has not been evaluated sufficiently. Conditions may arise in the proposed reservoirs, once constructed and filled, where microbial decomposition of the peat soils comprising the reservoir bottoms could result in highly nutrient-rich reservoir water. This nutrient rich water would not be appropriate for municipal uses. Furthermore, such nutrient rich water may be potentially detrimental if used to supplement Delta flows, since nutrient rich water could significantly increase the biological

oxygen demand where added to the Delta, thereby resulting in anoxic conditions within the water column. Anoxia within the water column can adversely affect and kill any aquatic organisms which respire aerobically.

#### G) Groundwater Conjunctive Use and Groundwater Storage

The CALFED Program has currently identified/proposed a target groundwater storage capacity of 500 TAF to one MAF south of the Delta to be implemented during Stage 1. The CALFED is currently evaluating the potential of groundwater conjunctive use/groundwater banking projects in all major groundwater basins within the CALFED solution area. Although the proposed groundwater conjunctive use/storage program has the potential to impart beneficial effects on the environment and plant and animal species within the geographic area of the CALFED Program, adverse effects also may occur.

Groundwater aquifers have the potential to be augmented with out-of-basin water with likely effects occurring within the watershed of origin. Donor streams may experience reduced flows due to water being siphoned off to distant aquifers in other watersheds. Reduced flows in streams can have effects on water quality, water temperature, riparian vegetation, and instream habitat. All species of plants and animals that utilize the affected riparian corridor for all or part of their lives may be adversely impacted by reduced stream flows. In addition, diverting water from a donor stream/watershed results in a net loss of water from the local watershed and groundwater aquifer. This net loss of water must be replaced by precipitation and, potentially, acquisition of water from distant donor streams/watersheds/aquifers.

#### Conveyance

The CALFED Program strategy is to develop a through-Delta conveyance alternative based on existing Delta configuration with some modifications, evaluate its effectiveness, and add additional conveyance and/or water management actions if necessary. The modifications to the existing Delta configuration will occur in both the south and north Delta. Specific effects of the through-Delta conveyance alternative under consideration by CALFED Agencies, is discussed qualitatively in the following sections. Because project-specific information is unavailable to quantitatively evaluate the effects of these actions, project-specific section 7 consultation is required for all CALFED conveyance projects and their associated effects.

The south Delta improvements proposed as part of the "Conveyance Program", excluding the ecosystem restoration components, have been considered in previous biological opinions by the Service (1-1-96-F-53 and 1-1-97-F-184). The draft biological opinion issued by the Service



concluded that the previously proposed Interim South Delta Program would jeopardize the continued existence of the delta smelt and the Sacramento splittail and destroy or adversely modify delta smelt critical habitat. The determination was based upon the project as it was described, and was as follows.

The Service reached the conclusion that reproduction, numbers, and distribution of listed species would be adversely affected by: increasing entrainment of all life stages of listed fish species through un-screened agricultural diversions in the south Delta and through the currently unscreened or newly constructed unscreened intake structures at Clifton Court Forebay as maximum pumping rates in the south Delta are incrementally increased from current limits up to 8,500 cfs initially, and ultimately up to 10,300 cfs; flows toward the south Delta are facilitated through the dredging of Old River to increase its cross-section; and inflow into Clifton Court Forebay is increased. These actions have the effect of increasing the indirect effects of predation upon completion of the new intake structure; and decreasing spawning and rearing habitat as construction modifies the Delta.

The Service reached the conclusion that implementation of approved recovery plan tasks aimed at enhancing aquatic habitat, reducing entrainment losses at water diversions, reducing in-channel dredging, reducing contaminant loading, reducing the effects of introduced species, and reducing the use of traditional levee maintenance practices would be precluded.

The Service reached the conclusion that the constituent elements of delta smelt critical habitat would be adversely modified or destroyed by: adversely affecting over five miles of the physical habitat essential to the species, increasing contaminant loading in Old River through dredging, modifying Delta hydrology and river flow, increasing water velocities, modifying salinities in the form of incremental upstream shifts in X2 placement, and indirectly affecting water quality in the San Joaquin River. These modifications to the constituent elements of delta smelt critical habitat would adversely affect adult migration and spawning, larval and juvenile transport, and rearing.

After these biological opinions were drafted, the CALFED Agencies defined actions that could be taken to improve overall ecosystem health in the south Delta while allowing south Delta facility improvements to move forward. This resulted in a series of proposed actions to improve and elevate the environmental baseline for listed species and move them toward recovery.

These proposed actions include: 1) regional ERP actions, 2) consolidation and screening of agricultural diversions, 3) implementation of the VAMP with subsequent export and flow targets, 4) construction and evaluation of a 500 cubic feet per second (cfs) test facility at the Tracy Pumping Plant to develop best available technology for fish screening and salvage for the intakes

to the SWP and CVP export facilities, 5) construction of a new screened intake for Clifton Court Forebay for the full export capacity of the SWP (10,300 cfs), 6) evaluation of the need to retain a separate CVP intake facility with interties to the SWP or to consolidate with the SWP facility, 7) increase SWP pumping by 500 cfs from July through September so exports could be reduced during the preceding February through June period, 8) formation of a Barrier Operations Coordination Team to operate the barriers, 9) implementation of mitigation actions to off-set the direct and indirect project effects, and 10) implementation of the Environmental Water Account.

The proposed North Delta Improvements are designed to address flood control, water quality, fish, and water supply reliability. Actions include modification of the Delta Cross Channel gates, channel dredging and/or setback levees in the Mokelumne River, and the creation of additional floodplain, wildlife, and fish habitat. Under the Preferred Program, north Delta improvements also include the study and evaluation of a screened diversion facility on the Sacramento River with a range of diversion capacities up to 4,000 cfs. This diversion facility between the Sacramento and Mokelumne rivers would likely include a fish screen, pumps, and facilities for upstream fish passage.

Under the Preferred Program Alternative, the DCC may be closed from September through July and possibly all months, which could increase delta smelt and splittail survival during January through July compared to DCC operation at the present. However, the additional closure of the DCC relative to present operation may increase the frequency and magnitude of net reverse flow conditions in the lower San Joaquin River.

Construction and operation of a screened diversion facility on the Sacramento River may be pursued during Stage 1 if the evaluations demonstrate that this facility is necessary to address drinking water quality concerns and it can be constructed without adversely affecting fish populations. The fish screens would be designed to prevent adult fish from leaving the Sacramento River and entering the new channel with the flow diverted into the Mokelumne River. Although the fish screen facility would mitigate potential entrainment impacts, other potential adverse effects would have to be addressed prior to constructing this diversion. Existing relationships indicate that reduced flow in the Sacramento River (from flow exiting through the diversion) would cause an increase in the proportion of flow entering Georgiana Slough. USFWS studies indicate that the survival of fish following the Sacramento River route toward Rio Vista may be several times higher than survival of fish entering the DCC and Georgiana Slough. The actual magnitude of survival, however, is uncertain and depends on other factors, including water temperature and flow or salinity. In addition, abrasion, increased predation, impingement on fish screens or other diversion structures, stress from being handled, and movement to inappropriate habitat would reduce the survival of fish contacting the fish screens.

The diversion of additional Sacramento River water into the Mokelumne River channels and the central Delta would increase the frequency and magnitude of natural channel net flow direction in the Lower San Joaquin River, but reduce the magnitude of natural net channel flow in the Sacramento River below the diversion, primarily during February to June. Natural net flow conditions in the Lower San Joaquin River channel could increase productivity, enhance species movement, and reduce entrainment in Delta diversions. The effects of reduced flow in the Sacramento River below the diversion could adversely affect habitat

Dredging to enlarge the Mokelumne River would increase the channel depth and further alter the natural structural features. In the short term, dredging would remove benthic communities and mobilize fine sediments. Maintenance dredging may be required over the long term, resulting in periodic short-term impacts. Dredging also may cause levee instability, which could require additional revetment and levee maintenance activities. Impacts to native fish may be avoided or minimized through the use of accepted construction time windows and best management practices (see *Levee System Integrity Program*). These activities would require further consultation with appropriate fishery agencies. If channel enlargement is the result of setting back existing levees, fish habitat would potentially be increased. Installation of setback levees will be completed in coordination with the ERP (see *Summary of Key Planned Actions* and *Ecosystem Restoration Program*).

Implementing operational changes to the Delta Cross Channel has the potential to benefit native fish migration by keeping species in the main stem Sacramento River thus allowing them to reach preferred habitat areas. Resolving local flood concerns through levee setbacks has the potential to create additional riparian habitats and tidal wetlands thus allowing increased spawning, rearing and refugia habitats for target species. Improving existing levees and dredging channels in the north Delta, especially the channels of the lower Mokelumne River system, may also increase essential species habitat if soft fixes are used and work is performed within specified work windows.

Through increase in conveyance capability and modification of Delta hydrodynamics, decline of habitats and species numbers is expected to continue if north and south Delta improvements are made without regard to species needs. Degradation of listed species habitats and lack of recovery of affected listed species is expected to result if this consideration is not taken into account.

North and south Delta facility improvements examined in isolation could reasonably be expected to reduce the likelihood of survival and recovery of listed and proposed species. However, this should not be the case given the assumptions that: the conservation actions described in the Description of Proposed Actions will be fully implemented, including, but not limited to, the ERP,

the EWA, the Watershed Program, and the MSCS; CALFED Agencies will receive adequate funding for the conservation programs as necessary to implement this biological opinion; adaptive management will be used to assess projects and programs and if found to interfere with recovery, the project or program will be modified or terminated; the CALFED Agencies will closely coordinate with the Service during water transfers; and, project-specific effects to listed species will be consulted upon following project-specific analysis and prior to the effect.

Additionally, the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service assumes that the beneficial environmental actions will be implemented ahead of the south Delta facility improvements. The milestones included within this document are integral to successful implementation of beneficial actions. The Service understands that not all beneficial environmental actions will be implemented prior to all facility actions coming on line, but assumes that enough beneficial environmental actions will be implemented to raise the environmental baseline before facility actions become operational.

#### Environmental Water Account

The EWA is designed to provide fishery benefits without additional adverse effects on water deliveries to south-of-Delta contractors. The EWA supplements the existing environmental baseline (1995 Water Quality Control Plan; biological opinions for delta smelt, splittail, and winter-run chinook salmon, CVPIA sources of water including 800,000 acre-feet of (b)(2)). It can augment instream flows, delta outflows and hydrodynamics, and export curtailments to enhance environmental conditions or reduce take at key times of fishery concern. Benefits would be provided to all anadromous and native fishes which use the Delta and its watershed.

Part of the purpose of the EWA is to provide export reductions which would (a) reduce take or enhance environmental conditions, (b) minimize adverse effects of project operations at the State and Federal export facilities, and (c) enhance conditions for fish. The EWA provides an alternative to prescriptive standards that would be applied during periods of exceeding incidental take. The ability of the EWA to provide for additional fishery benefits over the pre-CALFED Program environmental baseline will depend upon the degree to which it must be used to reduce take. Implementation of the EWA will provide a benefit to fish. Tier 3 assets are assumed to be available and will be obtained to reduce take for fish when needed and as described below.

The EWA works on a principle of "no harm" to south of Delta deliveries, which means that the EWA essentially changes the *timing* of exports but does not change the overall magnitude or timing of deliveries.

The EWA is currently designed to be implemented for four years. The program may be continued if the benefits for fish occur and an evaluation of the sufficiency of assets is determined to be adequate. If new water storage and conveyance projects come online, additional fishery impacts are likely to occur through modification of the timing and quantities of water passing through the Delta watershed. To offset potential impacts and to provide for recovery of fish populations, additional operational rules will need to be developed which would allow for protection of fish. These operational rules may include either (a) new standards which limit the timing and magnitude of exports and water supply releases at key periods of concern for fish, (b) new sharing formulae to increase EWA assets, which would allow the EWA to offset impacts and implement restoration actions, or (c) a combination of the two.

If the EWA is not fully implemented, project operations will return to the regulatory baseline. In addition, the following clarifications are set forth: 1) CVP/SWP will implement both the flow and export provisions of either VAMP or, in the absence of VAMP, the flows and export curtailments in the 1995 biological opinion on OCAP; 2) if or when the yellow light level in the incidental take statement is reached, as identified in the 1995 OCAP biological opinion, the CVP/SWP will immediately reinitiate consultation and implement actions to reduce the amount or extent of take and reduce the indirect effects of project operations on fish as deemed necessary by the fishery resource agencies; 3) all new projects which may affect the environmental baseline identified in this opinion and the 1995 OCAP opinion will be subject to section 7 consultation to avoid and/or minimize the affects of those actions; and 4) other necessary regulatory provisions which may be required to meet the needs of listed species.

## Science Program

The Science Program will largely benefit listed species through implementation of the CMARP. CMARP will support monitoring and research presently not available for many species and their habitats, and will monitor implementation and progress of other CALFED Programs. Through monitoring, research, and assessment of species and program implementation, CMARP is expected to contribute information and recommendations to CALFED Agencies and stakeholders in support of the adaptive management process. Information developed by the Science Program will contribute to the recovery of listed and proposed species.

The Science Program is likely to result in capture, harassment, injury, death, and collection of listed species. These effects will occur during monitoring as part of implementing other CALFED Programs, during baseline monitoring of species populations, and as a part of conducting research projects. The potential effects of Science Program activities will be avoided and minimized by authorizing only qualified biologists to capture and handle listed species while conducting monitoring and research. To achieve this, these activities will be authorized only through the Section 10(a)(1)(A) Recovery Permitting process, or through subsequent, tiered, section 7 biological opinions, which will incorporate the same standards as the Recovery Permitting process.

## Multi-Species Conservation Strategy

The MSCS encompasses all CALFED Program elements and strategies and is the guiding document for species conservation throughout Phase III. Its implementation is expected to greatly benefit listed, proposed, and other species. In the MSCS, delta smelt, Sacramento splittail, Lange's metalmark, valley elderberry longhorn beetle, Suisun thistle, soft bird's-beak, Contra Costa wallflower, and Antioch Dunes evening-primrose have been assigned the conservation goal of recovery ("R"); and the San Joaquin Valley woodrat, riparian brush rabbit, salt marsh harvest mouse, California clapper rail, least Bell's vireo, giant garter snake, Delta green ground beetle, and western yellow-billed cuckoo, have been assigned the conservation goal, "contribute to recovery ("r"). The MSCS also describes how goals will be achieved through species prescriptions, which describe the future expected changes in evaluated species' habitats and populations with full implementation of the CALFED Program. If evaluated species prescriptions are achieved, CALFED Program goals for evaluated species will have been met. The CALFED Program is expected to undertake all or most of the actions necessary to recover delta smelt, Sacramento splittail, Lange's metalmark, valley elderberry longhorn beetle, Suisun thistle, soft bird's-beak, Contra Costa wallflower, and Antioch Dunes evening-primrose. The CALFED Program is expected to undertake all or most of the actions in the MSCS focus area

necessary to contribute to the recovery of San Joaquin Valley woodrat, riparian brush rabbit, salt marsh harvest mouse, California clapper rail, least Bell's vireo, giant garter snake, Delta green ground beetle, and western yellow-billed cuckoo. For other listed and proposed species, the CALFED Program is expected to avoid, minimize, and compensate for the adverse effects of its actions.

The MSCS contains two types of conservation measures: (1) measures to avoid, minimize, and compensate for the adverse effects to evaluated species caused by individual CALFED Program actions, and (2) measures to enhance evaluated species that are not directly linked to CALFED's adverse effects, are consistent with the ERP, and may be milestones. Both types of measures will be implemented through the use of ASIPs that will be developed for specific CALFED Program actions or bundles of actions. The MSCS also allows for additional, project-specific conservation measures to be included in ASIPs. Thus, the MSCS will contribute to avoiding, minimizing, and compensating for adverse impacts to listed and proposed species associated with other CALFED Programs.

Implementation of the MSCS could adversely impact listed species through implementation of conservation requirements. Habitat disturbance and conversion could occur during ecosystem restoration actions (e.g., construction of tidal channels in existing tidal marshes, or conversion of diked, marshes to tidal marsh may temporarily impact salt marsh harvest mice but is ultimately expected to lead to recovery). In addition, individual animals could be harassed during construction, implementation of minimization measures such as capture and relocation of individuals, and capture and handling during monitoring. These types of effects will be avoided and minimized by incorporating measures in the MSCS into ASIPs developed to implement conservation actions.

### Implementation Plan

#### **Cumulative Effects**

Cumulative effects are those effects of future State, local, or private actions on endangered and threatened species or critical habitat that are reasonably certain to occur in the action area considered in this biological opinion. Future Federal actions that are unrelated to the proposed action (e.g., non-CALFED Agency projects such as Corps flood control projects, and USFS or BLM actions) are not considered in this section because they require separate consultation pursuant to section 7 of the ESA.

Numerous non-Federal actions continue to eliminate habitat for listed and proposed threatened and endangered species in the Central Valley and Delta. Habitat loss and degradation affecting both animals and plants continues as a result of urbanization, oil and gas development, road and utility right-of-way management, flood control projects, overgrazing by livestock, and continuing agricultural expansion. Listed and proposed animal species are also affected by poisoning, shooting, increased predation associated with human development, and reduction of food resources. Continued growth and development are also likely effects. Cumulative effects associated with continued growth and development will likely adversely affect federally listed threatened and endangered species throughout the State of California.

In this section, a general description of the adverse impacts to habitats described in the Environmental Baseline section of this opinion are characterized. The habitat sections that follow describe in more detail how activities and events, many of which constitute non-Federal actions, are impacting listed species.

### *Cumulative Effects to Habitats*

#### Delta Aquatic Habitats

Delta fishes continue to be adversely affected by entrainment, upstream or reverse flows of waters in the Delta and San Joaquin River, destruction of spawning and refugial areas, change in the hydrologic patterns in Delta waterways, and constriction of low salinity habitat to deep-water river channels of the interior Delta (Moyle et al. 1992). Reduced or reversed flows due to pumping can confuse migrating fishes and lengthen out-migration periods. Pumping activities can concentrate Delta fishes and their predators in small areas where predation risk is increased. Fish can be killed by impingement on screening facilities at high flow rates, entrained through pumping plants, and diverted into unsuitable habitat. Reduction in food supply due to water diversions can also cause increased mortality. Water diversions contributing to these cumulative effects include intakes serving non-Federal pumping plants, municipal and industrial uses, water for power plants, and numerous small, private agricultural lands and duck clubs in the Delta, upstream of the Delta, and in Suisun Bay. Levee maintenance disturbs spawning and rearing habitat, and re-suspends contaminants into these waters.

Cumulative effects on the delta smelt and Sacramento splittail include any continuing or future non-Federal diversions of water that may entrain adult or larval fish or that may decrease outflows incrementally, thus shifting the position of these fish species preferred habitat upstream. Water diversions through intakes serving numerous small, private agricultural lands and duck clubs in the Delta, upstream of the Delta, and in Suisun Bay contribute to these cumulative effects. These



diversions also include municipal and industrial uses, as well as providing water for power plants. Delta smelt adults seek shallow, tidally influenced, fresh water (i.e., less than 2 ppt salinity) backwater sloughs and edgewaters for spawning. To assure egg hatching and larval viability, spawning areas also must provide suitable water quality (i.e., low concentrations of contaminants) and substrates for egg attachment (e.g., submerged tree roots, branches, emergent vegetation). Levee maintenance disturbs spawning and rearing habitat, and re-suspends contaminants into these waters.

The introduction and spread of non-native species may occur when the levees are breached or when separate creeks or river systems are reconnected. Several non-native species may adversely affect the delta smelt and splittail, including the Asian clam and three non-native species of euryhaline copepods. The Asian clam could potentially play an important role in affecting phytoplankton population dynamics. The non-native copepods may displace native species and at least one species of copepod (*Sinocalanus doerri*) is difficult for larval fishes to catch because of its fast swimming and effective escape response. Reduced feeding efficiency and ingestion rates weaken and slow the growth of young fish and make them more vulnerable to starvation and predation.

Other cumulative effects include: wave action in channels caused by boats that can degrade riparian and wetland habitat and erode banks; the dumping of domestic and industrial garbage, presenting hazards to the fish because they could become trapped in the debris, injure themselves, or ingest the debris; reduction of habitat, and introduction of pesticides and herbicides from the construction and operation of new and existing golf courses; oil and gas development and production remove habitat and may introduce pollutants into the Napa River; agricultural uses protected by levees reduce riparian and wetland habitats; residential or agricultural land use can fragment and reduce wildlife habitat and corridors; unscreened agricultural diversions throughout the delta divert all life stages of fish (Service 1996); and grazing activities may degrade or reduce suitable habitat.

Additional cumulative effects result from the impacts of point and non-point source chemical contaminant discharges. These contaminants include selenium and numerous pesticides and herbicides associated with discharges related to agricultural and urban activities. Implicated as potential sources of mortality for delta smelt and Sacramento splittail, these contaminants may adversely affect delta smelt and Sacramento splittail reproductive success and survival rates. Spawning habitat may also be affected if submersed aquatic plants used as substrates for egg attachment are lost due to toxic substances.

### Salt Marsh Habitats

Pollution, over-exploitation of commercial fisheries, water diversions, and introduction of numerous non-native species continue to affect the ecology of San Francisco Bay tidal marshes. A number of factors influencing the remaining tidal marshes limit their habitat value. Much of the East Bay shoreline from San Leandro to Calaveras Point is rapidly eroding. Many marshes around South San Francisco Bay are undergoing vegetational changes because of land subsidence caused by groundwater pumping. In addition, an estimated 600 acres of former salt marsh along Coyote Creek, Alviso Slough, and Guadalupe Slough are currently dominated by fresh- and brackish-water vegetation due to continuing freshwater discharge from South Bay wastewater facilities and are thus of lower quality for California clapper rails and salt marsh harvest mice. In San Pablo and Suisun Bays, the average salinities are increased by upstream diversions by CALFED and DWR water projects. Intertidal and riparian marsh habitats used by species such as the California clapper rail, salt marsh harvest mouse, and Suisun thistle may be degraded or destroyed by a variety of development and maintenance activities conducted by private organizations, state agencies, or local governments.

### Riparian Habitats

Factors contributing to the loss of riparian forest include: (1) continued conversion of non-irrigated land to agriculture; (2) levee construction and maintenance; (3) bank erosion; (4) grazing by livestock; (5) use of riprap for bank protection; (6) groundwater extraction; (7) flow regulation; and (8) the continuing development of land along the riparian corridor. Dams flood riparian vegetation in their impoundments and degrade it downstream by altering flows and geomorphic processes. Flood control interferes with natural processes that affect riparian forest regeneration. Controlled water release from dams reduces mid-successional habitat (dominated by brush and young to middle-aged trees). Unusually heavy or extended flooding of remnant riparian habitats can be detrimental to some terrestrial endangered species (e.g., riparian brush rabbits could drown or be isolated in small upland refugia where they would be more vulnerable to predation; giant garter snakes dormant in burrows could drown or be forced to seek new hibernacula).

### Freshwater Wetland Habitats

These wetlands continue to be drained for agricultural and urban use. Some wetlands may also be inundated by reservoirs and converted to open water habitat. Conversion of natural habitats to agricultural and urban uses results in loss of marshes, sloughs, ponds, and small streams. Many of the remaining wetlands may be converted from seasonally to permanently inundated systems.

Habitat value of some man-made wetlands (rice fields, canals, reservoirs) is adversely affected by maintenance activities, pesticide use, and contaminant loading.

### Vernal Pools

Activities that contribute to vernal pool habitat losses include plowing and deep-ripping for agriculture, energy development, urban development, flood control projects, highway and utility projects, and overgrazing (California Department of Fish and Game 1992; 58 FR 41700; 59 FR 48136). Limited distributional patterns increase the susceptibility of individual populations and entire species to severe declines from both natural and human-induced disturbances. Much of the remaining vernal pool habitat continues to be degraded by fragmentation, changes in hydrological patterns, off-road vehicle use, increased competition from non-native species, periodic drought, and miscellaneous human disturbances. In many areas, the cumulative effects of habitat loss, fragmentation, and degradation reduce the potential for remaining habitats to indefinitely sustain viable populations of rare species. Some vernal pool complexes are protected from disturbance, but the majority remain under pressure from development, and are threatened by activities such as agricultural and urban development, mosquito abatement, gravel mining, flood control and water conveyance projects, pipeline projects, reservoir construction, off-road vehicle use, intensive livestock grazing, refuse disposal, and other activities (59 FR 48136). Listed plant species endemic to vernal pool habitats are adapted to hydro-periods with winter inundation and summer drying, and are out-competed by marsh plants when hydrology is altered so standing water is permanently present.

### Coastal and Inland Dune Habitats

Continued recreational use of beaches causes disturbance to nesting snowy plovers and least terns from pets, beachcombers, and off-road vehicles. Dune habitats on coastal beaches continue to be altered by the introduction of invasive dune-stabilizing vegetation (especially European beach grass (*Ammophila arenaria*) and ice-plant (*Carpobrotus edulis*). Non-native dune-stabilizing vegetation competes for space with native dune plants and stabilizes open sand faces needed by native dune plants.

Lagoon habitats are altered by upstream water diversions, dredging, and associated changes in salinity, pollution, and siltation. During drought periods, the lack of rainfall, combined with human induced water reductions (i.e., diversions of water from streams, excessive groundwater withdrawals), degrades lagoon ecosystems and creates extremely stressful conditions for most aquatic species. The introduced yellowfin goby (*Acanthogobius flavimanus*) may also compete with the tidewater goby in lagoon habitats.

Ongoing threats to listed species at the Antioch Dunes include competition from weedy species, disturbance from fuel break maintenance and people walking to the riverfront, and ecological changes resulting from severe reduction, fragmentation, and degradation of the dune ecosystem (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1984).

#### Interior Grassland Habitats

Grassland losses have continued to result from urban expansion and conversion to irrigated croplands. Degradation of grassland quality also continues, especially on heavily grazed rangelands. Conversely, grasslands are also being created by conversion of other native habitats for grazing.

#### Alkali Scrub Habitats

Alkali scrub habitat continues to decline because of agricultural conversion, flood control, and groundwater pumping.

#### Oak Woodland Habitats

Continued habitat loss and decline results from clearing for livestock forage improvement, residential and commercial development, fuel-wood harvesting, agricultural conversion, and other activities. In many areas, remaining oak woodlands are declining due to lack of regeneration and survival of young trees. The reasons for the lack of stand regeneration in oaks are not well understood; however, competition with introduced grasses; fire suppression; and consumption of acorns and seedlings by livestock, rodents, and other wildlife have all been implicated (Mayer et al. 1986, Griffin 1977). Urban and agricultural development, rangeland improvement, fuel harvesting, and other activities continue to eliminate oak woodland habitats.

#### Coniferous and Mixed Forest Habitats

Continuing timber harvest creates large areas of early-successional clearcuts and even-aged young stands, reduces the structural complexity of forests, diminishes the availability of snags and deadwood habitat, increases the fragmentation of habitat with logging roads and clearcuts, and causes soil erosion into streams. Local areas of forest are severely affected by mining and the growth of urban areas.

## Chaparral Habitats

Chaparral habitat continues to be converted to urban areas and agricultural land. In many areas deterioration of remaining habitat results from fire suppression, which leads to excess accumulations of woody material and unusually large and intense conflagrations when fires eventually occur (Hanes 1977). Lack of ground-cover subsequently facilitates flooding and runoff. In turn, this may produce silting of downstream aquatic habitats.

The species associated with gabbro soils are declining as a result of: habitat loss, fragmentation, and alteration of natural ecosystem processes caused by residential and commercial development; grading, road construction and maintenance; fire suppression; herbicide use; unauthorized dumping; mining; and other activities (59 FR 18774).

Fifteen active surface mines on private land near Lone continue to remove Lone soils habitat; approved reclamation plans show that in excess of 3,500 acres of surface removal will occur. Plants on Lone soils are also threatened by disease, clearing of vegetation for irrigated/cultivated agriculture and fire protection, habitat fragmentation, residential and commercial development, changes in fire frequency, and ongoing erosion.

Sierra and Coastal serpentine habitats are being reduced and degraded by urbanization. Species on serpentine soils are also adversely affected by firebreak construction, agricultural land conversion, livestock grazing, trash dumping, off-road vehicle use, recreational gold mining, and trampling by hikers.

## Coastal Scrub and Coastal Grassland Habitats

Four major factors contribute to changes in the distribution and composition of coastal prairies: the introduction of highly competitive, non-native species; an increase in grazing pressures; the elimination of annual fires; and cultivation (Heady et al. 1988). In addition, urban growth is increasingly causing fragmentation and restriction of coastal prairie and coastal scrub habitat. Threats to species on these habitats include loss of habitat to urbanization, road-kill fatalities, illegal collection, off-road vehicle use, unsuitable levels of livestock grazing, trampling of food plants by horses and hikers, use of insecticides, rock and sand quarrying, and invasive non-native species.

Ongoing threats to listed and proposed species on serpentine habitats in the Bay Area include urban growth (including residential developments, golf courses, road and highway construction, and waste disposal), recreational use of open space (resulting in erosion and facilitating growth of

weedy species), invasion by non-native plants, and ecological changes resulting from severe habitat reduction and fragmentation (57 FR 59053).

Threats to endemic species of Zayante sandhill habitats include destruction of habitat from residential development, recreational activities, equestrian use, agriculture, invasion by non-native vegetation, changes in fire cycles, and sand mining.

#### Instream Flow, Water Impoundments and Diversions

Hydrodynamic conditions in the Delta are tied to continuing and future hydraulic modifications in the Delta made for various beneficial purposes, such as levee construction for land reclamation and flood control; channel dredging, enlargement, and deepening for navigation and levee maintenance; installation and operation of diversion pumps, siphons, and drainage pumps; and construction of non-Federal export pumping plants and associated facilities for water management. Increased demands may further reduce reservoir storage and will adversely affect riverine conditions. Reduced availability will result from: (1) operations that reduce the frequency of spill from upstream reservoirs; (2) build out by senior water right holders who currently do not make full use of their entitlements; and (3) changes in the criteria that define surplus flows. Continued upstream impoundment and diversion of snowmelt will reduce the potential for high spring outflows. Because surplus flows combined with required flows in the Water Quality Control Plan are critical for transporting fish larvae to rearing habitat and maintaining that rearing habitat in a suitable location in Suisun Bay, new diversions of surplus water will reduce the likelihood that fisheries declines will be reversed. Variation in climate between years can also exacerbate the cumulative effects of water diversions. Drought conditions increase demand for water while reducing the total amount of water available for fish and wildlife, agricultural, municipal and industrial uses, and can thus result in additional shortfalls in instream flow and upstream movement of the 2 parts-per-thousand (ppt) isohaline (X2). Extremely high precipitation events can also adversely affect endangered species. Delta fishes can suffer increased mortality if they are carried out of their preferred estuarine habitats toward San Francisco Bay by high outflows.

#### Contaminants and Water Quality

Agricultural and industrial activity can introduce contaminants into water used by threatened and endangered species. These contaminants may include selenium, arsenic, cadmium, chromium, copper, mercury, lead, nickel, silver, tributyltin, zinc, hydrocarbons, and organochlorines. Contaminants may enter surface waters through point source spills and discharges, urban and

agricultural runoff, deposition of atmospheric aerosols, and dredging that releases contaminants trapped in sediments.

The major source of water contamination in the Central Valley is agricultural drainwater, which has high salinity, high selenium concentrations (particularly in water draining selenium-rich soils in the San Joaquin Valley), and pesticides. Dumping of highly saline drainwater into rivers can have similar adverse effects on aquatic organisms.

Evaporation ponds which concentrate selenium-rich drainwater can attract wetland animals which may then die or suffer developmental abnormalities from selenium toxicity. Broadcast spray of malathion and other pesticides in agricultural areas can drift into non-target areas, kill plant pollinators, reduce insect prey species, and contaminate runoff. Pesticides cause death of the small invertebrates and zooplankton that support the food chain, and can be toxic to higher-level predators by bioaccumulating to increased concentrations. Eggs and larvae of aquatic organisms are particularly vulnerable to mortality or developmental abnormalities from pesticides. Levee maintenance and dredging resuspends contaminants trapped in sediments. Selenium, pesticides, and herbicides may adversely affect delta smelt and Sacramento splittail reproductive success and survival rates.

Spillage of wastewater from mining activity (particularly the Iron Mountain Mine) could potentially introduce large pulses of water laden with contaminants such as copper, zinc, and cadmium into Central Valley river systems and the Delta. Central Valley waters could also be contaminated by incidental leakage of gasoline and oil from vehicles and storage tanks, illegal dumping of waste oil and other chemical wastes, or accidental spills of chemicals or petroleum products from tank trucks or rail cars. Release of contaminated ballast in San Francisco Bay by ships further reduces water quality.

### Non-native Species

Non-native species continue to spread and be introduced into aquatic habitats of the Delta and Central Valley rivers. Releases of ballast water from ships or deliberate stocking of fish introduce non-native species into water bodies. Non-native euryhaline clams reduce the abundance of phytoplankton. (Euryhaline species are able to live in water with widely varying salinity.) Non-native diatoms growing in chains are more difficult for zooplankton to graze upon. Introduced copepods are more difficult to catch than native copepod species and may thus reduce food availability for native fishes. Introduced silversides and gobies may prey on eggs and larvae of native fishes. Larval striped bass and other non-native fish may compete for food and space with native fishes. Delta smelt may hybridize with the introduced Japanese pond smelt. Introduction

of large predatory fish such as northern pike has the potential to greatly increase mortality of native fishes.

Introduced bullfrogs pose a great threat to a variety of aquatic species, including snakes, fish, and other frog species. Adult bullfrogs are accomplished predators which can populate an area quickly and out-compete, as well as prey upon, the natives.

Introduced plants have also caused problems for native species. Non-native plants compete with native plants for light, space, and nutrients. The lack of natural population controls for non-native (e.g., predators, disease) can allow these species to out-compete native species and form a monoculture of an introduced species. Species such as the Brazilian elodea (*Egeria densa*) and yellow star-thistle (*Centaurea solstitialis*) have taken over aquatic and terrestrial habitats (respectively) in California.

#### Native Habitat Conversion and Associated Activities

Terrestrial and wetland habitats used by threatened and endangered species continue to be modified or converted by private entities, State agencies, or local governments. The increase in urbanization and agricultural conversion increases fragmentation and degradation of remaining habitat.

The uses associated with land conversions that occur include: oil and gas development; mining or quarrying for sand, gravel, or minerals; liquid waste treatment plants; wind farms; pipeline installation; transmission line installation; creation of reservoirs or evaporation ponds; construction of roads or other transportation infrastructure; urban or industrial developments; or agricultural conversion. Land conversions can result in take of a wide variety of threatened or endangered animal species, including but not limited to giant garter snake, California red-legged frog, San Joaquin kit fox, blunt-nosed leopard lizard, valley elderberry longhorn beetle, and vernal pool crustaceans. Numerous threatened and endangered plants of vernal pool, wetland, grassland, serpentine, and alkali scrub habitats are also affected by ongoing habitat conversion. Areas of endemism where habitat conversion would have disproportionately large effect on listed species include: remnant vernal pool complexes and riparian habitats in the Sacramento and San Joaquin Valleys; alkali scrub/grassland habitats of the San Joaquin Valley and Carrizo Plain; the San Bruno Mountain and Milagra Ridge area of San Mateo County; the gabbro and serpentine soils of the Pine Hill intrusion in El Dorado County; the Antioch Dunes in Contra Costa County; the Zayante sand hills of the Santa Cruz Mountains; and the serpentine soils of the San Francisco Bay and Santa Clara Valley areas. Many of these areas are currently under great pressure to be developed for municipal and industrial uses.



Conversion of native land for agricultural uses, and conversion of agricultural lands from one use to another, continues to be the most critical threat to listed species. Although the increment of habitat loss attributable to urban development appears to be increasing, these activities remain less significant, for most species, than conversion of native habitats for irrigated/cultivated agriculture. Agricultural conversion is generally not subject to any environmental review; is not directly regulated and is only infrequently monitored. Conversion of privately owned habitat without use of federally supplied water or filling of wetlands typically does not result in section 7 consultation with the Service, nor is it usual for there to be an application for a section 10 incidental take permit. Illegal fill of wetlands without Corps permits has occurred in the past and is likely to continue. In addition, water is used for groundwater recharge by some districts in the San Joaquin Valley. Such recharge may allow nearby landowners to pump groundwater for uses that may affect listed and proposed species.

The California Department of Forestry (1988) has predicted wildland habitat losses totaling 110,000 acres in the Sacramento Valley region and 465,000 acres in the San Joaquin Valley region between 1980 and 2010 as a result of agricultural conversion and urbanization. Much of the projected loss is likely to occur in the remaining blocks of habitat for listed and proposed species.

During habitat conversion threatened and endangered species could be killed or injured by operation of heavy equipment (crushing, burial by earthmoving equipment, discing, grading, mowing) or flooding of habitat. Listed species could be harassed during construction by noise, ground vibrations and compaction of burrows, construction lighting, and disruption of foraging and breeding behavior. Listed species not killed directly by operation of equipment would probably find themselves in sub-optimal habitat with a decreased carrying capacity due to lower availability of foraging and breeding habitat and greater vulnerability to predation. If listed species were displaced from converted lands into nearby native habitat, population densities would rise and intraspecific competition and predation pressure would be likely to increase. Animals that lose their fear of humans can become more vulnerable to shooting, poisoning, and roadkill. Habitat conversion also reduces the availability of suitable habitat for future recovery of species and isolates populations by increasing habitat fragmentation.

Some listed terrestrial species (e.g., bald eagle, San Joaquin kit fox, kangaroo rats, giant garter snake) are vulnerable to accidental or intentional unauthorized take by electrocution on electric fences or power lines, trapping, shooting, clubbing, or poisoning. Incidental disturbance from human activity may also cause disruption of normal foraging and reproductive activities. Listed plants may be threatened by vandalism or horticultural collecting. Listed butterflies can be threatened by unauthorized collecting by lepidopterists. These forms of unauthorized take are

likely to occur more frequently as the human population in the Central Valley increases and native habitat is fragmented and converted.

Vehicular traffic is an ongoing hazard that can cause roadkill mortality for a wide variety of terrestrial listed species (e.g., giant garter snake, blunt-nosed leopard lizard, San Joaquin kit fox, California red-legged frog). Traffic will be increased by construction of new roads and agricultural, industrial, and urban development. As barriers to dispersal, roads also reduce the probability that unoccupied habitat will be colonized by listed species. Roadside maintenance can affect listed plants by grading, mowing, erosion control, and spraying of herbicides.

Off-road vehicles can kill or injure listed plants and animals, as well as causing erosion, harassing animals with noise and ground vibrations, and crushing burrows used for shelter. Heavy pedestrian foot traffic can also compact soil and trample plants and small or dormant animals.

Rodent control measures can: reduce the availability of prey for listed predators (e.g., San Joaquin kit fox); injure or kill listed predators through secondary poisoning if poisoned rodents are eaten; injure or kill other listed species (e.g., Fresno, Tipton, and giant kangaroo rats, San Joaquin, or riparian, woodrat) that may eat rodenticide-treated baits; and reduce the availability of ground squirrel burrows as shelter and hibernation refugia for listed species (e.g., giant garter snake, San Francisco garter snake, kangaroo rats). Use of burrow fumigants on levees and other potential upland refugia can injure or kill listed species sheltering in ground squirrel burrows.

Urban and agricultural development results in increased abundance of domestic and feral cats and dogs, as well as wild predators (such as raccoons, red foxes, and skunks) that are attracted to trash dumping and suburban developments. This high abundance of predators can result in increased predation rates for small terrestrial vertebrates, including listed species (e.g., blunt-nosed leopard lizard, giant garter snake, California red-legged frog). Listed predatory species such as the San Joaquin kit fox may similarly suffer increased competition for space and food. Other indirect effects from urbanization include increased disturbance levels, ground slumping, garbage dumping, altered fire regimes, vandalism to protected habitats, increased foot traffic through protected areas, and unauthorized activities that adversely affect the survival of rare species.

Listed plant species can be buried or killed by dumping of trash, fill dirt, or garden debris. Dredging and clearing of vegetation from irrigation canals reduces foraging habitat and escape cover for giant garter snakes. Listed species in wetland habitats (including vernal pool crustaceans and eggs and tadpoles of California red-legged frogs) may be injured or killed by

mosquito abatement measures including pesticide application and predation by introduced mosquitofish.

Hydrological changes caused by development can include changes in the water table or increased runoff from up slope agricultural irrigation, residential development, or golf courses. Erosion and slumping of soils may result from changes in hydrology. These effects may change the suitability of habitat for listed plant species.

Transformation of watercourses and wetlands from seasonal to permanent hydroperiods by irrigation and damming alters the plant and animal communities, allowing colonization by bass, sunfish, bullfrogs and emergent marsh vegetation such as cattails and tule reeds. Tadpoles of California red-legged frogs typically metamorphose by late summer and are able to survive if wetlands dry in early autumn. Bullfrogs, which are larger and have a longer tadpole period, will competitively exclude California red-legged frogs in permanent water bodies. Bullfrogs, bass, and sunfish will also prey on California red-legged frog eggs and tadpoles.

Oil exploration poses a threat to many species as well. Construction of pads and roads associated with oil development, as well as the process of finding oil deposits can disturb large areas of habitat. Noise, vibration, traffic, and other human disturbances can also adversely affect species in the area.

#### Grazing and Land Management

Livestock grazing on State and private lands can cause erosion and degradation of riparian vegetation that provides habitat for listed species such as the valley elderberry longhorn beetle, southwestern willow flycatcher, riparian brush rabbit, and San Joaquin (riparian) woodrat. Livestock wallows may degrade seasonal wetlands that harbor listed species. Trampling can also collapse rodent burrows used as shelter by some listed species. Listed plant species can be adversely affected by overgrazing and trampling, which can reduce survival and reproductive output of plants. However, in some cases moderate levels of grazing may be beneficial to listed plants, or to species such as the mountain plover, by preventing establishment of competing species. Management for high deer and elk populations can also result in increased grazing and browsing pressure on listed plant species.

Most native plant species have adapted to a certain level of grazing pressure. Grazing management practices are often incompatible with the continued survival of certain species. For many species, the grazing management that would best suit the species is simply unknown. This may lead to inappropriate habitat management practices.

Logging on State and private lands can kill or harm listed species that require mature forest habitat (e.g., marbled murrelet, northern spotted owl). These species could be directly killed or injured by destruction of active nests, or indirectly harmed by increasing predation risk or reducing the availability of nest sites, suitable foraging habitat, or prey.

Fire management activities can change the fuel load and the frequency and severity of fires. The fire regime can affect listed plants by changing germination success, seed bank composition, adult mortality, and intensity of interspecific competition.

Management regimes that pose a threat to species include: lack of protection on private lands, lack of funding for protection, lack of funding for correct management, management practices for one species that eliminates another, or inappropriate habitat management due to lack of information on the biology of the species. Private land management practices can also be incompatible with the continued viability of species.

#### Population Size and Life History

Certain aspects of the biology of species put them more at risk of extinction from habitat degradation and fragmentation. Small populations and/or short-lived species (e.g., delta smelt have a one-year life span) are more at risk to random catastrophic events than large populations. Events such as drought, flooding, predators or pests, fires, and disease can pose a serious threat to a species that is limited to only several small populations. Small populations are also at risk of genetic drift, hybridization with closely related species or subspecies, and inbreeding. The lack of genetic variability leaves species at further risk to random events. Many native species are dependent on rare habitat types, leaving them at risk from development in these areas. Species with low density, low reproductive rate, large home ranges, or dependency on social facilitation are further at risk to multiple stressors.

#### **Conclusion**

#### Listed Species/Critical Habitat

After reviewing the current status of the species in Appendix C, the environmental baseline for the action area, the effects of the proposed action, and the cumulative effects, it is the Service's biological opinion that the extent of take anticipated at the programmatic level is not likely to result in jeopardy to the species listed in Appendix C, or destruction or adverse modification of critical habitat. In the absence of conservation measures or other CALFED Agency commitments listed in the Description of the Proposed Action, the effects analysis above would support a

conclusion of jeopardy for many of the listed species in the effected area. However, this no-jeopardy determination is based upon implementation of and compliance with all of the Key Planned Actions listed in the Description of the Proposed Action.

### Proposed Species

After reviewing the current status of the species in Appendix C, the environmental baseline for the action area, the effects of the proposed action, and the cumulative effects, it is the Service's conference opinion that the extent of take anticipated at the programmatic level is not likely to result in jeopardy to the species listed in Appendix C. In the absence of conservation measures or other CALFED Agency commitments listed in the Description of the Proposed Action, the effects analysis above would support a conclusion of jeopardy for many of the listed species in the effected area. However, this no-jeopardy determination is based upon implementation of and compliance with all of the Assumptions listed in the Description of the Proposed Action.

## INCIDENTAL TAKE STATEMENT

Section 9 of the ESA and Federal regulation pursuant to section 4(d) of the ESA prohibit the take of endangered and threatened species, respectively, without special exemption. Take is defined as harass, harm, pursue, hunt, shoot, wound, kill, trap, capture or collect, or to attempt to engage in any such conduct. Harass is defined by the Service as an intentional or negligent act or omission which creates the likelihood of injury to a listed species by annoying it to such an extent as to significantly disrupt normal behavioral patterns which include, but are not limited to, breeding, feeding, or sheltering. Harm is defined by the Service to include significant habitat modification or degradation that results in death or injury to listed species by impairing behavioral patterns including breeding, feeding, or sheltering. Incidental take is defined as take that is incidental to, and not the purpose of, the carrying out of an otherwise lawful activity. Under the terms of section 7(b)(4) and section 7(o)(2), taking that is incidental to and not intended as part of the agency action is not considered to be prohibited taking under the ESA provided that such taking is in compliance with this Incidental Take Statement.

Sections 7(b)(4) and 7(o)(2) of ESA do not apply to the incidental take of listed plant species. However, protection of listed plants is provided to the extent that ESA requires a Federal permit for removal or reduction to possession of endangered plants from areas under Federal jurisdiction, or for any act that would remove, cut, dig up, or damage or destroy any such species on any other area in knowing violation of any regulation of any State law, including the California Endangered Species Act, or in the course of any violation of a State criminal trespass law.

Due to the programmatic nature of these biological and conference opinions, the project- and site-specific information necessary to determine the amount and extent of incidental take of listed and proposed species associated with individual CALFED Program activities/actions is lacking. Thus, CALFED Agencies will initiate individual Section 7 consultations or develop individual habitat conservation plans in coordination with the Service for actions/activities which may affect listed and proposed species. Future biological and conference opinions that are tiered under this programmatic opinion will estimate, evaluate, and authorize the amount and extent of incidental take associated with project-specific actions. Incidental take of listed and proposed species is not authorized in this programmatic biological opinion.

### **Reporting Requirements**

The CALFED Agencies shall notify the Service immediately if dead or injured endangered species are found during implementation of actions or on CALFED Agencies' lands. CALFED Agencies must submit a report including date(s), location(s), habitat description, and any corrective measures taken to protect the individual(s) found. If endangered animals are captured, the report shall also include photographs of the individuals, condition of the individual, length of time held, release location, and any other pertinent information.

For all endangered species encountered during construction and construction-related activities, CALFED Agencies shall submit locality information to the California Department of Fish & Game (CDFG), using completed California Native Species Field Forms or their equivalent, within 90 calendar days of the species being observed. Each form shall have an accompanying scale map of the site (such as a photocopy of a portion of the appropriate 7.5 minute U.S. Geological Survey map) and shall provide at least the following information: township, range, and quarter section; name of the 7.5- minute or 15-minute quadrangle; dates (day, month, year) of field work; number of individuals and life stage (where appropriate) encountered; and a description of the habitat by community-vegetation type.

For those projects requiring a Service-approved biologist or where mitigation is required, a post-construction compliance report prepared by the Service-approved monitoring biologist shall be forwarded to the Chief, Endangered Species Division, at the Sacramento Fish and Wildlife Office within 60 calendar days of the completion of each project and shall include the file number of this consultation on the cover sheet (1-1-F-00-184). This report shall detail (1) dates that construction occurred; (2) pertinent information concerning the applicant's success in meeting project mitigation measures; (3) an explanation of failure to meet such measures, if any; (4) known project effects on federally listed species, if any; (5) occurrences of incidental take of

federally listed species, if any, (including handling and relocation); and (6) other pertinent information.

### REINITIATION-CLOSING STATEMENT

This concludes formal consultation and conference on the actions outlined in the request. As provided in 50 CFR §402.16, reinitiation of formal consultation is required where discretionary Federal agency involvement or control over the action has been maintained (or is authorized by law) and if: (1) the amount or extent of incidental take is exceeded; (2) new information reveals effects of the agency action that may affect listed species or critical habitat in a manner or to an extent not considered in this opinion; (3) the agency action is subsequently modified in a manner that causes an effect to the listed species or critical habitat that was not considered in this opinion; or (4) a new species is listed or critical habitat designated that may be affected by the action. In instances where the amount or extent of incidental take is exceeded, any operations causing such take must cease pending reinitiation.

Reinitiation will occur not later than 180 days prior to September 30, 2004. The purpose of the reinitiation is to evaluate the efficacy of the EWA and progress toward achieving the Milestones, including funding commitments, in conserving and promoting the recovery of listed species. The reinitiation of consultation is expected to result in supplemental biological opinions, which could be appended to the original biological opinions.

You may ask the Service to confirm the conference opinion as a biological opinion issued through formal consultation if the species are listed. The request must be in writing. If the Service reviews the proposed action and finds that there have been no significant changes in the action as planned or in the information used during the conference, the Service will confirm the conference opinion as the biological opinion on the CALFED Program and no further section 7 consultation will be necessary.

After listing of the species and any subsequent adoption of this conference opinion, the Federal Agencies shall request reinitiation of consultation if: (1) the amount or extent of incidental take is exceeded; (2) new information reveals effects of the agency action that may affect listed species or critical habitat in a manner or to an extent not considered in this opinion; (3) the agency action is subsequently modified in a manner that causes an effect to the listed species or critical habitat that was not considered in this opinion; or (4) a new species is listed or critical habitat designated that may be affected by the action.

The incidental take statement provided in this conference opinion does not become effective until the species is listed and the conference opinion is adopted as the biological opinion issued through formal consultation. At that time, the project will be reviewed to determine whether any take of the species has occurred. Modifications of the opinion and incidental take statement may be appropriate to reflect that take. No take of the species may occur between the listing of the species and the adoption of the conference opinion through formal consultation, or the completion of a subsequent formal consultation.

## **Appendices**

Appendix A--Maps

Appendix B--List of Listed and Proposed Species in Focus Area

Appendix C--Species Accounts

Appendix D--Proposed Programmatic Actions Evaluated

Appendix E--EWA Operating Principles

Appendix F--T&E Take Avoidance and Minimization Measures

Appendix G--T&E Compensation Measures

Appendix H--General Measures to Avoid and Minimize Take

Appendix I--Botanical Inventory Guidelines

Appendix J--Milestones

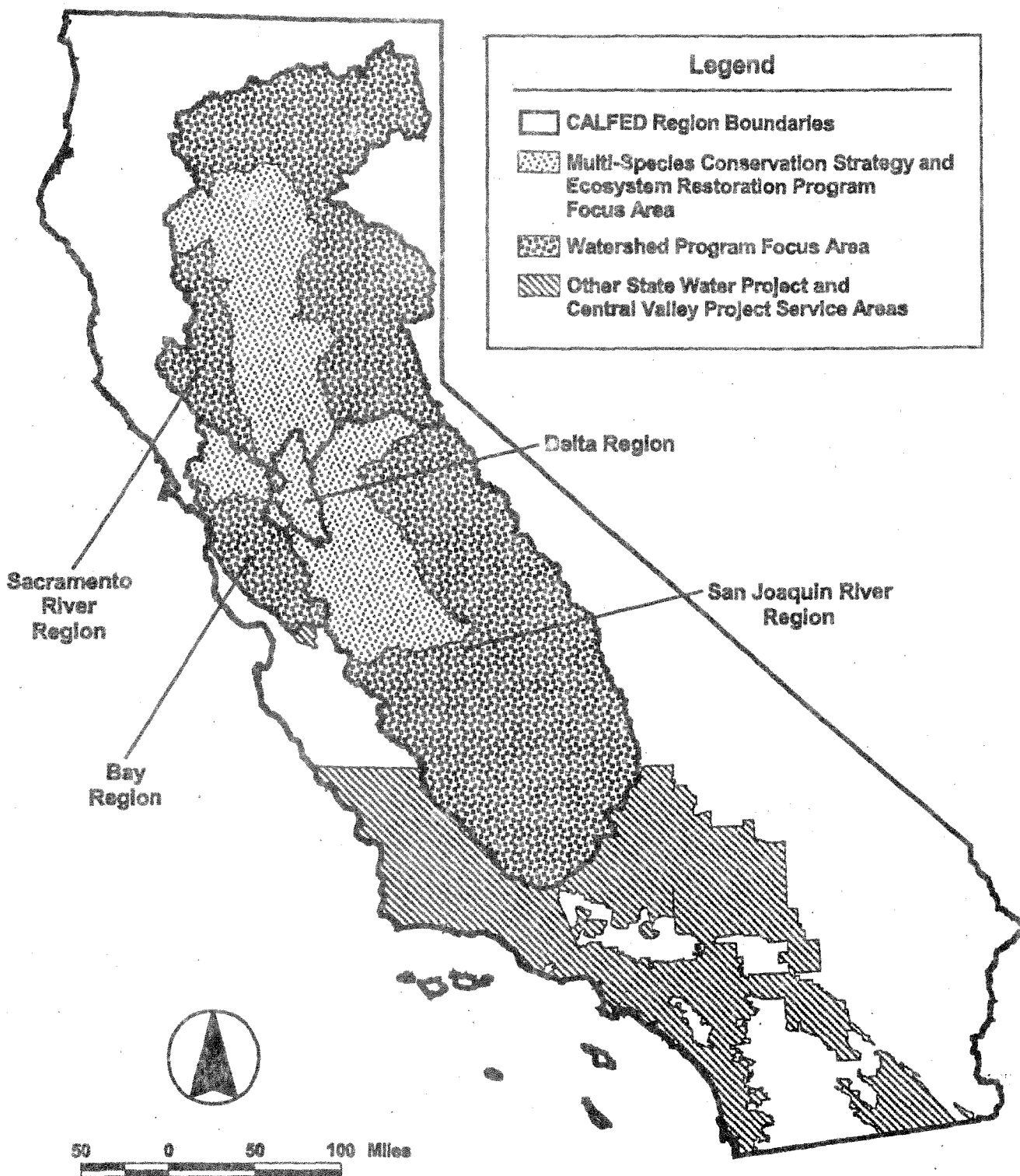
## **LITERATURE CITED**

The literature cited in this biological opinion is contained within Service files and is available upon request.

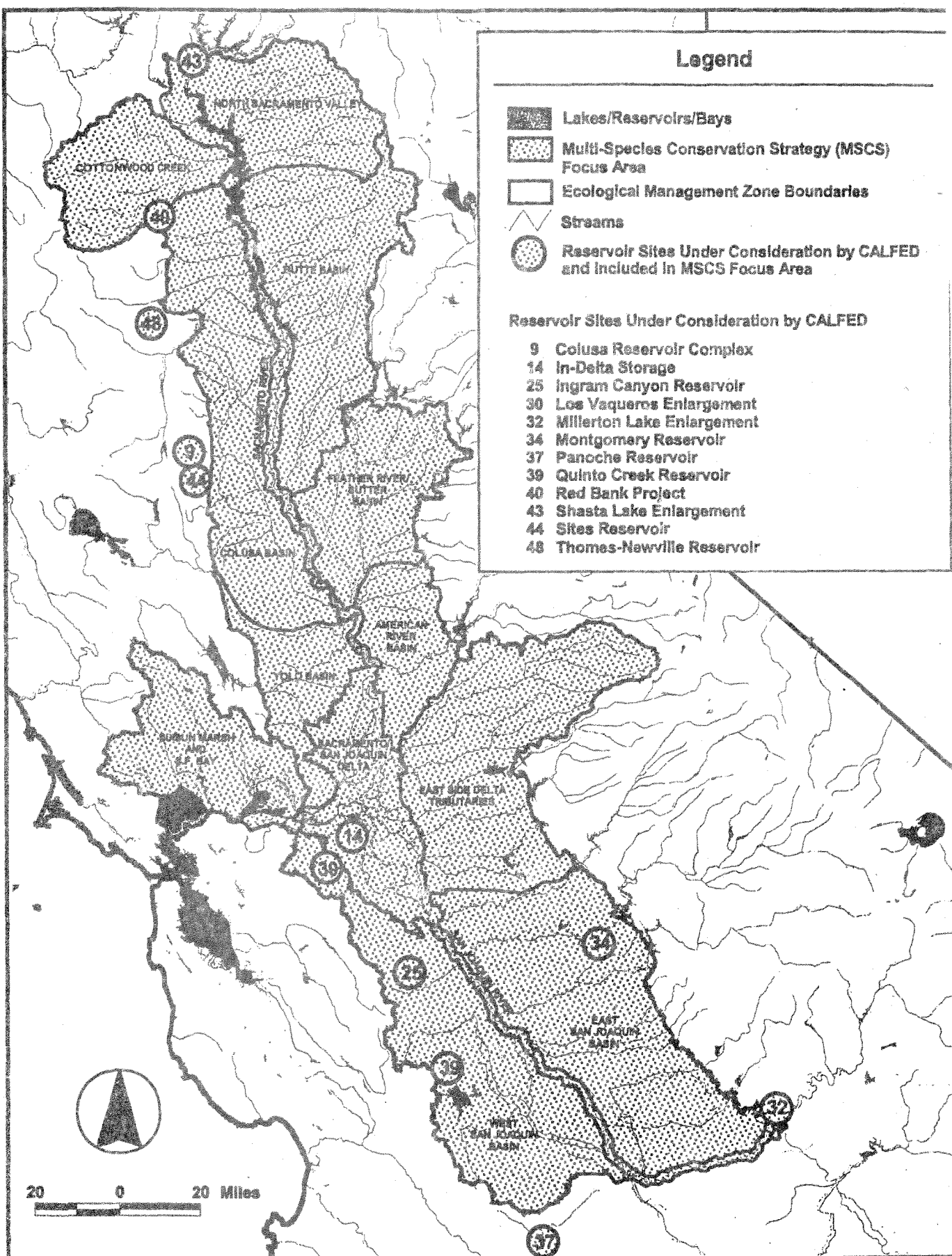


## **Appendix A. Maps of the CALFED Program Areas and Regions**

---



**Figure A-**  
**CALFED Program Areas and Region**



**Figure A-  
Multi-Species Conservation Strategy Focus Area**

## **Appendix B. Listed and Proposed Species in the Focus Area**

Endangered and Threatened Species that May Occur within or be  
Affected by Activities within the Boundaries of the CalFed Project

**Listed Species**

Mammals

- Fox, San Joaquin kit, *Vulpes macrotis mutica* (E)
- Mouse, salt marsh harvest, *Reithrodontomys raviventris* (E)
- Rabbit, riparian brush, *Sylvilagus bachmani riparius* (E)
- Rat, Fresno kangaroo, *Dipodomys nitratooides exilis* (E)
- Rat, Tipton kangaroo, *Dipodomys nitratooides nitratooides* (E)
- Rat, giant kangaroo, *Dipodomys ingens* (E)
- Sheep, Sierra Nevada (=California) bighorn, *Ovis canadensis californiana* (E)
- Woodrat, riparian (San Joaquin Valley), *Neotoma fuscipes riparia* (E)

Birds

- Condor, California, *Gymnogyps californianus* (E)
- Eagle, bald, *Haliaeetus leucocephalus* (T)
- Flycatcher, southwestern willow, *Empidonax traillii extimus* (E)
- Goose, Aleutian Canada, *Branta canadensis leucopareia* (T)
- Murrelet, marbled, *Brachyramphus marmoratus* (T)
- Owl, northern spotted, *Strix occidentalis caurina* (T)
- Pelican, California brown, *Pelecanus occidentalis californicus* (E)
- Plover, western snowy, *Charadrius alexandrinus nivosus* (T)
- Rail, California clapper, *Rallus longirostris obsoletus* (E)

Tern, California least, *Sterna antillarum* (=albifrons) browni (E)

Vireo, Least Bell's, *Vireo bellii pusillus* (E)

### Fish

Goby, tidewater, *Eucyclogobius newberryi* (E)

Smelt, delta, *Hypomesus transpacificus* (T)

Splittail, Sacramento, *Pogonichthys macrolepidotus* (T)

Sucker, shortnose, *Chasmistes brevirostris* (E)

### Reptiles & Amphibians

Frog, California red-legged, (*Rana aurora draytonii*) (T)

Lizard, blunt-nosed leopard, (*Gambelia* [=Crotaphytus] sila) (E)

Snake, San Francisco garter, *Thamnophis sirtalis tetrataenia* (E)

Snake, giant garter, *Thamnophis gigas* (T)

Whipsnake, Alameda, *Masticophis lateralis euryxanthus* (T)

### Invertebrates

Beetle, delta green ground, *Elaphrus viridis* (T)

Beetle, valley elderberry longhorn, *Desmocerus californicus dimorphus* (T)

Butterfly, Lange's metalmark, *Apodemia mormo langei* (E)

Butterfly, Myrtle's silverspot, *Speyeria zerene myrtleae* (E)

Butterfly, San Bruno elfin, *Incisalia mossii bayensis* (E)

Butterfly, bay checkerspot, *Euphydryas editha bayensis* (T)

Butterfly, callippe silverspot, *Speyeria callippe callippe* (E)

Butterfly, mission blue, *Icaricia icarioides missionensis* (E)

Crayfish, Shasta (=placid), *Pacifastacus fortis* (E)  
Moth, Kern primrose sphinx, *Euproserpinus euterpe* (T)  
Shrimp, California freshwater, *Syncaris pacifica* (E)  
Shrimp, conservancy fairy, *Branchinecta conservatio* (E)  
Shrimp, longhorn fairy, *Branchinecta longiantenna* (E)  
Shrimp, vernal pool fairy, *Branchinecta lynchi* (T)  
Shrimp, vernal pool tadpole, *Lepidurus packardi* (E)

### Plants

Allocarya, Calistoga, *Plagiobothrys strictus* (E)  
Alopecurus, Sonoma, *Alopecurus aequalis* var. *sonomensis* (E)  
Bedstraw, El Dorado, *Galium californicum* ssp. *sierrae* (E)  
Bird's-beak, palmate-bracted, *Cordylanthus palmatus* (E)  
Bird's-beak, soft, *Cordylanthus mollis* ssp. *mollis* (E)  
Bluegrass, Napa, *Poa napensis* (E)  
Brodiaea, Chinese Camp, *Brodiaea pallida* (T)  
Buckwheat, Ione, *Eriogonum apricum* var. *apricum* (E)  
Buckwheat, Irish Hill, *Eriogonum apricum* var. *prostratum* (E)  
Butterweed, Layne's, *Senecio layneae* (T)  
Cactus, Bakersfield, *Opuntia treleasei* (E)  
Ceanothus, Coyote, *Ceanothus ferrisiae* (E)  
Ceanothus, Pine Hill, *Ceanothus roderickii* (E)  
Checkermallow, Kenwood Marsh, *Sidalcea oregana* ssp. *valida* (E)  
Clarkia, Presidio, *Clarkia franciscana* (E)

Clarkia, Springville, *Clarkia springvillensis* (T)

Clover, showy Indian, *Trifolium amoenum* (E)

Coyote-thistle, Loch Lomond, *Eryngium constancei* (E)

Dudleya, Santa Clara Valley, *Dudleya setchellii* (E)

Dwarf-flax, Marin, *Hesperolinon congestum* (T)

Eriastrum (= Woolly-star), Hoover's, *Eriastrum hooveri* (T)

Evening-primrose, Antioch Dunes, *Oenothera deltoides* ssp. *howellii* (E)

Evening-primrose, San Benito, *Camissonia benitensis* (T)

Fiddleneck, large-flowered, *Amsinckia grandiflora* (E)

Flannelbush, Pine Hill, *Fremontodendron californicum* ssp. *decumbens* (E)

Goldfields, Burke's, *Lasthenia burkei* (E)

Goldfields, Contra Costa, *Lasthenia conjugens* (E)

Grass, Colusa, *Neostapfia colusana* (T)

Grass, Solano, *Tuctoria mucronata* (E)

Howellia, water, *Howellia aquatilis* (T)

Jewelflower, California, *Caulanthus californicus* (E)

Jewelflower, Metcalf Canyon, *Streptanthus albidus* ssp. *albidus* (E)

Jewelflower, Tiburon, *Streptanthus niger* (E)

Larkspur, Baker's, *Delphinium bakeri* (E)

Larkspur, Yellow, *D. luteum* (E)

Layia, beach, *Layia carnosa* (E)

Lessingia, San Francisco, *Lessingia germanorum* (E)

Mallow, Kern, *Eremalche kernensis* (E)



Manzanita, Ione, *Arctostaphylos myrtifolia* (T)

Manzanita, Presidio (=Raven's), *Arctostaphylos hookeri* ssp. *ravenii* (E)

Manzanita, pallid, *Arctostaphylos pallida* (T)

Mariposa lily, Tiburon, *Calochortus tiburonensis* (T)

Meadowfoam, Butte County, *Limnanthes floccosa* ssp. *californica* (E)

Meadowfoam, Sebastopol, *Limnanthes vinculans* (E)

Milk-vetch, Clara Hunt's, *Astragalus clarianus* (E)

Morning-glory, Stebbins', *Calystegia stebbinsii* (E)

Navarretia, few-flowered, *Navarretia leucocephala* ssp. *pauciflora* (E)

Navarretia, many-flowered, *Navarretia leucocephala* ssp. *plieantha* (E)

Orcutt grass, Sacramento, *Orcuttia viscida* (E)

Orcutt grass, San Joaquin Valley, *Orcuttia inaequalis* (T)

Orcutt grass, hairy, *Orcuttia pilosa* (E)

Orcutt grass, slender, *Orcuttia tenuis* (T)

Owl's-clover, fleshy, *Castilleja campestris* ssp. *succulenta* (T)

Paintbrush, Tiburon, *Castilleja affinis* ssp. *neglecta* (E)

Penny-cress, Kneeland Prairie, *Thlaspi montanum* var. *californicum* (E)

Pentachaeta, white-rayed, *Pentachaeta bellidiflora* (E)

Piperia (=rein orchid), Yadon's, *Piperia yadonii* (E)

Pitkin marsh lily, *Lilium pardalinum* ssp. *Pitkinense* (E)

Potentilla (=cinquefoil), Hickman's, *Potentilla hickmanii* (E)

Pussy-paws, Mariposa, *Calyptridium pulchellum* (T)

Sandwort, marsh, *Arenaria paludicola* (E)

Sea-blite, California, *Suaeda californica* (E)

Sidalcea, Keck's, *Sidalcea keckii* (E)

Spineflower, Ben Lomond, *Chorizanthe pungens* var. *hartwegiana* (E)

Spineflower, Monterey, *Chorizanthe pungens* var. *pungens* (T)

Spineflower, Sonoma, *Chorizanthe valida* (E)

Spineflower, robust, *Chorizanthe robusta* (E)

Spurge, Hoover's, *Chamaesyce hooveri* (T)

Stickseed, Baker's, *Blennosperma bakeri* (E)

Stonecrop, Lake County, *Parvisedum leiocarpum* (E)

Sunburst, Hartweg's golden, *Pseudobahia bahiifolia* (E)

Sunburst, San Joaquin adobe, *Pseudobahia peirsonii* (T)

Tarplant, Santa Cruz, *Holocarpha macradenia* (T)

Thistle, Suisun, *Cirsium hydrophilum* var. *hydrophilum* (E)

Thistle, fountain, *Cirsium fontinale* var. *fontinale* (E)

Thornmint, San Mateo, *Acanthomintha duttonii* (E)

Tuctoria, Greene's, *Tuctoria greenei* (E)

Vervain, Red Hills, *Verbena californica* (T)

Wallflower, Ben Lomond, *Erysimum teretifolium* (E)

Wallflower, Contra Costa, *Erysimum capitatum* ssp. *angustatum* (E)

White sedge, *Carex albida*, (E)

Woolly sunflower, San Mateo, *Eriophyllum latilobum* (E)

Woolly-threads, San Joaquin, *Lembertia congdonii* (E)

## **Proposed Species**

### **Mammals**

Shrew, Buena Vista Lake, *Sorex ornatus relictus* (PE)

### **Birds**

Plover, mountain, *Charadrius montanus* (PT)

### **Plants**

Santa Cruz tarplant, *Holocarpha macradenia* (PT)

## **Candidate Species**

### **Fish**

Trout, McCloud River redband, *Oncorhynchus* (=Salmo) *mykiss* ssp. (C)

### **Reptiles & Amphibians**

Salamander, California tiger, *Ambystoma californiense* (C)

**Appendix C-1. Species Accounts for Species Evaluated in  
This Biological Opinion**

---

## Table of Contents

Species Name	Page
GIANT KANGAROO RAT ( <i>Dipodomys ingens</i> )	C-1-1
RIPARIAN BRUSH RABBIT ( <i>Sylvilagus bachmani riparius</i> )	C-1-3
SALT MARSH HARVEST MOUSE ( <i>Reithrodontomys raviventris</i> )	C-1-5
SAN JOAQUIN KIT FOX ( <i>Vulpes macrotis mutica</i> )	C-1-7
SAN JOAQUIN VALLEY WOODRAT ( <i>Neotoma fuscipes riparia</i> )	C-1-10
ALEUTIAN CANADA GOOSE ( <i>Branta canadensis</i> ssp. <i>leucopareia</i> )	C-1-12
BALD EAGLE ( <i>Haliaeetus leucocephalus</i> )	C-1-14
CALIFORNIA BROWN PELICAN ( <i>Pelecanus occidentalis californicus</i> )	C-1-16
CALIFORNIA CLAPPER RAIL ( <i>Rallus longirostris obsoletus</i> )	C-1-18
CALIFORNIA CONDOR ( <i>Gymnogyps californianus</i> )	C-1-20
CALIFORNIA LEAST TERN ( <i>Sterna antillarum browni</i> )	C-1-22
LEAST BELL'S VIREO ( <i>Vireo bellii pusillus</i> )	C-1-23
NORTHERN SPOTTED OWL ( <i>Strix occidentalis caurina</i> )	C-1-25
WESTERN SNOWY PLOVER ( <i>Charadrius alexandrinus nivosus</i> )	C-1-28
ALAMEDA WHIPSNAKE ( <i>Masticophis lateralis euryxanthus</i> )	C-1-30
BLUNT-NOSED LEOPARD LIZARD ( <i>Gambelia silus</i> )	C-1-32
GIANT GARTER SNAKE ( <i>Thamnophis gigas</i> )	C-1-34
CALIFORNIA RED-LEGGED FROG ( <i>Rana aurora draytoni</i> )	C-1-36
DELTA SMELT ( <i>Hypomesus transpacificus</i> )	C-1-38
SACRAMENTO SPLITTAIL ( <i>Pogonichthys macrolepidotus</i> )	C-1-41
TIDEWATER GOBY ( <i>Eucyclogobius newberryi</i> )	C-1-43
CALIFORNIA FRESHWATER SHRIMP ( <i>Syncaris pacifica</i> )	C-1-45
CALLIPPE SILVERSPOT BUTTERFLY ( <i>Speyeria callippe callippe</i> )	C-1-47
CONSERVANCY FAIRY SHRIMP ( <i>Branchinecta conservatio</i> )	C-1-49
DELTA GREEN GROUND BEETLE ( <i>Elaphrus viridus</i> )	C-1-51
LANGE'S METALMARK BUTTERFLY ( <i>Apodemia mormo langei</i> )	C-1-52
LONGHORN FAIRY SHRIMP ( <i>Branchinecta longiantenna</i> )	C-1-53
VALLEY ELDERBERRY LONGHORN BEETLE ( <i>Desmocerus californicus dimorphus</i> )	C-1-54
VERNAL POOL FAIRY SHRIMP ( <i>Branchinecta lynchi</i> )	C-1-56
VERNAL POOL TADPOLE SHRIMP ( <i>Lepidurus packerdi</i> )	C-1-57
SONOMA ALOPECURUS ( <i>Alopecurus aequalis</i> var. <i>sonomensis</i> )	C-1-58
LARGE-FLOWERED FIDDLENECK ( <i>Amsinckia grandiflora</i> )	C-1-59
IONE MANZANITA ( <i>Arctostaphylos myrtifolia</i> )	C-1-61
PALLID MANZANITA ( <i>Arctostaphylos pallida</i> )	C-1-62
CLARA HUNT'S MILKVETCH ( <i>Astragalus clarianus</i> )	C-1-64
SONOMA SUNSHINE ( <i>Blennosperma bakeri</i> )	C-1-65
CHINESE CAMP BRODIAEA ( <i>Brodiaea pallida</i> )	C-1-67
TIBURON MARIPOSA LILY ( <i>Calochortus tiburonensis</i> )	C-1-68
STEBBINS' MORNING-GLORY ( <i>Calystegia stebbinsii</i> )	C-1-70
SAN BENITO EVENING PRIMROSE ( <i>Camissonia benitensis</i> )	C-1-72

WHITE SEDGE ( <i>Carex albida</i> ) .....	C-1-73
TIBURON INDIAN PAINTBRUSH ( <i>Castilleja affinis</i> ssp. <i>neglecta</i> ) .....	C-1-75
SUCCULENT OWL'S-CLOVER ( <i>Castilleja campestris</i> var. <i>succulentus</i> ) .....	C-1-78
PINE HILL CEANOTHUS ( <i>Ceanothus roderickii</i> ) .....	C-1-79
HOOVER'S SPURGE ( <i>Chamaesyce hooveri</i> ) .....	C-1-81
SONOMA SPINEFLOWER ( <i>Chorizanthe valida</i> ) .....	C-1-83
SUISUN THISTLE ( <i>Cirsium hydrophilum</i> var. <i>hydrophilum</i> ) .....	C-1-84
SOFT BIRD'S-BEAK ( <i>Cordylanthus mollis</i> ssp. <i>mollis</i> ) .....	C-1-86
PALMATE-BRACTED BIRD'S-BEAK ( <i>Cordylanthus palmatus</i> ) .....	C-1-88
BAKER'S LARKSPUR ( <i>Delphinium bakeri</i> ) .....	C-1-89
YELLOW LARKSPUR ( <i>Delphinium luteum</i> ) .....	C-1-91
HOOVER'S ERIASTRUM ( <i>Eriastrum hooveri</i> ) .....	C-1-93
IONE BUCKWHEAT ( <i>Eriogonum apricum</i> var. <i>apricum</i> ) .....	C-1-95
LOCH LOMOND BUTTON-CELERY ( <i>Eryngium constancei</i> ) .....	C-1-97
CONTRA COSTA WALLFLOWER ( <i>Erysimum capitatum</i> ssp. <i>angustatum</i> ) .....	C-1-98
PINE HILL FLANNELBUSH ( <i>Fremontodendron decumbens</i> ) .....	C-1-99
EL DORADO BEDSTRAW ( <i>Galium californicum</i> ssp. <i>sierrae</i> ) .....	C-1-101
MARIN WESTERN FLAX ( <i>Hesperolinon congestum</i> ) .....	C-1-103
CONTRA COSTA GOLDFIELDS ( <i>Lasthenia conjugens</i> ) .....	C-1-105
SAN JOAQUIN WOOLLY THREADS ( <i>Lembertia congdonii</i> ) .....	C-1-106
PITKIN MARSH LILY ( <i>Lilium pardalinum</i> ssp. <i>pitkinense</i> ) .....	C-1-108
BUTTE COUNTY MEADOWFOAM ( <i>Limnanthes floccosa</i> ssp. <i>californica</i> ) .....	C-1-109
SEBASTOPOL MEADOWFOAM ( <i>Limnanthes vinculans</i> ) .....	C-1-111
FEW-FLOWERED NAVARRETIA ( <i>Navarretia leucocephala</i> ssp. <i>pauciflora</i> ) .....	C-1-113
MANY-FLOWERED NAVARRETIA ( <i>Navarretia leucocephala</i> ssp. <i>plieantha</i> ) .....	C-1-114
COLUSA GRASS ( <i>Neostapfia colusana</i> ) .....	C-1-116
ANTIOCH DUNES EVENING-PRIMROSE ( <i>Oenothera deltoides</i> ssp. <i>howellii</i> ) .....	C-1-117
SAN JOAQUIN VALLEY ORCUTT GRASS ( <i>Orcuttia inaequalis</i> ) .....	C-1-119
HAIRY ORCUTT GRASS ( <i>Orcuttia pilosa</i> ) .....	C-1-121
SLENDER ORCUTT GRASS ( <i>Orcuttia tenuis</i> ) .....	C-1-123
SACRAMENTO ORCUTT GRASS ( <i>Orcuttia viscida</i> ) .....	C-1-124
WHITE-RAYED PENTACHAETA ( <i>Pentachaeta bellidiflora</i> ) .....	C-1-125
CALISTOGA POPCORNFLOWER ( <i>Plagiobothrys strictus</i> ) .....	C-1-127
NAPA BLUE GRASS ( <i>Poa napensis</i> ) .....	C-1-129
HARTWEG'S GOLDEN SUNBURST ( <i>Pseudobahia bahiifolia</i> ) .....	C-1-130
SAN JOAQUIN ADOBE SUNBURST ( <i>Pseudobahia peirsonii</i> ) .....	C-1-132
LAYNE'S RAGWORT ( <i>Senecio layneae</i> ) .....	C-1-134
KENWOOD MARSH CHECKERBLOOM ( <i>Sidalcea oregana</i> ssp. <i>valida</i> ) .....	C-1-136
TIBURON JEWELFLOWER ( <i>Streptanthus niger</i> ) .....	C-1-137
CALIFORNIA SEABLITE ( <i>Suaeda californica</i> ) .....	C-1-139
SHOWY INDIAN CLOVER ( <i>Trifolium amoenum</i> ) .....	C-1-140
GREENE'S TUCTORIA ( <i>Tuctoria greenei</i> ) .....	C-1-142
CRAMPTON'S TUCTORIA ( <i>Tuctoria mucronata</i> ) .....	C-1-144
CALIFORNIA VERVAIN ( <i>Verbena californica</i> ) .....	C-1-146
MOUNTAIN PLOVER ( <i>Charadrius montanus</i> ) .....	C-1-148

SANTA CRUZ TARPLANT ( <i>Holocarpha macradenia</i> ) .....	C-1-150
CALIFORNIA TIGER SALAMANDER ( <i>Ambystoma californiense</i> ) .....	C-1-152
CENTRAL VALLEY FALL-/LATE-FALL-RUN CHINOOK SALMON	
EVOLUTIONARILY SIGNIFICANT UNIT ( <i>Oncorhynchus tshawytscha</i> [fr]) .....	C-1-153
MCCLOUD RIVER REDBAND TROUT ( <i>Oncorhynchus mykiss</i> spp.) .....	C-1-155
CALIFORNIA WOLVERINE ( <i>Gulo gulo luteus</i> ) .....	C-1-156

## **GIANT KANGAROO RAT (*Dipodomys ingens*)**

**Legal Status.** The giant kangaroo rat is listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** The historical distribution of the giant kangaroo rat included the foothills of the western San Joaquin Valley, from the base of the Tehachapi Mountains in the south to just south of Los Banos (Merced County) in the north, the Carrizo and Elkhorn Plains, and the Cuyama Valley. Up until the 1950s, the giant kangaroo rat inhabited an estimated 631,000 hectares within its range (Williams et al. 1997).

The giant kangaroo rat is currently found in less than 2% of its historical range. The population of this species is scattered in six major geographic regions: the Panoche Region in western Fresno and eastern San Benito Counties, Kettleman Hills in Kings County, San Juan Creek Valley in San Luis Obispo County, Lokern, Elk Hills and other areas in western Kern County, Carrizo Plain Natural Area in eastern San Luis Obispo County, and Cuyama Valley in Santa Barbara and San Luis Obispo Counties (William et al. 1997).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** The giant kangaroo rat is present in the East San Joaquin Basin, San Joaquin River, and West San Joaquin Basin Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Giant kangaroo rats inhabit sparsely vegetated grasslands on gentle slopes with quickly draining, sandy-loam soils (California Department of Fish and Game 1992). Populations are limited to areas having less than 6 inches of rain and are generally found at elevations at less than 3,000 feet (Williams 1992). The species feeds almost exclusively on the seeds of annual plants, such as brome grasses and filarees. Individuals harvest, stack, and dry the grasses and forbs near the entrance to their burrows (California Department of Fish and Game 1992).

**Reasons for Decline.** Loss of habitat for agricultural and urban development is the primary reason for the decline of the giant kangaroo rat and the decline is apparently continuing as more grassland is converted to agricultural fields. Intensive livestock grazing and the use of rodenticides may also contribute to the continued decline of this species (Williams 1980).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.



### Citations

California Department of Fish and Game. 1992. Annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

Williams, D. F. 1980. Distribution and population status of the San Joaquin antelope ground squirrel and giant kangaroo rat. (Nongame Wildlife Investigation Report E-W-4.) California Department of Fish and Game. Sacramento, CA.

\_\_\_\_\_. 1992. Geographic distribution and population status of the giant kangaroo rat, *Dipodomys ingens* (Rodentia, Heteromyidae). Page 301-328 in D. F. Williams, S. Byrne, and T. A. Rado (eds.), Endangered and sensitive species of the San Joaquin Valley, California. California Energy Commission. Sacramento, CA.

Williams, D. F., E. A. Cypher, P. A. Kelly, N. Norvell, C. D. Johnson, G. W. Colliver, and K. J. Miller. 1997. Draft recovery plan of upland species of the San Joaquin Valley. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Portland, OR.

## RIPARIAN BRUSH RABBIT (*Sylvilagus bachmani riparius*)

**Legal Status.** The riparian brush rabbit is listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** The riparian brush rabbit inhabits riparian communities along the lower portions of the San Joaquin and Stanislaus Rivers in the northern San Joaquin Valley, California. Because the subspecies was not described until after it is believed to have been extirpated from most of its historical range, definitive information on its former distribution is lacking. It apparently has been extirpated from the Sacramento-San Joaquin River Delta and most of the lower San Joaquin River and its tributaries—the Stanislaus, Tuolumne, and Merced Rivers (Williams 1986). The range of the subspecies probably extended farther upstream than the Merced River, assuming that suitable habitat historically occurred along the length of the San Joaquin River system (Williams and Basey 1986).

The riparian brush rabbit is currently restricted to a single population at Caswell Memorial State Park, San Joaquin County, along the Stanislaus River (Williams and Basey 1986). Surveys conducted in all potential habitat along the Merced, San Joaquin, Stanislaus, and Tuolumne Rivers during 1985 and 1986 failed to find any additional populations of riparian brush rabbits (Williams 1988). The most recent estimates indicate the population comprises 170–608 individuals over 198 acres (Williams 1993). Williams (1988) estimated a population low of 10 or fewer individuals following severe winter flooding in 1985 and 1986. The flooding during winter 1996–1997 has also severely affected the population. The riparian brush rabbit population is declining (California Department of Fish and Game 1992).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** The species is present in the East San Joaquin Basin Ecological Zone; it historically occurred in the San Joaquin River, West San Joaquin Basin, and Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Habitat for the riparian brush rabbit consists of riparian forests with a dense understory shrub layer. Common plants in the habitat include California wild rose, Pacific blackberry, wild grape, Douglas' coyote bush, and various grasses (Williams 1988, Basey 1990). Brush rabbits have small home ranges that usually conform to the size of available brushy habitat (Basey 1990).

**Reasons for Decline.** Potential threats to this species include habitat conversion to agriculture, wildfire, disease, predation, flooding, clearing of riparian vegetation, and the use of rodenticides. There has been a statewide reduction of riparian communities by nearly 90% because of elimination and modification of riparian forests along valley floor river systems to urban, commercial, and agricultural development; wood cutting; reclamation and flood control activities; heavy groundwater pumping; river channelization; dam building; and water diversion. The species is at risk from the lack of elevated mounds with protective cover to serve as flood refuges within remaining riparian habitat.

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A draft recovery plan has been prepared for upland and riparian species in the San Joaquin Valley, including the riparian brush rabbit (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1997). The recovery plan includes three actions: establish an emergency plan and monitoring system to provide swift action to save individuals and habitat at Caswell Memorial State Park in the event of flooding, wildfire, or a disease epidemic; develop and implement a cooperative riparian brush rabbit conservation program; and reevaluate the status of the rabbit within 3 years of recovery plan approval.

#### Citations

- Basey, G. E. 1990. Distribution, ecology, and population status of the riparian brush rabbit (*Sylvilagus bachmani riparius*). Turlock, CA: California State Univ., Stanislaus. M.S. thesis. 76 p.
- California. Department of Fish and Game. 1992. Annual report on the status of California state listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.
- Williams, D. F. 1986. Mammalian species of special concern in California. California Dept. Fish and Game, Wildl. Manage. Div., Admin. Report 86-1:1-112.
- \_\_\_\_\_. 1988. Ecology and management of the riparian brush rabbit in Caswell Memorial State Park. Calif. Dept. of Parks and Rec., Standard Agreement 4-305-6108, Final Report, 15 June 1988. Sacramento, CA.
- \_\_\_\_\_. 1993. Population censuses of riparian brush rabbits and riparian woodrats at Caswell Memorial State Park during January 1993. Final Report to Calif. Depart. Parks and Rec. Sacramento, CA.
- Williams, D. F., and G. E. Basey. 1986. Population status of the riparian brush rabbit (*Sylvilagus bachmani riparius*). California Dept. Fish and Game, Sacramento Wildlife Management Division, Nongame Bird and Mammal Section Rep. Sacramento, CA.
- U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1997. Draft recovery plan for arid upland and riparian species of the San Joaquin Valley, California. Sacramento Fish and Wildlife Office. Sacramento, CA.

## **SALT MARSH HARVEST MOUSE (*Reithrodontomys raviventris*)**

**Legal Status.** The salt marsh harvest mouse is listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts and as fully protected under the California Fish and Game Code.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** The salt marsh harvest mouse is endemic to saltwater and brackish water marshes adjoining San Francisco Bay and its tributaries (Shellhammer 1982). It was formerly found throughout the extensive marshes that once bordered San Francisco, San Pablo, and Suisun Bays (California Department of Fish and Game 1980). The species is now restricted to fragmented and widely separated saline or brackish emergent wetlands.

**Known populations of salt marsh harvest mice** exist at the Leslie Salt intake and Mare Island in Solano County, lower Tubbs Island in Sonoma County, Novato and Gallinas Creeks in Marin County, Albrad Slough and Triangle Marsh in Alameda County, Bair and Bird Islands in San Mateo County (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1984), the Palo Alto Bay saltmarsh in Santa Clara County (Wondolleck et al. 1976), Petaluma Marsh in Sonoma County, and in tidal marshes located near Napa in Napa County. The species has also been found along the Sacramento River Delta at Grizzly and Joice Island Wildlife Management Areas (Schaub 1971) and near Collinsville (Shellhammer 1979) in Solano County.

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** The salt marsh harvest mouse is present in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** The salt marsh harvest mouse breeds from May to November and may produce up to two litters per year. Optimal habitat for this species is saline emergent wetland with 100% plant cover, consisting predominantly of pickleweeds in association with fat hen and alkali heath (Shellhammer 1982). Suitable wetlands are 100 or more acres, with an upper edge of peripheral halophytes (salt-loving plants) for refuge during high tides or floods (Shellhammer 1982). The salt marsh harvest mouse will also use marginal upland habitats (Zetterquist 1977, Botti et al. 1986).

**Reasons for Decline.** Habitat destruction is the greatest threat to this species (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1984). By 1979, filling, flooding, or other conversions of marshes in the San Francisco Bay Area for commercial purposes had removed 79% of the tidal marshes (Jones & Stokes Associates et al. 1979). Additionally, much of the remaining area was converted to diked wetland, most of which became marginal or unsuitable habitat for the salt marsh harvest mouse (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1984). Marsh subsidence, changes in salinity, plowing, mowing, burning, and artificial flushing have caused adverse impacts on this species' habitat by changing plant species composition or reducing vegetation used for cover (Shellhammer 1982).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** USFWS (1984) developed a recovery plan for the salt marsh harvest mouse and California clapper rail. The objectives of the plan are to secure and manage approximately 15,360 acres of occupied essential habitat under various government

jurisdictions and approximately 12,800 acres of occupied, unsecured, essential habitat, mostly under private ownership. Additionally, the plan states that 27,500 acres of tidal marsh and diked historical bay lands would be restored and enhanced. Achievement of these objectives would allow the northern subspecies to be upgraded to threatened under the federal Endangered Species Act and delisting considered, and the southern subspecies upgraded to threatened. The southern subspecies could also be considered for delisting if an additional 11,800 acres of essential habitat are restored or enhanced and marsh restoration at the San Francisco Bay National Wildlife Refuge is completed. The plan is currently being revised by USFWS.

#### Citations

Botti, F., D. Warenycia, and D. Becker. 1986. Utilization by salt marsh harvest mice, *R. r. raviventris*, of a non-pickleweed marsh. *California Fish and Game* 72(1):62-64.

California Department of Fish and Game. 1980. At the crossroads: a report on the status of California's endangered and rare fish and wildlife. Sacramento, CA.

Jones & Stokes Associates, Inc., Harvey and Stanley Associates, Inc., and John Blaney Associates. 1979. Protection and restoration of San Francisco Bay fish and wildlife habitat. Volume I. (JSA 77-046.) California Department of Fish and Game and U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Sacramento, CA.

Schaub, D. B. 1971. Salt marsh harvest mouse survey, 1971. (California Department of Fish and Game, Special Wildlife Investigations Final Report W-54-R, 11-9.) Sacramento, CA.

Shellhammer, M. S. 1979. The salt marsh harvest mouse (*Reithrodontomys raviventris*) and the Montezuma Power Plant site. *Cal-Neva Wildlife Transactions* 16:27-32.

\_\_\_\_\_. 1982. *Reithrodontomys raviventris*. *Mammalian Species* 169:1-3.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1984. The salt marsh harvest mouse/California clapper rail recovery plan. Rockville, MD.

Wondolleck, J. T., W. Zolan, and G. L. Stevens. 1976. A population study of harvest mice in the Palo Alto salt marsh. *Wasmann Journal of Biology* 34:52-64.

Zetterquist, D. K. 1977. The salt marsh harvest mouse (*Reithrodontomys raviventris*) in marginal habitats. *The Wasmann Journal of Biology* 35(1):68-75.

## SAN JOAQUIN KIT FOX (*Vulpes macrotis mutica*)

**Legal Status.** The San Joaquin kit fox is listed as threatened under the California Endangered Species Act and as endangered under the federal Endangered Species Act.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Although the precise historical range of the San Joaquin kit fox is unknown, it is believed to have extended from Contra Costa and San Joaquin Counties in the north to Kern County in the south. By the 1930s, the range had been reduced to the southern and western portions of the Central Valley (Grinnell et al. 1937). Surveys conducted between 1969 and 1975 extended the known range of the kit fox back into portions of its historical range in the northern San Joaquin Valley, including Contra Costa, Alameda, and San Joaquin Counties (Orloff et al. 1986). Additionally, kit foxes were found in three counties outside the originally defined historical range: Monterey, Santa Clara, and Santa Barbara (Orloff et al. 1986).

The original range of the San Joaquin kit fox was estimated to encompass approximately 8,670 square miles, supporting anywhere between 8,670 and 12,135 adult foxes. By 1975, an estimated 42% of suitable habitat had been lost to development, particularly irrigated agriculture, and the kit fox population size was estimated to be 7,000 individuals (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1983, California Department of Fish and Game 1989). Most of the range defined in 1975 still supports kit foxes (California Department of Fish and Game 1989), although populations are declining (California Department of Fish and Game 1988) and those in the northern portion of the species' range are small and isolated (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1983).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** The San Joaquin kit fox is present in the East San Joaquin Basin, West San Joaquin Basin, and Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** San Joaquin kit foxes occur in seasonal wetland, alkali desert scrub, grassland, and valley foothill hardwood habitats (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1983). Before the rapid expansion of irrigated agriculture in the San Joaquin Valley, the alkali desert scrub association was probably the species' prime habitat (Grinnell et al. 1937).

Kit foxes are primarily nocturnal and carnivorous. Major prey includes kangaroo rats, black-tailed hares, desert cottontails, deer mice, and California ground squirrels. Although kangaroo rats are a dominant prey item in the San Joaquin Valley (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1983), California ground squirrels are the most important prey item in some other portions of the kit fox's range (Balestrieri 1981, Hall 1983, O'Farrell et al. 1987, Clifton 1989). Kit foxes apparently do not require drinking water (Egoscue 1956, Morrell 1972).

Kit fox home-range sizes vary from 640 to 1,280 acres, with substantial overlap among individuals (Morrell 1972, Zoellick et al. 1987). The foxes usually inhabit areas with loose-textured soils suitable for den excavation (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1983). Where soils make digging difficult, the foxes frequently use and modify burrows built by other animals (Orloff et al. 1986).

Structures such as culverts, abandoned pipelines, and well casings may also be used as den sites (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1983).

The foxes change den sites frequently, moving most often in summer. Pairs are formed during winter, with young born in spring (Morrell 1972). Natal dens are used from December through May, with the same natal dens often used in subsequent years (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1983). Den changes may occur in response to a depleted prey base or increased numbers of fleas or other external parasites (Egoscue 1956).

**Reasons for Decline.** The San Joaquin kit fox population has declined primarily as a result of habitat loss to agricultural, urban, industrial, and mineral development in the San Joaquin Valley (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1983). In 1979, only 6.7% of the native habitats in the San Joaquin Valley south of Stanislaus County remained untilled or undeveloped (O'Farrell et al. 1987). Road kills, illegal shooting and trapping, and secondary poisoning and prey reduction from rodent control programs may be significant factors in the species' decline.

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** USFWS approved a recovery plan for the San Joaquin kit fox in 1983 (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1983), which outlines steps allowing for the reclassification of the kit fox to threatened. Before the consideration of reclassification of the kit fox, three objectives must be achieved: 35,000 acres of habitat must be secured within a high-priority area, protection of the kit fox and its habitat throughout the species' range must be provided, and management of the kit fox must provide at least 1.4 adult animals per square mile on private and public lands. The highest priority kit fox populations are within western Kern and eastern San Luis Obispo Counties, the federal lands in the Elk Hills, and the Carrizo and Elkhorn Plains (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1983).

#### Citations

Balestreri, A. N. 1981. Status of the San Joaquin kit fox at Camp Roberts, California. (Contract No. DAKF03-81-M-C736.) California Polytechnic State University, San Luis Obispo, CA. Prepared for the U.S. Department of the Army, Directorate of Facilities Engineering, Environmental and Natural Resources, Fort Ord, CA.

California Department of Fish and Game. 1988. 1987 annual report on the status of California's state-listed threatened and endangered plants and animals. Sacramento, CA.

\_\_\_\_\_. 1989. 1988 annual report on the status of California's state-listed threatened and endangered plants and animals. Sacramento, CA.

Clifton, S. D. 1989. Results of analysis of San Joaquin kit fox scats from Kellogg Creek watershed area, Contra Costa and Alameda Counties, California. July 1988. Prepared for Jones & Stokes Associates, Inc. (JSA 87-031.) Sacramento, CA.



- Egoscue, H. J. 1956. Preliminary studies of the kit fox in Utah. *Journal of Mammalogy* 37:351-357.
- Grinnell, J., J. S. Dixon, and J. M. Linsdale. 1937. Fur-bearing mammals of California. Volume II. University of California Press. Berkeley, CA.
- Hall, F. A. 1983. Status of the kit fox (*Vulpes macrotis mutica*) at the Bethany wind turbine generating (WTG) project site, Alameda, CA. The Resources Agency, California Department of Fish and Game. Sacramento, CA.
- Morrell, S. H. 1972. Life history of the San Joaquin kit fox. *California Fish and Game* 58(3):162-174.
- O'Farrell, T. P., W. H. Berry, and G. D. Warrick. 1987. Distribution and status of the endangered San Joaquin kit fox, *Vulpes macrotis mutica*, on Fort Hunter Liggett and Camp Roberts, California. (EGG-10282-2194.) EG&G Energy Measurements, Inc. Goleta, CA. Prepared for the U.S. Department of the Army, Corps of Engineers, through the U.S. Department of Energy, Nevada Operations Office, Reno, NV.
- Orloff, S., F. Hall, and L. Spiegel. 1986. Distribution and habitat requirements of the San Joaquin kit fox in the northern extreme of their range. *Transactions of the Western Section of the Wildlife Society* 22:60-70.
- U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1983. The San Joaquin kit fox recovery plan. Portland, OR.
- Zoellick, B. W., T. P. O'Farrell, and T. T. Karo. 1987. Movements and home ranges of San Joaquin kit foxes on the Naval Petroleum Reserves, Kern County, California. (EG&G 10282-2184, DE88 05188.) EG&G Energy Measurements, Inc. Goleta, CA. Prepared for the U.S. Department of Energy, Naval Petroleum Reserves in California, and Chevron USA, Inc., Nevada Operations Office, Reno, NV.



## SAN JOAQUIN VALLEY WOODRAT (*Neotoma fuscipes riparia*)

**Legal Status.** The San Joaquin Valley woodrat is designated as a California species of special concern and is listed as endangered under the federal Endangered Species Act.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** The San Joaquin Valley woodrat inhabits San Joaquin Valley communities along the lower portions of the San Joaquin and Stanislaus Rivers in the northern San Joaquin Valley, California. Historical records for the San Joaquin Valley woodrat indicate that the species was distributed in communities along the San Joaquin, Stanislaus, and Tuolumne Rivers; along Corral Hollow in San Jose County; elsewhere in San Joaquin and Stanislaus Counties, and in Merced County (Hooper 1938, Williams 1986). Before the statewide reduction of San Joaquin Valley communities by nearly 90% (Katibah 1984), the San Joaquin Valley woodrat probably ranged throughout the extensive San Joaquin Valley forests along major streams flowing onto the floor of the northern San Joaquin Valley. Today, San Joaquin Valley woodrat populations are greatly depleted, with the only known population at Caswell Memorial State Park and a possible second population near Vernalis, San Joaquin County. Williams (1993) estimated a peak population at Caswell of 437 animals, based on a mean density of 4.8 woodrats per hectare on 223 acres of suitable habitat.

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** The species is present in the East San Joaquin Basin Ecological Zone and could be present in the West San Joaquin Basin Ecological Zone. It historically occurred in the San Joaquin River, East San Joaquin Basin, West San Joaquin Basin, and Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** San Joaquin Valley woodrats are most abundant where shrub cover is dense and least abundant in open areas. In San Joaquin Valley areas, highest densities of woodrats and their nests are often encountered in willow thickets with an oak overstory. The species is common where there are deciduous valley oaks but few live oaks. Mostly active at night, the woodrat's diet is diverse and principally herbivorous, comprising leaves, fruits, terminal shoots of twigs, flowers, nuts, and fungi. The young are born in stick nest structures or "lodges" (located on the ground) that are 2-3 feet high and 4-6 feet in diameter. Most lodges are positioned over or against logs (Cook 1992, cited in Williams 1993). Unlike other subspecies of the dusky-footed woodrat, the San Joaquin Valley woodrat occasionally builds nests in cavities in trees and artificial wood-duck nest boxes (Williams 1986).

**Reasons for Decline.** Potential threats to this species include habitat conversion to agriculture, wildfire, disease, predation, flooding, drought, clearing of San Joaquin Valley vegetation, use of rodenticides, and browsing and trampling by ungulates. There has been a statewide reduction of San Joaquin Valley communities by nearly 90% (Katibah 1984) from elimination and modification of San Joaquin Valley forests along valley-floor river systems to urban, commercial, and agricultural development; wood cutting; reclamation and flood control activities; heavy groundwater pumping; river channelization; dam building; and water diversion.

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** USFWS prepared a draft recovery plan for arid-upland and San Joaquin Valley species, including the San Joaquin Valley woodrat, for the San Joaquin Valley (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1997). The conservation actions include: surveying and mapping all San Joaquin Valley areas along the San Joaquin River and its major tributaries; developing incentive programs in collaboration with landowners and local levee-maintenance districts for preserving San Joaquin Valley vegetation; developing a plan for restoring San Joaquin Valley habitat and establishing San Joaquin Valley corridors and, if necessary, reintroducing San Joaquin Valley woodrats to suitable habitat; initiating a genetic study to determine inbreeding levels and devising a procedure for ensuring that translocations have no adverse effects on the species; establishing conservation easements to accomplish habitat restoration, linkage, and reintroduction goals; beginning efforts to restore and link San Joaquin Valley habitats and reintroduce woodrats as appropriate; and reevaluating the status of the woodrat within 3 years of recovery plan approval.

### **Citations**

- Hooper, E. T. 1938. Geographical variation in wood rats of the species *Neotoma fuscipes*. Univ. California Publ. Zool. 42:213-246.
- Katibah, E. F. 1984. A brief history of San Joaquin Valley forests in the Central Valley of California. In: R. E. Warner and K. M. Hendrix, eds. California San Joaquin Valley systems ecology, conservation, and productive management. Berkeley, CA: Univ. of California Press. 23-29.
- Williams, D. F. 1986. Mammalian species of special concern in California. California Department of Fish and Game, Wildlife Management Division, Administrative Report 86-1:1-112.
- \_\_\_\_\_. 1993. Population censuses of San Joaquin Valley brush rabbits and San Joaquin Valley woodrats at Caswell Memorial State Park during January 1993. Final Report to California Department of Parks and Recreation. 15 p.
- U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1997. Draft Recovery Plan for Arid Upland and San Joaquin Valley Species of the San Joaquin Valley, California. Sacramento, CA. 301 p.

## **ALEUTIAN CANADA GOOSE (*Branta canadensis* ssp. *leucoparela*)**

**Legal Status.** The Aleutian Canada goose is federally listed as threatened under the Endangered Species Act.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Historically, Aleutian Canada geese wintered from British Columbia to California and northwestern Mexico. Although they occurred throughout California, the greatest concentrations were found in the Sacramento and San Joaquin Valleys (Grinnell and Miller 1944). The subspecies bred throughout the Aleutian Islands and into Russia (Springer 1977).

The present population of Aleutian Canada geese migrates along the northern California coast and winters in the Central Valley near Colusa and on scattered feeding and roosting sites along the San Joaquin River from Modesto to Los Banos (Jones & Stokes Associates and CH2M Hill 1986, Nelson et al. 1984). Fall migration usually begins in late August or early September, with birds arriving in the Central Valley between October and early November (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1980). Spring migration usually begins in mid-February and continues to early March (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1980). The current population estimate is approximately 24,000 individuals (63 FR 68:17,350-17,352).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** The Aleutian Canada goose is present during fall and winter in the Colusa Basin, East San Joaquin Basin, and West San Joaquin Basin Ecological Zones. During migration, it could also occur in the Butte Basin, Feather River/Sutter Basin, Yolo Basin, and Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Aleutian Canada geese forage in harvested cornfields, newly planted or grazed pastures, or other agricultural fields (e.g., rice stubble and green barley). Lakes, reservoirs, ponds, and flooded fields are used for roosting and loafing (Grinnell and Miller 1944, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1982). They also roost in large marshes and stockponds.

**Reasons for Decline.** Predation by introduced Arctic foxes on the breeding islands is the primary reason for the population decline (Yparraguirre 1978). Predation by these foxes eliminated most breeding colonies of the Aleutian Canada goose and, by the 1930s, the subspecies was nearly extinct, with only one breeding colony on the tiny island of Buldir (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1982). Avian cholera is currently a major threat to the concentrations of Aleutian Canada geese in the Central Valley. This subspecies is particularly vulnerable to cholera outbreaks because most of the population overwinters in a small geographical area. Sport hunting also has added to the species' decline (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1982).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan for the Aleutian Canada goose was approved by USFWS in 1978 and revised in 1982 (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1982). The plan outlines three primary objectives to be achieved before considering delisting the species: to maintain the wild populations at or above 1,200 individuals, to reestablish self-sustaining breeding populations of 50 pairs or more on three former breeding areas other than Buldir Island, and to continue an active public relations program (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1982).

#### Citations

Grinnell, J., and A. H. Miller. 1944. The distribution of the birds of California. L. Casper Ornithological Club. Berkeley, CA.

Jones & Stokes Associates, Inc. and CH2M Hill. 1986. Biological assessment for endangered species, Kesterson program. (JSA 85-080.) Sacramento, CA. Prepared for U.S. Bureau of Reclamation. Sacramento, CA.

Nelson, E. T., D. F. Springer, and D. R. Yparraguirre. 1984. Population, distribution and ecology of Aleutian Canada geese on their migration to wintering areas, 1983-84. Humboldt State University. Arcata, CA. Prepared for U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Northern Prairie Wildlife Research Center. Jamestown, ND.

Springer, P. F. 1977. Reestablishing Aleutian Canada geese. Pages 339-344 in Temple, S. A. (ed.), Endangered Birds. University of Wisconsin Press. Madison, WI.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1980. Selected vertebrate endangered species of the sea coast of the United States - Aleutian Canada goose. (Biological Service Program No. FWS/OBS-80/01.34.) Washington, DC.

\_\_\_\_\_. 1982. Aleutian Canada goose recovery plan. Denver, CO.

Yparraguirre, D. 1978. Distribution, migration, and mortality of Aleutian Canada geese in California, 1977-1978. California Department of Fish and Game report. (Project E-W-2, Job V.-1.4.) Unpublished.

## **BALD EAGLE (*Haliaeetus leucocephalus*)**

**Legal Status.** The bald eagle is listed as endangered under the California Endangered Species Act, as threatened under the federal Endangered Species Act, and as fully protected under the California Fish and Game Code. The bald eagle is also protected under the federal Bald and Golden Eagle Protection Act.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Historically, the bald eagle nested throughout California; however, the current breeding distribution is restricted primarily to the mountainous habitats in the northern quarter of the state, in the northern Sierra Nevada, Cascades, and northern Coast Ranges (California Department of Fish and Game 1992). Bald eagles winter at lakes, reservoirs, and along major river systems throughout most of central and northern California and in a few southern California localities.

By 1972, there were only 26 known active bald eagle territories in California. Presently, approximately 100 pairs of bald eagles nest in the state. Nesting remains primarily restricted to the northern part of the state, with concentrations of birds at Shasta Lake, Claire Engle Lake, Eagle Lake, and Lake Almanor, and on the Pit River between Lake Britton and Shasta Lake. Additionally, three pairs of bald eagles are known to nest on the floor of the Central Valley in Shasta and Tehama Counties. Another pair of bald eagles is known to nest at Eastman Lake (Chowchilla River) in Madera County. The species appears to be increasing in most portions of the state (California Department of Fish and Game 1992).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Bald eagles are resident in the North Sacramento Valley and Butte Basin Ecological Zones and winters or is a regular visitor in Cottonwood Creek, Colusa Basin, Yolo Basin, Feather River/Sutter Basin, American River Basin, Eastside Delta Tributaries, East San Joaquin Basin, West San Joaquin Basin, Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta, and Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Bald eagle nesting territories in California are found primarily in Ponderosa pine and mixed conifer forests. Bald eagle nest sites are always associated with a lake, river, or other large water body and are usually within 1 mile of water. Nests are usually constructed in a tree that provides an unobstructed view of the water body and that is almost always the dominant or codominant tree in the surrounding stand. Snags and dead-topped live trees are important habitat components in a bald eagle nesting territory, providing perch and roost sites.

Bald eagles winter along rivers, lakes, or reservoirs that support adequate fish or water bird prey and have mature trees or large snags available for perch sites. Bald eagles often roost communally during winter, typically in mature trees or snags with open branching structures that are isolated from human disturbance.

**Reasons for Decline.** Early declines in bald eagle populations have been attributed to human persecution and destruction of riparian, wetland, and coniferous forest habitats. The most important factor that contributed to the decline of bald eagle populations, however, was a reduction in reproductive success resulting from eggshell thinning caused by DDE (dichloro-diphenyl-dichloroethylene), a metabolite of the agricultural pesticide DDT.

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** USFWS developed a recovery plan for the Pacific population of bald eagles in 1986. The status of the breeding population was considered the most important criterion for delisting the population. Numerical goals for wintering populations were not established in the recovery plan because of annual fluctuations in migration patterns and habitat use. Wintering habitat must be managed, however, to support existing populations and allow for the proposed increase in the bald eagle population.

Delisting would be considered on a regional basis if four criteria were met: a minimum of 800 pairs nested in the seven-state Pacific recovery area; the nesting pairs produced an average of at least one fledged young per pair, with an average success rate per occupied site of no less than 65% over a 5-year period; population recovery goals were being met in at least 80% of the management zone with nesting potential; and there was no persistent long-term decline in any sizable wintering population (greater than 100 birds).

#### **Citation**

California Department of Fish and Game. 1992. Annual report on the status of California state listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

## **CALIFORNIA BROWN PELICAN (*Pelecanus occidentalis californicus*)**

**Legal Status.** The California brown pelican is listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts and is designated as a fully protected species under the California Fish and Game Code.

**Historic and Current Distribution and Status.** Until the 1960s, thousands of brown pelican bred on Anacapa Island and other Channel Islands. A rapid decline of nesting success, resulting from the effects of DDT, led to a sharp reduction in the species' population. In 1970, there were only three young raised in California. Since the ban of DDT, numbers have begun to increase (Cogswell 1977). The brown pelican currently nests on the Channel Islands, Anacapa Island, Santa Barbara Island, and Santa Cruz Island. During summer and fall, brown pelicans can also be found at the Salton Sea, along the Lower Colorado River, and along the central and northern coast (Zeiner et al. 1990).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** The brown pelican is present in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zone but it does not breed there.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** The brown pelican occurs along the coast of California and can be found in estuarine habitats along the coast and on rocky islands off the coast. Pelican nests consist of arranged sticks on the ground (California Department of Fish and Game 1992); the species breeds between March and April, with birds present at nesting islands until early August (Zeiner et al. 1990). From Santa Barbara County north, the number of pelicans is low until May, when the number increases and peaks during summer months. There is also an influx of brown pelicans from Mexico from May until November (Small 1994). The predominate prey for the brown pelican is small fish such as anchovies, but the species will sometimes eat crustaceans and even carrion (Zeiner et al. 1990).

**Reasons for Decline.** The main reason for the past decline of the brown pelican was the accumulation of DDT in their bodies. This chemical (used as a pesticide) caused sterility in some and the thinning of eggshells for those able to breed, causing a near total failure of recruitment at nesting sites (Cogswell 1977). Periodic El Nino events have also contributed to the decline of this species (Small 1994). Potential oil spills in the Santa Barbara Channel, disturbance of post-breeding roosting sites, injury and death from fishing hooks and lines, and disease also pose serious threats to the brown pelican (California Department of Fish and Game 1992).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan was prepared in 1983. The plan recommended that the brown pelican be reclassified as threatened when a 5-year mean productivity of 0.7 occurs when there are at least 3,000 pairs and be considered for delisting when a 5-year mean productivity of 0.9 occurs when there are at least 3,000 pairs (California Department of Fish and Game 1992).

### **Citations**

- California Department of Fish and Game. 1992. Annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.
- Cogswell, H. L. 1977. Water birds of California. University of California Press. Berkeley, CA.
- Small, A. 1994. California birds: their status and distribution. Ibis Publishing Company. Vista, CA.
- Zeiner, D. C., W. F. Laudenslayer, K. E. Mayer, and M. White (eds.). 1990. California's wildlife: volume 2: birds. California Department of Fish and Game. Sacramento, CA.



## **CALIFORNIA CLAPPER RAIL (*Rallus longirostris obsoletus*)**

**Legal Status.** The California clapper rail is state and federally listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts and as fully protected under the California Fish and Game Code.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Historically, the largest populations of California clapper rail occurred in saline emergent wetlands throughout south San Francisco Bay (Grinnell and Miller 1944). Smaller populations were present in marshes along the San Mateo coast and those adjacent to Monterey Bay and the Elkhorn Slough (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1984). The historical distribution may have included coastal marshes of Humboldt and Morro Bays (Brooks 1940).

Overharvest by commercial and sport hunters led to the depletion of the California clapper rail by the early 1900s (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1984). Protection from harvesting was afforded to the species through the establishment of the Migratory Bird Treaty Act of 1913. Clapper rail populations appeared to recover with protection; however, habitat loss accelerated in the early 1900s when marshes were converted to other uses (DeGroot 1927). By the late 1970s, more than 2,800 acres of marsh habitat had been lost.

The current distribution of the California clapper rail is restricted to San Francisco Bay, where as few as 300 individuals may occupy the remnant native marshes (California Department of Fish and Game 1992). Recently, California clapper rails have been seen in Suisun Marsh, an area historically not occupied by the species (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1984). It is believed that the increased salinity of Suisun Marsh resulting from decreased flows from the Delta have allowed the clapper rail to expand into this area (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1984). Over 90% of the population, however, is still found in south San Francisco Bay (California Department of Fish and Game 1992).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** The California clapper rail is present in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** The California clapper rail occupies saline and brackish emergent wetlands. Vegetation in these wetlands is generally dominated by pickleweeds or cord grasses, both of which are used for nesting (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1984). Clapper rail populations have declined in areas where alkali bulrushes dominate (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1984).

Clapper rails nest from mid-March through July in the lower cord-grass-dominated marsh zones near networks of small tidal sloughs (DeGroot 1927, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1984). These sloughs provide protected routes for movement and foraging for the adults and young (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1984). Vegetation and drift material are used in the construction of a canopy over the platform nest (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1984). Cord-grass habitat and associated nesting materials may provide more protection from high tides because of the ability of nests to float. Additionally, the uniform, dense cover of the cord grass may provide more protection

for young and adults than other more patchy upper marsh areas. During winter, clapper rails may be more widely distributed in the marshes and may use the upper marsh vegetation for cover, especially during extreme high tides (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1984).

The California clapper rail feeds primarily on invertebrates; in south San Francisco Bay, the introduced horse mussel, spider clams, and yellow shore crabs are primary food items (Moffitt 1941).

**Reasons for Decline.** Loss of tidal marshes is the primary reason for the decline of the California clapper rail. Many of the remaining marshes lack extensive high marsh habitat and have steep earthen levees, making them unsuitable for clapper rails. Additionally, pollution from sewage effluent, industrial discharges, and urban runoff has contaminated the species' food sources. Predation on young and eggs by the introduced red fox may be responsible for the recent rapid decline of the clapper rail population in south San Francisco Bay.

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** USFWS (1984) developed a recovery plan for the California clapper rail and the salt marsh harvest mouse. The objectives of the plan emphasize protection and enhancement of existing marshes and restoration of former habitat. The specific objectives are outlined under "Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements" for the salt marsh harvest mouse.

The establishment of the San Francisco Bay National Wildlife Refuge has preserved approximately 40% of the remaining clapper rail habitat in south San Francisco Bay. The refuge contains many areas with high potential for marsh restoration. Potential habitat for the rail exists in Suisun Marsh.

#### Citations

Brooks, A. 1940. The clapper rail of Morro Bay. *Condor* 42(2):126-127.

California Department of Fish and Game. 1992. 1991 annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

DeGroot, D. S. 1927. The California clapper rail: its nesting habits, enemies and habitat. *Condor* 29(6):259-270.

Grinnell, J., and A. H. Miller. 1944. The distribution of the birds of California. Casper Ornithological Club. Berkeley, CA.

Moffitt, J. 1941. Notes on the food of the California clapper rail. *Condor* 43(6):270-273.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1984. The salt marsh harvest mouse/California clapper rail recovery plan. Rockville, MD.

## **CALIFORNIA CONDOR (*Gymnogyps californianus*)**

**Legal Status.** The California condor is listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts and is designated as a fully protected species under the California Fish and Game Code.

**Historic and Current Distribution and Status.** California condors were once widespread throughout western North America from British Columbia (Canada) to Baja California (Mexico) (California Department of Fish and Game 1992). After 1850, the species became rare north of California. The condor population declined until, by 1940, the species was restricted to only California (Koford 1953). All confirmed nest sites of the condor were located south of San Francisco and north of Baja California (Koford 1953).

By the 1980s, the California condor had been restricted to the Coast Ranges from northern Los Angeles County, San Luis Obispo County, and Tulare County in the western Sierra Nevada. In 1987, the last wild condor was captured for an intensive captive-breeding program. As of October 30, 1998, the total population was 150 birds; 104 in captivity and 46 in the wild. There are 25 condors around Vermillion Cliffs near the Grand Canyon (Arizona), five at Ventana/Big Sur (Monterey and San Luis Obispo Counties), and 16 at Lion Canyon/Castle Crags (Santa Barbara and Ventura Counties) (Los Angeles Zoo 1998).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** The California condor is present in the West San Joaquin Basin Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** The California condor can be found in mountains and surrounding grasslands where it can easily spot and approach carrion (Zeiner et al. 1990). They also require large trees and snags for roosting (Zeiner et al. 1990). Condors nest in caves, crevices, behind rock slabs, or on large ledges on high sandstone cliffs. Eggs are not laid in nests but on bare ground (Zeiner et al. 1990).

**Reasons for Decline.** Human activities, directly and indirectly, have been the greatest threat to the California condor's survival. Egg collecting, egg predation by ravens and other predators, poisons and contaminants, shooting, lead poisoning, energy development and human disturbance have lead to the significant decline of this species (California Department of Fish and Game 1992, California Condor Recovery Team 1994).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** Approximately 570,000 acres of critical habitat has been designated for the California condor in six southern California counties (Ventura, Los Angeles, Santa Barbara, San Luis Obispo, Kern, and Tulare Counties). None of these critical habitat areas are located in the CALFED Solution Area.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** To be completed.

### Citations

California. Department of Fish and Game. 1992. Annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

California Condor Recovery Team. 1994. California condor (*Gymnogyps californianus*): recovery plan. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Portland, OR.

Koford, C.B. 1953. The California condor. National Audubon Society Research Report 4:1-154.

Los Angeles Zoo. 1998. Web page information. <http://www.cerf.net/lazoo/cstats.htm>. California Condor Conservation. January 7, 1999.

Zeiner, D. C., W. F. Launderlayer, Jr., K. E. Mayer, and M. White (eds.). 1990. California's Wildlife, volume 2: birds. California Department of Fish and Game. Sacramento, CA.

## **CALIFORNIA LEAST TERN (*Sterna antillarum browni*)**

**Legal Status.** The California least tern is listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts and as a fully protected species under the California Fish and Game Code.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Historically, California least terns occurred throughout coastal regions south of Santa Cruz County. Currently, nesting populations can be found from San Luis Obispo County to San Diego County, with the greatest number of breeding pairs in Los Angeles, Orange, and San Diego Counties. One breeding colony occurs in the San Francisco Bay Area. California least terns are found in the state only during the breeding season (from April to September).

From 1970 to 1991, the estimated number of breeding pairs increased from 600 to 1,830. Acquisition of nesting areas by public agencies has contributed to better protection of existing colonies. Newly created shoreline areas have contributed to an increase in nesting habitat.

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** The least tern occurs in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** California least terns nest in colonies of 30-50 pairs on expansive stretches of shoreline and salt evaporation areas. They feed on a wide variety of small species of fish and other prey near the shore.

**Reasons for Decline.** Nesting colonies are disturbed by human activities in nesting areas and predation by American crows, American kestrels, and introduced species such as feral cats and red foxes. Near developed areas, native species that are tolerant of development (raccoons) exert an unnaturally high predation pressure. Off-road-vehicle use, coastal development, and other disturbances have played a major role in reducing available nesting habitat.

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan for the California least tern was issued in 1980 that emphasized annual breeding-population surveys and site management and protection activities, including predator control and protection from human activities.

## LEAST BELL'S VIREO (*Vireo bellii pusillus*)

**Legal Status.** The least Bell's vireo is listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** The least Bell's vireo's historical range once spread from interior northern California near Red Bluff (Tehama County) south through the Sacramento and San Joaquin Valleys, and in the Coast Ranges from Santa Clara County south to approximately San Fernando in Baja California (California Department of Fish and Game 1992).

The current breeding range is restricted to two intermittent localities in the Salinas River Valley (Monterey and San Benito Counties): one along the Armagosa River (Inyo County) and numerous small populations from southern California (primarily Santa Barbara, Riverside, Ventura, and San Diego Counties) into northwest Baja California.

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** The least Bell's vireo no longer occurs in any of the 14 ecological zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** This insectivorous species inhabits dense, willow-dominated riparian habitats with lush understory vegetation, which is limited to the immediate vicinity of watercourses. Unlike its other subspecies, the least Bell's vireo does not frequent upland sites and is especially vulnerable to the loss and fragmentation of riparian habitats (51 FR [85]:16474-16483, May 2 1986). It is a summer resident of the following riparian habitats: willow (*Salix* sp.), cottonwood (*Populus fremontii*) forests, oak (usually *Quercus agrifolia*) forests, shrubby thicket (often composed solely of willow species, usually narrowleaf willow, *Salix d exigua* or black willow, *Salix gooddingii*), and dry washes (with willow thickets at the edges to provide foraging habitat and nest sites) (California Department of Fish and Game 1992).

**Reasons for Decline.** Loss and fragmentation of willow-dominated riparian areas is the major cause of the decline of the least Bell's vireo. Brood parasitism by the brown-headed cowbird has also contributed to the decline of this species (California Department of Fish and Game 1992).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) has designated 38,000 acres in 10 localities in six counties in southern California as critical habitat for this species (59 FR 4845, February 2, 1994).

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A draft recovery plan has been prepared by USFWS (U. S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998). The objective of the draft recovery plan is to delist the least Bell's vireo. Actions identified in the recovery plan to achieve this objective include: 1) protect and manage riparian and adjacent upland habitats within the least Bell's vireo historical range, 2) conduct research to determine the current status of the species and its habitat within its current range and to identify its ecological requirements, 3) develop and evaluate methods for restoring or enhancing habitat for the species, 4) establish additional populations within the species' historical range, 5) evaluate the progress of recovery, effectiveness of management and recovery actions, and revise management plans, and 6) provide public information and education.

### **Citations**

California Department of Fish and Game. 1992. Annual report on the status of California listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

Franzreb, K. 1989. Ecology and conservation of the endangered least Bell's vireo. (Biological report 89[1].) U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Endangered Species Office. Sacramento, CA.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1998. Draft recovery plan for the least Bell's vireo. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Portland, OR.



## NORTHERN SPOTTED OWL (*Strix occidentalis caurina*)

**Legal Status.** The northern spotted owl is listed as threatened under the federal Endangered Species Act.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Historically, the range of the northern spotted owl extended throughout the mountains of northwestern California, western Oregon, western Washington, and southwestern British Columbia (Gutierrez et al. 1995). In California, the northern spotted owl's range extends east to western Modoc County, south to Marin County, and north to the Oregon Border. The current distribution of the northern spotted owl is similar to the historical range where forested habitat still exists.

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** The northern spotted owl is present in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay, Colusa Basin, Cottonwood Creek Basin, Sacramento River, and the Northern Sacramento Valley Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Northern spotted owls generally select mature and old-growth forest for habitat use (Forsman 1980; Forsman et al. 1984; Solis and Gutierrez 1990; Sisco 1990; Carey 1990, 1992). They have been found in the following forest types: Douglas-fir, western hemlock, grand fir, white fir, ponderosa pine, and Shasta red fir (Forsman et al. 1984).

Northern spotted owls nest almost exclusively in trees, and the majority of egg laying occurs in April (Forsman et al. 1984). Annual variation in breeding may be related to weather conditions and fluctuations in prey abundance (Zabel et al. 1996). The primary causes of mortality in northern spotted owls are starvation and predation by great horned owls and goshawks (Forsman et al. 1984). Spotted owls are perch-and-pounce predators that feed mainly on small and medium-size mammals (Marshall 1942, Forsman 1976, Barrows 1980, Solis 1983, Forsman et al. 1984, Barrows 1987, Carey 1990, Thomas 1990).

**Reasons for Decline.** Loss of habitat from heavy logging is the primary reason for the decline of the northern spotted owl. Additionally, because of their specificity for certain kinds of habitat, low fecundity, long life span, and negative response to fragmentation and habitat loss, they are more likely to be negatively affected following extensive habitat disturbance (Forsman et al. 1984, Forsman 1988, Carey et al. 1992, Johnson 1992).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** The Cottonwood Creek Ecological Zone has been designated as critical habitat for the northern spotted owl.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan for the species has been prepared by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (57 FR 1796-1838, January 15 1992).

## Citations

- Barrows, C. W. 1980. Summer roost selection by spotted owls: an adaptation to heat stress. M.S. thesis. California State University, Long Beach, CA.
- Barrows, C. W. 1987. Diet shifts in breeding and nonbreeding spotted owls. *Journal of Raptor Research* 21:95-97.
- Carey, A. B., J. A. Reid, and S. P. Horton. 1990. Spotted owl home range and habitat use in southern Oregon Coast Ranges. *Journal of Wildlife Management*. 54:11-17.
- Carey, A. B., S. P. Horton, and B. L. Biswell. 1992. Northern spotted owls: influence of prey base and landscape character. *Ecological Monographs* 62:223-250.
- Forsman, E. D. 1976. A preliminary investigation of the spotted owl in Oregon. M. S. thesis. Oregon State University, Corvallis, OR.
- Forsman, E. D. 1980. Habitat utilization by spotted owls in the west-central cascades of Oregon. Ph.D. dissertation. Oregon State University, Corvallis, OR.
- Forsman, E. D., E. C. Meslow, and H. M. Wight. 1984. Distribution and biology of the spotted owl in Oregon. *Wildlife Monographs* 87:1-64.
- Forsman, E. D., C. R. Bruce, M. A. Walter and E. C. Meslow. 1988. A current assessment of the spotted owl population in Oregon. *Murrelet* 68: 51-54.
- Gutierrez, R. J., A. B. Franklin, and W.S. LaHaye. 1995. Spotted owl. A. Poole and F. Gill (eds.), *The birds of North America* number 179. The Academy of Natural Sciences, Philadelphia, PA, and The American Ornithologists' Union, Washington DC.
- Johnson, D. H. 1992. Spotted owls, great horned owls, and forest fragmentation in the central Oregon Cascades. M.S. thesis. Oregon State University, Corvallis, OR.
- Marshall, J. T., Jr. 1942. Food and habitat of the spotted owl. *Condor* 44:66-67.
- Sisco, C. L. 1990. Seasonal home range and habitat ecology of spotted owls in northwestern California. M.S. thesis. Humboldt State University, Arcata, CA.
- Solis D. M., Jr. 1983. Summer habitat ecology of spotted owls in northwestern California. M.S. thesis. Humboldt State University, Arcata, CA.
- Solis D. M., and R. J. Gutierrez. 1990. Summer habitat ecology of northern spotted owls in northwestern California. *Condor* 92:739-748.

Thomas J. W., E. D. Forsman, J. B. Lint, E. C. Meslow, B. R. Noon, and J. Verner. 1990. A conservation strategy for the northern spotted owl. Report of the Interagency Scientific Committee to address the conservation of the Northern Spotted Owl. United States Department of Agriculture Forest Service, United States Department of the Interior Bureau of Land Management, Fish and Wildlife Service and National Park Service. United States Government Printing Office 791-171/20023, Washington DC.

Zabel, C.J., S. E. Salmons, and M. Brown. 1996. Demography of northern spotted owls in southwestern Oregon. *Studies in Avian Biology* 17:77-82.

## WESTERN SNOWY PLOVER (*Charadrius alexandrinus nivosus*)

**Legal Status.** The western snowy plover (coastal populations) is listed as threatened under the federal Endangered Species Act, designated as a species of special concern by the California Department of Fish and Game (DFG), and designated a migratory nongame bird of management concern by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS). The inland populations of the western snowy plover is designated as a species of special concern by DFG and as a migratory nongame bird of management concern by USFWS.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Historical records suggest that nesting western snowy plovers were once more widely distributed in coastal California. In coastal California, snowy plovers nested at 53 locations before 1970 (Page and Stenzel 1981). Since then, no evidence of breeding birds has been found at 33 of these 53 sites, which represents a 62% decline (Page and Stenzel 1981).

The western snowy plover's current distribution in California is along the coast from Oregon to Mexico and near lakes in the drier interior portions of California. In 1980, the adult population was estimated at 3,408 individuals; by 1989 it was estimated at 3,031. The largest coastal breeding population of this species is found around the San Francisco Bay; the largest inland breeding populations are found around Owens Lake (Inyo County) and Alkali Lake (Modoc County) (Small 1994).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** The western snowy plover occurs as a nesting species in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay, Yolo Basin, and West San Joaquin Basin Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** The coastal populations nest on sandy beaches above the upper limits of normal tides. The inland populations nest around the shores of alkali lakes and along dikes of saltponds (Grinnell and Miller 1944). There are nesting sites scattered along the coast from the Oregon border to San Diego County, as well as along many inland lakes and saltponds and on the Channel Islands (Remsen 1978). Western snowy plovers nest from April to August. Nests are built by digging a depression in the sand and lining it with shells and other debris (Zeiner et al. 1990). Western snowy plovers feed on arthropods in the dry sands of the upper beach, rarely foraging in the wet sand, and primarily on brine flies around saltponds and alkali lakes (Cogswell 1977).

**Reasons for Decline.** Human activity around nesting sites is the major reason for this species' decline. Almost every beach that has suitable habitat shows signs of human disturbance, especially by off-road vehicles (Remsen 1978). Several lakes in the San Joaquin Valley were drained and converted to farmland, which contributed to the loss of foraging and nesting habitat.

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### Citations

- Cogswell, H. L. 1977. Water birds of California. University of California Press. Berkeley, CA.
- Grinnell, J., and A. H. Miller. 1944. The distribution of the birds of California. The Cooper Ornithological Club. Berkeley, CA. Reprinted in 1986. Artemisia Press. Lee Vining, CA.
- Page, G. W., and L. E. Stenzel. 1981. The breeding status of the snowy plover in California. Western Birds 12:1-40.
- Remsen, J. V. 1978. Bird species of special concern in California. Prepared for the California Department of Fish and Game. Sacramento, CA.
- Small, A. 1994. California birds: their status and distribution. Ibis Publishing Company. Vista, CA.
- Zeiner, D.C., W. F. Laudenslayer, K. E. Mayer, and M. White (eds.) 1990. California's wildlife: volume 2: birds. California Department of Fish and Game. Sacramento, CA.

## **ALAMEDA WHIPSNAKE (*Masticophis lateralis euryxanthus*)**

**Legal Status.** The Alameda whipsnake is listed as threatened under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts and as a fully protected species under the California Fish and Game Code.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** The Alameda whipsnake historically occurred and currently occurs in Alameda and Contra Costa Counties (California Department of Fish and Game 1992). There are five remaining populations with little or no genetic flow between them. These populations are:

(1) Sobrante Ridge, from the Tilden/Wildcat Regional Parks area to the Briones Hills, in Contra Costa County (Tilden-Briones population);

(2) Oakland Hills, from the Anthony Chabot area to Las Trampas Ridge, in Contra Costa County (Oakland-Las Trampas population);

(3) Hayward Hills, from the Palomares area to Pleasanton Ridge, in Alameda County (Hayward-Pleasanton Ridge population);

(4) Mount Diablo vicinity and the Black Hills, in Contra Costa County (Mount Diablo-Black Hills population); and

(5) Wauhab Ridge, from the Del Valle area to the Cedar Mountain Ridge, in Alameda County (Sunol-Cedar Mountain population) (62 FR 64306, December 5, 1997).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** The Alameda whipsnake occurs year round in the West San Joaquin Basin and Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** The Alameda whipsnake can occur in any inner Coast Range plant community, including chaparral, grasslands, open woodlands, on rocky slopes, and along open streams and arroyos (California Department of Fish and Game 1992). The mating season for the species is March through June; males and females mate near the hibernacula of the female (62 FR 64306, December 5, 1997).

**Reasons for Decline.** The primary cause of the decline of the Alameda whipsnake is the loss of habitat from human activities and the alteration of suitable habitat from fire suppression and the resulting increased likelihood of catastrophic wildfires. Habitat fragmentation from urban development and associated highway and road development has led to genetic isolation of most populations. (62 FR 64306, December 5, 1997.)

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

**Citation**

California Department of Fish and Game. 1992. Annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

## **BLUNT-NOSED LEOPARD LIZARD (*Gambelia silus*)**

**Legal Status.** The blunt-nosed leopard lizard is listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts and as a fully protected species under the California Fish and Game Code.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** The blunt-nosed leopard lizard was historically found throughout the San Joaquin Valley and adjacent foothills from San Joaquin County to eastern San Luis Obispo County (California Department of Fish and Game 1992). Blunt-nosed leopard lizard habitat was reduced from 228,000 acres to 158,000 acres between 1976 and 1980 (California Department of Fish and Game 1992). The species currently occupies isolated and scattered areas of undeveloped habitat on the San Joaquin Valley floor and in the eastern foothills of the Coast Range (California Department of Fish and Game 1992).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** The blunt-nosed leopard lizard is a resident species in the East San Joaquin Basin and West San Joaquin Basin Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Blunt-nosed leopard lizards are found in sparsely vegetated plains, alkali flats, grasslands, low foothills, canyon floors, and large washes (California Department of Fish and Game 1988). They inhabit areas with sandy soils and scattered vegetation and are usually absent from thickly vegetated habitats (California Department of Fish and Game 1992). The mating season for the blunt-nosed leopard lizard is from late April through May (Zeiner et al. 1988). Breeding females can be identified by the orange or reddish spots on their sides (California Department of Fish and Game 1992). Blunt-nosed leopard lizards feed on a variety of insects, as well as on other small lizards, and have been known to be cannibalistic (Zeiner et al. 1988).

**Reasons for Decline.** Almost all of the suitable habitat in the San Joaquin Valley has been eliminated or fragmented by agricultural development and urbanization (California Department of Fish and Game 1992, U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1997). The use of agricultural pest control programs, which eliminate insect prey; intensive grazing; and petroleum and mineral extraction have also contributed to the decline of the blunt-nosed leopard (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1997).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan was first prepared by the USFWS in 1980 and revised in 1985 (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1985). Reclassification of the species as threatened may be considered when sufficient acreage has been secured to maintain self-sustaining populations of blunt-nosed leopard lizard on the San Joaquin Valley floor. Approximately 30,000 acres of habitat in the San Joaquin Valley should be secured, with acquisition emphasis on optimal habitats containing comparatively high-density lizard populations. Populations will be collectively managed to meet or exceed a minimum average density of one lizard per acre. Delisting of this species may be possible when adjacent foothills and plains habitats of sufficient size to maintain self-perpetuating populations have also been secured (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1985).



As part of the federal recovery plan, approximately 8,065 acres habitat are currently preserved, including the state-owned Alkali Sink Ecological Preserve (445 acres) in Fresno County and the Allensworth State Park (593 acres), Prairie Wildflower Preserve (4,809 acres), Voice of America transmitter site (630 acres), U.S. Forest Service Horse Pasture (790 acres), and Pixley National Wildlife Refuge (5,125 acres) in Tulare County. (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1985.)

#### Citations

California Department of Fish and Game. 1992. Annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1985. Blunt-nosed leopard lizard habitat protection- land protection plan. Region 1, Portland, OR.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1997. Draft recovery plan for arid upland and riparian species of the San Joaquin Valley, California. Sacramento Fish and Wildlife Office. Sacramento, CA.

Zeiner, D. C., W. F. Laudenslayer, Jr., K. E. Mayer (eds.). 1988. California's Wildlife: volume 2: amphibians and reptiles. California Department of Fish and Game. Sacramento, CA.

## GIANT GARTER SNAKE (*Thamnophis gigas*)

**Legal Status.** The giant garter snake is listed as threatened under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Historically, the giant garter snake was found throughout the Central Valley, from Butte County south to Kern County. Habitat loss resulting from wetland reclamation and agricultural development extirpated the giant garter snake from the southern one-third of its range from the 1940s to 1950s (Hansen and Brode 1980). Presently, populations of the snake are limited to ponds, sloughs, marshes, and rice fields of Sacramento, Sutter, Butte, Colusa, and Glenn Counties, although remnant populations exist along the western border of the Yolo Bypass in Yolo County and along the eastern fringes of the Delta from the Laguna Creek-Elk Grove region of Sacramento County south to Stockton, San Joaquin County (Hansen 1986; 58 FR 54053, October 20, 1993). The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) recognized the existence of 13 populations of giant garter snake (58 FR 54053, October 20, 1993). Some populations may not be viable because they are small, highly fragmented, and restricted to small patches of habitat of limited quality. Populations in the Colusa, Butte, Sutter, and American River basins are associated with rice production and occupy the agricultural water delivery and drainage ditches (58 FR 54053, October 20, 1993). The largest extant population inhabits the water channels and ditches of agricultural lands in the American River basin at the confluence of the American and Sacramento Rivers (58 FR 54053, October 20, 1993).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** The giant garter snake is present in the Butte Basin, Feather River/Sutter Basin, Colusa Basin, Yolo Basin, American River Basin, Eastside Delta Tributaries, Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta, East San Joaquin Basin, and West San Joaquin Basin Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** The giant garter snake is endemic to emergent wetlands in the Central Valley. The species' habitat includes marshes; sloughs; ponds; small lakes; and low-gradient waterways, such as small streams, irrigation and drainage canals, and rice fields (58 FR 54053, October 20, 1993). The giant garter snake requires adequate water with herbaceous, emergent vegetation for protective cover and foraging habitat. Primary food items include fish, tadpoles, and frogs (Hansen and Brode 1980). Open areas and grassy banks are needed for basking. Small mammal burrows and other small crevices at higher elevations provide winter hibernation sites and refuge from floodwaters (58 FR 54053, October 20, 1993).

All three habitat components (cover and foraging habitat, basking areas, and protected hibernation sites) are needed. Because of their lack of basking areas and the lack of prey populations, riparian woodlands usually do not support the giant garter snake (Hansen and Brode 1980). Additionally, because of predation by introduced fish, larger rivers generally do not support the snake (58 FR 54053, October 20, 1993).

**Reasons for Decline.** Habitat loss to agricultural development has been the primary factor in the decline of giant garter snake populations. Small remaining populations are susceptible to

predation by fish, mammals, and birds. Additional causes of mortality include vehicular traffic, agricultural practices, and maintenance of water channels.

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

#### **Citations**

Hansen, G. E. 1986. Status of the giant garter snake, *Thamnophis couchi* gigas (Fitch) in the southern Central Valley during 1986. California Department of Fish and Game. Sacramento, CA.

Hansen, G. E., and J. M. Brode. 1980. Status of the giant garter snake, *Thamnophis couchi* gigas (Fitch). California Department of Fish and Game, Inland Fishery Endangered Species Program special publication 80-5. Sacramento, CA.

## CALIFORNIA RED-LEGGED FROG (*Rana aurora draytoni*)

**Legal Status.** The California red-legged frog is listed as threatened under the federal Endangered Species Act and is a California species of special concern.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** The California red-legged frog was found in scattered populations throughout much of lowland California west of the Sierra Nevada. The species' range extended from coastal Marin County; inland into Shasta County, and south into northwestern Baja California, Mexico (57 FR 45761, October 5, 1992). Habitat loss has resulted in the species' extirpation from approximately 75% of its historical range (57 FR 45761, October 5, 1992), including the floor of the Central Valley and probably more than one-half of the drainage systems in the valley (Hayes and Jennings 1986). There are only three areas now known to support large breeding populations ( $\geq 350$  adults) of the California red-legged frog: Pescadero Marsh Nature Reserve, San Mateo County; Point Reyes National Seashore, Marin County; and Rancho San Carlos, Monterey County (57 FR 45761, October 5, 1992). Other breeding localities include the Los Vaqueros area in Alameda County, Webber Creek in El Dorado County, and Plumas County.

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** The California red-legged frog is found in the West San Joaquin Basin, Eastside Delta Tributaries, and Feather River/Sutter Basin Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** California red-legged frogs require cold pond habitats (including stream pools and stockponds) with emergent and submergent vegetation (Storer 1925). Habitats with the highest densities of frogs are deepwater ponds (at least 3 feet deep) with dense stands of overhanging willows and a fringe of cattails (Jennings 1988, Hayes and Jennings 1988). Red-legged frogs occur most frequently in intermittent waters that lack fish and bullfrogs (Hayes and Jennings 1988).

California red-legged frogs lay their eggs in clusters around aquatic vegetation from December to early April. The larvae require approximately 3–5 months to complete metamorphosis (Storer 1925). Adults are highly aquatic when active, but are less dependent on permanent water bodies than other frog species (Brode and Bury 1984). Adults may estivate during dry periods in rodent holes or cracks in the soil (Hansen pers. comm.).

**Reasons for Decline.** The causes of the red-legged frog's decline are poorly understood (Hayes and Jennings 1986); however, several factors have probably contributed to their decline, including overharvest, habitat loss, and an increase in introduced fish and bullfrog populations. Specific areas, such as the San Joaquin Valley, were particularly affected by wetland reclamation and species harvest (Jennings and Hayes 1984). The continued loss of wetland habitats threatens remaining populations.

The number of permanent ponds located in the Central Valley below an elevation of 4,500 feet has increased (Moyle 1978); however, most red-legged frogs are restricted to intermittent waters. Hayes and Jennings (1988) suggested that this restriction is the result of the introduction of

non-native fishes and bullfrogs to wetland habitats with permanent water. Introduced fishes and bullfrogs prey on red-legged frog larvae and adults and compete with them for food.

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### Citations

#### Printed References

- Brode, J. M., and R. B. Bury. 1984. The importance of riparian systems to amphibians and reptiles. Pages 30-36 in R. E. Warner and K. M. Hendrix (eds.), California riparian systems ecology, conservation, and productive maintenance. University of California Press. Berkeley, CA.
- Hayes, M. P., and M. R. Jennings. 1986. Decline of varied frog species in western North America: are bullfrogs (*Rana catesbeiana*) responsible? *Journal of Herpetology* 20(4):490-509.
- \_\_\_\_\_. 1988. Habitat correlates of distribution of the California red-legged frog (*Rana aurora draytonii*) and the foothill yellow-legged frog (*Rana boylei*): implications for management. In Szaro, R. C., K. E. Severson, and D. Patton, technical eds. Management of amphibians, reptiles, and small mammals in North America. U.S. Forest Service. (General Technical Report RM-166.) Fort Collins, CO.
- Jennings, M. R. 1988. Native history and decline of native ranids in California. Pages 61-72 in H. F. DeLisle, P. R. Brown, B. Kaufman, and B. M. McCurthy (eds.), Proceedings of the Conference on California Herpetology. November. Based on regional conference held at Los Angeles County Museum of Natural History, Los Angeles, CA, October 10-11, 1987. (Special Publication No. 4.) Southwestern Herpetologists Society. Van Nuys, CA.
- Jennings, M. R., and M. P. Hayes. 1984. The frogs of Tulare. *Outdoor California* 45(6):17-19.
- Moyle, P. B. 1978. Effects of introduced bullfrogs, *Rana catesbeiana*, on native frogs of the San Joaquin Valley. *Copeia* 73(1):18-22.
- Storer, T. L. 1925. A synopsis of the amphibians of California. University of California Publications in Zoology 27:1-342.

## Personal Communication

Hansen, George. Consulting herpetologist. Sacramento, CA. January 18, 25, and July 15, 1998 - telephone conversations.

### DELTA SMELT (*Hypomesus transpacificus*)

**Legal Status.** The delta smelt is listed as threatened under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Delta smelt are found mainly in the waters of the Delta and Suisun Bay, but are generally most abundant in the western Delta and eastern Suisun Bay (Honkers Bay). Their spawning distribution varies from year to year within the Delta. The species is endemic to the Sacramento-San Joaquin estuary and its population abundance varies substantially from year to year. Abundance has been uncharacteristically low since 1982, in large part because of the extended drought of 1987-1992 and possibly to extremely wet years in 1983 and 1986 (Moyle et al. 1989). Population abundance has fluctuated recently from increases in some years to uncharacteristic decreases in other years (Interagency Ecological Program 1998).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Delta smelt are confined primarily to the Delta and Suisun Marsh/San Francisco Bay Ecological Zones. They appear to move upstream from Suisun Bay into the Delta in winter and spring to spawn. After early rearing in the Delta, they tend to move downstream to low-salinity habitats in the western Delta (particularly in drier years) and Suisun Bay (in both wet and dry years). Small populations also occur in the Napa River estuary and Suisun Marsh.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Delta smelt are small, plankton-feeding fish that usually live for only 1 year. In most years, delta smelt spawn primarily in the upper end of Suisun Bay, in Montezuma Slough, and in the northern and central Delta. In the Delta, they spawn mostly in the Sacramento River channel, central Delta, and adjacent sloughs (59 FR 852, January 6, 1994). Delta smelt typically spawn from February through May and spawning is believed to take place primarily in shallow edgewaters and river areas under tidal influence with moderate to fast velocities (Wang 1991). Approximately 2 parts per thousand salinity, or the area just upstream of it, is the principal habitat of delta smelt larvae and young juveniles (Herbold et al. 1992, Jassby 1993).

**Reasons for Decline.** Factors that contribute to low abundance relative to historical conditions include change in flow patterns; entrainment in diversions; contaminants; and species interactions, particularly competition and predation associated with establishment of non-native species (Stevens et al. 1990, Herbold et al. 1992). Although effects of contaminants have not been specifically described for delta smelt, pesticides have been found in the Sacramento River in recent years at concentrations potentially harmful to fish larvae (Herbold et al. 1992). Recent bioassays by the Central Valley Regional Water Quality Control Board indicate that water in the Sacramento

River is periodically toxic to larvae of the fathead minnow, a standard U.S. Environmental Protection Agency (USEPA) test organism (Stevens et al. 1990).

Food availability may be an important factor affecting survival of delta smelt larvae. Abundance of rotifers and phytoplankton has declined in recent years (Obrebski et al. 1992). Rotifers are small and may be important to the diet of larval delta smelt (California Department of Water Resource and U.S. Bureau of Reclamation 1993) and other fish larvae (Hunter 1981).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** Critical habitat for delta smelt includes the areas of all waters and all submerged lands below ordinary high water and the entire water column bounded by and contained in Suisun Bay; the length of Goodyear, Suisun, Cutoff, First Mallard, and Montezuma sloughs; and the existing contiguous waters contained within the Delta.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** USFWS (1996) developed a recovery plan for delta smelt, the objective of which is to manage the estuary in such a way that it is a better habitat for native fish in general and delta smelt in particular. Recovery is tied to increased abundance and distribution within the Bay and Delta. Improved habitat conditions will allow delta smelt to be widely distributed throughout the Delta and Suisun Bay.

#### Citations

Herbold, B., A. D. Jassby, and P. B. Moyle. 1992. Status and trends report on aquatic resources in the San Francisco estuary. San Francisco Estuary Project, U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. Oakland, CA.

Hunter, J. R. 1981. Feeding ecology and predation of marine fish larvae. Pages 34-77 in R. Lasker (ed.), Marine fish larvae. University of Washington Press. Seattle, WA.

Interagency Ecological Program. 1998. Interagency Ecological Program Web page: IEP.water.ca.gov.

Jassby, A. D. 1993. Isohaline position as a habitat indicator for estuarine resources: San Francisco estuary in SFEP 1993. Managing freshwater discharge to the San Francisco Bay/Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta Estuary: the scientific basis for an estuarine standard, appendix 3. Oakland, CA.

Moyle, P. B., R. M. Yoshiyama, J. E. Williams, and E. D. Wikramanayake. 1995. Fish species of special concern of California. Second edition. California Department of Fish and Game, Inland Fisheries Division. Rancho Cordova, CA.

Obrebski, S., J. J. Orsi, and W. J. Kimmerer. 1992. Long-term trends in zooplankton distribution and abundance in the Sacramento-San Joaquin estuary in California. (FS/BIO-IATR/92-32, Technical Report 32.) California Department of Water Resources. Sacramento, CA.

Prepared for Interagency Ecological Studies Program for the Sacramento-San Joaquin Estuary. Stockton, CA.

Stevens, D. E., L. W. Miller, and B. C. Bolster. 1990. Report to the Fish and Game Commission: a status review of the delta smelt (*Hypomesus transpacificus*) in California. (Candidate Species Status Report 90-2.) California Department of Fish and Game. Stockton, CA.



Wang, J. C. S. 1991. Early life stages and early life history of the delta smelt, *Hypomesus transpacificus*, in the Sacramento-San Joaquin Estuary, with comparison of early life stages of the longfin smelt, *Spirinchus thaleichthys*, (FS/BIO-IATR/91-28. Technical Report 28.) California Department of Water Resources. Sacramento, CA. Prepared for Interagency Ecological Studies Program for the Sacramento-San Joaquin Estuary. Stockton, CA.

## SACRAMENTO SPLITTAIL (*Pogonichthys macrolepidotus*)

**Legal Status.** The Sacramento splittail is listed as threatened under the federal Endangered Species Act and is a California species of special concern.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Endemic to Central Valley lakes and rivers, adult splittail now primarily inhabit the Delta and Suisun Bay and Marsh (Moyle et al. 1995). The species' distribution has been reduced to less than one-third of its original range (59 FR 862, January 6, 1994). Fish surveys in the Sacramento-San Joaquin estuary indicate that splittail abundance there had declined by over 50% from 1980 through 1994, most likely in response to the drought of 1987–1992 (Meng and Moyle 1995, Sommer et al. 1997). In 1995, abundance reached a record high, relative to historical conditions (Sommer et al. 1997). Strong year classes follow high flow years (i.e., 1995), when portions of the estuary and river floodplains are flooded in winter and early spring. Preliminary surveys in 1998 indicated high larvae and juvenile abundance during this very wet year (California Department of Fish and Game 1998).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Splittail are found in all the ecological zones of the Central Valley except the West San Joaquin Basin Ecological Zone. Adults and juveniles live in the Bay and Delta ecozones and migrate upstream during winter and spring. Adults are found in river ecozones generally from early winter through spring. Most young move out of upstream spawning and rearing habitat in spring and early summer.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Splittail are estuarine fish capable of tolerating moderate levels of salinity from 10–18 parts per thousand. Splittail typically spawn in dead-end sloughs and slow reaches of large rivers and river floodplains over submerged vegetation. Spawning occurs primarily in the lower river reaches and flood bypasses of the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers. Shallow, weedy areas inundated during seasonal flooding provide habitat for adult spawning and foraging and subsequent egg development and larval and early juvenile rearing. As flooded habitat disappears, larvae and juveniles use habitat along the margins of the main river and Delta channels. Although splittail use deeper, open water as they grow, much of the population continues to use shallow (<10 feet) edge habitat as adults (Meng and Moyle 1995). Juvenile splittail are commonly found in Delta sloughs in late winter and spring and are particularly abundant in the vicinity of Montezuma Slough. As summer progresses, juvenile splittail occupy the deeper, open-water habitats of Suisun and San Pablo Bays.

**Reasons for Decline.** The human-caused factor that has had the greatest effect on the abundance of splittail is loss and degradation of floodplain and marsh habitat (California Department of Fish and Game 1992). Land reclamation, flood control practices, and agricultural development have eliminated and drastically altered much of the ephemeral and perennial shallow-water habitats in the lowland areas available to spawning adults, larvae, and juveniles. An estimated 96% of historical wetland habitats are either unavailable to splittail or have been eliminated (50 CFR 17). Splittail abundance is positively associated with high Delta outflows during primary spawning months (March through May) (California Department of Fish and Game 1992, Sommer et al. 1997). High Delta outflows during late winter and spring correlate with increased total surface area of shallow-water habitats containing submerged vegetation (used by spawning adults), both within and

upstream of the Delta. During years of low riverflow, such as the 1986–1992 drought, spawning success may be greatly reduced, contributing to reduced adult abundance.

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** USFWS (1996) developed a recovery plan for the reduced population of splittail. The objective of the plan is to 1) create meander belts along the Sacramento River by setting levees back; 2) create and reconnect wetlands to the floodplain in the lower San Joaquin, Tuolumne, and Stanislaus Rivers; 3) restore marsh habitat in the Delta and Suisun Marsh; 4) manage bypasses for fish; and 5) remove upstream barriers to migration.

### Citations

California Department of Fish and Game. 1992. Impact of water management on splittail in the Sacramento-San Joaquin estuary. (WRINT DFG-5, State Water Resources Control Board 1992 Bay-Delta proceedings, Sacramento, CA.). Sacramento, CA.

\_\_\_\_\_. 1998. DFG Bay-Delta Program Webpage - [delta.dfg.ca.gov](http://delta.dfg.ca.gov).

Meng, L., and P. B. Moyle. 1995. Status of splittail in the Sacramento-San Joaquin estuary. *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society* 124(4):538–549.

Moyle, P. B., R. M. Yoshiyama, J. E. Williams, and E. D. Wikramanayake. 1995. Fish species of special concern in California. Second edition. Prepared for California Resources Agency and California Department of Fish and Game, Inland Fisheries Division. Rancho Cordova, CA.

Sommer, T., R. Baxter, and B. Herbold. 1997. Resilience of splittail in the Sacramento-San Joaquin estuary. *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society* 126:961–976.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1996. Recovery plan for the Sacramento/San Joaquin Delta native fishes. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Portland, OR.

## **TIDEWATER GOBY (*Eucyclogobius newberryi*)**

**Legal Status.** Tidewater goby is listed as endangered under the federal Endangered Species Act and is a California species of special concern.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Tidewater goby is discontinuously distributed throughout California, ranging from the mouth of the Smith River in Del Norte County south to Agua Hedionda Lagoon in San Diego County. Areas of precipitous coastlines that preclude the formation of lagoons at stream mouths have created three natural gaps in the distribution of the goby: 1) Humboldt Bay to Ten Mile River, 2) Point Arena to Salmon Creek, and 3) Monterey Bay to Arroyo del Oso.

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Tidewater goby historically occurred in suitable habitat within the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zone, but are now considered extinct from the zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Tidewater gobies inhabit coastal lagoons, creeks, and brackish marsh habitats, doing best in shallow slackwater areas. They are most abundant in the upper end of lagoons created by small coastal streams and are usually blocked from the ocean by sand bars, seldom subject to tidal fluctuations. In the streams, tidewater gobies occupy mostly slow-moving areas or pools away from the main current, among emergent and submerged vegetation.

Gobies spawn over coarse sand in winter and spring (typically from April through May, although gravid females have been found in January and February [Moyle 1976]). The tidewater goby is capable of tolerating a wide range of salinity, from fresh water to saltwater, and water temperatures as high as 73 °F (Moyle et al. 1989). The tidewater goby is short-lived and typically requires shallow-water habitats with slow water velocities, high dissolved-oxygen levels, sand and mud substrates, and emergent and submergent vegetation (Moyle et al. 1989). The tidewater goby is able to complete its entire life cycle in fresh or brackish water (Wang 1982, Swift et al. 1989).

**Reasons for Decline.** Although widely distributed, tidewater goby populations appear to be declining in response to habitat degradation, such as upstream water diversions, pollution, siltation, and urban development of surrounding lands. Habitat degradation, coupled with the effects of the recent drought and the tidewater goby's relatively short life span (approximately 1 year), have contributed to the decline in the species' abundance throughout California.

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### Citations

- Moyle, P. B. 1976. Inland fishes of California. University of California Press. Berkeley, CA.
- Moyle, P. B., R. M. Yoshiyama, J. E. Williams, and E. D. Wikramanayake. 1995. Fish species of special concern in California. California Department of Fish and Game. Sacramento, CA.
- Swift, C. C., J. L. Nelson, C. Maslow, and T. Stein. 1989. Biology and distribution of the tidewater goby, *Eucyclogobius newberryi* (Pisces: Gobiidae) of California. Los Angeles County Museum of Natural History Contributions in Science. 404:1-19.
- Wang, J. C. S. 1982. Early life history and protection of the tidewater goby *Eucyclogobius newberryi*: (Girard) in the Rodeo Lagoon of the Golden Gate National Recreation Area. Technical Report #7. National Park Service. Contribution No. CPSU/UCD 022/3.

## CALIFORNIA FRESHWATER SHRIMP (*Syncaris pacifica*)

**Legal Status.** The California freshwater shrimp is listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Before human disturbances, the California freshwater shrimp is assumed to have been common in low-elevation, perennial freshwater streams within Marin, Sonoma, and Napa Counties. Today, the shrimp is found in perennial to semiperennial streams below an elevation of 200 meters in Sonoma, Marin, and Napa Counties. Sixteen isolated populations are known. The distribution of the shrimp can be separated into four general geographic regions: 1) tributary streams in the lower Russian River drainage, which flow westward into the Pacific Ocean; 2) coastal streams flowing westward directly into the Pacific Ocean; 3) streams draining into Tamales Bay; and 4) streams flowing southward into northern San Pablo Bay.

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** The California freshwater shrimp occurs in suitable habitat in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** The California freshwater shrimp has evolved to survive a broad range of stream and water temperature conditions characteristic of small, low-gradient (generally less than 1%), perennial coastal streams. California freshwater shrimp require water year round, and do best in slow to still instream pools where vegetation is prevalent, although they will also occur in small unvegetated stream pools isolated by summer droughts.

California freshwater shrimp use undercut banks with willow (*Salix* sp.) or blackberry (*Rubus* sp.) roots in the water or dense pool margins of cattails (*Typha* sp.), and generally occupy areas with a specific amount of canopy (Eng 1981; Serpa 1986, 1991). Excellent habitat conditions for the shrimp include streams 12–36 inches deep with exposed live roots (e.g., alder [*Alnus* sp.] and willow trees along undercut banks [more than 6 inches] with overhanging stream vegetation and vines) (Serpa 1991).

California freshwater shrimp breed at 1.5 years old in September and October, and females carry 50 to 200 eggs on their swimming legs through winter. Young shrimp hatch and leave the parent in spring.

**Reason for Decline.** Stream channelization, deterioration or loss of habitat resulting from water diversion, impoundments, livestock and dairy activities, agricultural activities and development, flood control activities, gravel mining, timber harvesting, migration barriers, water pollution, and introduced predatory fish have eliminated the California freshwater shrimp from six streams since 1975.

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan for the California freshwater shrimp has been prepared by USFWS (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1997) and is currently being revised.

#### Citations

Eng, L. L. 1981. Distribution, life history, and status of the California freshwater shrimp, *Syncaris pacifica* (Holmes). California Department of Fish and Game. Inland Fisheries Endangered Species Program Special Publication 81-1. 27 p. Sacramento, CA.

Serpa, L. 1986. Element stewardship abstract - *Syncaris pacifica*. Unpublished document developed for The Nature Conservancy. 11 p. plus appendices.

\_\_\_\_\_. 1991. Tomales asellid contract survey progress report for the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. August 17. Fish and Wildlife Enhancement, Sacramento Field Office. Sacramento, CA.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1997. Draft California Freshwater Shrimp Recovery Plan. Sacramento, CA.

## **CALLIPPE SILVERSPOT BUTTERFLY (*Speyeria callippe callippe*)**

**Legal Status.** The callippe silverspot butterfly is listed as endangered under the federal Endangered Species Act (62 FR 6430; December 5, 1997).

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Seven populations of the callippe silverspot butterfly were historically known from the San Francisco Bay region. The historical range of the callippe silverspot butterfly includes the inner Coast Range on the eastern shore of San Francisco Bay from northwestern Contra Costa County south to the Castro Valley area in Alameda County. On the west side of the Bay, the species ranged from San Francisco south to the vicinity of La Honda in San Mateo County. Five colonies, including one located at Twin Peaks in San Francisco, were extirpated. The remaining colonies exist on mostly privately owned land, but also on city-, county-, and state-owned land. The callippe silverspot does not occur north of the Golden Gate or Carquinez Straits. Currently, extant colonies are known only from San Bruno Mountain in San Mateo County and a city park.

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** The callippe silverspot butterfly occurs in suitable habitat in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** The callippe silverspot butterfly is found in native grassland and adjacent habitats (Steiner 1990, Thomas Reid Associates 1982). The females lay their eggs on the dry remains of the larval host plant, Johnny jump-up (*Viola pedunculata*), or on the surrounding debris (Arnold 1981, Thomas Reid Associates 1982). After about a week, the larvae hatch and eat the egg shell. The larvae are dark-colored with many branching sharp spines on their backs. The caterpillars wander a short distance and spin a silk pad on which they spend summer, autumn, and winter in diapause. On termination of diapause in spring, the caterpillars immediately seek out the host plant. After having gone through five instars (i.e., growth stages), the larvae pupate within a chamber of leaves that they have drawn together with silk. Pupation usually occurs in May. The adults emerge in about 2 weeks and live for approximately 3 weeks. Depending on environmental conditions, the flight period of this single-brooded butterfly ranges from mid-May to late July. The adults exhibit hilltopping behavior, a phenomenon in which males and females seek a topographic summit to mate.

Specific habitat requirements have been withheld by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) in an effort to reduce pressure from collectors; however, the callippe silverspot butterfly does require habitat that is suitable for the host plant and topographic summits for mating sites.

**Reason for Decline.** The primary cause of the decline of the callippe silverspot butterfly is the loss of habitat from human activities. The species is imperiled by the current and potential future destruction and alteration of its habitat from off-road-vehicle use, trampling by hikers and equestrians, unsuitable levels of livestock grazing, and invasive non-native vegetation. Off-road vehicles and human or horse trampling pose threats to the colonies because these activities could crush the host plants of the larvae or the adult nectar sources.



The callippe silverspot butterfly was once widespread in the San Francisco Bay Area. At least five populations of this species have been eliminated by urban development and other causes. Although the majority of the natural areas on San Bruno Mountain have been preserved and will remain undeveloped in perpetuity, collection of specimens by amateur lepidopterists poses a threat. Use of insecticides may also be a problem.

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

#### **Citations**

Arnold, R. A. 1981. A review of endangered species legislation in the U.S.A. and preliminary research on six endangered California butterflies (Lepidoptera, Lycaenidae). Beh. Ver. Nat. Landsch. Bad.-Wurt. Karl. 21:79-96.

Steiner, J. 1990. Bay Area butterflies; the distribution and natural history of San Francisco region rhopalocera. Master's thesis. California State University at Hayward. 307pp.

Thomas Reid Associates. 1982. Final report to the San Mateo County Steering Committee for San Bruno Mountain. Endangered Species Survey San Bruno Mountain. Biological Study: 1980-1981. Palo Alto, CA.

## DELTA GREEN GROUND BEETLE (*Elaphrus viridus*)

**Legal Status.** The delta green ground beetle is listed as threatened under the federal Endangered Species Act.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** The delta green ground beetle's historical distribution is largely unknown, although it is believed to have once been widely distributed over the wetland and grassland habitat of the California Central Valley. Currently, this beetle is known from only two sites in Solano County, California, south of Dixon at the Jepson Prairie Preserve (Jones and Stokes file information).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** The delta green ground beetle occurs in the Yolo Basin Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Delta green ground beetle habitat is disputed. Some entomologists suggest that its habitat is mainly dense vegetation, while others suggest that it can be found mostly in more open habitats, including open borders of vernal pools. It has been found among *Erodium* sp. and other low-growing plants (Arnold 1983). Behavioral data on the delta green ground beetle is limited, but available information indicates that adult activity begins in February and continues until mid-May, when it enters a period of dormancy. *E. viridis* most likely has only one generation per year (Arnold 1983). Adults tend to be diurnal and are active during the warmest time of the day. Observations suggest that activity may be dependent on minimal wind and ambient temperatures.

**Reasons for Decline.** The delta green ground beetle has declined from agricultural, urban, and industrial development of California wetland habitat (Jones and Stokes file information).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** The delta green ground beetle's critical habitat is located in two areas of Solano County along the open borders of vernal pools on the Jepson Prairie Preserve.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not yet been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### Citation

Arnold, R. A. 1983. Biological studies of the delta green ground beetle, *Elaphrus viridus* horn (Coleoptera: Carabidae), at Jepson Prairie Preserve in 1983. A contracted research project for the California field office of The Nature Conservancy.

## **LANGE'S METALMARK BUTTERFLY (*Apodemia mormo langei*)**

**Legal Status.** Lange's metalmark butterfly is listed as endangered under the federal Endangered Species Act.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Lange's metalmark butterfly is restricted to areas supporting its larval host plant, naked-stemmed buckwheat (*Eriogonum nudum*), within the Antioch Dunes National Wildlife Refuge in Contra Costa County. The species' historical distribution is unknown.

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Lange's metalmark butterfly occurs in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Lange's metalmark butterfly adults are found in close association with its host plant, naked-stemmed buckwheat (*Eriogonum nudum*). Adults emerge in late summer and live for approximately 1 week. Eggs are deposited on the host buckwheat and remain dormant until it begins to rain, usually in late fall, and the buckwheat begins to grow. Larvae feed on the new growth throughout winter and spring and pupate early in the following summer.

**Reasons for Decline.** Lange's metalmark butterfly has declined as a result of sand mining at the Antioch Dunes, which has considerably diminished its habitat, and invasive non-native vegetation that outcompetes its host plant.

**Designated Critical Habitat.** Lange's metalmark butterfly has designated critical habitat at the Antioch Dunes.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** Lange's metalmark butterfly currently benefits from a recovery plan instituted in March 1980 and revised in April 1984 by USFWS. Plan objectives are to: 1) prevent further loss of the species' habitat at the Antioch Dunes and 2) determine the number of populations necessary for reclassification of the species (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1984).

### **Citation**

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1984. Recovery plan for three endangered species endemic to Antioch Dunes, California. U. S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Portland, OR.

## **LONGHORN FAIRY SHRIMP (*Branchinecta longiantenna*)**

**Legal Status.** The longhorn fairy shrimp is listed as endangered under the federal Endangered Species Act.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** The longhorn fairy shrimp is endemic to California central interior Coast Ranges, Carrizo Plain, and San Joaquin Valley rock outcrop pools and grassland vernal pools and is reported from only 14 locations. The species occurs at elevations between 50 and 2,000 feet. Population distribution is limited within this range to rock outcrop pools in southern Contra Costa County and northern Alameda County, vernal pools in the Kesterson National Wildlife Refuge in Merced County, and on the Carrizo Plain in San Luis Obispo County (Eng et al. 1990).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** The longhorn fairy shrimp is found in the West San Joaquin Basin, East San Joaquin Basin, and Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** The longhorn fairy shrimp occurs in rock outcrop vernal pools and clay- or grassy-bottom vernal pools. Average depth of occupied pools is approximately 2.5 inches. Specimens have been collected from poorly vegetated, turbid pools from November to early April (Eng et al. 1990).

**Reasons for Decline.** The longhorn fairy shrimp has declined in its range throughout the Central Valley from loss of habitat resulting from agricultural development (Eng et al. 1990).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### **Citation**

Eng, L. L., D. Belk, and C. H. Eriksen. 1990. California anostraca: distribution, habitat, and status. *Journal of Crustacean Biology* 10(2): 247-277.

## **VALLEY ELDERBERRY LONGHORN BEETLE (*Desmocerus californicus dimorphus*)**

**Legal Status.** The valley elderberry longhorn beetle is listed as threatened under the federal Endangered Species Act.

**Historical and Current Distribution.** The valley elderberry longhorn beetle is found in scattered populations throughout its historical distribution. The species' range includes most of the California Central Valley north to Trinity County, south to San Diego County, and east to San Bernardino County (Barr 1991).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** The valley elderberry longhorn beetle is located in all of the Ecosystem Restoration Program Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** The adults feed on elderberry (*Sambucus mexicanus*) foliage and are active from early March through early June. The beetles mate in May and females lay eggs on living elderberry shrubs. Larvae bore through the stems of the shrubs to create an opening in the stem within which they pupate. After metamorphosing into an adult, the beetle chews a circular exit hole through which it emerges (Barr 1991). Current information on the habitat of the beetle indicate that it is found only with its host plant, the elderberry.

**Reasons for Decline.** The elderberry is common in the riparian forests of the Central Valley. Urban and agricultural development, as well as aggregate mining, have eliminated a high percentage of these forests, reducing and fragmenting the available habitat for the beetle (Barr 1991).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** Critical habitat for the valley elderberry longhorn beetle has been designated in two areas along the American River in the greater Sacramento metropolitan area (Barr 1991).

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** USFWS has prepared a recovery plan for the valley elderberry longhorn beetle (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1984). The plan does not identify specific management objectives for achieving recovery of the beetle; however, it does identify the following interim objectives: 1) protect three known populations along the American River, the Merced River, and Putah Creek; 2) survey for the presence of populations along selected Central Valley rivers; 3) protect remaining habitat areas within the beetle's suspected historical range; and 4) determine the number of sites and populations necessary to allow delisting of the species.

### Citations

Barr, C. B. 1991. The distribution, habitat, and status of the valley elderberry longhorn beetle *Desmocerus californicus dimorphus*. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Sacramento, CA.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1984. Valley elderberry longhorn beetle recovery plan. U. S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Portland, OR.

## **VERNAL POOL FAIRY SHRIMP (*Branchinecta lynchi*)**

**Legal Status.** The vernal pool fairy shrimp is listed as threatened under the federal Endangered Species Act.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** The vernal pool fairy shrimp is endemic to small, shallow wetlands in California (Helm 1998). It is found from Shasta County in the north, throughout the Central Valley, and west to the central Coast Ranges. Southern populations occur on the Santa Rosa Plateau and near Rancho, California in Riverside County (Eng et al. 1990, Jones & Stokes file information).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** The vernal pool fairy shrimp is located in all of the CALFED Ecosystem Restoration Program Ecological Zones except for the Sacramento River and the San Joaquin River Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** The vernal pool fairy shrimp is found in grassland vernal pools, rock outcrops, and roadside ditches from December through early May (Jones and Stokes file information). The species matures in approximately 26 days, reproduces within 40 days, and lives about 91 days (Helm 1998).

**Reasons for Decline.** The vernal pool fairy shrimp has declined as a result of agricultural and urban development.

**Designated Critical Habitat.** Critical habitat for the vernal pool fairy shrimp has not been designated.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not yet been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### **Citations**

Eng, L. L., D. Belk, and C. H. Eriksen. 1990. California anostraca: distribution, habitat, and status. *Journal of Crustacean Biology* 10(2): 247-277.

Helm, B. 1998. Biogeography of eight large branchiopods endemic to California. *Ecology, Conservation, and Management of Vernal Pool Ecosystems. Proceedings from a 1996 Conference. 19-21 June, 1996, pp 124-139.*

## **VERNAL POOL TADPOLE SHRIMP (*Lepidurus packerdi*)**

**Legal Status.** The vernal pool tadpole shrimp is listed as endangered under the federal Endangered Species Act.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** The vernal pool tadpole shrimp is found scattered throughout the Central Valley from the Millville and Stillwater Plains in Shasta County south to Merced County (Helm 1998).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** The vernal pool tadpole shrimp is found in all of the CALFED Ecosystem Restoration Program Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** The vernal pool tadpole shrimp is found in stockponds and vernal pools. The species matures in approximately 38 days, reproduces in 54 days, and lives approximately 144 days. Specimens have been collected from winter through spring (Helm 1998).

**Reasons for Decline.** The vernal pool tadpole shrimp has declined as a result of agricultural and urban development.

**Designated Critical Habitat.** The critical habitat has not been designated for the vernal pool tadpole shrimp.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not yet been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### **Citation**

Helm, B. 1998. 1996. Biography of eight large branchiopods endemic to California. Ecology, Conservation, and Management of Vernal Pool Ecosystems. Proceedings from a 1996 Conference. 19-21 June, 1996, pp 124-139.



## **SONOMA ALOPECURUS (*Alopecurus aequalis* var. *sonomensis*)**

**Legal Status.** Sonoma alopecurus is listed as endangered under the federal Endangered Species Acts and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Sonoma alopecurus is found in Sonoma and Marin Counties north of the San Francisco Bay Area. Eleven populations of the species have been extirpated and only five remain. Three populations are on private property in Sonoma County, and two are on federally owned land within the Point Reyes National Seashore in Marin County (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Sonoma alopecurus occurs in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Sonoma alopecurus is a tufted, perennial herb of the grass family (Poaceae) that grows 12–30 inches tall (Hickman 1993). The species is found in wet meadows, seasonal wetlands, freshwater marshes, and riparian scrub habitats, and blooms from May through July (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** Sonoma alopecurus is threatened by habitat loss and trampling by cattle (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not yet been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### **Citations**

Hickman, J. C. 1993. The Jepson manual, higher plants of California. University of California Press. Berkeley, CA.

Natural Diversity Data Base. 1998. California Department of Fish and Game. Natural Heritage Division. Sacramento, CA.

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

## **LARGE-FLOWERED FIDDLENECK (*Amsinckia grandiflora*)**

**Legal Status.** Large-flowered fiddleneck is listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** The large-flowered fiddleneck's historical range was most likely limited to the dry inland hills of Alameda, Contra Costa, and San Joaquin Counties. It is currently known from only three sites: one at a Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory (LLNL) facility southeast of Livermore (comprising two subpopulations: the Droptower and Draney Canyon), another on private property in western San Joaquin County, and a third established from seed at Black Diamond Mines Regional Preserve in Contra Costa County as part of a recovery effort for the species (California Department of Fish and Game 1992).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Large-flowered fiddleneck occurs or has the potential to occur in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay and West San Joaquin Basin Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Large-flowered fiddleneck is an erect, coarsely hairy annual herb of the borage family (Boraginaceae). It grows 30–60 centimeters tall and occurs on hillsides. Historically, the species may have occurred in a variety of grassland habitats. It is found on sandy clay loam soils in valley and foothill grasslands, woodland, and oak savannah communities below an elevation of 1,200 feet. The flowering period is April–May (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** The decline of large-flowered fiddleneck most likely resulted primarily from competition with non-native annual grasses and forbs, habitat disturbance and herbivory by cattle, urbanization, agricultural conversion, accelerated depletion of seed sources during prolonged droughts, and fire. The population at LLNL has declined precipitously since the 1960s (California Department of Fish and Game 1992).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** A 160-acre area in western San Joaquin County with steep, west- and south-facing slopes and lightly textured but stable soil located at T3S R4E Section 28 W½ NW ¼ W ½ SW ¼ was designated as critical habitat (50 FR 19376–19378, May 8, 1985).

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) prepared a recovery plan that recommends enhancing the LLNL population and establishing at least four other populations from seed within the species' historical range (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1997).

### Citations

California Department of Fish and Game. 1992. Annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

Skinner, M. W. and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. Publication No. 1. 5th edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1997. Large-flowered fiddleneck (*Amsinckia grandiflora*) recovery plan. Portland, OR.

## IONE MANZANITA (*Arctostaphylos myrtifolia*)

**Legal Status.** Ione manzanita is federally listed as threatened under the federal Endangered Species Act. It is listed as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Ione manzanita is endemic to Amador and Calaveras Counties (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998). Historically, its distribution has most likely always been limited to soils of the Ione Formation in the Sierra Nevada foothills (Hickman 1993, Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Ione manzanita occurs or has the potential to occur in the Eastside Delta Tributaries Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Ione manzanita is an evergreen, perennial shrub of the heath family (Ericaceae) that grows to 1 meter tall (Hickman 1993). The species occurs on acidic Ione clay or sandy soils in chaparral and woodland habitats (Skinner and Pavlik 1994). Although fire destroys mature plants, it stimulates seed germination. Ione manzanita blooms from November through February (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** Strip mining for clay and sand in the Ione and Carbondale areas has substantially decreased the size of populations in these areas. Further declines are attributed to increased urbanization and the clearing of vegetation for agriculture, fire protection, and off-road-vehicle recreation. Ione manzanita is also threatened by fungal infection and continued mining practices (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### Citations

Hickman, J. C. 1993. The Jepson manual, higher plants of California. University of California Press. Berkeley, CA.

Natural Diversity Data Base. 1998. California Department of Fish and Game. Natural Heritage Division. Sacramento, CA.

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

## **PALLID MANZANITA (*Arctostaphylos pallida*)**

**Legal Status.** Pallid manzanita, also known as Alameda manzanita, is state listed as endangered and federally listed as threatened under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Pallid manzanita is known from approximately 13 populations in Alameda and Contra Costa Counties. The three largest populations, which are on property owned by the East Bay Regional Park District, are located at Huckleberry and Sobrante Ridges. Several other small, natural and planted populations of pallid manzanita occur in Alameda and Contra Costa Counties (California Department of Fish and Game 1999). The overall trend for the species is stable (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Pallid manzanita occurs in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zone

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Pallid manzanita is an upright, non-burl-forming shrub in the heath family (Ericaceae). The species grows from 2 to 4 meters (m) (6.5 to 13.0 feet [ft]) tall and has rough gray or reddish bark. Pallid manzanita is found at elevations from 200 to 445 m (656 to 1460 ft), primarily on thin soils composed of chert and shale (Amme and Havlik 1987). Known populations are found on slopes and ridges of maritime chaparral and coastal scrub communities, requiring mesic soil conditions and maritime influence. Flowering period is from December to March (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** Urbanization, alteration of fire regimes, competition from non-native plants, and fungal infection threaten the pallid manzanita (Skinner and Pavlik, 1994). The habitat of pallid manzanita has been lost primarily to residential development and most populations are so isolated and small that their long-term viability is questionable (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not yet been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### **Citations**

Amme, D. and N. Havlik. 1987. An ecological assessment of *Arctostaphylos pallida* Eastw., Alameda and Contra Costa Counties. *Four Seasons* 7(4):28-46.

California Department of Fish and Game. 1999. Draft sections from 1998 annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

## CLARA HUNT'S MILKVETCH (*Astragalus clarianus*)

**Legal Status.** Clara Hunt's milkvetch is state listed as threatened and federally listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts. It is listed as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Clara Hunt's milkvetch occurs in five small populations in Napa and Sonoma Counties. Numbers of individuals within populations have been very low. The overall trend for Clara Hunt's milkvetch is one of decline (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Clara Hunt's milkvetch occurs in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Clara Hunt's milkvetch is a slender annual of the legume family (Fabaceae) that grows from 3 to 12 centimeters tall (Hickman 1993). The species occurs on rocky, thin, clay soils in sparsely vegetated openings within blue-oak woodland and grassland communities. Clara Hunt's milkvetch blooms in March and April (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** The main reasons for decline are habitat modification and destruction as a result of development. Because Clara Hunt's milkvetch exists in extremely small populations, the species could be eliminated through random fluctuations in population size from year to year or other chance events such as drought or invasion by weeds (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not yet been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### Citations

California Department of Fish and Game. 1992. Annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

\_\_\_\_\_. 1999. Draft sections from 1998 annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

Hickman, J. C. 1993. The Jepson manual, higher plants of California. University of California Press. Berkeley, CA.

## **SONOMA SUNSHINE (*Blennosperma bakeri*)**

**Legal Status.** Sonoma sunshine, also known as Baker's stickyseed, is listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Sonoma sunshine is restricted to the Santa Rosa Plains and the adjacent Sonoma Valley of Sonoma County, California. It is known from 35 sites in Cotati Valley and seven other sites in Sonoma Valley. From north to south in Cotati Valley, the species ranges from near the city of Fulton to Scenic Avenue, which is between the cities of Santa Rosa and Cotati. In the Sonoma Valley, the species extends or extended from near Glen Ellen to near the junction of State Routes 116 and 121. The overall trend for this species is one of decline (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Sonoma sunshine occurs or has the potential to occur in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Sonoma sunshine is a small, annual herb of the sunflower family (Asteraceae) that has alternate, narrow, hairless leaves and grows 12 inches tall. Sonoma sunshine is found in shallow depressions, intermittent swales, and mesic grasslands. From March through April, the plant produces yellow, daisy-like flowers (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Reasons for Decline.** At least 30% of the historical occurrences of Sonoma sunshine have been eliminated or seriously damaged. Most of the remaining sites are threatened by urbanization, wastewater effluent irrigation, and agricultural land conversion. Westward expansion of the city of Santa Rosa threatens at least half the remaining habitat.

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** Protection measures for this species are expected to be included in U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service's (USFWS's) Draft California Vernal Pool Ecosystem Recovery Plan, to be released for public review in 1999 (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

### **Citations**

California Department of Fish and Game. 1999. Draft sections from 1998 annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.



Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

## CHINESE CAMP BRODIAEA (*Brodiaea pallida*)

**Legal Status.** Chinese Camp brodiaea is state listed as endangered and federally listed as threatened under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts. It is listed as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society (CNPS).

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Chinese Camp brodiaea is a perennial herb known from only one location southwest of Chinese Camp in Tuolumne County. The population is restricted to a narrow 10- to 20-foot-wide area along a 0.5-mile-long section of an intermittent stream entirely on private property (California Department of Fish and Game 1999). Because of its specific habitat requirements, the historical distribution of Chinese Camp brodiaea was probably not much more extensive than the current distribution. Currently, Chinese Camp brodiaea is stable (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Chinese Camp brodiaea occurs or has the potential to occur in the East San Joaquin Basin Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Chinese Camp brodiaea is an herbaceous perennial in the lily family (Liliaceae). The species grows along a shallow, intermittent stream in clay derived from serpentine (California Department of Fish and Game 1999). The pink flowers of the Chinese Camp brodiaea bloom from May through June (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** Species such as Chinese Camp brodiaea that have very small populations and occupy only a small area are vulnerable to decline and extinction from genetic problems and random catastrophic events such as floods, attack by insects, disease, or extended droughts (California Department of Fish and Game 1999). Cattle grazing and alteration of the existing hydrological conditions are possible reasons for decline (California Department of Fish and Game 1998). Chinese Camp brodiaea is also threatened by residential development (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not yet been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### Citations

California Department of Fish and Game. 1999. Draft sections from 1998 annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

## **TIBURON MARIPOSA LILY (*Calochortus tiburonensis*)**

**Legal Status.** Tiburon mariposa lily is listed as threatened under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Tiburon mariposa lily was discovered in 1971 by R. West on Ring Mountain on the Tiburon Peninsula in Marin County, California. Its distribution comprises roughly three populations, all of which occur in the Ring Mountain Preserve. Ownership and management of this preserve was recently transferred from The Nature Conservancy to the Marin County Department of Parks, Open Space, and Cultural Services (California Department of Fish and Game 1999). The overall trend for Tiburon mariposa lily is stable (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Tiburon mariposa lily occurs or has the potential to occur in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Tiburon mariposa lily is a bulbous perennial of the lily family (Liliaceae) with a single, persistent, basal, linear-oblong leaf 1-2 feet long. The species is known only from a serpentine grassland on the north slope of Ring Mountain (California Department of Fish and Game 1999). Tiburon mariposa lily blooms from March through June (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** Tiburon mariposa lily has been identified as stable (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A draft recovery plan has been prepared for this species by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) (1998). Recovery strategy elements include protecting existing subpopulations and buffer areas for expansion and securing any newly discovered populations. It is recommended that management plans include standardized monitoring every 3 years, developing strategies to minimize known threats, and an educational outreach program. Seedbanks are also recommended (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998).

### **Citations**

California Department of Fish and Game. 1999. Draft sections from 1998 annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1998. Draft recovery plan for serpentine soil species of the San Francisco Bay Area. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Portland, OR.

## **STEBBINS' MORNING-GLORY (*Calystegia stebbinsii*)**

**Legal Status.** Stebbins' morning-glory is listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Stebbins' morning-glory is endemic to the northern Sierra Nevada foothills. The species appears to have always been uncommon and limited in distribution. Stebbins' morning-glory is known from only 16 occurrences (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998), two of which are on public land (California Department of Fish and Game 1999). Stebbins' morning-glory occurs in the Pine Hill gabbro formation of the Sierra Nevada foothills of El Dorado County and on serpentine near Grass Valley in Nevada County. The Pine Hill formation comprises approximately 30,000 acres, approximately one-half of which contain the habitat types that support this rare species. In the southern half of the Pine Hill gabbro formation, residential areas have been recently developed in unsurveyed habitat near known colonies of the morning-glory. Potential habitat near known colonies has also been cleared under ministerial grading permits (California Department of Fish and Game 1999). The overall trend for Stebbins' morning-glory is one of decline (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Stebbins' morning-glory occurs or has the potential to occur in the Eastside Delta Tributaries Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Stebbins' morning glory is a perennial of the morning glory family (Convolvulaceae). This herbaceous vine grows on red clay or serpentine soils in openings in chaparral and blue oak-foothill pine communities (California Department of Fish and Game 1999, Skinner and Pavlik 1994). The large, funnel-shaped, white flowers of the Stebbins' morning-glory bloom from May through June (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** Habitat for Stebbins' morning-glory has been reduced by residential and commercial development; several of the known occurrences have been extirpated (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998). The species is also threatened by off-road-vehicle use and road maintenance (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A draft recovery plan for the species has been prepared by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) (64 FR 11035-11036, March 8, 1999).

### **Citations**

California Department of Fish and Game. 1999. Draft sections from 1998 annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

Natural Diversity Data Base. 1998. California Department of Fish and Game. Natural Heritage Division. Sacramento, CA.

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

## **SAN BENITO EVENING PRIMROSE (*Camissonia benitensis*)**

**Legal Status.** San Benito evening primrose is listed as threatened under the federal Endangered Species Act and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** The distribution of San Benito evening primrose is from the inner southern Coast Range of California, specifically the lower Clear Creek drainage area of San Benito County (Hickman 1993); however, it is only known from the New Idria area (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** San Benito evening primrose occurs or has the potential to occur in the West San Joaquin Basin Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** San Benito evening primrose is an annual herb of the evening primrose family (Onagraceae) (Hickman 1993). The species grows in an erect to decumbent manner, 3–20 centimeters tall (Hickman 1993). San Benito evening primrose occurs on terraces of chaparral and cismontaine woodlands in clay or gravelly serpentine alluvial soils (Hickman 1993) and has a blooming period from May through June (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** San Benito evening primrose is threatened by the use of off-road vehicles near existing populations.

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A draft recovery plan for the species has been prepared by USFWS (64 FR 5066-5067, February 2, 1999).

### **Citations**

Hickman, J. C. 1993. The Jepson manual, higher plants of California. University of California Press. Berkeley, CA.

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.



## **WHITE SEDGE (*Carex albida*)**

**Legal Status.** White sedge is listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts and is listed as category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** White sedge was thought to be extinct until 1987, when a single population was found in lower Pitkin Marsh in Sonoma County, California. This single extant population has approximately 800 to 1,000 plants. White sedge has been extirpated from its four historical populations at Santa Rosa Creek, Perry Marsh, and Upper and Middle Pitkin Marsh. The overall trend for white sedge is one of decline (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** White sedge occurs or has the potential to occur in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Management Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** White sedge is a short, loosely tufted, grass-like perennial herb of the sedge family (Cyperaceae). This species has erect stems that sprout from a creeping rhizome, flattened leaves, and flowers in dense terminal spikes. This species is found in bogs, fens, and moist sites adjacent to freshwater marshes and creeks. Blooming period: May-July (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** Habitat conversion, wetland drainage, chemical effluent, and cattle grazing have eliminated several historical white sedge occurrences. The site on which the only extant population occurs is subject to persistent development pressures (California Department of Fish and Game 1999). Current populations of white sedge are threatened by drought, development pressures, and competition from other plants (Skinner and Pavlik 1994). Because white sedge exists in only one confirmed location, it is susceptible to random or chance events.

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Conservation Efforts.** This section is to be prepared by CALFED, the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS), and the California Department of Fish and Game (DFG).

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not yet been prepared, and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

**Research or Monitoring Gaps.** This section is to be prepared by CALFED, USFWS, and DFG.

### **Citations**

California Department of Fish and Game. 1999. Draft sections from 1998 annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

## **TIBURON INDIAN PAINTBRUSH (*Castilleja affinis* ssp. *neglecta*)**

**Legal Status.** Tiburon Indian paintbrush is state listed as threatened and federally listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts. It is listed as category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Tiburon Indian paintbrush occurs on serpentine soils in Marin and Napa Counties. Its historical distribution may have been limited to serpentine soils in the north bay area. There are seven known existing occurrences of the plant. Three occur on the Tiburon Peninsula in Marin County, with a total of approximately 250 plants in 1997. A portion of one of these three populations was recently destroyed by a residential development, and a portion of the plants formerly seen at a second population has not been observed in recent years. Approximately 550 plants occur at a private quarry in American Canyon in Napa County. Two sites, with a total of approximately 75 plants, occur on Golden Gate National Recreation Area lands in Marin County. One location on private land in Santa Clara County supported approximately 30 plants in 1996 (California Department of Fish and Game 1999). The overall trend for Tiburon Indian paintbrush is one of decline (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Tiburon Indian paintbrush occurs or has the potential to occur in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Management Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Tiburon Indian paintbrush is a semi-woody hemiparasitic perennial of the figwort family (Scrophulariaceae) that grows 15-60 centimeters tall (Hickman 1993). This species occurs on north-to-west facing slopes in serpentine bunchgrass communities. The showy, yellow to red-yellow flowers of the Tiburon Indian paintbrush bloom from April through June (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** Tiburon Indian paintbrush populations are threatened by residential development, foot traffic, grazing, soil slumping, and gravel mining (Federal Register 60:6684; February 3, 1995).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Conservation Efforts.** Tiburon Indian paintbrush is protected in part at Ring Mountain Preserve, which is managed by The Nature Conservancy (Skinner and Pavlik 1994). In 1997, the California Department of Fish and Game (DFG) held two recovery workshops to address Tiburon Indian paintbrush and 11 other plants known from serpentine habitats in the San Francisco Bay Area. Several participants volunteered to remove pampas grass and broom plants that are threatening the Tiburon Peninsula populations and to monitor the plants in 1998. Priority recovery actions identified by workshop participants included research into the management needs of the plant and protecting the populations on private lands (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A draft recovery plan has been prepared for this species by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) (1998). Recovery strategy elements include protection of existing populations and buffer areas for expansion and securing unpopulated habitat. It is recommended that management plans include standardized monitoring every other year, development of strategies to minimize known threats, removal of non-native plants, and an educational outreach program. Additionally, seed banking and surveys of potential habitat for new populations and potential introduction sites are recommended (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998).

**Research or Monitoring Gaps.** This section is to be prepared by CALFED, the USFWS, and DFG.

### **Citations**

California Department of Fish and Game. 1999. Draft sections from 1998 annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

Hickman, J. C. 1993. The Jepson manual, higher plants of California. University of California Press. Berkeley, CA.

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1998. Draft recovery plan for serpentine soil species of the San Francisco Bay Area. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Portland, Oregon.

## **SUCCULENT OWL'S-CLOVER (*Castilleja campestris* var. *succulentus*)**

**Legal Status.** Succulent owl's-clover is state listed as endangered and federally listed as threatened under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts. It is listed as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Succulent owl's-clover is endemic to the eastern edge of the central San Joaquin Valley, from Stanislaus County to Fresno County (California Department of Fish and Game 1992). Historically, the species was more widespread in the Central Valley (62 CFR 14338).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Succulent owl's-clover occurs and has the potential to occur in the Eastside Delta Tributaries and East San Joaquin Basin Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Succulent owl's-clover is an annual herb in the figwort family (Scrophulariaceae) that grows 5–25 centimeters tall and occurs in drying vernal pools in valley grassland or woodland habitats (California Department of Fish and Game 1992, Natural Diversity Data Base 1998).

**Reasons for Decline.** Agricultural conversion, disking of pools, competition from introduced weeds, overgrazing, and urbanization in the San Joaquin Valley have eliminated vernal pool habitat and continue to threaten this species (California Department of Fish and Game 1992).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### **Citations**

California Department of Fish and Game. 1992. Annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

Natural Diversity Data Base. 1998. Database search of *Castilleja campestris* var. *succulentus*. California Department of Fish and Game. Sacramento, CA.

## **PINE HILL CEANOTHUS (*Ceanothus roderickii*)**

**Legal Status.** Pine Hill ceanothus is state listed as rare under the California Native Plant Protection Act and federally listed as endangered under the federal Endangered Species Act. It is listed as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Pine Hill ceanothus is endemic to the Pine Hill geologic formation in the Sierra Nevada foothills of El Dorado County. The historical range of the ceanothus was probably limited to its current range, although populations were most likely larger and more continuous than they are now (California Department of Fish and Game 1992) (59 FR [76]:18774-18783, April 20, 1994). There are approximately 15 occurrences of Pine Hill ceanothus. Four occurrences are protected, two in the vicinity of Salmon Falls, one on Pine Hill, and another in the vicinity of Cameron Park. The overall trend for species is one of decline (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Pine Hill ceanothus occurs or has potential to occur in the American River Basin and Eastside Delta Tributaries Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Pine Hill ceanothus is a prostrate evergreen woody shrub in the buckthorn family, (Rhamnaceae) that generally grows to 98.0 inches in diameter (59 FR [76]:18774-18783, April 20, 1994). Pine Hill ceanothus is endemic to the red clay soils of the Pine Hill gabbro formation within openings in chaparral and oak woodland, or more infrequently on previously disturbed sites within chaparral. From May to June, the shrubs bear small whitish flowers that are tinged with blue (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** Residential and commercial development, inadequate regulatory mechanisms, off-road-vehicle use, road widening, changes in fire frequency, and other human-caused conditions are the known reasons for the species decline. Two known occurrences have been extirpated by commercial development (59 FR [76]:18774-18783, April 20, 1994).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A draft recovery plan for the species has been prepared by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) (64 FR 11035-11036, March 8, 1999).

### **Citations**

California Department of Fish and Game. 1992. Annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

\_\_\_\_\_. 1999. Draft sections from 1998 annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

### **HOOVER'S SPURGE (*Chamaesyce hooveri*)**

**Legal Status.** Hoover's spurge is listed as threatened under the federal Endangered Species Act and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Hoover's spurge is endemic to vernal pool complexes in the eastern Central Valley. Its historical distribution is not well documented, but it is presumed that it was more common than at present among the vernal pools of the eastern Sacramento and San Joaquin Valleys. Approximately 15 extant populations occur in three clusters: one in Tehama, Butte, and Glenn Counties; another in eastern Stanislaus County; and another in northwestern Tulare County (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998). All of these populations are on privately owned lands (58 FR [149]:41700-41708, August 5, 1993).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Hoover's spurge occurs or has the potential to occur in the Butte Basin, Colusa Basin, East San Joaquin Basin, and Sacramento River Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Hoover's spurge is a small, prostrate, annual herb of the spurge family (Euphorbiaceae) that forms mats from a few inches to a few feet across (FR [149]:41700-41708, August 5, 1993). Hoover's spurge occurs in relatively large, deep vernal pools among the rolling hills, remnant alluvial fans, and depositional stream terraces at the base of the Sierra Nevada foothills. It tends to occur where competition from other species has been reduced by prolonged inundation or other factors. Hoover's spurge blooms in July (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** Loss of vernal pool habitat to irrigated agriculture has most likely caused most of the decline in this species. Continued expansion of agricultural development threatens about one-third of the remaining populations. Moderate livestock grazing appears to not threaten the plant, although intensive grazing and trampling of vernal pools could have adverse effects on the species (58 FR [149]:41700-41708, August 5, 1993).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not yet been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### **Citations**

Natural Diversity Data Base. 1998. California Department of Fish and Game. Natural Heritage Division. Sacramento, CA.



Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

## **SONOMA SPINEFLOWER (*Chorizanthe valida*)**

**Legal Status.** Sonoma spineflower is listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society (CNPS).

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Until its rediscovery in 1980, Sonoma spineflower was thought to be extinct. The worldwide distribution of Sonoma spineflower is limited to one site in Marin County, just south of Abbott's Lagoon, on a working cattle ranch within Point Reyes National Seashore. This species occupies less than 2.5 acres of land within an enclosed pasture of about 360 acres. A census conducted by CNPS volunteers in 1996 revealed 75% fewer plants than in 1992, when the population numbers were at their highest (California Department of Fish and Game 1999). The overall trend for Sonoma spineflower is stable to declining (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Sonoma spineflower occurs or has the potential to occur in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Sonoma spineflower is a robust annual herb in the buckwheat family (Polygonaceae) that grows 10–30 centimeters tall. The species is known to occur only in sandy soils of coastal grassland prairie habitats (Hickman 1993, Skinner and Pavlik 1994). The pinkish flowers of the Sonoma spineflower bloom from June through August (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** Sonoma spineflower is threatened by cattle grazing (Hickman 1993).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not yet been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### **Citations**

- California Department of Fish and Game. 1999. Draft sections from 1998 annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.
- Hickman, J. C. 1993. The Jepson manual, higher plants of California. University of California Press. Berkeley, CA.
- Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

## **SUISUN THISTLE (*Cirsium hydrophilum* var. *hydrophilum*)**

**Legal Status.** Suisun thistle is listed as endangered under the federal Endangered Species Act and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Suisun thistle is known from four locations, three of which are on California Department of Fish and Game (DFG) land in Suisun Marsh and one on Solano County Farmland and Open Space Foundation land (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998). It is likely that this species was more widespread in the past because its saltmarsh was more widespread. This habitat has been extremely reduced during this century (Macdonald 1977).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Suisun thistle occurs or has the potential to occur in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Suisun thistle is a perennial herb in the sunflower family (Asteraceae) and reaches a height of 3–4.5 feet. It occurs on the edges of salt- and brackish marshes that are periodically inundated during high tides. It is restricted to a narrow tidal band, typically in higher elevation zones within larger tidal marshes that have fully developed tidal channel networks. The species usually does not occur in smaller fringe tidal marshes that are less than 300 feet wide or in nontidal areas. Flowering time is July–September.

**Reason for Decline.** Drainage or filling of saltmarshes, and possibly water pollution, may have contributed to the decline of Suisun thistle (Niehaus 1977). Its restricted distribution increases its susceptibility to catastrophic events such as disease or pest outbreak, severe drought, oil spills, or other natural or human-induced disasters. Continued habitat conversion, habitat fragmentation, indirect effects from urban development, increased salinity, alteration of natural tidal regime, mosquito abatement activities, and competition with non-native plants also threaten Suisun thistle (60 CFR 112).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### **Citations**

Macdonald, K. B. 1977. Coastal salt marsh. Pages 263–294 in Barbour, M. G. and J. Major (eds.), *Terrestrial vegetation of California*. Wiley. New York, NY.

Natural Diversity Data Base. 1998. Database search for *Cirsium hydrophilum* var. *hydrophilum*. California. Department of Fish and Game. Sacramento, CA.

Niehaus, T. 1977. Rare plants species report for Suisun thistle. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

## **SOFT BIRD'S-BEAK (*Cordylanthus mollis* ssp. *mollis*)**

**Legal Status.** Soft bird's-beak is listed as endangered under the federal Endangered Species Act, as rare under the California Native Plant Protection Act, and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Soft bird's-beak is an annual herb endemic to the northern shores of the San Francisco Bay, Suisun Marsh, and the saltmarshes south of Suisun Bay, at elevations below 30 feet. Twelve historical occurrences were known from Marin to Contra Costa Counties, where the counties border San Francisco Bay (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998). In 1991, the species was known to be extant at only three sites: Benicia State Recreation Area, California Department of Fish and Game (DFG) land along the Napa River at Fagan Slough, and Point Pinole Regional Shoreline (California Department of Fish and Game 1992).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Soft bird's-beak occurs or has the potential to occur in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay and Yolo Basin Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Soft bird's-beak is a semiparasitic herbaceous annual plant in the figwort family (Scrophulariaceae). It grows 25–40 centimeters tall and occurs in coastal saltmarshes and brackish marshes. The species is restricted to a narrow tidal band, typically in higher elevation zones within larger tidal marshes that have fully developed tidal channel networks. It usually does not occur in smaller fringe tidal marshes that are generally less than 300 feet wide or in nontidal areas. Flowering time is July–September.

**Reasons for Decline.** Habitat conversion, water pollution, changes in salinity, indirect effects of urbanization, mosquito abatement activities, off-road-vehicle use, competition with non-native vegetation, insect predation, erosion, and other human-induced actions have contributed to the decline of soft bird's-beak. The sensitivity of the species to changes in environmental conditions is evidenced by the extreme fluctuations in annual population size. (California Department of Fish and Game 1992.)

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### **Citations**

California Department of Fish and Game. 1992. Annual report on the status of California state listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

Natural Diversity Data Base. 1998. Database search for *Cordylanthus mollis* ssp. *mollis*. California. Department of Fish and Game. Sacramento, CA.

## **PALMATE-BRACTED BIRD'S-BEAK (*Cordylanthus palmatus*)**

**Legal Status.** Palmate-bracted bird's-beak, also known as Ferris' bird's-beak, is listed as endangered under California and federal Endangered Species Acts and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** The palmate-bracted bird's-beak's original range was probably similar to its current range, but populations were more numerous and contained more individuals. Today, the species occurs at Delevan National Wildlife Refuge, at Colusa National Wildlife Refuge, near the city of Woodland, in the Springtown alkali sink north of Livermore, at the California Department of Fish and Game's (DFG's) Alkali Sink Ecological Reserve in Fresno County, in western Madera County, and at Sacramento National Wildlife Refuge in Glenn County (California Department of Fish and Game 1992).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Palmate-bracted bird's-beak occurs or has the potential to occur in the Eastside Delta Tributaries, East San Joaquin Basin, San Joaquin River, West San Joaquin Basin, Colusa Basin, Feather River/Sutter Basin, Sacramento River, and Yolo Basin Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Palmate-bracted bird's-beak is an annual herb of the figwort family (Scrophulariaceae) that grows 10–30 centimeters tall. It is endemic to moist lowlands in the Central and Livermore Valleys and is restricted to saline-alkaline soils in relatively undisturbed, seasonally flooded, alkali-sink scrub habitats at elevations below 500 feet. Flowering time is May–October.

**Reasons for Decline.** Habitat for the species has been eliminated and degraded by its conversion to agricultural and urban development, draining of seasonal wetlands, grazing, off-road-vehicle use, and trash dumping (California Department of Fish and Game 1992).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) is in the process of identifying recovery requirements and preparing a recovery plan for this species.

### **Citation**

California Department of Fish and Game. 1992. Annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

## **BAKER'S LARKSPUR (*Delphinium bakeri*)**

**Legal Status.** Baker's larkspur is state listed as rare under the California Native Plant Protection Act and federally listed as endangered under the federal Endangered Species Act. It is listed as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Baker's larkspur was once known from several populations in Marin and Sonoma Counties. The single remaining population is on a grassy bank on privately owned land along the edge of Marshall-Petaluma Road in northwestern Marin County and is extremely small (24 plants observed in 1988) (California Department of Fish and Game 1992, Natural Diversity Data Base 1998). The population size appears to be relatively stable (California Department of Fish and Game 1998); however, this species is exceptionally vulnerable to chance catastrophic events. Although Baker's larkspur has always been rare, habitat losses have nearly caused its extinction. This species is considered to be in decline.

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Baker's larkspur occurs or has the potential to occur in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Baker's larkspur, a member of the buttercup family (Ranunculaceae), is an erect, leafy-stemmed herbaceous perennial with showy blue-and-white flowers that grows 45–100 centimeters tall. It occurs in coastal scrub habitat at an elevation of between 300 and 1,000 feet. Flowering time is March–May. (Hickman 1993, Skinner and Pavlik 1994.)

**Reasons for Decline.** Baker's larkspur has become endangered from extensive grazing, roadside maintenance activities, and conversion of its habitat to cultivated farmland. It continues to be threatened by road maintenance activities and collecting.

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not yet been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### **Citations**

California Department of Fish and Game. 1992. Annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

\_\_\_\_\_. 1998. Annual report on the status of California's state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.



Hickman, J. C. 1993. The Jepson manual, higher plants of California. University of California Press. Berkeley, CA.

Natural Diversity Data Base. 1998. California Department of Fish and Game. Natural Heritage Division. Sacramento, CA.

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

## **YELLOW LARKSPUR (*Delphinium luteum*)**

**Legal Status.** Yellow larkspur, also known as golden larkspur, is state listed as rare under the California Native Plant Protection Act, federally listed as endangered under the federal Endangered Species Act, and listed as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** The restricted distribution of yellow larkspur is centered near the town of Bodega Bay in Sonoma County, with fewer than a dozen historical occurrences recorded (California Department of Fish and Game 1999). It is currently known from two populations, both on private land. The accessible population had 130 plants in 1985, but a count in 1997 revealed only 83. The general status of the yellow larkspur is one of decline (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Yellow larkspur occurs or has the potential to occur in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Yellow larkspur is a herbaceous perennial of the buttercup family (Ranunculaceae) that grows 20–55 centimeters tall on steep, rocky outcrops within coastal sage scrub, coastal grassland, or chaparral plant communities (California Department of Fish and Game 1999, Hickman 1993). Flowering period is March–May (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** Rock quarrying activities, overcollecting, hybridization, residential development, and sheep grazing have reduced the populations such that today, there are only two known remaining populations of genetically pure yellow larkspur (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### **Citations**

California Department of Fish and Game. 1999. Draft sections from 1998 annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

Hickman, J. C. 1993. The Jepson manual, higher plants of California. University of California Press. Berkeley, CA.

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

## **HOOVER'S ERIASTRUM (*Eriastrum hooveri*)**

**Legal Status.** Hoover's eriastrum, also known as Hoover's woolly-star, is listed as threatened under the federal Endangered Species Act and as Category 4 by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Hoover's eriastrum is an annual herb endemic to the Temblor Range (Kern and San Luis Obispo Counties), Cuyama Valley (San Luis Obispo and Santa Barbara Counties), and discontinuously in the San Joaquin Valley from Fresno County south, excluding the vicinity of Tulare Lake. Hoover's eriastrum is known from approximately 40 extant populations (Natural Diversity Data Base 1999).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Hoover's eriastrum occurs in the West San Joaquin Basin Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Hoover's eriastrum is a small annual herb in the phlox family (Polemoniaceae). The species grows 2–3 inches tall and has grayish, fuzzy stems, slender branches, and small white flowers about 0.25 inch wide. Hoover's eriastrum grows in scrub-grassland habitats with moderate cover of saltbush. It often grows in cryptogamic soil crusts (i.e., mats of moss, lichen, and algae) that reduce competition from annual grasses (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998). The species blooms from April through July (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** Hoover's eriastrum has declined mainly as a result of habitat conversion to agricultural and urban uses. Most of the known extant populations are threatened by future conversions to agricultural use, groundwater recharge basins, and oil and gas development. Although some sites contain substantial populations (5,000–40,000 individuals), most of the remaining sites on the Valley floor are at risk because they are isolated from one another, range from approximately 1 acre to less than 400 acres, and contain fewer than 1,000 individuals (55 FR [139]:29361–29370, July 19, 1990).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) has prepared a recovery plan for upland species of the San Joaquin Valley, which includes Hoover's eriastrum and other species. Recovery strategy for Hoover's eriastrum includes monitoring a minimum acreage and density of the species to determine trends within metapopulations and to reassess management strategies if density declines (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998).

### **Citations**

Natural Diversity Data Base. 1999. California Department of Fish and Game. Natural Heritage Division. Sacramento, CA.

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1998. Recovery plan for upland species of the San Joaquin Valley, California. Portland, OR.

## **IONE BUCKWHEAT (*Eriogonum apricum* var. *apricum*)**

**Legal Status.** Ione buckwheat is state listed as endangered and federally listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts. It is listed as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Ione buckwheat is endemic to the Ione region of Amador County (California Department of Fish and Game 1992) in the northern Sierra Nevada foothills (Hickman 1993). These plants have most likely always had limited distribution because they occur only on unusual soils of the Ione Formation. Only 10 extant occurrences of Ione buckwheat exist (Skinner and Pavlik 1994). The overall trend for Ione buckwheat is unknown (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Ione buckwheat occurs or has the potential to occur in the Eastside Delta Tributaries Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Ione buckwheat is a compact, erect, herbaceous perennial in the buckwheat family (Polygonaceae) with felt-like lower leaves on short stems and white flowers with reddish midribs. Ione buckwheat occurs strictly in Ione chaparral. The species has adapted to the unique, gravelly kaolinitic clay soils that characterize this community. Flowering period is July–October (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** The buckwheats, always limited by the distribution of their habitat, most likely experienced severe reductions in the early part of this century during a period of extensive clay mining. Further declines are attributed to increasing urbanization and the clearing of vegetation for agriculture and fire protection. Active clay mining continues to reduce potential habitat suitable for these species. Ione buckwheat is threatened by off-road-vehicle use, increasing urbanization, clay mining, erosion, and conversion of habitat to agriculture or fire protection (California Department of Fish and Game 1999, Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### **Citations**

California Department of Fish and Game. 1992. Annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

\_\_\_\_\_. 1999. Draft sections from 1998 annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

Hickman, J. C. 1993. The Jepson manual, higher plants of California. University of California Press. Berkeley, CA.

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

## LOCH LOMOND BUTTON-CELERY (*Eryngium constancei*)

**Legal Status.** Loch Lomond button-celery, also known as Loch Lomond coyote-thistle, is listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Loch Lomond button-celery was first collected by Robert Hoover in 1941. In 1973, the species was found in the vernal lake near the community of Loch Lomond in southern Lake County, California at an elevation of between 2,800 and 3,000 feet. Other vernal lakes in the general area may also harbor small isolated stands of the Loch Lomond button-celery. Surveys done in 1978 and 1984 failed to discover Loch Lomond button-celery populations in other locations.

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Loch Lomond button-celery occurs in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Loch Lomond button-celery, a perennial herb of the carrot family (Apiaceae), annually produces slender, weak scapes (leafless, flowering stalks) up to 30 centimeters tall from its overwintering rootstock (Sheikh 1978, 1983). Loch Lomond button-celery grows abundantly within the borders of the meadow-like bed of the Loch Lomond lake. The soil of the lake bed consists of a volcanic silty clay. Loch Lomond button-celery blooms from April through June (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** Habitat degradation is the main threat to populations of the Loch Lomond button-celery.

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not yet been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### Citations

Sheikh, M. Y. 1978. A systematic study of west North American *Eryngium* (Umbelliferae-Apiaceae). Ph.D. dissertation, University of California, Berkeley. Berkeley, CA.

Sheikh, M. Y. 1983. New taxa of western North American *Eryngium* (Umbelliferae). *Madrono* 30:93-101.

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.



## **CONTRA COSTA WALLFLOWER (*Erysimum capitatum* ssp. *angustatum*)**

**Legal Status.** Contra Costa wallflower is listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Contra Costa wallflower is endemic to Antioch Dunes in northern Contra Costa County, near the confluence of the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers, at an elevation of from 50 to 80 feet. Its historical range may not have been much greater than its current range, a 70-acre area of sandy bluffs overlooking the San Joaquin River (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Contra Costa wallflower occurs or has the potential to occur in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay and Yolo Basin Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Contra Costa wallflower, a member of the mustard family (Brassicaceae), is a coarse-stemmed, erect, herbaceous biennial, 20–80 centimeters tall. It grows in fine sand with some clay among grasses, shrubs, and other forbs on and near the tops of remnants of ecologically stabilized interior dunes. Flowering time is March–July.

**Reasons for Decline.** Interior dune habitat found in the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta has been reduced to a fragment of its original extent by industrial development and sand mining. The remaining habitat has been disturbed and degraded by rototilling for fire control, off-road-vehicle activity, and the establishment of and competition by aggressive non-native plants (California Department of Fish and Game 1992).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** Inland dune habitat near Antioch at T2N, R2E, Section 17 SW ¼, and Section 18 E ¾ of S ¼ was designated as critical habitat (42 FR no.26, February 8, 1977).

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** USFWS has prepared a recovery plan that calls for enhancement of existing populations and establishment of new populations within its existing range.

### **Citations**

California Department of Fish and Game. 1992. Annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

Natural Diversity Data Base. 1998. Database search for *Erysimum capitatum* ssp. *angustatum*. California. Department of Fish and Game. Sacramento, CA.

## **PINE HILL FLANNELBUSH (*Fremontodendron decumbens*)**

**Legal Status.** Pine Hill flannelbush is state listed as rare under the California Native Plant Protection Act, as endangered under the federal Endangered Species Act, and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Pine Hill flannelbush is a shrub endemic to Pine Hill and the nearby foothills of the Sierra Nevada in El Dorado County. Since it was first described in 1965, six sightings have been reported. The largest population is found on California Department of Fish and Game's (DFG's) Pine Hill Ecological Reserve, and the species also occurs nearby on private lands, although plants have been lost to construction of homes and access roads (California Department of Fish and Game 1999). Pine Hill flannelbush occurs in one localized area in western El Dorado County, where it is scattered over an area of approximately 5,000 acres (59 FR [76]:18774-18783, April 20, 1994). The overall trend for the species is one of decline (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Pine Hill flannelbush occurs or has potential to occur in the American River Basin and Eastside Delta Tributaries Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Pine Hill flannelbush is a branched, spreading shrub in the cocoa family (Sterculiaceae) that grows to 4 feet tall. Pine Hill flannelbush occurs in chaparral and oak woodlands on reddish-brown clay soil derived from gabbro, a type of igneous rock. It is typically found on rocky ridges in association with chamise and manzanitas. The shrubs bear showy light-orange to reddish-brown flowers from late April to early June (59 FR [76]:18774-18783, April 20, 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** The decline of the Pine Hill flannelbush may be attributed to the clearing of vegetation along ridges for firebreaks and fire suppression. It is believed that the species depends on fire to stimulate seed germination and resprouting. Residential development continues to threaten remaining populations (California Department of Fish and Game 1992). The proximity of remaining populations to human population centers has rendered the shrubs susceptible to the long-term effects of fire suppression and its restricted distribution makes the species vulnerable to catastrophic events such as disease, pests, and drought. Additional threats include residential and commercial development, unregulated grading, inadequate regulatory mechanisms, and trash dumping (59 FR [76]:18774-18783, April 20, 1994).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A draft recovery plan for the species has been prepared by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) (64 FR 11035-11036, March 8, 1999).

### **Citations**

California Department of Fish and Game. 1992. Annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

\_\_\_\_\_. 1999. Draft sections from 1998 annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

## **EL DORADO BEDSTRAW (*Gallium californicum* ssp. *sierrae*)**

**Legal Status.** El Dorado bedstraw is listed as rare under the California Native Plant Protection Act, listed as endangered under the federal Endangered Species Act, and is listed as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** El Dorado bedstraw is a perennial herb endemic to the Pine Hill geologic formation in western El Dorado County and on the surrounding ridges to the west within approximately 2.5 miles. (59 FR [76]:18774-18783, April 20, 1994.). The species appears to have always been uncommon and limited in distribution. Ten occurrences are known, most of which are on private land (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998). The two largest populations consist of thousands of individuals. A few small El Dorado bedstraw colonies, typically 50-200 individuals, have been discovered in the last several years in Shingle Springs. The overall trend for species is one of decline (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** El Dorado bedstraw occurs or has the potential to occur in the American River Basin and Eastside Delta Tributaries Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** El Dorado bedstraw is a soft-hairy, perennial herb in the coffee family (Rubiaceae) with four narrow leaves at each node (Hickman 1993). The species occurs in cismontane, black oak woodland, and chaparral communities, including sites with ponderosa pine and foothill pine, on soils derived from gabbro (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998). Its pale-yellow flowers appear from May to June (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** Decline of the species results from residential development, firewood harvesting, fuel-load management, road construction, horse paddocking, irrigation, inadequate regulatory mechanisms, off-road-vehicle use, and recreational activities. Its restricted distribution and the limited number of individuals make the species susceptible to catastrophic events such as pest outbreak, disease infestation, severe drought, and other natural or human-caused disasters (59 FR [76]:18774-18783, April 20, 1994, Skinner and Pavlik 1994, California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A draft recovery plan for the species has been prepared by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) (64 FR 11035-11036, March 8, 1999).

### Citations

California Department of Fish and Game. 1999. Draft sections from 1998 annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

Hickman, J. C. 1993. The Jepson manual, higher plants of California. University of California Press. Berkeley, CA.

Natural Diversity Data Base. 1998. California Department of Fish and Game. Natural Heritage Division. Sacramento, CA.

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

## MARIN WESTERN FLAX (*Hesperolinon congestum*)

**Legal Status.** Marin western flax, also known as Marin dwarf-flax, is listed as threatened under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Marin western flax is endemic to serpentine soils from Marin County south to San Mateo County, California. There are 20 existing known occurrences from Marin, San Francisco, and San Mateo Counties (California Department of Fish and Game 1999). Populations fluctuate in size from hundreds to thousands of plants (Robison and Morey 1992). Marin western flax is protected in part at The Nature Conservancy's Ring Mountain Preserve (Skinner and Pavlik 1994). The overall trend for species is one of decline (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Marin western flax occurs in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Marin western flax is an herbaceous annual of the flax family (Linaceae) with slender, threadlike stems, 10–40 centimeters (4–16 inches) tall. The species is found in serpentine grasslands and serpentine chaparral (Hickman 1993). The blooming period for Marin western flax is from May through July (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** Marin western flax is threatened by development, loss of habitat to invasive species, and trampling by livestock (Skinner and Pavlik 1994, California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not yet been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### Citations

California Department of Fish and Game. 1999. Draft sections from 1998 annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

Hickman, J. C. 1993. The Jepson manual, higher plants of California. University of California Press. Berkeley, CA.

Robison, R. A., and S. Morey. 1992. Report to the Fish and Game Commission on the status of Marin dwarf flax (*Hesperolinon congestum*). California Department of Fish and Game, Natural Heritage Division Status Report 92-2, unpublished. Sacramento, CA.

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

## CONTRA COSTA GOLDFIELDS (*Lasthenia conjugens*)

**Legal Status.** Contra Costa goldfields is federally listed as endangered under the federal Endangered Species Act and is listed as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** The historical distribution of Contra Costa goldfields was considerably greater than its present distribution and extended from Mendocino to Santa Barbara Counties. Contra Costa goldfields is known from 13 populations in the Delta region of the Sacramento Valley. It now occurs at only a few locations in Solano and Napa Counties. (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Contra Costa goldfields occurs or has the potential to occur in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay, West San Joaquin Basin, and Yolo Basin Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Contra Costa goldfields is an annual in the aster family (Asteraceae). It grows 10–30 centimeters tall and inhabits vernal pools and seasonally moist grassy areas. In the past, the species may have also occurred in coastal prairies. Flowering time is March–June (Skinner and Pavlik 1994, Natural Diversity Data Base 1998).

**Reasons for Decline.** Declines of this species are associated with the loss of vernal pools, which can be attributed to development and agriculture. Remaining threats include continued urbanization and grazing.

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### Citations

Natural Diversity Data Base. 1998. Database search for *Lasthenia conjugens*. California Department of Fish and Game. Sacramento, CA.

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.



## SAN JOAQUIN WOOLLY THREADS (*Lembertia congdonii*)

**Legal Status.** San Joaquin woolly threads is listed as endangered under the federal Endangered Species Act and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** San Joaquin woolly threads is endemic to the southern San Joaquin Valley and surrounding hills. Its original range extended from southern Fresno and Tulare Counties (excluding the Tulare Lake bed) to Bakersfield and Cuyama Valley. There are 59 known extant populations of San Joaquin woolly threads, primarily occurring near Carrizo Plain, Kettleman Hills, or Kettleman Plain (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** San Joaquin woolly threads occurs or has the potential to occur in the West San Joaquin Basin Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** San Joaquin woolly threads is an annual herb of the sunflower family (Asteraceae). It produces several white, woolly, many-branched stems up to approximately 10 inches long that tend to trail on the ground. San Joaquin woolly threads grows in annual grasslands with sparse cover of saltbush on alluvial fans, often in sandy soil. Flowering period is March-May (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** Over 60% of historically known populations have been eliminated by conversion of habitat to agricultural uses. Threats to remaining unprotected populations include heavy grazing (especially by sheep), oil field development, energy development, and possible air pollution (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** The Carrizo and Elkhorn Plains and the Kettleman Hills are within Areas of Critical Environmental Concern, which would restrict activities on U.S. Bureau of Land Management lands in those regions (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998).

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan for the species has been prepared by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) (1998). To ensure the survival of San Joaquin woolly threads, existing habitat needs to be protected, and populations need to be monitored to determine density stability. The recovery strategy includes purchases of land with a plant density of 1,000 plants per acre and up to 450-foot buffer zones.

### Citations

Natural Diversity Data Base. 1998. California Department of Fish and Game. Natural Heritage Division. Sacramento, CA.

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1998. Recovery plan for upland species of the San Joaquin Valley, California. Portland, OR.

## **PITKIN MARSH LILY (*Lilium pardalinum* ssp. *pitkinense*)**

**Legal Status.** Pitkin Marsh lily is listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Pitkin Marsh lily grows in Sonoma County. There are only three recorded occurrences of Pitkin Marsh lily, two of which have been seen recently. These occurrences are confined to a small portion of Sonoma County, near freshwater marshes in the vicinity of Sebastopol and Cunningham. Currently, about 200 plants remain. The overall trend for species is one of decline (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Pitkin Marsh lily occurs or has the potential to occur in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Pitkin Marsh lily is an herbaceous rhizomatous perennial of the lily family (Liliaceae), with tall, slender, erect stems that grow 3–6 feet tall and narrow whorled leaves. The species is found in freshwater marshes, wet meadows, and cismontane woodlands. Pitkin Marsh lily blossoms consist of large, showy, nodding yellow-orange flowers with deep maroon dots and red tips. Blooming period is June–July (California Department of Fish and Game 1999, Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** Land clearing and draining operations, cattle grazing, and horticultural bulb collecting have affected all Pitkin Marsh lily populations. Introduced blackberry plants also compete with the lily at Pitkin Marsh (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not yet been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### **Citations**

California Department of Fish and Game. 1999. Draft sections from 1998 annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

## **BUTTE COUNTY MEADOWFOAM (*Limnanthes floccosa* ssp. *californica*)**

**Legal Status.** Butte County meadowfoam is listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Butte County meadowfoam is endemic to a small portion of the eastern Sacramento Valley. Its historical distribution was probably similar to its current distribution, which is a narrow 25-mile-wide strip from Chico to near Shippee Road, north of Oroville (Jones & Stokes Associates 1989). There are approximately 13 occurrences of Butte County meadowfoam, 11 of which are within the City of Chico's designated "sphere of influence" (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Butte County meadowfoam occurs or has the potential to occur in the Feather River/Sutter Basin, Sacramento River, and Butte Basin Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Butte County meadowfoam is an annual herb of the meadowfoam family (Limnanthaceae) that grows to less than 25 centimeters tall (Hickman 1993). This species is restricted to vernal pool margins and ephemeral wet drainages on annual grasslands on level to gently sloping soils, especially the shallow Tuscan formation soils derived from volcanic mudflows. Butte County meadowfoam blooms from March through May (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** Major factors contributing to loss and degradation of Butte County meadowfoam populations include urban development, road construction, alteration of watershed size or runoff patterns, agriculture, competition from non-native plants, and livestock grazing. Impacts from development and grazing continue to threaten some of the remaining populations (Jones & Stokes Associates 1989).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not yet been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### **Citations**

California Department of Fish and Game. 1999. Draft sections from 1998 annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

Hickman, J. C. 1993. The Jepson manual, higher plants of California. University of California Press. Berkeley, CA.

Jones & Stokes Associates. 1989. A draft plan for the conservation of Butte County meadowfoam in the city of Chico. *Limnanthes floccosa* ssp. *california*

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

## SEBASTOPOL MEADOWFOAM (*Limnanthes vinculans*)

**Legal Status.** Sebastopol meadowfoam is listed endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Sebastopol meadowfoam is known from the southern outer northern Coast Range, specifically Napa and Sonoma Counties. Most occurrences are on private land within 5 miles of the city of Santa Rosa, primarily in the drainage of the Laguna de Santa Rosa. Populations occur on privately owned lands as well as on lands owned by the California Department of Transportation, U.S. Army, and the City of Santa Rosa. The overall trend of Sebastopol meadowfoam is one of decline (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Sebastopol meadowfoam occurs or has the potential to occur in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Sebastopol meadowfoam is an annual herb of the meadowfoam family (Limnathaceae) (Hickman 1993). The species has divided leaves and bowl-shaped white flowers; it grows to 30 centimeters tall. Sebastopol meadowfoam grows in seasonally wet meadows, pastures, and vernal pools and creek drainages (California Department of Fish and Game 1999). Blooming period is April-May (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** Populations are threatened by residential and commercial development, agriculture, grazing, and off-road-vehicle recreation (California Department of Fish and Game 1999, Skinner and Pavlik 1994). Indirect effects of urban growth, such as alteration of local and regional drainage patterns and effluent irrigation, also threaten this species.

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** Protection measures for Sebastopol meadowfoam are expected to be included in the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service's Draft California Vernal Pool Ecosystem Recovery Plan, to be released for public review in 1999.

### Citations

California Department of Fish and Game. 1992. Annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

\_\_\_\_\_. 1999. Draft sections from 1998 annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

Hickman, J. C. 1993. The Jepson manual, higher plants of California. University of California Press. Berkeley, CA.

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

## **FEW-FLOWERED NAVARRETIA (*Navarretia leucocephala* ssp. *pauciflora*)**

**Legal Status.** Few-flowered navarretia is state listed as threatened and federally listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts. It is listed as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Few-flowered navarretia is endemic to the inner northern Coast Ranges of Lake and Napa Counties (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998). Of the six known populations, five occur on private lands (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998). The other population occurs in the Loch Lomond vernal pool ecological reserve, which is managed by California Department of Fish and Game (DFG), and it is believed a result of hybridization (California Department of Fish and Game 1999). The limited range and specific substrate preference indicate that the species has always been uncommon.

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Few-flowered navarretia occurs in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Few-flowered navarretia is an annual herb of the phlox family (Polemoniaceae), growing 1–4 centimeters tall (Hickman 1993). The species grows in vernal pools that occur on volcanic ash deposits and blooms in June (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** Threats to the species include recreational activities, grazing, and habitat loss resulting from wetland drainage (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not yet been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### **Citations**

- California Department of Fish and Game. 1999. Draft sections from 1998 annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.
- Hickman, J. C. 1993. The Jepson manual, higher plants of California. University of California Press. Berkeley, CA.
- Natural Diversity Data Base. 1998. California Department of Fish and Game. Natural Heritage Division. Sacramento, CA.



Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

## **MANY-FLOWERED NAVARRETIA (*Navarretia leucocephala* ssp. *plieantha*)**

**Legal Status.** The many-flowered navarretia is state listed as threatened and federally listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts. It is listed as category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Many-flowered navarretia is known from 8 historical occurrences in Lake and Sonoma Counties. This plant is found through a range of approximately 400 sq. mi. at 1,800–2,800 feet in elevation. One occurrence is located within California Department of Fish and Game's (DFG's) Loch Lomond Ecological Reserve; another is found at Boggs Lake, on property owned by The Nature Conservancy (TNC) and DFG (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Many-flowered navarretia occurs in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Management Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Many-flowered navarretia is a prostrate annual herb in the phlox family (Polemoniaceae). This plant forms small mats 2–8 inches wide. Many-flowered navarretia is found in dry meadows, along the margins of vernal pools and lakes, and in open wet ground in forest openings (California Native Plant Society 1988). Many-flowered navarretia flowers from May to June (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** Many-flowered navarretia is threatened by grazing, development, and vehicles (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Conservation Efforts.** Many-flowered navarretia is protected in part at DFG's Loch Lomond Ecological Reserve and at Boggs Lake, where it is also protected by TNC and Trust for Wildland Communities (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not yet been prepared, and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

**Research or Monitoring Gaps.** This section is to be prepared by CALFED, the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, and DFG.

### **Citations**

California Department of Fish and Game. 1999. Draft sections from 1998 annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

California Native Plant Society. 1988. Rare plant status reports, *Navarretia plicantha*. Unpublished Report. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

## **COLUSA GRASS (*Neostapfia colusana*)**

**Legal Status.** Colusa grass is state listed as endangered and federally listed as threatened under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts. It is listed as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Colusa grass is endemic to the Sacramento and San Joaquin Valleys. The species' historical distribution included Merced, Stanislaus, Solano, and Colusa Counties. Forty populations are currently known from Merced, Stanislaus, and Solano Counties; none remain in Colusa County. (California Department of Fish and Game 1992.)

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Colusa grass occurs or has the potential to occur in Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay, Eastside Delta Tributaries, East San Joaquin Basin, San Joaquin River, West San Joaquin Basin, Colusa Basin, Sacramento River, and Yolo Basin Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Colusa grass is an annual belonging to the grass family (Poaceae) and grows 10–30 centimeters tall. It occurs in large or deep vernal pools on clay substrates (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998). Flowering time is May–July.

**Reasons for Decline.** The primary reasons for the decline of this species include the conversion of vernal pools to agricultural and developed lands, heavy grazing by cattle, and competition from introduced weedy species that displace it (California Department of Fish and Game 1992).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### **Citations**

California Department of Fish and Game. 1992. Annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

Natural Diversity Data Base. 1998. Database search for *Neostapfia colusana*. California Department of Fish and Game. Sacramento, CA.

## **ANTIOCH DUNES EVENING-PRIMROSE (*Oenothera deltoides* ssp. *howellii*)**

**Legal Status.** Antioch Dunes evening-primrose is listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Antioch Dunes evening-primrose is endemic to the Antioch Dunes, south of the confluence of the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers, up to an elevation of 50 feet. Its historical distribution was probably not much more extensive than its present distribution of 70 acres of remnant dunes at Antioch. In 1970, the primrose was introduced to the Brannan Island State Recreation Area; by 1988, one small population remained there (California Department of Fish and Game 1992, Natural Diversity Data Base 1998).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Antioch Dunes evening-primrose occurs or has the potential to occur in the Suisun Marsh/San Francisco Bay and Yolo Basin Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Antioch Dunes evening-primrose is a perennial herb of the evening primrose family (Onagraceae), grows up to 2.5 feet tall, and occurs in loose sand and semistabilized dunes associated with the Sacramento-San Joaquin River Delta. It requires freshly disturbed sand for the establishment and survival of succeeding generations. Seedlings are unable to survive on the clay soils in areas where overlaying dune sand has been removed; seedlings cannot become established in heavily vegetated areas—the species is a colonizer after wildfires. The flowers of this plant open in early evening and usually close by midmorning. Flowering time is March through May and briefly in September.

**Reasons for Decline.** Industrial development, sand mining, and agricultural conversion have resulted in loss of this species' habitat. Fire control activities, off-road-vehicle use, and the invasion of non-native species have further degraded its remaining habitat (California Department of Fish and Game 1992). Limited seed production is linked to a deficiency of pollinators (Pavlik et al. 1988).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** Inland dune habitat near Antioch at T2N, R2E, Section 17 SW ¼ and Section 18 E ¾ of S ¼ was designated as critical habitat (42 FR 26, February 8, 1977).

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan for the species has been prepared by USFWS that focuses on protecting and restoring the Antioch Dunes ecosystem and increasing the numbers of Antioch Dunes evening-primrose plants in the wild.

### **Citations**

California Department of Fish and Game. 1992. Annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

Natural Diversity Data Base. 1998. Database search for Antioch Dunes evening-primrose (*Oenothera deltoides* ssp. *howellii*). California Department of Fish and Game. Sacramento, CA.

Pavlik, B., N. Ferguson, E. Manning and M. Barbour. 1988. Demographic studies of endemic plants at the Antioch Dunes National Wildlife Refuge. Part 1: Seed production and germination. Unpublished. Prepared for the Endangered Plant Project.

## **SAN JOAQUIN VALLEY ORCUTT GRASS (*Orcuttia inaequalis*)**

**Legal Status.** San Joaquin Valley Orcutt grass is state listed as endangered and federally listed as threatened under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** San Joaquin Valley Orcutt grass is the only Orcutt grass restricted to the San Joaquin Valley. This grass was once common along the eastern margin of the valley in Stanislaus, Merced, Fresno, Madera, and Tulare Counties. Most of the remaining occurrences of San Joaquin Valley Orcutt grass are concentrated in two small areas in eastern Merced County. The species occurs in two vernal pools that are partially on land owned by the U.S. Bureau of Land Management (BLM) and partially on private land on Big Table Mountain near Friant in Fresno County. San Joaquin Valley Orcutt grass also occurs in a vernal pool complex in Madera County that was acquired by the California Department of Transportation (Caltrans) in 1995 for mitigation purposes. Just before acquisition by Caltrans, the pools were disked, which resulted in an invasion by upland plants. Nonetheless, the pools still support rare species. In 1997, a small population of San Joaquin Valley Orcutt grass was discovered in one vernal pool on California Department of Fish and Game's (DFG's) Stone Corral Ecological Reserve in Tulare County. Three occurrences of the species on the Flying M Ranch in Merced County are protected through conservation easement agreements with The Nature Conservancy (TNC). Twenty-two of the approximately 25 extant occurrences are privately owned. The overall trend for this species is one of decline (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** San Joaquin Valley Orcutt grass occurs or has the potential to occur in the San Joaquin River and East San Joaquin Basin Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** San Joaquin Valley Orcutt grass is a small, grayish-green, sticky, aromatic, tufted annual of the grass family (Poaceae) that occurs in vernal pools. The plant has several stems 2–6 inches tall, terminating in a spike-like inflorescence (58 FR [149]:41700–41708, August 5, 1993). The blooming period for this species is from May through September (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** Nearly half of the historical occurrences of San Joaquin Valley Orcutt grass have been destroyed by habitat conversion of grassland to agriculture. Disking, hydrological modification, urbanization, late-spring grazing, and competition from non-native weeds have also degraded and destroyed the species' habitat. Because San Joaquin Valley Orcutt grass matures in early summer and occupies large vernal pools that retain water through that period, it is vulnerable to trampling when cattle are attracted to vernal pools as annual grasses in the surrounding upland dry out. Vernal pools that have been disturbed are vulnerable to invasion by non-native, upland grasses and forbs that compete with San Joaquin Valley Orcutt grass.

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** DFG and U. S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) funded a study, completed in 1995, to characterize the vernal pools of San Joaquin Valley, including those in which San Joaquin Valley Orcutt grass occurs. Protection measures for this species are expected to be included in USFWS's Draft California Vernal Pool Ecosystem Recovery Plan, to be released for public review in 1999.

#### **Citations**

California Department of Fish and Game. 1999. Draft sections from 1998 annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

Natural Diversity Data Base. 1998. California Department of Fish and Game. Natural Heritage Division. Sacramento, CA.

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.



## **HAIRY ORCUTT GRASS (*Orcuttia pilosa*)**

**Legal Status.** Hairy Orcutt grass is listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** The historical range of hairy Orcutt grass includes the eastern margins of Sacramento and San Joaquin Valleys including Butte, Glenn, Madera, Merced, Mariposa, Stanislaus, and Tehama Counties. There are 29 extant occurrences of hairy Orcutt grass, none from Merced County (Natural Diversity Data Base 1999). Six occurrences are known from The Nature Conservancy's (TNC) Vina Plains Preserve in Tehama County. Three other occurrences are from private land in the Vina Plains area. There are six occurrences known from the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service's (USFWS's) Sacramento Wildlife Refuge in Glenn County. Other occurrences are known from private property, land owned by the U.S. Bureau of Reclamation, land owned by the California Department of Transportation, and land of unknown ownership (Natural Diversity Data Base 1999).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Hairy Orcutt grass occurs or has the potential to occur in the Colusa Basin, East San Joaquin Basin, Butte Basin, San Joaquin River, and Sacramento River Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Hairy Orcutt grass is a small, tufted annual of the grass family (Poaceae). The plant has several stems 2–8 inches tall that terminate in a long, spike-like inflorescence (58 FR [149]:41700–41708, August 5, 1993). Hairy Orcutt grass inhabits vernal pools on rolling topography on remnant alluvial fans and stream terraces. This grass flowers from May through August (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** Conversion of vernal pool habitat to irrigated agriculture or urban development has been the primary factor leading to decline in this species. Overgrazing, disking, trampling by livestock, altered hydrology, and competition from non-native weeds also threaten its habitat.

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** The California Department of Fish and Game (DFG) and USFWS funded a study, completed in 1995, to characterize the vernal pools of San Joaquin Valley. The study included vernal pools in which hairy Orcutt grass occurs. Protection measures for this species are expected to be included in USFWS's Draft California Vernal Pool Ecosystem Recovery Plan, scheduled to be released for public review in 1999 (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

### Citations

California Department of Fish and Game. 1999. Draft sections from 1998 annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

Natural Diversity Data Base. 1999. California Department of Fish and Game. Natural Heritage Division. Sacramento, CA.

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

## **SLENDER ORCUTT GRASS (*Orcuttia tenuis*)**

**Legal Status.** Slender Orcutt grass is state listed as endangered and federally listed as threatened under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts. It is listed as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Slender Orcutt grass has been reported from numerous, widely distributed populations in Lake, Sacramento, Shasta, Siskiyou, and Tehama Counties (California Department of Fish and Game 1992, Natural Diversity Data Base 1998). Of the approximately 45 known occurrences, about 40 are still extant. Most of the remaining populations are in Shasta and Tehama Counties (62 FR 14338-14352 March 26, 1997).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Slender Orcutt grass occurs or has the potential to occur in the North Sacramento Valley, American River Basin, Colusa Basin, and Yolo Basin Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Slender Orcutt grass is a blue-green, tufted, sticky, aromatic annual belonging to the grass family (Poaceae) that grows up to 15 centimeters tall. It occurs on remnant alluvial fans, high stream terraces, and in vernal pools within valley grassland and blue-oak woodland (California Department of Fish and Game 1992). The species has also shown an ability to colonize artificial habitats, such as the margins of stockponds (62 FR 14338-14352 March 26, 1997). Flowering time is May-October.

**Reasons for Decline.** Many undocumented populations were probably lost during the intensive agricultural development that resulted in extensive losses of vernal pools in the Central Valley. Nearly one-third of the remaining occurrences have been damaged by agriculture, grazing, and changes in hydrology. (California Department of Fish and Game 1992.)

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### **Citations**

California Department of Fish and Game. 1992. Annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

---

\_\_\_\_\_. 1996. The status of rare, threatened, and endangered animals and plants of California combined annual report for 1993, 1994, and 1995. An addendum to the 1992 report. Sacramento, CA.

Natural Diversity Data Base. 1998. Database search of *Orcuttia tenuis*. California Department of Fish and Game. Sacramento, CA.

## **SACRAMENTO ORCUTT GRASS (*Orcuttia viscida*)**

**Legal Status.** Sacramento Orcutt grass is state and federally listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Sacramento Orcutt grass is endemic to Sacramento County. Only nine historical and recent occurrences are documented, all in the eastern part of the county (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998). Currently, there are seven populations of Sacramento Orcutt grass, one of which was established by seeding a vernal pool near a naturally occurring population (62 FR 14338-14352 March 26, 1997).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Sacramento Orcutt grass occurs or has the potential to occur in the American River Basin and Eastside Delta Tributaries Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Sacramento Orcutt grass is a densely tufted annual of the grass family (Poaceae). It grows 3-10 centimeters tall and flowers in dry vernal-pool beds within blue-oak woodland or valley grassland communities. This species is the most rare and narrowly distributed member of the genus. Flowering time is May-June. (California Department of Fish and Game 1992)

**Reasons for Decline.** Some historical populations of the species were probably eliminated by agricultural and urban development and placer mining. Current threats to the remaining populations include development, competition from non-native plants, trampling by livestock, and mountain biking and hiking. (California Department of Fish and Game 1996.)

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### **Citations**

California Department of Fish and Game. 1992. Annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

\_\_\_\_\_. 1996. The status of rare, threatened, and endangered animals and plants of California combined annual report for 1993, 1994, and 1995. An addendum to the 1992 report. Sacramento, CA.

Natural Diversity Data Base. 1998. Database search of *Orcuttia viscida*. California Department of Fish and Game. Sacramento, CA.

## **WHITE-RAYED PENTACHAETA (*Pentachaeta bellidiflora*)**

**Legal Status.** White-rayed pentachaeta is listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Historically, white-rayed pentachaeta was known from at least nine sites in Marin, San Mateo, and Santa Cruz Counties. Suitable habitat remains in two San Mateo County locations, but the species has not been seen at either site in many years (Robison and Morey 1992). White-rayed pentachaeta is now known from only one confirmed location in San Mateo County, in the "Triangle" area and adjacent Edgewood County Park (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998). A second population may have been found on the west side of Crystal Springs Reservoir on San Francisco Water Department land, but the sighting needs to be confirmed (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** White-rayed pentachaeta occurs or has the potential to occur in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** White-rayed pentachaeta is a small annual plant of the sunflower family (Asteraceae) that grows 6–17 centimeters tall (Hickman 1993). The species occurs in serpentine bunchgrass habitat (California Department of Fish and Game 1999). White-rayed pentachaeta flowers from March to May (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** White-rayed pentachaeta has historically lost populations to development (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A draft recovery plan has been prepared for this species by USFWS (1998). Recovery strategy elements include protecting existing population and buffer areas for expansion and securing unpopulated habitat. It is recommended that management plans comprise standardized annual monitoring and developing strategies to minimize known threats. Additionally, seed banking and surveys to confirm potential populations and locate potential habitat, new populations, and historical sites are recommended (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998).

### **Citations**

California Department of Fish and Game. 1999. Draft sections from 1998 annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

Hickman, J. C. 1993. The Jepson manual, higher plants of California. University of California Press. Berkeley, CA.

Natural Diversity Data Base. 1998. California Department of Fish and Game. Natural Heritage Division. Sacramento, CA.

Robison, R. A., and S. Morey. 1992. Report to the Fish and Game Commission on the status of white-rayed pentachaeta (*Pentachaeta bellidiflora*). California Department of Fish and Game, Natural Heritage Division Status Report 92-3, unpublished. Sacramento, CA.

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1998. Draft recovery plan for serpentine soil species of the San Francisco Bay Area. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Portland, OR.

## **CALISTOGA POPCORNFLOWER (*Plagiobothrys strictus*)**

**Legal Status.** Calistoga popcornflower is state listed as threatened and federally listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts. It is listed as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Calistoga popcornflower is an annual herb known from only three occurrences in the vicinity of Calistoga, in Napa County (Skinner and Pavlik 1994). Two of these occurrences are on private property; the third occurrence has not been observed since 1903 (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998). The trend for Calistoga popcornflower is one of overall decline (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Calistoga popcornflower occurs in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Calistoga popcornflower is a glabrous annual herb of the borage family (Boraginaceae). It grows erect, 1–4 decimeters tall, on alkaline sites near thermal springs and on vernal pool margins in heavy, dark, adobe-like clay (Hickman 1993, Natural Diversity Data Base 1998). Calistoga popcornflower blooms from March through June (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** Urbanization and viticulture have extirpated one historical occurrence and eliminated over 70% of Calistoga popcornflower habitat (California Department of Fish and Game 1999). Existing populations are threatened by habitat loss, one from airport construction and the other from a proposed construction of a resort (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not yet been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### **Citations**

California Department of Fish and Game. 1999. Draft sections from 1998 annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

Hickman, J. C. 1993. The Jepson manual, higher plants of California. University of California Press. Berkeley, CA.

Natural Diversity Data Base. 1998. California Department of Fish and Game. Natural Heritage Division. Sacramento, CA.



Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

## **NAPA BLUE GRASS (*Poa napensis*)**

**Legal Status.** Napa blue grass is listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Napa blue grass is restricted to two occurrences near Calistoga in Napa County. These exist on private property, one between an airport runway and a ball field, the other among commercial development (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Napa blue grass occurs or has the potential to occur in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Napa blue grass is a perennial plant of the grass family (Poaceae) that grows 30–100 centimeters tall (Hickman 1993). The species grows in sterile ground of moist alkaline meadows fed by runoff from nearby hot springs (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998). Napa blue grass blooms from May through August (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** The two Napa blue grass populations are threatened by habitat loss, one from airport construction and the other from proposed construction of a resort (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not yet been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### **Citations**

Hickman, J. C. 1993. The Jepson manual, higher plants of California. University of California Press. Berkeley, CA.

Natural Diversity Data Base. 1998. California Department of Fish and Game. Natural Heritage Division. Sacramento, CA.

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

## **HARTWEG'S GOLDEN SUNBURST (*Pseudobahia bahiifolia*)**

**Legal Status.** Hartweg's golden sunburst, also known as Hartweg's pseudobahia, is listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Hartweg's golden sunburst is endemic to the Central Valley. Historically, the species' range may have extended from Yuba County south to Fresno County, approximately 200 miles, but it was only abundant in a few locations. Today, only 16 extant occurrences are known, which are concentrated in the Friant region of Fresno and Madera Counties and the La Grange region in Stanislaus County (California Department of Fish and Game 1992; 57 FR [230]:56549-56555, November 30, 1992). Twelve populations remain in Stanislaus County, two in Madera County, and two in Fresno County (California Department of Fish and Game 1999). Of the 16 extant occurrences of Hartweg's golden sunburst, 11 are very small and contained fewer than 200 plants in 1990. Part of one population in Fresno County occurs on land owned by the U.S. Bureau of Reclamation and another part of the same population is protected by a conservation easement with The Nature Conservancy (TNC). All other populations are on privately owned land. The overall trend for species is one of decline (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Hartweg's golden sunburst occurs or has potential to occur in the Feather River/Sutter Basin, East San Joaquin Basin, San Joaquin River, and Eastside Delta Tributaries Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Hartweg's golden sunburst is a slender, woolly annual in the sunflower family (Asteraceae). It has one or a few stems 2-6 inches tall, with mostly narrow, undivided leaves, and yellow ray flowers. Hartweg's golden sunburst occurs on the grassy slopes of valley and foothill grasslands and at the margins of blue-oak woodland, primarily on shallow, well-drained, fine-textured and gravelly soils of the Amador and Rocklin series (57 FR [230]:56549-56555, November 30, 1992). Hartweg's golden sunburst typically occurs on the north- or northeast-facing slopes of mima mounds, which are often associated with vernal pools, with the highest densities on upper slopes having minimal grass cover (California Department of Fish and Game 1999). Hartweg's golden sunburst blooms in March and April (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** Hartweg's golden sunburst has declined as a result of habitat loss caused by agricultural and urban development, levee construction, pumice mining, overgrazing by cattle, competition with non-native weeds, road construction, and off-road-vehicle use. Species such as Hartweg's golden sunburst that have very small populations are vulnerable to decline and extinction from genetic problems and random catastrophic events such as floods, attack by insects, disease, or extended droughts (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not yet been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### **Citations**

**California Department of Fish and Game. 1992. Annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.**

**\_\_\_\_\_. 1999. Draft sections from 1998 annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.**

**Natural Diversity Data Base. 1998. California Department of Fish and Game. Natural Heritage Division. Sacramento, CA.**

**Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.**

## **SAN JOAQUIN ADOBE SUNBURST (*Pseudobahia peirsonii*)**

**Legal Status.** San Joaquin adobe sunburst, also known as Tulare pseudobahia, is state listed as endangered and federally listed as threatened under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts. It is listed as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** San Joaquin adobe sunburst is endemic to the eastern San Joaquin Valley. Historical occurrences were scattered from northern Kern County to Tulare and Fresno Counties (California Department of Fish and Game 1992). Today, the species is limited to 36 populations in valleys and flats and the foot of the Sierra Nevada (California Department of Fish and Game 1999). Extant populations are concentrated in three areas: the Round Mountain-Wahtoke area in Fresno County (where the two largest populations occur), the Porterville-Visalia region in Tulare County, and the Pine Mountain-Woody region in Kern County. One population occurs on land owned and managed by the Fresno Flood Control District and two populations occur on land owned by the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers. All other populations occur on privately owned land. Seventeen of the 34 known occurrences contained fewer than 250 plants in 1991; approximately 80% of all plants are contained in four populations. The overall trend for San Joaquin adobe sunburst is one of decline (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** San Joaquin adobe sunburst occurs or has the potential to occur in the East San Joaquin River Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** San Joaquin adobe sunburst is a slender, woolly annual of the sunflower family (Asteraceae). It has branching stems 4–24 inches tall. The species is restricted to heavy adobe clay soils, which may be conducive to the plant's growth because of the soil's ability to hold moisture longer into the summer dry season than other soils. This plant grows in grasslands dominated by non-native annual grasses, mustards, and filarees. San Joaquin adobe sunburst blooms from March through April (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** Species such as San Joaquin adobe sunburst that have very small populations are vulnerable to decline and extinction from genetic problems and random catastrophic events such as floods, attack by insects, disease, or extended droughts (California Department of Fish and Game 1999). Other threats include agricultural and residential development, urbanization, flood control projects, transmission line and road maintenance, heavy grazing by cattle and sheep, soil erosion, recreational activities, and competition with non-native weeds (California Department of Fish and Game 1992; 57 FR [230]:56549–56555, November 30, 1992).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not yet been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

## Citations

California Department of Fish and Game. 1992. Annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

\_\_\_\_\_. 1999. Draft sections from 1998 annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

## **LAYNE'S RAGWORT (*Senecio layneae*)**

**Legal Status.** Layne's ragwort, also known as Layne's butterweed, is state listed as rare under the California Native Plant Protection Act, as threatened under the federal Endangered Species Act, and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Layne's ragwort is a perennial herb endemic to the Sierra Nevada foothills. Historically, it was found on Sweetwater Creek near Folsom, an area that is now inundated by Folsom Reservoir (59 FR [76]:18774-18783, April 20, 1994). There are 40 known occurrences, most of which are on private land and scattered through the Pine Hill region of western El Dorado County; several colonies occur in the Eldorado National Forest. Four occurrences are known from the U.S. Bureau of Land Management Red Hills Management Area in Tuolumne County (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998). Three of the known occurrences are believed to have been extirpated (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998). The overall trend for the species is one of decline (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Layne's ragwort occurs or has the potential to occur in the Eastside Delta Tributaries, American River Basin, and East San Joaquin Basin Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Layne's ragwort is a perennial herb in the sunflower family (Asteraceae) that bears several flower heads that are 2-3 inches long (59 FR [76]:18774-18783, April 20, 1994). The plant occurs in open rocky areas in chaparral and black-oak and interior live-oak woodlands, generally on soils derived from serpentine or gabbro (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998). The species is often found in disturbed habitats, such as along roads, and occasionally along streams. Layne's ragwort flowers between April and June.

**Reasons for Decline.** Many factors are likely to be responsible for the species' decline, including habitat loss by residential and commercial development, road maintenance, off-road-vehicle traffic, erosion, livestock grazing and trampling, changes in fire frequency, competition from non-native plant species (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998), horse paddocking, mining, other human disturbances, and inadequate regulatory mechanisms (59 FR [76]:18774-18783, April 20, 1994).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A draft recovery plan for the species has been prepared by USFWS (64 FR 11035-11036, March 8, 1999).

### **Citations.**

**California Department of Fish and Game. 1999. Draft sections from 1998 annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.**

**Natural Diversity Data Base. 1998. California Department of Fish and Game. Natural Heritage Division. Sacramento, CA.**



## **KENWOOD MARSH CHECKERBLOOM (*Sidalcea oregana* ssp. *valida*)**

**Legal Status.** Kenwood Marsh checkerbloom is listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Kenwood Marsh checkerbloom has been known only from Knight's Valley and Kenwood Marshes. Both known occurrences are found in freshwater marshes surrounded by grasslands in Sonoma County; both sites are privately owned. The occurrence in Kenwood Marsh checkerbloom comprises three subpopulations with approximately 225 individual plants. Habitat quality has declined over the past 30 years. According to a 1993 survey, the population at Knight's Valley Marsh had only 70 plants (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Kenwood Marsh checkerbloom occurs in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Kenwood Marsh checkerbloom is a perennial herb in the mallow family (Malvaceae). The species grows from 3 to 6 feet tall on the edges of freshwater marsh habitats (Hickman 1993, Natural Diversity Data Base 1998). Flowers appear from late June to September (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** Several factors are responsible for the decline of Kenwood Marsh checkerbloom, including grazing and marsh drainage. Habitat conversion to vineyard could further contribute to the species' decline (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### **Citations**

- Hickman, J. C. 1993. The Jepson manual, higher plants of California. University of California Press. Berkeley, CA.
- Natural Diversity Data Base. 1998. California Department of Fish and Game. Natural Heritage Division. Sacramento, CA.
- Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

## **TIBURON JEWELFLOWER (*Streptanthus niger*)**

**Legal Status.** Tiburon jewelflower is listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Tiburon jewelflower is known from only two occurrences on the Tiburon Peninsula in Marin County. Combined, the two occurrences of Tiburon jewelflower encompass approximately 12 acres of habitat, which are privately and publicly owned. This species was most likely historically more widespread on the peninsula, since other serpentine outcrop areas have been lost to residential development (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Tiburon jewelflower occurs or has the potential to occur in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Tiburon jewelflower is an annual herb of the mustard family (Brassicaceae) that grows 1–2 feet tall. The species grows on shallow, rocky soils derived from serpentine rock on south- or west-facing slopes within a native bunchgrass community (California Department of Fish and Game 1999). Tiburon jewelflower blooms from May through June (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** Tiburon jewelflower is threatened by road construction, foot traffic, and development on the Tiburon Peninsula (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A draft recovery plan has been prepared for this species by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) (1998). Recovery strategy elements include protecting and managing existing populations and buffer areas for expansion and securing unpopulated habitat. It is recommended that management plans include developing strategies to minimize known threats and an educational outreach program. Additionally, seedbanks and surveys of potential habitat for new populations and potential introduction sites are recommended (U. S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1998).

### **Citations**

California Department of Fish and Game. 1999. Draft sections from 1998 annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1998. Draft recovery plan for serpentine soil species of the San Francisco Bay Area. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Portland, OR.

## **CALIFORNIA SEABLITE (*Suaeda californica*)**

**Legal Status.** California seablite is listed as endangered under the federal Endangered Species Acts and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** California seablite has a historical distribution throughout the central California coast, including portions of Alameda, Contra Costa, San Luis Obispo, and Santa Clara Counties. It has one historical occurrence in Santa Clara County, but is otherwise only known from San Luis Obispo County, where it is found on property owned by the California Department of Parks and Recreation and on property of unknown ownership (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** California seablite occurs or has the potential to occur in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** California seablite is an evergreen shrub of the goosefoot family (Chenopodiaceae) that grows 30–80 centimeters tall (Hickman 1993). The species is found on margins of coastal saltmarshes. The blooming period of California seablite is from July through October (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** California seablite is threatened by erosion, road maintenance, recreation use, and habitat alteration (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998, Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not yet been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### **Citations**

Hickman, J. C. 1993. The Jepson manual, higher plants of California. University of California Press. Berkeley, CA.

Natural Diversity Data Base. 1998. California Department of Fish and Game. Natural Heritage Division. Sacramento, CA.

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

## SHOWY INDIAN CLOVER (*Trifolium amoenum*)

**Legal Status.** Showy Indian clover is listed as endangered under the federal Endangered Species Acts and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Showy Indian clover is historically known from the Coast Range foothills north and east of San Francisco Bay (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998). Originally, the species ranged from Mendocino County south to Sonoma, Marin, Alameda, and Santa Clara Counties, and east to Napa and Solano Counties. The species was believed to be extinct, not having been seen in the wild since 1969; however, a single plant, from which a greenhouse culture is being maintained, was discovered on privately owned property in Sonoma County in 1993 (Connors 1994). This site has since been developed and the species is no longer present. Showy Indian clover is extirpated from all of its 24 historically known locations. A single extant natural population, comprising about 200 plants, was discovered in 1996 in Marin County on privately owned property (Connors 1994). The soil in the remaining natural habitat within the species' historical range may contain viable showy Indian clover seed (Connors 1994).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Showy Indian clover occurs or has the potential to occur in the West San Joaquin Basin, Yolo Basin, and Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Showy Indian clover is an annual herb of the legume family (Fabaceae). It is erect, with hairy stems and leaves, and grows from 4 to 27 inches tall. Showy Indian clover has been found in a variety of habitats including grasslands; grassy hillsides; and low, wet swales. It sometimes occurs on serpentine soils. The flowers of the showy Indian clover appear from April to June (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** Showy Indian clover is threatened by habitat loss from urbanization and agriculture (Skinner and Pavlik 1994). Other factors believed responsible for the species' decline include livestock grazing competition from non-native annual plants, (Pavlik and Skinner 1994).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not yet been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### Citations

California Natural Diversity Data Base. 1998. Natural Heritage Division. California Fish and Game. State of California.

Connors, P. G. 1994. Rediscovery of showy Indian clover. *Fremontia*. 22(2):3-7.

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

## **GREENE'S TUCTORIA (*Tuctoria greenei*)**

**Legal Status.** Greene's tuctoria, also known as Green's Orcutt grass, is listed as rare under the California Native Plant Protection Act and as endangered under the federal Endangered Species Act. It is listed as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Greene's tuctoria is endemic to vernal pools of the Central Valley. Its historical range included parts of Shasta, Tehama, and Butte Counties in the northern and eastern Central Valley and extended through Fresno, Madera, San Joaquin, Stanislaus, and Tulare Counties in the San Joaquin Valley. The extant 17 occurrences of Greene's tuctoria occur in Shasta, southern Tehama, Butte, Stanislaus, and eastern Merced Counties (California Department of Fish and Game 1992; 58 FR [149]:41700-41708, August 5, 1993). All known populations occur on private land. Of the four occurrences at The Nature Conservancy's Vina Plains Preserve, only one is not grazed by cattle (California Department of Fish and Game 1992).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Greene's tuctoria occurs or has the potential to occur in the East San Joaquin Basin, Butte Basin, Sacramento River, Colusa Basin, Feather River/Sutter Basin, and Eastside Delta Tributaries Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Greene's tuctoria is a small, tufted annual of the grass family (Poaceae). The plant has a few to several stems 2-6 inches tall, each terminating in a spike-like inflorescence that may be partly enfolded in the upper leaf (Hickman 1993). Greene's tuctoria occurs in small or shallow vernal pools or the early drying sections of large, deep vernal pools. Greene's tuctoria blooms from May through July (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** The primary factors causing the decline in this species are conversion of habitat to irrigated agriculture, competition from weedy non-native plants, overgrazing by cattle, and residential development (California Department of Fish and Game 1992). At least nine historically known populations of Greene's tuctoria have been eliminated by conversion of habitat to irrigated agriculture. Six historical populations are known or presumed to have been eliminated by overgrazing and at least one population has been eliminated by urbanization. Additionally, Greene's tuctoria is particularly sensitive to livestock trampling because it germinates as pool water is receding; many other vernal pool plants are already established at this phase (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not yet been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

## Citations

California Department of Fish and Game. 1992. Annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

\_\_\_\_\_. 1999. Draft sections from 1998 annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

Hickman, J. C. 1993. The Jepson manual, higher plants of California. University of California Press. Berkeley, CA.

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.



## **CRAMPTON'S TUCTORIA (*Tuctoria mucronata*)**

**Legal Status.** Crampton's tuctoria, also known as Solano grass, is listed as endangered under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Crampton's tuctoria is endemic to the western Sacramento Valley. Its historical range was most likely limited to this area; however, much of its potential habitat was eliminated before the species was recognized. Crampton's tuctoria is presently known from three locations: two sites south of the city of Dixon in Solano County and one on the U.S. Air Force Communications Facility south of the city of Davis in Yolo County. (California Department of Fish and Game 1996.)

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Crampton's tuctoria occurs or has the potential to occur in the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta and Yolo Basin Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Crampton's tuctoria is a sticky, aromatic annual in the grass family (Poaceae). It is less than 12 centimeters tall and grows in the clay bottoms of drying vernal pools and vernal lakes surrounded by grassland. Flowering time is June-July. (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998.)

**Reasons for Decline.** Crampton's tuctoria may have declined precipitously when intense agricultural development began in the Sacramento Valley. Threats to the remaining populations include off-road-vehicle use, agricultural operations, trampling by livestock, and hydrologic alterations. Roads and utility corridors have also degraded habitats. (California Department of Fish and Game 1992.)

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** The U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) has prepared a recovery plan for Crampton's tuctoria that provides management recommendations (California Department of Fish and Game 1992). The goal of this plan is to establish populations in two protected, large vernal lakes in the vicinity of the Jepson Prairie Reserve (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1985).

### **Citations**

California Department of Fish and Game. 1992. Annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

\_\_\_\_\_. 1996. The status of rare, threatened, and endangered animals and plants of California combined annual report for 1993, 1994, and 1995. An addendum to the 1992 report. Sacramento, CA.

Natural Diversity Data Base. 1998. Database search of *Tuctoria mucronata*. California Department of Fish and Game. Sacramento, CA.

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1985. Delta green ground beetle and Solano grass recovery plan. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Portland, OR.

## **CALIFORNIA VERVAIN (*Verbena californica*)**

**Legal Status.** California vervain is listed as threatened under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts and as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** California vervain is endemic to the Red Hills in Tuolumne County (Skinner and Pavlik 1994). The species appears to have always been uncommon and limited in distribution. California vervain is known from only nine occurrences, all located within a band approximately 0.5 mile wide and 5 miles long (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998). Six of the populations are located on U.S. Bureau of Land Management (BLM) property within the Red Hills Management Area, which has been designated as an area of critical environmental concern. The remaining three populations are on private land, including the two largest populations, which compose approximately 85% of the total known plants. The second largest population, at Andrews Creek, adjoins BLM land. The overall trend for California vervain is one of decline (California Department of Fish and Game 1999).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** California vervain occurs or has the potential to occur in the East San Joaquin Basin Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** California vervain is a perennial herb of the vervain family (Verbenaceae) that grows 30–75 centimeters tall (Hickman 1993). California vervain grows in soils derived from serpentinite, on streambanks, seeps, and wet places in foothill pine woodland communities (Natural Diversity Data Base 1998). Flowering time is June–September (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** Historical placer mining activities appear to have reduced the size of several California vervain populations. Some existing populations are threatened by recreational gold mining and by grazing and trampling by livestock. The greatest current threat to the species' survival is conversion of habitat to residential development. There is concern that the development will threaten the California vervain through habitat destruction and fragmentation, groundwater depletion, decline in groundwater quality from septic system leachate, and trampling by livestock. Residential wells could lower the water table and dry up the moist areas that support California vervain. Off-road-vehicle use could also have an impact on this species (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not yet been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### Citations

- California Department of Fish and Game. 1999. Draft sections from 1998 annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.
- Hickman, J. C. 1993. The Jepson manual, higher plants of California. University of California Press. Berkeley, CA.
- Natural Diversity Data Base. 1998. California Department of Fish and Game. Natural Heritage Division. Sacramento, CA.
- Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.

## MOUNTAIN PLOVER (*Charadrius montanus*)

**Legal Status.** The mountain plover is designated as California species of special concern and is proposed as threatened under the federal Endangered Species Act.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** The mountain plover is endemic to open, sparsely vegetated habitats in North America. The breeding range is the dry tablelands of the western Great Plains and the Colorado Plateau. The winter range extends from northern California (rarely) through southern California, southern Arizona, and central and coastal Texas to north-central Mexico (Cogswell 1977, Knopf 1996).

Mountain plovers do not breed in California, but approximately 70% of the continental population winters in the state. The major wintering areas in California are in the Sacramento, San Joaquin, and Imperial Valleys. Smaller numbers winter in the west Mojave Desert, San Jacinto Valley, Santa Maria Valley, Salinas Valley, the Carrizo Plain, Seal Beach, Tijuana River Valley, and the Lower Colorado River Valley.

In 1994, the North American population of the mountain plover was estimated to be 8,000–10,000 individuals. Small (1994) reported that numbers are declining in coastal California; in the interior, the species is declining and occurs only locally.

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** This species winters in the Colusa Basin, Yolo Basin, East San Joaquin Basin, and West San Joaquin Basin Ecological Zones. It could also occur in the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Mountain plovers nest in relatively high-elevation (2,000 to 8,500 feet) short-grass prairies and plains. Dense and tall cover is avoided during all seasons and, unlike most other plovers, mountain plovers are seldom found near water. The nest is a shallow depression in the ground, often lined with plant material. The clutch of (usually) three eggs is incubated for 28–31 days by both adults. The female may lay consecutive clutches in separate nests and each clutch is incubated by one of the adults.

After the breeding season (late March to early August), mountain plovers disperse across the southern and western Great Plains before migrating to their wintering areas. The migration of the species to and from California is more of a east-west movement than the typical north-south movement of migrating shorebirds in North America.

In California, mountain plovers have been recorded rarely in late July, but most arrive in mid-October or later. Mid-November to early February is the period of peak abundance in California. Most birds are back on the breeding grounds by late March or early April.

**Reasons for Decline.** Threats to mountain plovers include natural predation, severe weather during the nesting/fledging period, direct persecution by humans, and loss and degradation of breeding and wintering habitat (Knopf 1996). Habitat degradation and destruction is the greatest threat to the species. As the prairies were plowed and populated in the 1800s and the bison were

exterminated, the ecology of the Great Plains was forever altered. The reduction of short-grass prairie by farming and hunting (the elimination of primary grazers that kept the habitat sparsely vegetated) began the reduction and degradation of mountain plover habitat in the breeding range that continues today.

Wintering mountain plovers in California are exposed to pesticides in the agricultural fields, where they may spend up to 75% of the time, but there is no evidence that reproductive success or survival has been affected (Knopf 1996).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** None.

#### Citations

Cogswell, H. 1977. Water birds of California. University of California Press. Berkeley, CA.

Knopf, F. L. 1996. Mountain plover (*Charadrius montanus*). In A. Poole and F. Gill (eds.), *The Birds of North America*, No. 21. The Academy of Natural Sciences, Philadelphia, Pennsylvania, and The American Ornithologists' Union. Washington, D.C.

Small, A. 1994. California birds, their status and distribution. Ibis Publishing Co. Vista, CA.

## **SANTA CRUZ TARPLANT (*Holocarpha macradenia*)**

**Legal Status.** Santa Cruz tarplant is state listed as endangered and federally proposed for listing as threatened under the California and federal Endangered Species Acts. It is also listed as Category 1B by the California Native Plant Society.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Santa Cruz tarplant was historically distributed from the San Francisco Bay Area, south to Monterey Bay (Hickman 1993). It is believed to be extirpated from Alameda, Contra Costa, and Marin Counties (Skinner and Pavlik 1994). Natural populations of Santa Cruz tarplant are known from Santa Cruz and Monterey Counties, one of which is on state property (California Department of Fish and Game 1992). An introduction of the species to Contra Costa County in 1982 has been unsuccessful (California Department of Fish and Game 1992).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Santa Cruz tarplant occurs in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Santa Cruz tarplant is a glandular annual herb of the sunflower family (Asteraceae) that grows from 4–20 inches tall (Hickman 1993). The species occurs in coastal prairie and grassland communities, often in clay soils (Skinner and Pavlik 1994). Santa Cruz tarplant blooms from June through October (Skinner and Pavlik 1994).

**Reasons for Decline.** Santa Cruz tarplant is seriously threatened by development, agriculture, and competition from non-native plants.

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### **Citations**

California Department of Fish and Game. 1992. Annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

\_\_\_\_\_. 1999. Draft sections from 1998 annual report on the status of California state-listed threatened and endangered animals and plants. Sacramento, CA.

Hickman, J. C. 1993. The Jepson manual, higher plants of California. University of California Press. Berkeley, CA.

Skinner, M. W., and B. M. Pavlik. 1994. California Native Plant Society's inventory of rare and endangered vascular plants of California. (Special Publication No. 1.) Fifth Edition. California Native Plant Society. Sacramento, CA.



## **CALIFORNIA TIGER SALAMANDER (*Ambystoma californiense*)**

**Legal Status.** The California tiger salamander is a California species of special concern and a candidate for federal listing under the federal Endangered Species Act.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** The tiger salamander is endemic to California. Its range includes the Central Valley and eastern foothills of the Sierra Nevada from Yolo County (possibly up to Colusa County) south to Kern County, and coastal grasslands from Sonoma County to Santa Barbara County. In California, most populations occur at elevations of less than 1,500 feet, but they have been recorded at elevations up to 4,500 feet.

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** The California tiger salamander occurs in the Colusa Basin, Yolo Basin, American River Basin, Eastside Delta Tributaries, East San Joaquin Basin, West San Joaquin Basin, and Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** The species is most commonly found in annual grassland habitat but also occurs in the grassy understory of valley foothill hardwood habitats. Adults spend most of the year in subterranean refugia, especially in ground-squirrel burrows and occasionally human-made structures. Adults are predators, eating earthworms, snails, insects, fish, and even small mammals. Seasonal ponds or vernal pools are crucial to breeding. Permanent ponds or reservoirs that do not contain predatory fish or bullfrogs may also be used for breeding.

**Reasons for Decline.** There have been documented dramatic habitat losses and population declines throughout the historical range of the species. The decline in the tiger salamander is attributed to conversion of grassland and oak-woodland habitat to agricultural and urban development. Introductions of fish and bullfrogs into breeding ponds have reduced the survival of tiger salamander larvae. These factors have extirpated the species from large geographic areas of its former range, mainly within the Central Valley.

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

## **CENTRAL VALLEY FALL-/LATE-FALL-RUN CHINOOK SALMON EVOLUTIONARILY SIGNIFICANT UNIT (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha* [fr])**

**Legal Status.** The Central Valley fall-/late-fall-run chinook salmon evolutionarily significant unit (ESU) is a candidate for listing as threatened under the federal Endangered Species Act and is a California species of special concern.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Fall-run chinook salmon historically inhabited the entire Sacramento-San Joaquin watershed. Current upstream habitat is limited by fish barriers (typically dams) on many streams and rivers. Subgroups commonly referred to include: (1) San Joaquin fall-run, which includes populations in the Stanislaus, Tuolumne, and Merced Rivers; (2) populations from eastside tributaries that include the Cosumnes and Mokelumne Rivers; (3) fall-run populations in the Sacramento River and its tributaries; and (4) late-fall-run populations in the Sacramento River and selected tributaries.

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Fall-run chinook salmon are found in all the ecological zones of the Central Valley except the West San Joaquin Basin Ecological Zone. Adults migrate upstream through the Bay and Delta ecozones from summer through early winter, with the predominant period being September and October. Adults are found in river and tributary ecozones generally from late summer into winter. Most young move out of tributary spawning areas in winter and spring. Young may be found in the river, Delta, and Bay ecozones from winter into early summer.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Chinook salmon require cold, freshwater streams with suitable gravel for reproduction. Adults spawn in fall when water temperatures decline to 60°F. Females deposit their eggs in nests in gravel-bottom areas with relatively swift water. For maximum survival of incubating eggs and larvae, water temperatures must be between 39°F and 57°F. After emerging, many chinook salmon fry tend to seek shallow, nearshore habitat with slow water velocities and move to progressively deeper, faster water as they grow. Many emerging fry are transported downstream into the lower rivers and the Delta, where they rear in shallow marshes and side channels. Shaded riverine aquatic vegetation is important for providing cover from predators and access to food. Juveniles typically rear in fresh water for up to 5 months before migrating to sea after reaching a length of 4–6 inches. Chinook salmon spend 2–4 years maturing in the ocean before returning to their natal streams to spawn. All adult salmon die after spawning. (Moyle 1976, Beauchamp et al. 1983, Allen and Hassler 1986.)

**Reasons for Decline.** Loss and degradation of spawning and rearing habitat; alteration of streamflows; overharvest; entrainment into water diversions; blockage of migration routes; exposure to toxins; and possibly, loss of genetic viability from interbreeding with hatchery stocks have contributed to the population decline of Central Valley fall-/late-fall-run chinook salmon. The human-caused factor that perhaps has had the greatest effect on the abundance of all chinook salmon runs is loss of habitat, primarily in the rivers upstream of the Delta. Major dams block upstream access to most chinook salmon habitat in Central Valley rivers and streams. Smaller dams (e.g., the Red Bluff Diversion Dam) in the lower watersheds also delay migration of adults or increase predation on downstream-migrating juvenile salmon (U.S. Bureau of Reclamation 1983). Harvest

rates on wild stocks are a potential cause of the population declines; ocean harvest indices (i.e., percent of population harvested) range from 50% to 79% and averaged over 70% between 1990 and 1997 (Pacific Fishery Management Council 1998).

**Designated Critical Habitat. Proposed but not designated.**

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** Measures for recovery of the Sacramento late-fall-run and San Joaquin fall-run chinook salmon populations are presented in the Native Fishes Recovery Plan (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1996). The objective of the recovery plan for both populations is to increase survival rates of outmigrating smolts to levels that existed before the construction of the pumps of the Central Valley Project and the State Water Project in the south Delta. Sacramento late-fall-run chinook salmon populations will be considered restored when 1) the number of wild spawners in the Sacramento River reaches a mean number of 22,000 fish and does not drop below 15,000 fish for 15 years, three of which are dry or critical years and 2) the juvenile survival rates approach preproject levels following years when adult populations are less than 15,000 fish in the Sacramento River. San Joaquin fall-run chinook salmon will be considered restored when 1) the number of naturally spawning fish in the Stanislaus, Tuolumne, and Merced Rivers reaches a median number of 20,000 fish and the 3-year running average does not drop below 3,000 fish for 15 years, three of which are dry or critical years and 2) the smolt survival rates approach preproject levels when adult numbers decline to less than 3,000 naturally spawning fish (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1996).

**Citations**

- Allen, M. A., and T. T. Hassler. 1986. Species profile: life histories and environmental requirements of coastal fishes and invertebrates (Pacific Southwest) - chinook salmon. Biological report 82(11.49). Prepared for U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Washington, D.C.
- Beauchamp, D. A., M. F. Shepard, and G. B. Pauley. 1983. Species profiles: life histories and environmental requirements of coastal fishes and invertebrates (Pacific Northwest) -- chinook salmon. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Division of Biological Services. Washington, D.C.
- Moyle, P. B. 1976. Inland fishes of California. University of California Press. Berkeley, CA.
- Pacific Fishery Management Council. 1998. Review of 1997 ocean salmon fisheries. Portland, OR.
- U.S. Bureau of Reclamation. 1983. Central Valley fish and wildlife management study: predation of anadromous fish in the Sacramento River, California. Special Report. Sacramento, CA.
- U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1996. Recovery plan for the Sacramento/San Joaquin Delta native fishes. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Portland, OR.

## **MCCLOUD RIVER REDBAND TROUT (*Oncorhynchus mykiss* spp.)**

**Legal Status.** McCloud River redband trout is a California species of special concern and is a candidate for federal listing under the Endangered Species Act.

**Historical and Current Distribution.** McCloud River redband trout occur in tributaries to the McCloud River, including Sheepheaven, Tate, Edson, and Moosehead Creeks, and the McCloud River above Middle Falls (Moyle et al. 1995).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program Solution Area.** McCloud River redband trout occur in the proposed Shasta Lake Enlargement Project area, which is located just north of the North Sacramento Valley Ecological Management Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Little is known about redband trout; however, they do spawn in late spring. The adult female digs a redd (nest) in a gravel riffle, where the eggs incubate after spawning. The eggs hatch in 3 to 4 weeks and the fry live in quiet waters near shore (often in backwaters). Both young and adult fish feed on drifting organisms, but they will also feed on active bottom invertebrates. Feeding is most intensive at dusk. Redband trout occupy small intermittent streams at elevations of 1,400–1,500 meters, where water temperatures reach up to 15°C.

**Reasons for Decline.** Redband trout occupy small streams in a relatively small geographic range. These streams often dry up in drought years, and are affected by poor watershed management such as high levels of grazing, timber harvest, and road construction. Brown trout have been introduced into the McCloud River, which could lead to the elimination of redband trout as a result of competition and predation.

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### **Citation**

Moyle, P. B., R. M. Yoshiyama, J. E. Williams, and E. D. Wikramanayake. 1995. Fish species of special concern in California. California Department of Fish and Game. Sacramento, CA.

## **CALIFORNIA WOLVERINE (*Gulo gulo luteus*)**

**Legal Status.** The California wolverine is listed as endangered under the California Endangered Species Act and is designated a California fully protected species by the California Department of Fish and Game. It is also designated as a federal species of concern by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Historically, the California wolverine occurred in the northern Coast Range and the Sierra Nevada. In the northern Coast Range, the wolverine occurs at an elevation of 1,600–4,800 feet, in the northern Sierra Nevada, at an elevation of 4,300–7,300 feet, and in the southern Sierra Nevada, at an elevation of 6,400–10,800 feet. The current distribution of the California wolverine is similar to the historical range where suitable habitat still exists. This species has a limited distribution and is considered rare (Zeiner et al. 1990).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** The California wolverine's range includes the high-elevation portion of the Eastside Delta Tributaries Ecological Zone and possibly eastern portions of North Sacramento Valley and Butte Basin Ecological Zones. This species could also occur in the Lake Shasta area in the North Sacramento Valley Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** There is very limited information on the life history and habitat requirements of the California wolverine. The wolverine typically occurs in Douglas-fir and mixed conifer habitats, but also uses red fir, lodgepole pine, wet meadows, and montane riparian habitats. It usually occurs in areas with low human disturbance and uses caves, hollows in cliffs, logs, rocks, and burrows for cover.

**Reasons for Decline.** The California wolverine was probably never common. Trapping, human disturbance, and grazing in high-elevation meadows may have contributed to the species' decline in California.

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** A recovery plan has not been prepared and recovery requirements have not been identified for this species.

### **Citation**

Zeiner, D.C., W. F. Laudenslayer, K. E. Mayer, and M. White (eds.). 1990. California's wildlife. Volume III: Mammals. California Department of Fish and Game, Sacramento, CA.

**Appendix C-2. Species Accounts for Species Evaluated by  
the National Marine Fisheries Service**

---



**CENTRAL CALIFORNIA COAST STEELHEAD  
EVOLUTIONARILY SIGNIFICANT UNIT (*Oncorhynchus mykiss*)**

**Legal Status.** The Central California Coast steelhead evolutionarily significant unit (ESU) is listed as threatened under the federal Endangered Species Act.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** This coastal steelhead occupies river basins from the Russian River to Aptos Creek, including the drainages of San Francisco and San Pablo Bays. Central Coast steelhead historically inhabited the streams of the south, central, and north San Francisco Bay watershed; however, current distribution in the watershed is limited to a small number of streams that retain adequate adult holding, spawning, and rearing habitat. In the North Bay, steelhead populations are found in the Napa and Petaluma Rivers and other small streams and creeks.

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Central Coast steelhead are found in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zone and greater San Francisco Bay region.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Steelhead return to natal streams to spawn as 2- to 4-year-old adults. The fish migrate upstream from July through February and usually spawn between late December and March. Although many adult steelhead die after spawning, a small proportion return to the sea between April and June (Mills and Fisher 1993). Following emergence, fry live in small schools in shallow water along streambanks. As the steelhead grow, they establish individual feeding territories. Juvenile steelhead typically rear for 1-2 years in streams before emigration, which generally occurs in spring. Steelhead may remain in the ocean from 1 to 4 years, growing rapidly as they feed in the highly productive currents along the continental shelf (Barnhart 1986).

**Reasons for Decline.** The decline of steelhead populations in bay streams has been related to loss of habitat, dam construction, water diversions, and overharvest. The greatest effect on steelhead abundance is loss and degradation of habitat. Dams have blocked access of adult steelhead to historical spawning and rearing habitat. Unscreened agricultural, municipal, and industrial diversions in the rivers cause entrainment losses of emigrating juvenile steelhead. There is no commercial or sport fishery for steelhead in the ocean and, for unknown reasons, steelhead are rarely taken by commercial or sport salmon trollers (Skinner 1962).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** NMFS is in the process of identifying recovery requirements and preparing a recovery plan and 4D regulations for this species.



## Citations

- Barnhart, R. A. 1986. Species profiles: life histories and environmental requirements of coastal fishes and invertebrates (Pacific Southwest) - steelhead. (Biological Report 82[11.60], TR EL-82-4.) Prepared for U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, DC, and the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Vicksburg, MS.
- Mills, T. J., and F. Fisher. 1993. Central Valley anadromous sport fish annual run size, harvest estimates, and population trends, 1967 through 1991. Preliminary draft. June. (Inland Fisheries Technical Report.) California Department of Fish and Game. Sacramento, CA.
- Skinner, J. E. 1962. An historical view of the fish and wildlife resources of the San Francisco Bay area. (Game Water Projects Branch Report No. 1.) California Department of Fish and Game. Sacramento, CA.

## **CENTRAL VALLEY SPRING-RUN CHINOOK SALMON EVOLUTIONARILY SIGNIFICANT UNIT (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) (sr)**

**Legal Status.** The Central Valley spring-run chinook salmon evolutionarily significant unit (ESU) is listed as threatened under the federal Endangered Species Act and is a candidate for listing as threatened under the California Endangered Species Act.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Historically, the Central Valley spring-run chinook salmon was one of the most abundant and widely distributed salmon races. Gold mining and agricultural diversions caused the first major declines in spring-run chinook populations (Moyle et al. 1995). Further extirpations followed construction of major water storage and flood control reservoirs on the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers and their major tributaries in the 1940s and 1950s (Moyle et al. 1995; 63 FR 11841, March 9, 1998). Spring-run chinook salmon have been completely extirpated in the San Joaquin drainage. Wild spring-run chinook salmon are consistently found only in Deer and Mill Creeks, which are tributaries to the Sacramento River, and these populations are declining (Campbell and Moyle 1991; 63 FR 11841, March 9, 1998).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Spring-run chinook salmon are found in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay, Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta, Sacramento River, Feather River/Sutter Basin, Butte Basin, and North Sacramento Valley Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Chinook salmon require cold, freshwater streams with suitable gravel for reproduction. Females deposit their eggs in nests in gravel-bottom areas of relatively swift water. For maximum survival of incubating eggs and larvae, water temperatures must be between 39°F and 57°F. After emerging, chinook salmon fry tend to seek shallow, nearshore habitat with slow water velocities and move to progressively deeper, faster water as they grow. Spring-run juveniles frequently reside in freshwater habitat for 12–16 months, but many young migrate to the ocean during spring within 5 to 8 months after hatching. The Bay and Delta are important rearing areas for these migrants. Chinook salmon spend 2–4 years maturing in the ocean before returning to their natal streams to spawn. All adult salmon die after spawning (Moyle 1976, Allen and Hassler 1986).

**Reasons for Decline.** Factors related to the decline of spring-run chinook salmon include loss of habitat in river reaches blocked by dams, degradation of habitat conditions (e.g., water temperature), entrainment in water diversions, and overharvest. The human-caused factor that has had the greatest effect on the abundance of spring-run chinook salmon runs is loss of habitat primarily in the rivers upstream of the Delta. Major dams have blocked upstream access to most chinook salmon habitat in Central Valley rivers and streams and smaller dams contribute to migration delay. On most Central Valley streams, spring-run chinook salmon are restricted to habitats with marginal water temperature conditions and limited deep holding areas. Water diversions and reservoir operations affect streamflow, which influences the quantity, quality, and distribution of chinook salmon spawning and rearing habitat. Water diversions also reduce survival of emigrating juvenile salmonids through direct entrainment losses in unscreened or inadequately

screened diversions. Predation on emigrating salmonids at diversion dams, such as Red Bluff Diversion Dam, may also be an important survival factor (U.S. Bureau of Reclamation 1983).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** Measures for recovery of spring-run chinook populations are presented in the Native Fishes Recovery Plan (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1996). The objective of the recovery plan is to restore wild populations of spring-run chinook salmon to optimum levels that can be supported by holding and spawning habitat in streams tributary to the Sacramento River (especially in Deer and Mill Creeks). Objectives would be met by improving stream habitat and outmigration conditions in the rivers and Delta. Spring-run chinook salmon populations will be considered restored when 1) self-sustaining populations in excess of 500 spawners each are present in both Deer and Mill Creeks; 2) the number of wild spawners in Sacramento River tributaries reaches a mean number of 8,000 fish and does not drop below 5,000 fish for 15 years, three of which are dry or critical years; and 3) when the smolt survival rates between the city of Sacramento and Chipps Island approach preproject levels when the number of adults in the tributary streams is fewer than 5,000 (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1996).

#### **Citations**

- Allen, M. A., and T. T. Hassler. 1986. Species profile: life histories and environmental requirements of coastal fishes and invertebrates (Pacific Southwest) - chinook salmon. Biological Report 82(11.49). Prepared for U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Washington, D.C.
- Campbell, E. A., and P. B. Moyle. 1991. Historical and recent population sizes of spring-run chinook salmon in California. Pages 155-216 in T. J. Hassler (ed.), Proceedings of the 1990 Northeast Pacific Chinook and Coho Salmon Workshop. American Fisheries Society, Humboldt State University. Arcata, CA.
- Moyle, P. B. 1976. Inland fishes of California. University of California Press. Berkeley, CA.
- Moyle, P. B., R. M. Yoshiyama, J. E. Williams, and E. D. Wikramanayake. 1995. Fish species of special concern in California. Second edition. Prepared for California Resources Agency and California Department of Fish and Game, Inland Fisheries Division. Rancho Cordova, CA.
- U.S. Bureau of Reclamation. 1983. Central Valley fish and wildlife management study: predation of anadromous fish in the Sacramento River, California. Special Report. Sacramento, CA.
- U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1996. Recovery plan for the Sacramento/San Joaquin Delta native fishes. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Portland, OR.

## **CENTRAL VALLEY STEELHEAD EVOLUTIONARILY SIGNIFICANT UNIT** **(*Oncorhynchus mykiss*) (cv)**

**Legal Status.** The Central Valley steelhead evolutionarily significant unit (ESU) is listed as threatened under the federal Endangered Species Act.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Central Valley steelhead historically inhabited large and small streams throughout the Sacramento-San Joaquin watershed. Current distribution in the watershed is primarily limited by dams that block access to upstream reaches of main rivers and their tributary streams. Central Valley steelhead populations are found in the Sacramento River and its tributaries, including the Feather, Yuba, and American Rivers, and many small tributaries, such as Mill, Deer, Cottonwood, and Butte Creeks. The Cosumnes and Mokelumne Rivers also support steelhead. In the San Joaquin River basin, the best available information suggests that the current range of steelhead is limited to reaches below major dams on the Stanislaus, Tuolumne, and Merced Rivers and to the mainstem San Joaquin River downstream of its confluence with the Merced River.

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Central Valley steelhead are found in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay, Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta, Yolo Basin, Sacramento River, North Sacramento Valley, Cottonwood Creek, Butte Basin, Feather River/Sutter Basin, American River Basin, Eastside Delta Tributaries, and East San Joaquin Basin Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Steelhead return to natal streams to spawn as 2- to 4-year-old adults. The fish migrate upstream from July through February and usually spawn between late December and March. Although many steelhead die after spawning, a small proportion return to the sea between April and June (Mills and Fisher 1993). Following emergence, fry live in small schools in shallow water along streambanks. As steelhead grow, they establish individual feeding territories; juveniles typically rear for 1-2 years in streams before emigration. In the Sacramento River, juvenile steelhead migrate to the ocean in spring and early summer, with peak migration through the Delta in March and April (Reynolds et al. 1993). Steelhead may remain in the ocean from 1 to 4 years, growing rapidly as they feed in the highly productive currents along the continental shelf (Barnhart 1986).

**Reasons for Decline.** Factors related to the decline of Central Valley steelhead include loss of habitat in river reaches blocked by dams, degradation of habitat conditions (e.g., water temperature), and entrainment in water diversions. Loss of habitat has the greatest effect on steelhead abundance. Major dams are the primary barriers to steelhead access to Central Valley rivers and streams. Dams at low elevations on all major tributaries block access to an estimated 95% of historical spawning habitat in the Central Valley (Reynolds et al. 1993). Below dams, remnant steelhead populations are affected by varying flow conditions and high summer and fall water temperature. Unscreened agricultural, municipal, and industrial diversions in the Delta and rivers cause entrainment losses of emigrating juvenile steelhead.

Over 90% of the adult steelhead in the Central Valley are produced in hatcheries (Reynolds et al. 1990). Hatchery-produced fish may substantially affect the genetic integrity of wild populations. Adult and juvenile steelhead are harvested by sport anglers within the Central Valley watershed. There is no commercial or sport fishery for steelhead in the ocean and, for unknown reasons, steelhead are rarely taken by commercial or sport salmon trollers (Skinner 1962).

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** The National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) is identifying recovery requirements and preparing a recovery plan for this species.

### Citations

- Barnhart, R. A. 1986. Species profiles: life histories and environmental requirements of coastal fishes and invertebrates (Pacific Southwest) - steelhead. (Biological Report 82[11.60], TR EL-82-4.) Prepared for U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Washington, DC, and the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, Vicksburg, MS.
- Mills, T. J., and F. Fisher. 1993. Central Valley anadromous sport fish annual run size, harvest estimates, and population trends, 1967 through 1991. Preliminary draft. June. (Inland Fisheries Technical Report.) California Department of Fish and Game. Sacramento, CA.
- Reynolds, F. L., R. L. Reavis, and J. Schuler. 1990. Sacramento and San Joaquin River chinook salmon and steelhead restoration and enhancement plan. California Department of Fish and Game. Sacramento, CA.
- Reynolds, F. L., T. Mills, R. Benthin, and A. Low. 1993. Central Valley anadromous fisheries and associated riparian and wetlands areas protection and restoration action plan. Draft. California Department of Fish and Game, Inland Fisheries Division. Sacramento, CA.
- Skinner, J. E. 1962. An historical view of the fish and wildlife resources of the San Francisco Bay area. (Game Water Projects Branch Report No. 1.) California Department of Fish and Game. Sacramento, CA.

## GREEN STURGEON (*Acipenser medirostris*)

**Legal Status.** The green sturgeon is a California species of special concern.

**Historical and Current Distribution.** In North America, the green sturgeon's range in the ocean extends from the Bering Sea to Ensenada, Mexico; this range includes the entire coast of California. In California, spawning has been confirmed in recent years only in the Sacramento and Klamath Rivers, although spawning probably also once occurred in the Eel River (Moyle et al. 1995).

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Green sturgeon are found in the Suisun Marsh/San Francisco Bay and Sacramento River Ecological Zones. They may also be found in the Feather River/Sutter Basin Ecological Zone.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** The specific habitat requirements of green sturgeon are not well known but are probably similar to those of other North American river sturgeon, including the white sturgeon. In the Sacramento River, adult sturgeon are in the river, presumably spawning, when temperatures range between 46°F and 57°F. Preferred spawning substrate is most likely large cobble, but can range from clean sand to bedrock. Eggs are broadcast spawned and externally fertilized in relatively high water velocities and probably at depths greater than 10 feet (Emmett et al. 1991). The importance of water quality is uncertain, but silt is known to prevent eggs from adhering to each other. Green sturgeon probably migrate up the Sacramento River between late February and late July. The spawning period is March–July, with a peak from mid-April to mid-June (Emmett et al. 1991). Juveniles migrate out to sea before reaching 2 years of age, primarily during summer-fall (Emmett et al. 1991). Juveniles and adults are benthic feeders and may also eat small fish. Juveniles in the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta feed on opossum shrimp (*Neomysis mercedis*) and amphipods (*Corophium* sp.) (Radtke 1966).

**Reasons for Decline.** There is no direct evidence that a decline in green sturgeon numbers has occurred in the Sacramento River; however, the population is quite small. Factors likely to be negatively affecting its abundance include fishing, alteration of or reduced access to spawning habitat, a reduction in food supply (e.g., decline in opossum shrimp), entrainment into water diversions, and toxic substances.

**Designated Critical Habitat.** None.

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** The primary objective is to maintain a minimum population of 1,000 fish over 1 meter (3.28 feet) total length each year, including 500 females over 1.3 meters (4.28 feet) total length during the period when spawners are present in the estuary and Sacramento River (presumably March to July).

## Citations

- Emmett, R. L., S. L. Stone, S. A. Hinton, and M. E. Monaco. 1991. Distribution and abundances of fishes and invertebrates in west coast estuaries, volume 2: species life histories summaries. ELMR Rep. No. 8. NOS/NOAA Strategic Environmental Assessment Division. Rockville, MD. 329 p.
- Moyle, P. B., R. M. Yoshiyama, J. E. Williams, and E. D. Wikramanayake. 1995. Fish species of special concern in California. Second edition. Prepared for California Resources Agency and California Department of Fish and Game, Inland Fisheries Division. Rancho Cordova, CA.
- Radtke, L. D. 1966. Distribution of smelt, juvenile sturgeon and starry flounder in the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta. Pages 115-119, *In*: S.L. Turner and D.W. Kelley, eds., Ecological Studies of the Sacramento-San Joaquin Estuary, Pt. 2. Calif. Dept. Fish Game Fish Bull. 136.
- U. S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1996. Recovery plan for the Sacramento/San Joaquin Delta native fishes. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Portland, OR.

## **SACRAMENTO RIVER WINTER-RUN CHINOOK SALMON EVOLUTIONARILY SIGNIFICANT UNIT (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) (wr)**

**Legal Status.** The Sacramento River winter-run chinook salmon evolutionarily significant unit (ESU) is listed as endangered under the federal and California Endangered Species Acts.

**Historical and Current Distribution and Status.** Historically, winter-run chinook salmon spawned in the upper reaches of the Sacramento River and its major tributaries, the McCloud and Pit Rivers. Shasta and Keswick Dam block access to historical spawning and rearing areas and restrict spawning and rearing to the Sacramento River downstream of Keswick Dam. Based on counts at Red Bluff Diversion Dam (RBDD), habitat downstream of Keswick Dam apparently maintained relatively high winter-run chinook salmon abundance, with spawning populations averaging tens of thousands of adult salmon. Since 1970, winter-run adult abundance has declined to current levels of generally less than 1,000 and, in some years, less than 500. Impedance of migration by RBDD, deterioration of water temperature conditions below Keswick Dam, and other factors contributed to the decline.

**Distribution in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) Solution Area.** Winter-run chinook salmon are found in the Sacramento River, Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta, and Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zones. They may also rear in the lower portions of tributaries in the North Sacramento Valley, Butte Basin, Feather River/Sutter Basin, American River Basin, Cottonwood Creek, Yolo Basin, and Colusa Basin Ecological Zones.

**Life History and Habitat Requirements.** Chinook salmon require cold, freshwater streams with suitable gravel for reproduction. Winter-run adults migrate through the Delta and into the Sacramento River in winter and early spring and spawn in the mainstem Sacramento River and Battle Creek during late spring and early summer (Moyle et al. 1989). Females deposit their eggs in nests in gravel-bottom areas of relatively swift water. For maximum survival of incubating eggs and larvae, water temperatures must be between 39°F and 57°F. After emerging, many chinook salmon fry tend to seek shallow, nearshore habitat with slow water velocities and move to progressively deeper, faster water as they grow. Juvenile salmon rear in the Sacramento River in summer and fall, gradually moving downstream before entering the Delta from November to March. Some emerging fry are transported downstream into lower portions of the Sacramento River and lower tributaries, where they rear in shallow marsh and streamside habitats. Juveniles typically rear in fresh water for up to 5 months before migrating to sea when they reach a length of 4 to 6 inches. They migrate out of the Delta to the Bay from February through April. Chinook salmon spend 2–4 years maturing in the ocean before returning to their natal streams to spawn. All adult salmon die after spawning (Moyle 1976, Allen and Hassler 1986).

**Reasons for Decline.** The winter-run chinook salmon decline has been related to a variety of factors including loss of spawning and rearing habitat and high summer water temperatures below Keswick Dam; blockage of adult migration at RBDD; predation on juveniles at RBDD; and loss of juveniles to entrainment into unscreened or poorly screened diversions, including Anderson-Cottonwood Irrigation District (ACID), Glenn-Colusa Irrigation District (GCID), and RBDD diversions, and south-Delta Central Valley Project (CVP) and State Water Project (SWP) pumping



plants. Overharvest in sport and commercial fisheries may have contributed to depressed populations.

**Designated Critical Habitat.** The portion of the Sacramento River from Keswick Dam to Chipps Island, all waters westward from Chipps Island to the Carquinez Strait bridge, all waters of San Pablo Bay, and all waters of San Francisco Bay north of the San Francisco-Oakland Bay Bridge have been designated as critical habitat (58 FR 33212, June 16, 1993).

**Recovery Plan and Recovery Requirements.** Recovery measures include restoring spawning and rearing habitat, improving juvenile survival, improving adult passage during their upstream migration, artificial propagation, harvest management, improving other fish and wildlife management programs, and improving our understanding of life history and habitat requirements (National Marine Fisheries Service 1997). Recovery goals ensure that natural populations are viable and self-sustaining, are based on natural production, and include a mean annual spawning abundance of 10,000 females over any consecutive 13 years and a geometric mean of 1.0 for the ratio of the number of spawners in one generation to the number of spawners in the preceding generation over the same 13 years.

#### **Citations**

Allen, M. A., and T. T. Hassler. 1986. Species profile: life histories and environmental requirements of coastal fishes and invertebrates (Pacific Southwest) - chinook salmon. Biological Report 82(11.49). Prepared for U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. Washington, D.C.

Moyle, P. B. 1976. Inland Fishes of California. University of California Press. Berkeley, CA.

Moyle, P. B., R. M. Yoshiyama, J. E. Williams, and E. D. Wikramanayake. 1995. Fish species of special concern in California. Second edition. Prepared for California Resources Agency and California Department of Fish and Game, Inland Fisheries Division. Rancho Cordova, CA.

National Marine Fisheries Service. 1997. NMFS proposed recovery plan for the Sacramento River winter-run chinook salmon. Southwest Region. Long Beach, CA.

## **Appendix D. Proposed Programmatic Actions Evaluated in This Biological Opinion**

---

- **Table D-1. Delta Region: Proposed Programmatic CALFED Actions Evaluated in this Biological Opinion**
- **Table D-2. Bay Region: Proposed Programmatic CALFED Actions Evaluated in this Biological Opinion**
- **Table D-3. Sacramento River Region: Proposed Programmatic CALFED Actions Evaluated in this Biological Opinion**
- **Table D-4. San Joaquin River Region: Proposed Programmatic CALFED Actions Evaluated in this Biological Opinion**
- **Table D-5. CALFED Species Enhancement Conservation Measures**



Table D-1. Delta Region: Proposed Programmatic CALFED Actions Evaluated in this Biological Opinion

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
<b>Ecosystem Restoration Program</b>		
Provide a March outflow that occurs from the natural late-winter and early-spring peak in inflow from the Sacramento River. The outflow should be at least 20,000 cubic feet per second (cfs) for 10 days in dry years, at least 30,000 cfs for 10 days in below-normal years, and 40,000 cfs for 10 days in above-normal water years. Wet-year outflows are generally adequate under the present level of development.	E010101	Prescribed outflows in March should be met by the cumulative flows of prescribed flows for the Sacramento, Feather, Yuba, and American Rivers. It will be necessary to obtain assurances (e.g., limit Delta diversions) that these prescribed flows will be allowed to contribute to Delta outflow. A portion of the inflow would be from base (minimum) flows from the east Delta tributaries and the San Joaquin River and its tributaries.
Provide a late-April-to-early-May outflow that emulates the spring inflow from the San Joaquin River. The outflow should be at least 20,000 cfs for 10 days in dry years, 30,000 cfs in below normal years, and 40,000 cfs in above normal years. These flows would be achieved through base flows from the Sacramento River and flow events from the Mokelumne, Calaveras, Stanislaus, Tuolumne, and Merced Rivers.	E010102	Prescribed outflows in late April and early May should be met by the cumulative flows of prescribed flows from the Stanislaus, Tuolumne, and Merced Rivers (see East San Joaquin Basin Ecological Zone), and Mokelumne and Calaveras Rivers (see Eastside Delta Tributaries Ecological Zone). It will be necessary to obtain assurances that these prescribed flows will be allowed to contribute to Delta outflow. The flow event would be made up of base flows from the Sacramento River, its tributaries, and the Cosumnes River, plus Mokelumne, Calaveras, and San Joaquin tributary pulsed flows prescribed under the May 1995 Water Quality Control Plan, and by additional supplemental flows.
Provide a fall or early winter outflow that emulates the first "winter" rain through the Delta.	E010103	Allow the first "significant" natural flow into the Delta (most likely from rainfall or from unimpaired flows from tributaries) and lower watersheds below storage reservoirs or from flows recommended by the California Department of Fish and Game (DFG) and Anadromous Fish Restoration Program (AFRP) to pass through the Delta to the San Francisco Bay by limiting water diversions from the Delta for up to 10 days. (No supplementary release of stored water from reservoirs would be required above that required to meet flows prescribed by DFG and AFRP.)
Provide a minimum flow of 13,000 cfs on the Sacramento River below Sacramento in May of all but critical years (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1997).	E010104	Supplement flows in May of all but critical years as needed from Shasta, Orville, and Folsom Reservoirs to maintain an inflow of 13,000 cfs to the Delta.
Reestablish more natural internal Delta water flows in channels.	E010601	Reduce velocities in selected Delta channels by increasing cross-sectional areas of channel via setback levees or by constricting flows into and out of the channels.

Table D-1. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
	E010602	Restrict tidal flow and cross-Delta transfer of water to south Delta pumping plants to selected channels to lessen flow through other channels.
	E010603	Manage the operation of existing physical barriers so that resulting hydraulics upstream and downstream of the barrier are more similar to levels in the mid-1960s.
	E010604	Close the Delta Cross Channel (DCC) when opportunities allow, as specified in the 1995 Water Quality Control Plan and recommended by the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1995), in the period from November through January when appropriate conditions trigger closure (i.e., internal Delta exports are occurring).
Maintain net downstream flows in the mainstem San Joaquin River from Vernalis to immediately west of Stockton during the period from September through November to help sustain dissolved oxygen levels and water temperatures sufficient for upstream migrating adult fall-run chinook salmon.	E010605	Operate a fully operational barrier at the head of Old River in the period from August through November.
Restore 50–100 miles of tidal channels in the southern Yolo Bypass within the north Delta, while maintaining or improving the flood carrying capacity of the Yolo Bypass. (Note: This target is in addition to targets and programmatic actions presented in the Delta Sloughs habitat section.)	E010606	Construct a network of channels within the Yolo Bypass that connect Putah and Cache Creek sinks, and potentially the Colusa drain to the Delta. Channels should effectively drain all flooded lands in the bypass after floodflows cease entering the bypass from Fremont and Sacramento weirs. Channels would maintain a base flow through the spring to allow juvenile anadromous and resident fish to move from rearing and migratory areas.
	E010607	Reduce flow constrictions in Yolo Bypass such as openings in the railway causeway that parallel Interstate 80.
Expand the floodplain area in the North, East, South, and Central and West Delta Ecological Units by incorporating approximately 10% of levied lands into the active floodplain of the Delta.	E010401	Convert leveed lands to tidal wetland/slough complexes in the North Delta Ecological Unit. Permanently convert island tracts (Little Holland, Liberty, and Prospect) at the south end of the Yolo Bypass to tidal wetlands/slough complexes. Convert small tracts along Snodgrass Slough to tidal wetland/slough complexes. Construct setback levees along Minor, Steamboat, Oxford, and Elk Sloughs.

Table D-1. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
	E010402	In the East Delta Ecological Unit, construct setback levees along the South Mokelumne River and connecting dead-end sloughs (Beaver, Hog, and Sycamore).
	E010403	Convert deeper subsided (sunken) lands between dead-end sloughs in the East Delta Ecological Unit east of the South Mokelumne River channel to overflow basins and nontidal wetlands or land designated for agricultural use.
	E010404	Remove levees that inhibit tidal and floodflows in the headwater basins of east Delta dead-end sloughs (Beaver, Hog, and Sycamore) and allow these lands to be subject to flood overflow and tidal action.
	E010405	Construct setback levees in the South Delta Ecological Unit along the San Joaquin River between Mossdale and Stockton.
	E010406	Convert adjacent lands along the San Joaquin River between Mossdale and Stockton to overflow basins and nontidal wetlands or land designated for agricultural use.
	E010407	Construct setback levees on corners of Delta islands along the San Joaquin River channel in the Central and West Delta Ecological Unit. Open levied lands to tidal action where possible along the margins of West Delta Ecological Unit.
	E010901	Restore 500 acres of shallow-water habitat at Prospect Island in the North Delta Ecological Unit.
Restore 1,500 acres of shallow-water habitat in the North Delta Ecological Unit; 1,000 acres of shallow-water habitat in the East Delta Ecological Unit; 2,000 acres of shallow-water habitat in the South Delta Ecological Unit; and 2,500 acres of shallow-water habitat in the Central and West Delta Ecological Unit.	E010902	Restore 1,000 acres of shallow-water habitat in the downstream (south) end of the Yolo Bypass (Little Holland and Liberty Island) within the North Delta Ecological Unit.
	E010903	Restore 1,000 acres of shallow-water habitat at the eastern edge of the East Delta Ecological Unit where existing land elevations range from 5 to 9 feet below mean sea level.
	E010904	Restore 2,000 acres of shallow-water habitat at the south and eastern edge of the South Delta Ecological Unit where existing land elevations range from 5 to 9 feet below mean sea level.

Table D-1. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
	E010905	Restore 2,500 acres of shallow-water habitat in the Central and West Delta Ecological Unit where existing land elevations range from 5 to 9 feet below mean sea level. A program of fill placement or longer-term subsidence reversal may be needed to accomplish this action.
Restore 500 acres of shoals in the westernmost portion of the Central and West Delta.	E010906	Implement a sediment management program which results in deposition and accretion within portions of Central and West Delta channels and bays, forming 500 acres of shallow shoal habitat restored to tidal influence.
Manage existing and restored dead-end and open-ended sloughs and channels within the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta Ecological Zone so that the total surface area of these sloughs and channels covered by invasive non-native aquatic plants is reduced.	E015201	Conduct large-scale, annual weed eradication programs throughout existing and restored dead-end and open-ended sloughs and channels within each of the Delta's ecological units so that less than 1% of the surface area of these sloughs and channels is covered by invasive non-native aquatic plants within 10 years.
Reduce the potential for introducing non-native aquatic plant and animal species at border crossings.	E015202	Provide funding to the California Department of Food and Agriculture to expand the current State border inspection process to include a comprehensive program of exclusion, detection, and management of invasive aquatic species such as the zebra mussel, purple loosestrife, and hydrilla.
Restore ecological structure and functions of the Delta waterways network by increasing the land-water interface ratio a minimum of 50%-75% compared to 1906 conditions and by restoring 100-150 miles of small distributary sloughs (less than 50-75 feet wide) hydrologically connected to larger existing Delta channels. (Note: This target is in addition to the Delta slough target presented in the target section for Delta Channel Hydraulics.)	E011101	To replace lost slough habitat and provide high-quality habitat areas for fish and associated wildlife, the short-term solution for the Central and West Delta Ecological Unit is to restore 20 miles of slough habitat and the long-term solution is to restore 50 miles of slough habitat; in both the North Delta and East Delta Ecological Units, the short-term solution is to restore 10 miles of slough habitat and the long-term solution is to restore 30 miles of slough habitat; and in the South Delta Ecological Unit, the short-term solution is to restore 25 miles of slough habitat and the long-term solution is to restore 50 miles of slough habitat.
	E011102	Restore tidal action to portions of islands and tracts in the North and East Delta Ecological Units with appropriate elevation, topography, and hydrogeomorphic conditions to sustain tidally influenced freshwater emergent wetland with 20-30 linear miles of narrow, serpentine shaped sloughs within the wetlands and floodplain.

Table D-1. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Maintain existing channel islands and restore 50–200 acres of high-value islands in selected sloughs and channels in each of the Delta's ecological units.	E011201	Actively protect and improve existing channel islands in the Delta.
	E011202	Restore 50–200 acres of channel islands in each of the Delta's ecological management units where channel islands once existed.
Increase existing tidal emergent wetland habitat in the Delta by restoring 30,000–45,000 acres of lands designated for floodplain restoration.	E011401	Develop tidal freshwater marshes in the North Delta Ecological Management Unit.
	E011402	Develop tidal freshwater marshes on small tracts of converted leveed lands along Snodgrass Slough.
	E011403	Develop tidal freshwater marshes along the upper ends of dead-end sloughs in the east Delta.
	E011404	Develop tidal freshwater marshes along all setback levees and levees with restored riparian habitat.
	E011405	Develop tidal freshwater marshes on restored channel island habitat.
Limit dredging in channel zones that are not essential for flood conveyance or maintenance of industrial shipping pathways, and avoid dredging activities in shallow water areas (<3 meters mean high water) except where it is needed to restore flood conveyance capacity.	E015002	Restrict or minimize effects of dredging activities near existing midchannel tule islands and shoals that are vulnerable to erosion and exhibit clear signs of area reduction in response to channel and bar incision (cutting).
Reduce boat traffic and boat speeds in areas where levees or channel islands and their associated shallow-water and riparian habitat may be damaged by wakes. This will protect important Delta habitats such as berm islands from erosion caused by boat wakes.	E016001	In the Central and West Delta Ecological Unit, establish and enforce no-wake zones of 1–3 miles in Disappointment Slough, 1–2 miles in White Slough, and 3–4 miles in Middle and Old Rivers in areas with remnant berms and midchannel islands.
	E016002	In the East Delta Ecological Unit, establish and enforce no-wake zones of 1–3 miles of the Mokelumne River, 2–4 miles in Snodgrass Slough, and 3–4 miles in Beaver, Hog, and Sycamore Sloughs in areas with remnant berms and midchannel islands.
Develop 500 acres of deep open-water areas (more than 4–6 feet deep) within restored fresh emergent wetland habitats in the Delta to provide resting habitat for water birds, foraging habitat for diving ducks and other water birds and semiaquatic mammals that feed in deep water, and habitat for associated resident pond fish species.	E011001	Develop 100 acres of open-water areas within restored fresh emergent wetland habitats in the West and Central Delta Ecological Unit such as on Twitchell or Sherman islands.
	E011002	Develop 200 acres of open-water areas within restored fresh emergent wetland habitats in the East Delta Ecological Unit.



Table D-1. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Develop 2,100 acres of shallow, open-water areas (less than 4-6 feet deep) in restored fresh emergent wetland habitat areas in the Delta to provide resting, foraging, and brood habitat for water birds and habitat for fish and aquatic plants and semiaquatic animals.	E011003	Develop 200 acres of open-water areas within restored fresh emergent wetland habitats in the South Delta Ecological Unit.
	E011004	Develop 500 acres of shallow, open-water areas within restored fresh emergent wetland habitats in the Central and West Delta Ecological Unit such as on Twitchell or Sherman Islands.
	E011005	Develop 300 acres of shallow, open-water areas within restored fresh emergent wetland habitats in the East Delta Ecological Unit.
	E011006	Develop 300 acres of shallow, open-water areas within restored fresh emergent wetland habitats in the South Delta Ecological Unit.
Restore a total of 3,000 acres of nontidal freshwater marshes in the North and the East Delta Ecological Management Units; restore 4,000 acres of nontidal fresh emergent wetland in the South Delta Ecological Management Unit as part of a subsidence control program; and restore 10,000 acres of nontidal fresh emergent wetland in the Central and West Delta Ecological Management Unit as part of a subsidence control program.	E011007	Develop 1,000 acres of shallow, open-water areas within restored fresh emergent wetland habitats in the North Delta Ecological Unit.
	E011301	Restore 1,000 acres of nontidal fresh emergent wetland on Twitchell Island.
	E011302	Restore 1,000 acres of nontidal emergent wetland in the Yolo Bypass.
	E011303	Restore 1,000 acres of nontidal emergent wetlands in levied lands designated for floodplain overflow adjacent to the dead-end sloughs in the East Delta Ecological Unit.
	E011304	Restore 4,000 acres of nontidal emergent wetlands in the South Delta in lands designated for floodplain overflow.
Restore and manage at least 4,000 acres of additional seasonal wetland habitat and improve management of 1,000 acres of existing degraded seasonal wetland habitat in the North Delta Ecological Unit.	E011305	Restore 10,000 acres of nontidal wetlands on Delta Islands of the Central and West Delta Ecological Unit.
	E011501	Improve management of 1,000 acres of existing, degraded seasonal wetland habitat in the Yolo Bypass.
	E011502	Restore and manage 2,000 acres of additional seasonal wetland habitat in association with the Yolo Bypass Wildlife Area.

Table D-1. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Restore and manage at least 6,000 acres of additional seasonal wetland habitat and improve management of 1,000 acres of existing degraded seasonal wetland habitat in the East Delta Ecological Management Unit.	E011503	Develop a cooperative program to restore and manage 1,000 acres of additional seasonal wetland habitat on Canal Ranch.
	E011504	Develop a cooperative program to restore and manage 5,000 acres of additional seasonal wetland habitat.
	E011505	Improve management of 1,000 acres of existing degraded seasonal wetland habitat.
Restore and manage at least 8,000 acres of additional seasonal wetland habitat and improve management of 1,500 acres of existing degraded seasonal wetland habitat in the Central and West Delta Ecological Unit.	E011506	Restore and manage 4,000 acres of additional seasonal wetland habitat on Twitchell Island.
	E011507	Restore and manage 4,000 acres of additional seasonal wetland habitat on Sherman Island.
	E011508	Develop a cooperative program to improve management of 1,500 acres of existing degraded seasonal wetland habitat.
Restore and manage at least 12,000 acres of additional seasonal wetland habitat and improve management of 500 acres of existing degraded seasonal wetland habitat in the South Delta Ecological Unit.	E011509	Develop a cooperative program to restore and manage 12,000 acres of additional seasonal wetland habitat.
	E011510	Develop a cooperative program to improve management of 500 acres of existing degraded seasonal wetland habitat.
Increase populations of amphibians, particularly tiger salamanders and spadefoot toads, by increasing natural flood plains, stream meander, seasonal pools, and perennial grasslands.	E017201	Restore at least five core areas of suitable habitat, each consisting of about 500 acres in each of the ecological management units.
	E017202	Enhance existing poor habitats and restore new habitats in historical wetlands, grasslands, and upland areas.
More frequently achieve mean daily water temperatures between 60°F and 65°F in the Delta channels in spring and fall to meet the temperature needs of salmon and steelhead migrating through or rearing in the Delta.	E010501	Improve riparian (bankside) woodland habitats along migrating channels and sloughs of the Delta.
	E010502	Improve shaded riverine aquatic habitat along migration routes in the Delta.
Restore 10–20 linear miles of riparian and riverine aquatic habitat along the San Joaquin River in the South Delta Ecological Unit to create corridors of riparian vegetation of which 50% is greater than 75 feet wide and 40% is no less than 300 feet wide and 1 mile in length.	E011601	Develop a cooperative program to restore riparian habitat by obtaining conservation easements or by purchase from willing sellers.

Table D-1. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Restore 15–25 linear miles of riparian and riverine aquatic habitat along other Delta island levees throughout the South Delta Ecological Unit to create corridors of riparian vegetation of which 60% is more than 75 feet wide, with 10% no less than 300 feet wide and 1 mile long.	E011602	Develop a cooperative program to restore riparian habitat by obtaining conservation easements or by purchase from willing sellers.
Restore 10–15 linear miles of riparian and riverine aquatic habitat along the Sacramento River below Sacramento of which 40% is to be more than 75 feet wide and 20% more than 300 feet wide.	E011603	Obtain conservation easements for, or purchase from willing sellers, land needed to restore 10–15 linear miles of riparian habitat along the Sacramento River in the North Delta Ecological Unit. Obtain conservation easements for, or purchase from willing sellers, land needed to create corridors of riparian vegetation.
Restore 8–15 linear miles of riparian and riverine aquatic habitat in the East Delta Ecological Unit of which 40% is to be more than 75 feet wide and 20% over 300 feet wide.	E011604	Obtain conservation easements for, or purchase from willing sellers, land needed to restore 5–10 linear miles along the Mokelumne River and 3–5 miles along the Cosumnes River in the East Delta Ecological Unit to create corridors of riparian vegetation.
Restore or plant riparian and riverine aquatic habitats in association with actions to recreate slough habitat and set back levees.	E011605	Obtain conservation easements for, or purchase from willing sellers, land needed to restore riparian habitat along newly created sloughs and sloughs with new levee setbacks.
	E011606	Obtain conservation easements for, or purchase from willing sellers, land needed to restore riparian habitat along new or upgraded Delta levees.
Protect existing riparian woodlands in the North, East, and South Delta Ecological Units.	E011607	Expand the Stone Lakes and Cosumnes River Preserves from their current size by an additional 500 acres of existing woodland habitat. Share costs with the Nature Conservancy to acquire in fee-title the lands needed from willing landowners.
	E011608	Purchase riparian woodland property or easements.
Restore 10–20 linear miles of riparian and riverine aquatic habitat in the North Delta Ecological Management Unit of which 40% is to be more than 75 feet wide and 20% over 300 feet wide.	E011609	Obtain conservation easements from willing sellers, land needed to restore 5–10 linear miles along Steamboat Slough as part of the development of a North Delta habitat corridor.

Table D-1. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Increase shoreline and floodplain riparian habitat in the Delta by modifying current vegetation maintenance practices on both the water and land side of berms on 25-75 miles of the Sacramento, Mokelumne, and San Joaquin Rivers, and on 25-100 miles of other Delta channels and sloughs confined by levees.	E014901	Enter into agreements with willing levee reclamation districts to implement modified levee and berm vegetation management practices that promote establishment and maturation of shoreline riparian vegetation to restore and maintain the health of aquatic resources in and dependent on the Delta. Reimburse districts for any additional maintenance and inspection costs.
Reduce surface area covered by non-native plants to less than 1%.	E015301	Control non-native riparian plants.
Reduce the aerial extent of invasive non-native woody species, such as Giant Reed (i.e., arundo or false bamboo) and eucalyptus, that compete with native riparian vegetation by reducing the aerial extent of non-natives by 50% throughout the Delta and eradicating invasive woody plants from restoration areas.	E015302	Implement a program throughout the Delta to remove and suppress the spread of invasive non-native plants that compete with native riparian vegetation by reducing the aerial extent of species such as false bamboo, eucalyptus, and non-native cordgrass by 50%.
	E015303	Implement a program throughout the Delta that, prior to taking restoration actions, eliminates invasive woody plants, which could interfere with the restoration of native riparian vegetation.
Restore 4,000-6,000 acres of perennial grasses in the North, East, South, and Central and West Delta Ecological Units associated with existing or proposed wetlands and floodplain habitats.	E011801	Develop a cooperative program to restore 1,000 acres of perennial grassland in the North Delta Ecological Unit through conservation easement or purchase from willing sellers.
	E011802	Develop a cooperative program to restore 1,000 acres of perennial grassland in the East Delta Ecological Unit through conservation easement or purchase from willing sellers.
	E011803	Develop a cooperative program to restore 1,000-2,000 acres of perennial grassland in the South Delta Ecological Unit through either conservation easement or purchase from willing sellers.
	E011804	Develop a cooperative program to restore 1,000-2,000 acres of perennial grassland in the Central and West Delta Ecological Units through either conservation easements or purchase from willing sellers.

Table D-1. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Enhance 50–100 acres of low- to moderate-quality Antioch inland dune scrub habitat in the Delta to provide high-quality habitat for special-status plant and animal species and other associated wildlife populations.	E011701	Support programs for protecting and restoring inland dune scrub habitat at existing ecological preserves in the Central and West Delta Ecological Units.
	E011702	Protect and restore inland dune scrub habitat areas adjacent to existing ecological preserves in the Central and West Delta Ecological Units through conservation easements or purchase from willing sellers.
Cooperatively manage 40,000–75,000 acres of agricultural lands.	E011901	Increase the area of Delta corn fields and pastures flooded in winter and spring to provide high-quality foraging habitat for wintering and migrating waterfowl and shorebirds and associated wildlife.
	E011902	Periodically flood the pasture from October through March in portions of the Delta relatively free of human disturbance to create suitable roosting habitat for wintering greater sandhill crane and other wintering sandhill crane subspecies.
	E011903	Create permanent or semipermanent ponds in farmed areas of the Delta that provide suitable waterfowl nesting habitat, but lack suitable brooding habitat, to increase resident dabbling duck production.
	E011904	Increase the acreage farmed for wheat and other crop types that provide suitable nesting habitat for waterfowl and other ground nesting species in the Delta.
	E011905	Convert agricultural lands in the Delta that are farmed from crop types that have relatively low forage value for wintering waterfowl, wintering sandhill cranes, and other wildlife to production of crop types that provide greater forage value.
	E011906	Defer fall tillage on corn fields in the Delta to increase the available forage for wintering waterfowl, wintering sandhill cranes, and associated wildlife.
	E011907	Develop a cooperative program to improve management on 8,000 acres of corn and wheat fields in the Delta and to reimburse farmers for leaving a portion of the crop in each field unharvested to provide forage for waterfowl, sandhill cranes, and other wildlife.

Table D-1. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Maintain present populations with no further declines in size by ensuring that waterways known to be used by giant garter snakes have water in them year around.	E007101	Maintain existing natural habitats that have available water all year and identify key habitats in agricultural areas for special management.
Increase the populations and distribution of upland game.	E014401	Provide high ground adjacent to current and expanded habitat with cover for protection from floods. Existing flood control levees adjacent to agricultural lands could be utilized for this escape habitat in this area to provide sufficient vegetative growth of grasses, forbs, and shrubs to lower predation pressure during these times and when adjacent lands are fallow.
Limit dredging in channel zones that are not essential for flood conveyance or maintenance of industrial shipping pathways, and avoid dredging activities in shallow water areas (<3 meters mean high water) except where it is needed to restore flood conveyance capacity.	E015001	Use alternate sources (rather than Delta in-channel sources) of levee maintenance material, such as excavation of abandoned nonessential levees, excavation material from the restoration of secondary tidal channels, dry-side island interior borrow pits, upland borrow sites, Cache Creek settling basin and Yolo Bypass sediment deposits, and deep-water dredging sites in the San Francisco Bay.
Avoid dredging during spawning and rearing periods for delta smelt and rearing periods for winter-run chinook salmon.	E015003	Follow DFG guidelines for dredging in the estuary.
	E015004	Provide stockpiles of levee maintenance materials in three or more selected land side areas to avoid the need to obtain material from Delta channels during restricted periods.
Reduce or eliminate the influx of non-native aquatic species in ship ballast water.	E015401	Fund additional inspection staff to enforce existing regulations.
	E015402	Help fund research on ballast water treatment techniques, which could eliminate non-native species before ballast water is released.
Reduce the potential for introducing non-native aquatic organisms at border crossings.	E015403	Provide funding to the California Department of Food and Agriculture to expand the current State border inspection process to include a comprehensive program of exclusion, detection, and management of invasive aquatic species such as the zebra mussel.
Reduce loss of important fish species at diversions.	E014701	Consolidate and screen agricultural diversions in the Delta.

Table D-1. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Reduce illegal harvest of anadromous fish and wildlife in the Delta by increasing enforcement effort.	E014702	Replace or upgrade the screens at the State Water Project (SWP) and Central Valley Project (CVP) intakes with positive barrier, fish bypass screens and state-of-the-art fish holding and transportation systems.
	E014703	Upgrade screens at Pacific Gas & Electric Company's Contra Costa Power Plant with fine-mesh and positive-barrier fish bypass screens.
	E015801	Provide additional funding to DFG for additional enforcement.
	E015802	Provide additional funding to the local county sheriff's departments and State and local park agencies to support additional enforcement efforts.
Reduce loading, concentrations, and bioaccumulation of contaminants of concern to ecosystem health in the water, sediments, and tissues of fish and wildlife in the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta Ecological Zone by 25%-50% as measured against current average levels.	E015803	Provide rewards for the arrest and conviction of fish and wildlife poachers.
	E015701	Reduce the input of herbicides, pesticides, fumigants, and other agents toxic to fish and wildlife in the Delta by modifying land management practices and chemical dependency on 50,000 acres of urban and agricultural lands that drain untreated into Delta channels and sloughs. Actions will focus on modifying agricultural practices and urban land uses on a large-scale basis. To reduce the concentration of pesticide residues, the amount applied will be reduced and the amount of pesticide load reaching the Delta's aquatic habitats will be further reduced by taking advantage of biological and chemical processes within wetland systems, which can help break down harmful pesticide residues.
	E015702	Reduce levels of hydrocarbons and other contaminants entering the Delta foodweb from elevated releases into the estuary at oil refineries.
Reduce boat wakes near designated important California black rail nesting areas in the Delta from March to June to levels necessary to prevent destruction of nests to assist in recovery of this listed species.	E016003	Establish and enforce no-wake zones within 50 yards of important California black rail nesting areas in the Delta from March to June.
	E016004	Establish and enforce no-motorized-boating zones in 5-25 miles of existing dead-end channels in the Delta from March to June.

Table D-1. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
	E016005	Establish and enforce no-motorized-boating zones in the small tidal channels created in restored tidal fresh emergent wetlands and Delta floodplains of levee setbacks.
Reduce boat wakes near important shallow-water spawning areas in the Delta from March to June to levels necessary to protect successful spawning behavior. This will help in the recovery of listed species.	E016006	Identify important shallow-water spawning areas and establish and enforce no wake zones within 50 yards of these important Delta habitats from March to June.
Evaluate the status and biology of the Sacramento perch to determine if restoration of wild populations within its native range is feasible.	E017001	Complete a thorough status review of the Sacramento perch and develop a plan for its long-term preservation in the Central Valley. Establish at least one population in the Delta.
<b>Levee System Integrity Program</b>		
Improve Delta levee system stability to meet Public Law (PL) 84-99 criteria.	L010101	Modify levee cross-sections by raising levee height, widening levee crown, flattening levee slopes, and/or constructing stability berms.
Maintain Delta levees to the PL 84-99 standard.	L010102	Develop a long-term maintenance plan.
Improve levee stability in key Delta locations to a level commensurate with the benefits which the levees protect.	L010201	Modify levee cross-sections by raising levee height, widening levee crown, flattening levee slopes, and/or constructing stability berms in key Delta locations.
Maintain improved levees.	L010202	Develop a long-term maintenance plan.
Develop the capability to efficiently respond to multiple concurrent levee breaks within the Delta.	L010301	Implement a comprehensive reconstruction, repair, and maintenance program for Delta levees with a fleet of specialized equipment so that a viable Delta levee industry can be reestablished.
Reduce, eliminate, or reverse subsidence adjacent to affected levees.	L010401	Implement current best management practices (BMPs) to correct subsidence effects on levees.
	L010402	Fund grant projects to develop BMPs that address levee subsidence.



Table D-1. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
<b>Water Quality Program</b>		
Eliminate occurrences of dissolved oxygen concentrations below 5 milligrams per liter (mg/l) throughout the water column; reduce the impairment or blockage of fish migration past Stockton; reduce occurrence of algal blooms; reduce stress to fish resulting from low dissolved oxygen concentration near Stockton; and eliminate fish kills near Stockton. Performance of all these measures can be determined by appropriate monitoring programs.	Q010101	Require continued reduction of oxygen depleting substances from the Regional Water Control Facility, the Port of Stockton and other National Pollutant Discharge Elimination System and Waste Discharge Requirement permittees in order to improve water quality during chinook salmon migration.
	Q010102	Provide technical and financial assistance and regulatory incentives for implementing BMPs to control oxygen depletion.
Have dissolved oxygen concentrations above the 5 mg/l standard, biological oxygen demand concentrations below 30 mg/l, and natural ecosystem processes and functions restored in the creeks.	Q010103	Possible management actions include physical mixing or other methods to decrease stratification and increase aeration in the Ship Channel and Turning Basin during periods of low dissolved oxygen, changing effluent discharge location, changing the channel.
	Q010104	There should be further effort to enforce the waste discharge restrictions of permitted and unpermitted dischargers.
Decrease levels of nutrients, pathogens, nonseawater total dissolved solids, and total organic carbon in drinking water supplies.	Q010201	Manage restoration projects to minimize adverse impacts and maximize benefits for drinking water quality.
	Q010202	Minimize pathogens from recreational boating.
	Q010203	Develop and implement watershed management programs for Clifton Court and Bethany Reservoir to address nutrients and pathogens.
	Q010204	Control wastewater discharges from Discovery Bay outfall.
	Q010205	Relocation, reduction, or elimination of agricultural drainage into Rock Slough.
	Q010206	Relocate the Tracy intake to avoid wastewater treatment plant effluent.

Table D-1. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Reduce concentrations of pesticides in biota in the San Joaquin and Sacramento Rivers and the Delta.	Q010501	<p>Support conservation efforts to help achieve the Water Quality Program objectives. Develop and implement BMPs. On-farm conservation practices could include installation or implementation of the following features:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• tailwater ditch tarps,</li> <li>• land leveling, cutback stream,</li> <li>• surge irrigation,</li> <li>• sprinkler germination,</li> <li>• drip irrigation,</li> <li>• shorten length of run,</li> <li>• gated surface pipe,</li> <li>• vegetated filter strip,</li> <li>• cover crop,</li> <li>• grassed waterway, conservation tillage,</li> <li>• sediment basin,</li> <li>• tailwater return system,</li> <li>• irrigation management,</li> <li>• nutrient management,</li> <li>• integrated pest management, and</li> <li>• tailwater management.</li> </ul>
Reduce metal loading of the Bay-Delta and its tributaries to levels that do not adversely effect aquatic habitat and other beneficial uses of Bay-Delta estuary waters and species dependent on the estuary.	Q010801	CALFED should participate with municipalities on the Brake Pad Consortium and other urban stormwater programs to assist in source reduction.
<b>Water Use Efficiency Program</b>		
Support implementation of water management techniques that increase the effectiveness of water use management and efficiency for agricultural uses.	None.	No discrete actions have been identified, but a range of possible effects has been identified and analyzed in the Programmatic EIS/EIR, and the MSCS uses or incorporates the Programmatic EIS/EIR analysis.
Support implementation of measures that increase agricultural production per unit of water used, protect water quality, or increase environmental benefits while meeting agricultural needs.	None.	No discrete actions have been identified, but a range of possible effects has been identified and analyzed in the Programmatic EIS/EIR, and the MSCS uses or incorporates the Programmatic EIS/EIR analysis.
Provide urban water agencies with planning and technical assistance, financing assistance, and assurances for development and implementation of water management plans and BMPs.	None.	No discrete actions have been identified, but a range of possible effects has been identified and analyzed in the Programmatic EIS/EIR, and the MSCS uses or incorporates the Programmatic EIS/EIR analysis.

Table D-1. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Support development and implementation of water recycling projects.	None.	No discrete actions have been identified, but a range of possible effects has been identified and analyzed in the Programmatic EIS/EIR, and the MSCS uses or incorporates the Programmatic EIS/EIR analysis.
<b>Water Transfer Program</b>		
Implement a framework of actions, policies, and processes that will facilitate transfers and the further development of a statewide water transfer market.	None.	No discrete actions have been identified, but a range of possible effects has been identified and analyzed in the Programmatic EIS/EIR, and the MSCS uses or incorporates the Programmatic EIS/EIR analysis.
<b>Watershed Management Program</b>		
Fund and implement watershed restoration, maintenance, conservation, and monitoring activities.	None.	Specific program actions have not yet been identified. The focus of the program is primarily in the upper watersheds of the Bay-Delta and, therefore, outside of the geographic scope of the MSCS. The potential impacts of implementing the program have been analyzed in the Programmatic EIS/EIR.
<b>Conveyance Program</b>		
Construct and operate modifications to existing south Delta conveyance features.	C010101	Extend operation of the Temporary Barriers Program.
	C010102	Modify SWP operating rules to all export pumping up to the current physical capacity of SWP export facilities (approximately 8,500 cfs) within the constraints of the 1995 Water Quality Control Plan.
	C010103	Construct a new screened intake at Clifton Court Forebay that allows diversion of up to 10,300 cfs throughout the tidal cycle. This would include new fish salvage facilities and other ancillary facilities.
	C010104	Construct either a new screened intake at the head of the channel leading to the CVP pumping plant at Tracy or expand the proposed new diversion at Clifton Court Forebay with a new intertie to the Tracy Pumping Plant. These facilities would be screened and sized to meet the full export capacity of the Tracy pumps (4,600 cfs).
	C010105	Construct an intertie to allow up to 400 cfs of pumping from the CVP Delta Mendota Canal to the SWP California Aqueduct.
	C010106	Construct an intertie connecting the Tracy Pumping Plant to Clifton Court Forebay.

Table D-1. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
	C010107	Construct an operable barrier at the head of Old River to improve salmon survival.
	C010108	Construct up to 3 additional operable barriers in the South Delta and implement limited dredging to address problems that may be associated with export operations.
	C020101	Develop operational criteria for the DCC that balance flood control, water quality, water supply reliability, and fisheries concerns.
	C020102	Evaluate whether a 4,000-cfs screened diversion from the Sacramento River to the Mokelumne River to improve or maintain central Delta water quality is feasible.
	C020103	Evaluate the feasibility of implementing setback levees and/or channel dredging along the Mokelumne River from Interstate 5 downstream to the San Joaquin River to improve conveyance and flood control.
Construct and operate an isolated conveyance facility from the Sacramento River along the eastern side of the Delta to Clifton Court Forebay.	C030101	Evaluate the need and feasibility for an isolated conveyance facility from the Sacramento River to the SWP and CVP export facilities in the South Delta. Capacities would range from 5,000 to 15,000 cfs.
<b>Storage Facilities Program</b>		
Construct and operate enlarged or new surface storage facilities.	None.	Construct an in-Delta surface water storage facility.
<b>Conveyance and Storage Operations</b>		
Implement operating criteria needed to improve water management for beneficial uses.	None.	No discrete actions have been identified, but a range of possible effects has been identified and analyzed in the Programmatic EIS/EIR, and the MSCS uses or incorporates the Programmatic EIS/EIR analysis.
Implement a Water Management Strategy to provide operational flexibility to achieve environmental benefits.	None.	No discrete actions have been identified, but a range of possible effects has been identified and analyzed in the Programmatic EIS/EIR, and the MSCS uses or incorporates the Programmatic EIS/EIR analysis.

Table D-1. Continued

Acronyms:

AFRP	Anadromous Fish Restoration Program
BMP	best management practice
cfs	cubic feet per second
CVP	Central Valley Project
DCC	Delta Cross Channel
DFG	California Department of Fish and Game
mg/l	milligrams per liter
MSCS	Multi-Species Conservation Strategy
PL	Public Law
SWP	State Water Project

Citations:

U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1995. Formal consultation and conference on the effects of long-term operation of the Central Valley Project and State Water Project on the threatened delta smelt, delta smelt critical habitat, and proposed threatened Sacramento splittail.

\_\_\_\_\_. 1997. Revised draft anadromous fish restoration plan: a plan to increase natural production of anadromous fish in the Central Valley of California. May 30, 1997.

Table D-2. Bay Region: Proposed Programmatic CALFED Actions Evaluated in this Biological Opinion

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
<b>Ecosystem Restoration Program</b>		
More closely emulate the natural pattern of seasonal freshwater inflow to North San Francisco Bay to transport sediments; allow upstream and downstream fish passage; contribute to riparian vegetation succession; permit transport of larval fish to the entrapment zone; maintain the entrapment zone in Suisun Bay; and provide adequate attraction flows for upstream, through-Bay migrating salmon. Delta outflow in dry and normal years will be improved by coordinating releases and natural flows in the Sacramento River Basin to provide a March flow event of at least 20,000 cubic feet per second (cfs) for 10 days in dry years, at least 30,000 cfs for 10 days in below-normal years, and at least 40,000 cfs for 10 days in above-normal years. The existing smaller, late-April and early-May flow event will be improved with additional releases of water from San Joaquin River and Delta tributaries to provide flows of magnitudes and durations similar to those prescribed for March.	E020101	Develop a cooperative program to provide target flows in dry and normal years by allowing inflows to major storage reservoirs prescribed in the visions of upstream ecological zones to pass downstream into and through the Delta. (This action would result from an accumulation of recommendations for spring flow events and minimum flows from upstream ecological zones.)
Expand the floodplain area in the Napa River, Sonoma Creek, and Petaluma River ecological management units by putting approximately 10% of levied lands into the active floodplain.	E020401	Convert levied lands to tidal wetland/slough complexes.
Restore 1,500 acres of shallow-water habitat in the Suisun Bay and Marsh Ecological Unit.	E020901	Develop a cooperative program to acquire and restore 1,500 acres of shallow-water habitat in the Suisun Bay and Marsh Ecological Unit.
Restore slough habitat for fish and associated wildlife species. Restore 5 miles of slough habitat in the near term, and 10 miles in the long term, in the Suisun Bay and Marsh Ecological Unit. Restore 10 miles of slough habitat in the near term, and 20 miles in the long term, in the Napa River, Sonoma Creek, and Petaluma River Ecological Units.	E021101	In association with wetland/marsh restoration efforts, construct sloughs in marsh/slough complexes by acquiring land and purchasing easements.
Manage existing and restored dead-end and open-end sloughs and channels within the ecological zone so that less than 1% of the surface area of these sloughs and channels is covered by invasive non-native aquatic plants.	E025201	Conduct large-scale, annual weed eradication programs throughout existing and restored dead-end and open-end sloughs and channels in each ecological unit so that less than 1% of the surface area of these sloughs and channels is covered by invasive non-native aquatic plants within 10 years.

Table D-2. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Restore tidal action to 5,000–7,000 acres in the Suisun Bay and Marsh Ecological Unit; 1,000–2,000 acres in the Napa River Ecological Unit; and 500–1,000 acres each in the Sonoma Creek, Petaluma River, and San Pablo Bay Ecological Units.	E027301	Develop a cooperative program to acquire, in fee-title or through a conservation easement, the land needed for tidal restoration, and complete the needed steps to restore the wetlands to tidal action.
Protect 6,200 acres of existing saline emergent wetlands in the Suisun Bay and Marsh Ecological Management Unit.	E027302	Develop a cooperative program to acquire, in fee-title or through a conservation easement, existing wetlands subject to tidal action.
Restore full tidal action to muted marsh areas along the north shore of the Contra Costa shoreline.	E027303	Develop a cooperative program to evaluate, acquire (in fee-title or through a conservation easement), and restore existing muted wetlands subject to tidal action.
Increase the population of breeding pairs of Suisun song sparrow between 70% and 100% compared to existing population estimates of 6,000.	E023901	Encourage the growth of upland vegetation on the upper banks of levees to provide upland cover to protect against predation during high tides and high flows.
	E023902	Establish additional and protect existing dispersal corridors of suitable tidal brackish marsh along the banks of tidal sloughs.
	E023903	Maintenance activities should be conducted to minimize disturbance to tidal brackish marsh vegetation and should not disturb breeding adults.
	E023904	Restore tidal habitat as specified for tidal saline emergent wetland in appropriate areas with particular emphasis on expanding existing fragments of habitat to expand the number of known nesting territories in the Suisun Marsh by 100%.
Increase the existing population of salt marsh harvest mouse by 100%.	E027401	Restore high tidal marsh habitats in proximity to upland habitats consistent with the recovery plan for this species.
Identify the remaining populations of Suisun ornate shrew and develop a conservation plan to stop the decline of this species.	E027501	Identify all remaining populations of Suisun ornate shrew and develop and implement protection/restoration plans.
Determine the distribution and taxonomic status of the San Pablo California vole while maintaining existing salt marsh habitat known to support populations.	E027601	Undertake wetland restoration projects in and adjacent to known populations to increase available habitat.
Develop 1,600 acres of deeper (3–6 feet deep) open-water areas to provide resting habitat for water birds, and foraging habitat for diving ducks and other water birds that feed in deep water.	E021001	Develop a cooperative program to acquire and develop 400 acres of deeper open-water areas adjacent to restored saline emergent wetland habitats in the Suisun Bay and Marsh Ecological Management Unit.

Table D-2. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
	E021002	Develop a cooperative program to acquire and develop 400 acres of deeper open-water areas adjacent to restored saline emergent wetland habitats in each of the Napa River, Sonoma Creek, and Petaluma River Ecological Units (1,200 acres total).
Assist in protecting and enhancing 40,000–50,000 acres of existing degraded seasonal wetland habitat in the Suisun Bay and Marsh Ecological Unit per the objectives of the Central Valley Habitat Joint Venture and the North American Waterfowl Management Plan.	E021501	Support the cooperative program to improve management of 26,000 acres of degraded seasonal wetland habitat in the Suisun Bay and Marsh Ecological Unit.
	E021502	Support the development of a cooperative program to improve management of 32,000 acres of existing seasonal wetland habitat in the Suisun Bay and Marsh Ecological Unit.
Acquire and convert 1,000–1,500 acres of existing farmed baylands in the Suisun Marsh to seasonal wetlands.	E021503	Develop a cooperative program to acquire, in fee-title or through a conservation easement, existing farmed baylands and restore tidal action.
Protect and manage vernal pools in the Suisun Bay and Marsh Ecological Unit that provide suitable habitat for listed fairy shrimp species, the Delta green ground beetle, and special-status plant species to assist in these species' recovery. Where feasible, restore vernal pools that have been degraded by agricultural activities to provide suitable habitat for special-status invertebrates and plants and amphibians, such as the spadefoot toad, to assist in the recovery of these populations.	E021504	Develop a cooperative program to acquire 100 acres of vernal pools and 500–1,000 acres of adjacent buffer areas to restore a corridor the size of the Jepson Prairie Preserve in the Yolo Basin Ecological Unit.
Expand the existing population of the delta green ground beetle and establish additional populations to remove it from the federal threatened species list.	E026201	Increase populations of delta green ground beetle by establishing and securing habitat to support three additional viable and self-sustaining colonies of the delta green ground beetle and maintain the existing populations.
Restore 10–15 linear miles of riparian habitat along corridors of riparian scrub and shrub vegetation in each of the ecological units, of which 60% is more than 15 yards wide and 25% is no less than 5 yards wide and 1 mile long.	E021601	Coordinate with landowners and managers to restore and maintain 10–15 linear miles of riparian habitat along corridors of riparian scrub and shrub vegetation in each of the ecological units, of which 60% is more than 15 yards wide and 25% is no less than 5 yards wide and 1 mile long.



Table D-2. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Reduce by 50% the area covered by invasive non-native woody species, such as giant reed and eucalyptus, that compete with native riparian vegetation, and eradicate invasive woody plants from restoration areas.	E025301	Develop a cooperative program to remove and suppress invasive non-native plants that compete with native riparian vegetation by reducing the area occupied by these species (such as giant reed and eucalyptus) by 50%.
	E025302	Develop a cooperative program to eliminate invasive woody plants from restoration sites to protect native riparian vegetation.
Restore 1,000 acres of perennial grassland in each of the ecological units associated with existing or proposed wetlands.	E021801	Develop a cooperative program to restore perennial grasslands by acquiring conservation easements or purchasing land from willing sellers.
Reduce or eliminate the influx of non-native aquatic species in ship ballast water.	E025401	Fund additional inspection staff to enforce existing regulations.
Reduce the potential for influx of non-native aquatic plant and animal species at border crossings.	E025402	Provide funding to the California Department of Food and Agriculture to expand or establish, as appropriate, a comprehensive program to exclude, detect, and manage invasive aquatic species, such as zebra mussel.
Reduce entrainment losses of juvenile fish at diversions by 25%-50% by installing positive-barrier fish screens on large diversion structures.	E024701	Develop a cooperative program to consolidate, screen, or eliminate diversions in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Zone.
Limit supplementation of striped bass to life stages that minimize the rate of predation on juvenile anadromous and estuarine fish.	E025601	Provide sufficient equipment, support staff, and operation and maintenance funds to hold juvenile striped bass longer so they can be planted at 2 years old instead of 1 year old.
Reduce illegal harvest of anadromous fish and waterfowl in Suisun Marsh and San Francisco Bay by increasing enforcement.	E025801	Provide additional funding to the California Department of Fish and Game for additional enforcement.
	E025802	Provide additional funding to county sheriff's departments and state and local park agencies to support additional enforcement efforts.
	E025803	Provide rewards for the arrest and conviction of poachers.
Reduce boat wakes near California clapper and black rail nesting areas in Suisun Marsh and San Francisco Bay from March to June to prevent destruction of nests to assist in the recovery of this listed species.	E026001	Develop a cooperative program with local agencies to establish and enforce zones prohibiting boat wakes within 50 yards of California black rail nesting areas in Suisun Marsh and San Francisco Bay from March to June.

Table D-2. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
	E026002	Develop a cooperative program with local agencies to establish and enforce zones prohibiting motorized boats in 5 miles of dead-end channels in Suisun Marsh and San Francisco Bay from March to June.
	E026003	Develop a cooperative program with local agencies to establish and enforce zones prohibiting motorized boats in new, small channels in restored tidal wetlands.
<b>Levee System Integrity Program</b>		
None.	None.	None.
<b>Water Quality Program</b>		
Decrease levels of nutrients, pathogens, nonseawater total dissolved solids, and total organic carbon in drinking water supplies.	Q020201	Manage restoration projects to minimize adverse impacts and maximize benefits for drinking water quality.
	Q020202	Minimize pathogens from recreational boating.
	Q020203	Implement Barker Slough Watershed Management Program.
	Q020204	Relocation of the North Bay Aqueduct intake.
Reduce concentrations of pesticides in biota in the San Joaquin and Sacramento Rivers and the Delta.	Q020501	Support conservation efforts to help achieve the Water Quality Program objectives. Develop and implement best management practices (BMPs). On-farm conservation practices could include installation or implementation of the following features: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• tailwater ditch tarps,</li> <li>• land leveling,</li> <li>• cutback stream,</li> <li>• surge irrigation,</li> <li>• sprinkler germination,</li> <li>• drip irrigation,</li> <li>• shortened length of run,</li> <li>• gated surface pipe,</li> <li>• vegetated filter strip,</li> <li>• covered crop,</li> <li>• grassed waterway, conservation tillage,</li> <li>• sediment basin,</li> <li>• tailwater return system,</li> <li>• irrigation management,</li> <li>• nutrient management,</li> <li>• integrated pest management, and</li> <li>• tailwater management.</li> </ul>

Table D-2. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Reduce metal loading of the Bay-Delta and its tributaries to levels that do not adversely effect aquatic habitat and other beneficial uses of Bay-Delta estuary waters and species dependent on the estuary.	Q020801	CALFED should participate with municipalities on the Brake Pad Consortium and other urban stormwater programs to assist in source reduction.
Reduce sediment in areas to the degree that sediment does not cause negative impacts to beneficial uses of the surface water, including ecosystem benefits and municipal uses.	Q020901	Implement erosion control BMPs on urban construction and BMPs for agricultural lands to reduce sediment in the Napa River.
<b>Water Use Efficiency Program</b>		
Support implementation of water management techniques that increase the effectiveness of water use management and efficiency for agricultural uses.	None.	No discrete actions have been identified, but a range of possible effects has been identified and analyzed in the Programmatic EIS/EIR, and the MSCS uses or incorporates the Programmatic EIS/EIR analysis.
Support implementation of measures that increase agricultural production per unit of water used, protect water quality, or increase environmental benefits while meeting agricultural needs.	None.	No discrete actions have been identified, but a range of possible effects has been identified and analyzed in the Programmatic EIS/EIR, and the MSCS uses or incorporates the Programmatic EIS/EIR analysis.
Provide urban water agencies with planning and technical assistance, financing assistance, and assurances for development and implementation of water management plans and BMPs.	None.	No discrete actions have been identified, but a range of possible effects has been identified and analyzed in the Programmatic EIS/EIR, and the MSCS uses or incorporates the Programmatic EIS/EIR analysis.
Support development and implementation of water recycling projects.	None.	No discrete actions have been identified, but a range of possible effects has been identified and analyzed in the Programmatic EIS/EIR, and the MSCS uses or incorporates the Programmatic EIS/EIR analysis.
<b>Water Transfer Program</b>		
Implement a framework of actions, policies, and processes that will facilitate transfers and the further development of a statewide water transfer market.	None.	No discrete actions have been identified, but a range of possible effects has been identified and analyzed in the Programmatic EIS/EIR, and the MSCS uses or incorporates the Programmatic EIS/EIR analysis.
<b>Watershed Management Program</b>		

Table D-2. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Fund and implement watershed restoration, maintenance, conservation, and monitoring activities.	None.	Specific program actions have not yet been identified. The focus of the program is primarily in the upper watersheds of the Bay-Delta and, therefore, outside of the geographic scope of the MSCS. The potential impacts of implementing the program have been analyzed in the Programmatic EIS/EIR.

Acronyms:

BMP	best management practice
cfs	cubic feet per second
EIS/EIR	Environmental Impact Statement/Environmental Impact Report
MSCS	Multi-Species Conservation Strategy



Table D-3. Sacramento River Region: Proposed Programmatic CALFED Actions Evaluated in this Biological Opinion

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
<b>Ecosystem Restoration Program</b>		
More closely emulate the seasonal streamflow patterns in dry and normal year types by allowing a late-winter or early-spring flow event of approximately 8,000–10,000 cubic feet per second (cfs) in dry years and 15,000–20,000 cfs in below normal water years to occur below Keswick Dam.	E030101	Provide a flow event by supplementing normal operating flows from Shasta and Keswick Dams with releases from Lake Shasta and Trinity Lake in March during years when no flow event has occurred during winter or is expected to occur. Flow events would be provided only when sufficient inflow to Lake Shasta is available to sustain the prescribed releases. This action can be refined by evaluating its indirect costs and the overall effectiveness of achieving objectives.
Maintain base flows of 6,000–8,000 cfs during fall.	E030102	Provide flow releases from Shasta Lake and Keswick Dam when necessary to provide the target base flows. Releases would be made only when inflows equal or exceed prescribed releases.
Increase flow in Cow Creek by 25–50 cfs, corresponding to the natural seasonal runoff pattern, and maintain 25–75 cfs during October.	E040101	Increase flow in Cow Creek by purchasing water from willing sellers or implementing a conjunctive groundwater program.
Increase flow in Clear Creek to 150–200 cfs from October 1 to May 31, and to 100–150 cfs from June 1 to September 30.	E040102	Develop a cooperative program to improve flow in Clear Creek by increasing releases from Clair Hill and Whiskeytown Dams.
Augment flow in Battle Creek by 25–50 cfs.	E040103	Increase flow in Battle Creek by purchasing water from willing sellers or providing compensation for forgone power production. This includes negotiating and renewing an existing interim flow agreement between the Department of the Interior and Pacific Gas & Electric Company (PG&E), and includes a provision for the release of 10 cfs at the Asbury Pump on Baldwin Creek, a dewatered Battle Creek tributary that provides steelhead habitat. In the longer term, this action also includes increasing flows at the Inskip Diversion Dam and South Diversion Dam.
Augment flow in Bear Creek by 10–20 cfs.	E040104	Increase Bear Creek flow by purchasing water from willing sellers or providing alternative sources of water to diverters during important fish-passage periods in spring and fall.

Table D-3. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Reduce or eliminate conflicts between the diversion of water and chinook salmon and steelhead populations at all diversion sites on Battle Creek.	E044701	Develop a cooperative approach to improve conditions for anadromous fish in Battle Creek by installing fish screens at four diversions on the North Fork, three diversions on the South Fork, and one diversion on the mainstem, or acquire water rights to eliminate the need for diversion and screening.
Reduce or eliminate conflicts between the diversion of water and chinook salmon and steelhead populations at all diversions on Clear Creek.	E044703	Acquire water rights on Clear Creek at the McCormick-Saeltzer Dam to eliminate the need for diversion.
During summer and fall, more closely emulate the seasonal streamflow pattern, so that flows are sufficient for chinook salmon holding and spawning in most year types of providing up to 20–50 cfs. These flows can mobilize and transport sediments, allow upstream and downstream fish passage, create point bars, and contribute to stream channel meander and riparian vegetation succession.	E050101	Augment summer and fall flows in Cottonwood Creek by purchasing water from willing sellers and developing alternative supplies.
Increase spring and fall flow in Paynes Creek.	E070101	Develop a cooperative approach to increase flow in Paynes Creek by acquiring water from willing sellers or by developing alternative supplies.
Increase flow in Antelope Creek from October 1 through June 30.	E070102	Develop a cooperative approach to increase flow in Antelope Creek by acquiring water from willing sellers, or by providing alternative water supplies to diverters during the upstream and downstream migration of adult and juvenile spring- and fall-run chinook salmon and steelhead trout.
Increase flow in Mill Creek.	E070103	Develop a cooperative approach to increase flow in the lower 8 miles of Mill Creek by acquiring water from willing sellers, or by providing alternative water supplies to diverters during the upstream migration of adult salmon and steelhead.
Increase flow in the lower 10 miles of Deer Creek.	E070104	Develop a cooperative approach to increase flow in the lower section of Deer Creek by acquiring water from willing sellers, or by providing alternative supplies during the upstream migration of adult spring- and fall-run chinook salmon and steelhead trout.
Increase flow in Butte Creek.	E070105	Develop a cooperative approach to increase flow in Butte Creek by acquiring water from willing sellers.

Table D-3. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Maintain a minimum year-round flow of 40 cfs in Butte Creek between the Centerville Diversion Dam and the Centerville Powerhouse.	E070106	Develop a cooperative program with PG&E to maintain a minimum flow in Butte Creek below the Centerville Diversion Dam.
More closely emulate the seasonal streamflow pattern in the Feather River by: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• providing March flow events of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>— 4,000–6,000 cfs in dry years,</li> <li>— 6,000–8,000 cfs in below-normal years, and</li> <li>— 8,000–10,000 cfs in above-normal years; and</li> </ul> </li> <li>• providing or maintaining flows that mobilize and transport sediments, allow upstream and downstream fish passage, create point bars, and contribute to stream channel meander and riparian vegetation succession.</li> <li>• In addition, provide minimum flows recommended by the California Department of Fish and Game (DFG) (California Department of Fish and Game 1993). Flows will be provided only if they are less than or equal to the level of Oroville Reservoir inflow.</li> </ul>	E080101	Develop a cooperative program to evaluate the benefits of supplemental Feather River flows to ecological processes and riparian and riverine aquatic habitats.
Evaluate the potential benefits to increased salmon and steelhead production in the Feather River of the release from Oroville Dam of: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 2,500 cfs from September through May and 1,100 cfs from June through August in wet and normal years, and</li> <li>• 1,700 cfs from September through May and 800 cfs from June through August in dry years.</li> </ul>	E080102	Develop a cooperative program to supplement flows in the Feather River with water acquired from new water supplies, water transfers, and willing sellers in accordance with applicable guidelines or negotiated agreements.
Supplement flows in the Yuba River with March flow events of 2,000–3,000 cfs in dry years and 3,000–4,000 cfs in normal years to improve conditions for all chinook salmon, steelhead, and American shad life stages. In addition, provide minimum flows recommended at Marysville by DFG (California Department of Fish and Game 1993). Flows will be provided only if inflow to Englebright and New Bullards Bar Reservoirs is sufficient to meet the flows. Minimum streamflow recommendations for Yuba River at Marysville (period and flow in all water year types) are: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• October 1–March 31: 600–700 cfs;</li> <li>• April 1–June 30: 1,000 cfs minimum; and</li> <li>• July 1–September 30: 450 cfs.</li> </ul>	E080103	Supplement flows in the Yuba River below Englebright Dam with water acquired from new water supplies, water transfers, and willing sellers consistent with applicable guidelines, or negotiate agreements to improve conditions for all life stages of chinook salmon and steelhead to provide flows recommended by DFG (California Department of Fish and Game 1993).



Table D-3. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Supplement flows in the Bear River to improve conditions for all life stages of chinook salmon and steelhead. Provide a flow event of 300–500 cfs in dry years. Minimum streamflow recommendations for the Bear River: (Month: Flows [cfs]): October 1–14: 100, October 15–December 15: 250, January–March: 250, April–June: 250, July–September: 10.	E080104	Supplement flows in the Bear River with water acquired from new water supplies, water transfers, and willing sellers consistent with applicable guidelines, or negotiate agreements to improve conditions for all chinook salmon and steelhead life stages.
Develop and implement an ecologically based streamflow regulation plan for the American River Basin creeks and the lower American River. The lower American River should meet the recommended flows and flow targets for the lower American River. Lower American River flow events should be coordinated with similar flows that occur naturally in the Sacramento Valley and with storage releases from Shasta and Oroville Reservoirs. Average monthly minimum flow targets (cfs) are:	E090101	Provide target flows by modifying Central Valley Project operations and acquiring water as needed from willing sellers, with consideration given to available carryover storage and needs determined by the water temperature objective.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• October: wet, 2,500; above and below normal, 2,000; dry and critical, 1,750; and critical relaxation, 800;</li> <li>• November–February: wet, 2,500; above and below normal, 2,500; dry and critical, 1,750; and critical relaxation, 1,200;</li> <li>• March–May: wet, 4,500; above and below normal, 3,000; dry and critical, 2,000; and critical relaxation, 1,500;</li> <li>• June: wet, 4,500; above and below normal, 3,000; dry and critical, 2,000; and critical relaxation, 500;</li> <li>• July: wet, 2,500; above and below normal, 1,500; dry and critical, 1,500; and critical relaxation, 500; and</li> <li>• August: wet, 2,500; above and below normal, 2,000; dry and critical, 1,000; and critical relaxation, 500.</li> </ul>	E090102	Develop and implement a comprehensive watershed management plan for the American River Basin and lower American River to protect the channel (e.g., maintain flood-control capacity and reduce bank erosion) and preserve and restore the riparian corridor. Upper watershed health should be improved by reducing the potential for wildfires and implementing other watershed-management practices to protect streamflows, stream channel morphologies, spawning gravel condition, and riparian habitats, and minimize sediment input to the stream.

Table D-3. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
<p>Average flow targets for 10-day pulse (cfs), coordinated with flows from Shasta and Oroville Reservoirs, are:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• March: wet, 6,000–7,000; above and below normal, 4,000–5,000; dry, 3,000–3,500; exceptions, only when inflows are sufficient;</li> <li>• Late April or early May: wet, 7,000–8,000; above and below normal, 5,000–6,000; dry, 3,500–4,000; exceptions, only when inflows are sufficient.</li> </ul>	E090103	Acquire water from willing sellers to augment river flow during the dry years to provide fishery benefits.
Minimize flow fluctuations below Nimbus Dam that can dewater salmonid redds and reduce survival of juvenile anadromous fish as a result of stranding and/or isolation from the main channel.	E090104	Complete ongoing collaborative efforts to develop flow ramping criteria and operationally implement these criteria to reduce adverse effects of flow fluctuation on lower American River fishery resources.
Provide flows of suitable-quality water that more closely emulate natural annual and seasonal streamflow patterns in American River Basin watersheds.	E090105	Enter into agreements with water districts and wetland managers to provide return flows of high-quality water from irrigated agriculture and seasonal wetlands to the American River Basin.
	E090106	Enter into agreements with landowners and water districts to limit diversions of natural flows from creeks to improve streamflows.
	E090107	Limit diversion of natural streamflows from American River Basin creeks into irrigation canals and ditches by providing other sources of water or through purchase of water rights from willing sellers.

Table D-3. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
More closely emulate natural seasonal patterns in Cache and Putah Creeks by providing additional flows, when available, from existing water supplies. Flows in the Yolo Bypass would be supplemented, as needed, by the Colusa Basin drain through the Knights Landing Ridge Cut Canal, extending the Tehama-Colusa Canal, and the Sacramento River through the Fremont weir. Supplemental flows may be needed in fall if water temperature and flow in the lower Yolo Bypass are insufficient for passage from Cache Slough to upstream areas in the Sacramento River. Supplemental flows may be needed in winter and spring to sustain downstream-migrating juvenile salmon and steelhead on their journey through the Yolo Bypass to the Delta. Supplemental flows would be needed along with irrigation water from spring to fall to sustain native fish, wetlands, and riparian habitats in channel sloughs of the Yolo Bypass.	E100101	Develop a cooperative program to provide water for summer flows in Cache Creek to maintain riparian vegetation by developing new conjunctive supplies, including groundwater.
	E100102	Develop a cooperative program to provide water for target flows in Putah Creek from additional Lake Berryessa releases or reductions in water diversions at Solano Diversion Dam and in the creek downstream of the dam. Water would be obtained from willing sellers, water transfers, and by developing new supplies, including groundwater.
Increase gravel recruitment in the upper Sacramento River between Keswick Dam and the Red Bluff Diversion Dam by 10,000–20,000 cubic yards annually to provide adequate spawning habitat for targeted levels of salmon and steelhead and to sustain stream meander processes below Red Bluff. (This is the estimated amount of spawning-sized gravel captured annually by Shasta Dam.)	E030201	Develop a cooperative program to stockpile gravel at strategic locations along the Sacramento River below Keswick Dam where riverflow will move gravel into the river channel to mimic natural gravel recruitment into the upper river. Determine the adequacy of this action and adjust amount and locations as necessary.
	E030202	Develop a cooperative program to reactivate gravel recruitment to the river by exposing existing sources of river gravel on islands, bars, and banks that have become armored to riverflows. This action should be implemented on a conservative basis because the availability of such in-channel gravel, costs of activating the gravel, indirect impacts, and potential effectiveness have not been determined.
Preserve and improve the existing stream-meander belt in the Sacramento River between Chico Landing and Colusa by purchase in fee or through easements of 8,000–12,000 acres of riparian lands in the meander zone.	E030301	Develop a cooperative program to evaluate the feasibility of removing riprap from banks to the extent possible, consistent with flood control management, and reduce effects of other structures, such as bridges, to provide a sustainable meander corridor.
	E030302	Purchase easements to offset losses to property owners for land lost to meander process.
	E030604	

Table D-3. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
	E030303	Develop a cooperative program to evaluate the feasibility of removing riprap from banks to the extent possible, consistent with flood control management, and reduce effects of other structures, such as bridges, to provide a sustainable meander corridor.
Provide conditions for growth of riparian vegetation along channelized portions of the Sacramento River.	E031602	Setback levees may be constructed on leveed reaches of the river to provide a wider floodplain and greater development of shaded riverine aquatic (SRA) habitat. Because of the potential indirect impacts on land use and uncertainty of cost and technical feasibility of setback levees, such development will be experimental and conservative, and will depend on adaptive management.
Maintain existing levels of erosion and gravel recruitment in streams of the North Sacramento Valley Ecological Management Zone and, where necessary, supplement gravel recruitment through adaptive management and monitoring.	E040201	Cooperatively develop appropriate land use plans that allow the natural recruitment of sediments to streams in the North Sacramento Valley Ecological Management Zone.
Increase existing levels of erosion and gravel recruitment in Clear Creek by 25–50 tons per year.	E040202	Develop a cooperative program to improve gravel quality and quantity in lower Clear Creek to maintain high-quality spawning conditions for fall-run and late-fall-run chinook salmon by evaluating the addition of 5,000–10,000 cubic yards annually as needed. Evaluate the need to acquire or relocate existing mining operations. Remove or alter Saeltzler Dam so that it no longer serves as a sediment trap.
Increase existing levels of erosion and gravel recruitment in Cow Creek by 5–10 tons per year.	E040203	Develop a cooperative program to protect existing gravel and bedload movement in Cow Creek to maintain and increase future spawning gravel and sediment input to the Sacramento River by 5–10 tons per year by evaluating the need or opportunity to acquire or relocate existing gravel mining operations.
Create a more defined stream channel in the lower 8 miles of Clear Creek to facilitate fish passage.	E040301	Develop a cooperative program to improve lower Clear Creek by maintaining flow connection with the Sacramento River and by regrading the channel and controlling vegetative encroachment.
Reestablish natural floodplain and stream channel meander in the lower 8 miles of Clear Creek.	E040402	Acquire floodplains from willing sellers by direct purchase or easement.

Table D-3. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Maintain existing levels of erosion and gravel recruitment in streams in the Cottonwood Creek Ecological Zone and provide for increasing the transport of these sediments to the Sacramento River by an average of 30,000–40,000 tons per year.	E050201	Cooperatively develop and implement a gravel management program for Cottonwood Creek. The program would protect and maintain important ecological processes and functions related to sediment supply, gravel recruitment, and gravel cleansing and transport. This would involve working with State and local agencies and gravel operators to protect spawning gravel and enhance recruitment of spawning gravel to the Sacramento River in the valley sections of Cottonwood Creek.
	E050202	Cooperate with the aggregate resource industry to relocate existing gravel operations on Cottonwood Creek to areas outside of the active streamchannel.
Repair and rehabilitate spawning gravels in 10–20 miles of the lower South Fork and mainstem of Cottonwood Creek.	E050203	In the short term, develop a cooperative program to rip and clean or reconstruct important salmon spawning riffles on the South Fork of Cottonwood Creek and on lower Cottonwood Creek below the South Fork.
Establish a desirable level of sediment deposition in the Colusa Basin.	E060401	Improve the Colusa Basin sediment deposition capacity by working with local landowners to develop an integrated plan consistent with flood control requirements.
Develop a cooperative program to replenish spawning gravel in Big Chico Creek, especially in stream reaches that have been modified for flood control so that there is no net loss of sediments transported through the Sycamore, Lindo Channel, and Big Chico Creek split.	E070201	Assist in the redesign of and reconstruct the flood control box culvert structures on Big Chico Creek near the Five-Mile Recreation Area to allow the natural downstream transport of stream sediments.
Develop a cooperative program to improve fall-run chinook salmon spawning habitat in the lower 8 miles of Mill Creek.	E070202	Develop a cooperative program to improve chinook salmon spawning habitats in lower Mill Creek by reactivating and maintaining natural-sediment transport processes.
Improve spawning gravel and gravel availability in Butte Creek.	E070203	Develop a cooperative program to improve spawning habitat in Butte Creek by maintaining natural-sediment transport processes.

Table D-3. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Maintain existing levels of erosion and gravel recruitment in tributaries that sustain an adequate level of gravel recruitment, or restore desirable levels by directly manipulating and augmenting gravel supplies where the natural fluvial process has been interrupted by dams or other features that retain or remove the gravel supply.	E080201	Evaluate the quality of spawning gravel in areas used by chinook salmon in the Feather River. If indicated, renovate or supplement gravel supplies to enhance substrate quality by importing 4,000–8,000 tons of additional gravel below the hatchery as conditions require.
	E080202	Evaluate the quality of spawning gravel in areas used by chinook salmon in the Yuba River. If indicated, renovate or supplement gravel supplies to enhance substrate quality.
	E080203	Evaluate the quality of spawning gravel in areas used by chinook salmon in the Bear River. If indicated, renovate or supplement gravel supplies to enhance substrate quality.
Maintain, improve, or supplement gravel recruitment and natural sediment transport in the lower American River and American River Basin watersheds to maintain natural ecological processes linked to stream channel maintenance, erosion and deposition, maintenance of spawning areas, and the regeneration of riparian vegetation.	E090201	Implement a pilot study to assess the benefits of mechanical cleaning to improve gravel permeability.
Maintain the existing stream-meander configuration along the American River between Nimbus Dam and the Sacramento River.	E090401	Maintain a stream-meander configuration along the lower American River by working with involved parties to develop a floodplain management program consistent with flood-control needs. These parties include the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, the California Reclamation Board, the Sacramento Area Flood Control Agency, the Lower American River Task Force, and the American River Water Forum.
Restore natural stream meanders in the floodplains of American River Basin creeks.	E090403	Where possible within flood control constraints, restore natural meander belts along the lower creeks through setback of levees or removal of bank protection, or other physical structures impeding a natural meander process.
Maintain and enhance floodplain overflow areas in the lower American River and floodplain of the American River Basin.	E090404	Set back levees in the floodplains of creeks and canals of the American River Basin.
	E090407	Enter into agreements with willing landowners and irrigation districts to set back levees and allow floodplain processes such as stream-meander belts.

Table D-3. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Restore gravel recruitment in Cache and Putah Creeks to meet the needs of spawning fish, maintain natural stream channel meanders and bar formation where consistent with flood protection and adjoining land uses, and match existing rates of downstream displacement.	E090408	Expand existing floodplain overflow basins by obtaining easements of titles from willing sellers of floodplain lands.
	E090409	Reduce or eliminate gravel mining from active stream channels.
	E100201	Develop a cooperative program to supplement gravel recruitment below Solano Diversion Dam as needed to replace natural gravel recruitment interrupted by these diversion dams.
	E100202	Develop a cooperative program to supplement gravel in areas downstream of the diversion dams where other structures or gravel mining have interrupted the gravel recruitment process.
Protect, enhance, and restore natural gravel recruitment within the active floodplain and remnant gravel pits.	E105101	Develop a cooperative program to fill remnant gravel pits within the active floodplain of the creeks, and restore natural channel configurations where there are remnant gravel- mining effects.
Maintain mean daily water temperatures at levels suitable for maintenance of all life-history stages of chinook salmon and steelhead in the Sacramento River between Keswick Dam and Red Bluff Diversion Dam in above-normal and wet years, and between Keswick Dam and Red Bluff Diversion Dam in other year types.	E030501	Cooperatively develop and implement a balanced river regulation program that provides sufficient carryover storage at Shasta Dam to ensure that suitably low water temperatures are reached to protect chinook salmon spawning, incubating eggs, and young fish, particularly in consecutive dry and critically dry years.
Improve water quality conditions in the Feather, Yuba, and Bear Rivers to benefit anadromous fish.	E080501	Develop a cooperative program to identify and remove physical and water quality barriers in the Feather River that impede access for white and green sturgeon to spawning habitat, or facilitate passage around these barriers.
	E080502	Develop a cooperative approach to operating reservoirs in the Yuba River watershed to provide adequate water temperatures for anadromous fish.

Table D-3. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
	E080503	Develop a cooperative program to maintain mean daily water temperatures between 61°F and 65°F for at least 1 month from April 1 to June 30 for American shad spawning in the Feather River, consistent with actions to protect chinook salmon and steelhead and when hydrologic conditions are adequate to minimize adverse effects on water supply operations.
	E080504	Evaluate whether improving water temperature control with shutter configuration and present management of the coldwater pool at New Bullards Bar Dam on the Yuba River is effective. Modify the water release outlets at Englebright Dam if these improvements are effective.
	E080505	Develop a cooperative program to maintain mean daily water temperatures between 61°F and 65°F for at least 1 month from April 1 to June 30 for American shad spawning in the Yuba River, consistent with actions to protect chinook salmon and steelhead and when hydrologic conditions are adequate to minimize adverse effects on water supply operations.
	E080506	Develop a cooperative approach to providing adequate water temperatures in the Bear River for all life stages of chinook salmon and steelhead.
Maintain lower American River water temperatures in the upper portion of the reach between Nimbus Dam and Sunrise Bridge and in the upper portions of Coon Creek, Doty Creek, Auburn Ravine, and Secret Ravine in the American Basin below 65°F. Maintain lower American River water temperatures in the spawning and rearing reach between Arden Bar and Nimbus Dam at or below 60°F beginning as early in October as possible, based on annual coldwater pool availability.	E090501	Optimally manage Folsom Reservoir's coldwater pool via real-time operation of the water release shutters to provide the maximum equitable thermal benefits to lower American River steelhead and chinook salmon throughout the year, within the constraints of reservoir coldwater pool availability.
	E090502	Reconfigure Folsom Dam shutters to improve management of Folsom Reservoir's coldwater pool and maintain better control over the temperature of water release downstream.



Table D-3. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
	E090503	Install a temperature control device at the urban water intakes at Folsom Dam. Doing so would facilitate diverting water at elevations above 317 mean sea level, which would preserve the reservoir's coldwater pool for release to the lower American River.
Preserve or restore the 50- to 100-year floodplain and existing channel-meander characteristics of streams in the Cottonwood Creek Ecological Zone, particularly in low-gradient areas throughout the lower 20 miles where most deposition occurs and where stream channel meander is most pronounced.	E050301	In the short term, develop a cooperative program to mechanically create a more defined stream channel in lower Cottonwood Creek to facilitate fish passage by minimizing water infiltration through the streambed and maintaining flow connectivity with the Sacramento River until natural meander returns.
Develop a cooperative program to identify opportunities to allow Cottonwood Creek to seasonally inundate its floodplain.	E050401	Minimize adverse effects of permanent structures such as bridges on floodplain processes.
Restore upper watershed health.	E050402	Reduce excessive fire fuel loads in upper watersheds.
	E050403	Improve forestry management practices, including timber harvest, road building and maintenance, and livestock grazing practices.
Protect, restore, and maintain the Cottonwood Creek watershed by eliminating conflict between land use practices and watershed health.	E050404	Cooperatively work with landowners and federal land management agencies to facilitate watershed protection and restoration and reduce siltation to improve holding, spawning, and rearing habitats for salmonids.
	E050405	Develop a cooperative program to implement improved fencing, grazing, and other land-management practices on private and national forest lands, and encourage local counties to adopt stronger grading and road-building ordinances to control erosion.
Preserve and expand the stream-meander belts in the Feather, Yuba, and Bear Rivers by adding a cumulative total of 1,000 acres of riparian lands in the meander zones.	E080301	Acquire riparian and meander-zone lands by purchasing them directly or acquiring easements from willing sellers, or provide incentives for voluntary efforts to preserve and manage riparian areas on private land.

Table D-3. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
	E080302	Build local support for maintaining active meander zones by establishing a mechanism whereby property owners would be reimbursed for land lost to natural meander processes.
	E080303	Develop a cooperative program to improve opportunities for natural meander by removing riprap and relocating other structures that impair stream meander.
Restore and improve opportunities for rivers to inundate their floodplain on a seasonal basis.	E080401	As needed, restore stream channel and overflow basin configurations within the floodplain.
	E080402	Minimize effects of permanent structures, such as bridges and diversion dams, on floodplain processes.
Maintain the existing stream-meander configuration along the American River between Nimbus Dam and the Sacramento River.	E090402	Where possible, maintain mainstem and side-channel habitats typical of a natural river that provide salmon and steelhead spawning and rearing habitat.
Enhance SRA habitat in American River Basin creeks and drainage canals and ditches and along the lower American River.	E091604	Terminate or modify current programs that remove woody debris from the river and creek channels.
	E091605	Restore side channels along the lower American River to provide additional riparian corridors for increasing fish and wildlife habitat.
Protect and manage 2,000 acres of existing seasonal wetland habitat consistent with the goals of the Central Valley Habitat Joint Venture and the North American Waterfowl Management Plan.	E061501	Develop and implement a cooperative program to improve management of 2,000 acres of existing, degraded seasonal wetland habitat.
Develop and implement a cooperative program to enhance 26,435 acres of existing public and private seasonal wetland habitat consistent with the goals of the Central Valley Habitat Joint Venture and the North American Waterfowl Management Plan.	E061502	Restore and manage seasonal wetland habitat throughout the ecological zone.
Assist in protecting 10,000 acres of existing seasonal wetland habitat through fee acquisition or perpetual easements consistent with the goals of the Central Valley Habitat Joint Venture and the North American Waterfowl Management Plan.	E071501	Develop and implement a cooperative program to improve management of 10,000 acres of existing, degraded seasonal wetland habitat.

Table D-3. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Develop and implement a cooperative program to enhance 26,150 acres of existing public and private seasonal wetland habitat consistent with the goals of the Central Valley Habitat Joint Venture and the North American Waterfowl Management Plan.	E071502	Restore and manage seasonal wetland habitat throughout the ecological zone.
Assist in protecting 500 acres of existing seasonal wetland habitat through fee acquisition or perpetual easements consistent with the goals of the Central Valley Habitat Joint Venture and the North American Waterfowl Management Plan.	E081501	Develop and implement a cooperative program to improve management of 500 acres of existing, degraded seasonal wetland habitat in the Sutter Bypass Ecological Unit.
Develop and implement a cooperative program to enhance 3,090 acres of existing public and private seasonal wetland habitat consistent with the goals of the Central Valley Habitat Joint Venture and the North American Waterfowl Management Plan.	E081502	Restore and manage seasonal wetland habitat throughout the Sutter Bypass Ecological Management Unit.
Maintain and enhance floodplain overflow areas in the lower American River and floodplain of the American River Basin.	E090405	Protect existing overflow areas from future reclamation.
	E090406	Develop floodway detention basins in the floodplains of the American Basin to temporarily store floodwaters.
Protect and enhance 5,150 acres of seasonal wetland habitat acreage in the American River Basin consistent with the objectives of the Central Valley Habitat Joint Venture and the North American Waterfowl Management Plan.	E091501	Protect 2,000 acres of existing wetland habitat through fee acquisition and perpetual conservation easements.
	E091502	Enhance 3,150 acres of existing wetlands.
Provide conditions for growth of riparian vegetation along channelized portions of the Sacramento River.	E031601	Develop a cooperative program to plant vegetation on unvegetated, riprapped banks consistent with flood control requirements. Implementation will occur in phases, results will be monitored, and restoration approach will be adjusted as necessary under adaptive management.
Increase the ecological value of low-to-moderate-quality SRA habitat by changing land use and land management practices.	E031603	Purchase property or easements and allow habitat to improve naturally. Properties to be considered should be developed through a process of prioritizing based on quality and importance of habitat, technical feasibility and cost of purchase and improvement, and consent of landowners.
	E031604	Provide incentives and technical support for private landowners to protect and improve existing SRA habitat.

Table D-3. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Maintain existing streamside riparian vegetation.	E031605	Through purchase, conservation easement, and voluntary participation of landowners, protect SRA habitat from development. Where high-priority properties are already in government ownership or available for purchase or easement, preservation efforts should be undertaken as experiments to develop technical details, cost effectiveness, and overall approach and consensus for the program. Full implementation of this program would depend on results of experiments and subject to adaptive management.
Reduce the area of invasive non-native woody species, such as giant reed and salt cedar, that compete with native riparian vegetation.	E035301	Implement a program along the length of the Sacramento River to remove and suppress the spread of invasive non-native plants that compete with native riparian vegetation.
	E035302	Implement a program to eliminate invasive woody plants that could interfere with the restoration of native riparian vegetation.
Reestablish natural floodplain and stream channel meander in the lower 8 miles of Clear Creek.	E040401	Acquire floodplains from willing sellers by direct purchase or easement.
Develop a cooperative program to establish riparian habitat zones along streams in the North Sacramento Valley Ecological Zone through conservation easements, fee acquisition, or voluntary landowner measures.	E041601	Develop a cooperative program to establish, restore, and maintain riparian habitat on Clear Creek through conservation easements, fee acquisition, or voluntary landowner cooperation.
	E041602	Encourage the development of long-term measures in the comprehensive watershed management plan to further improve water temperatures. Develop a cooperative approach with counties and local agencies to implement land use management that protects riparian vegetation along the streams and develop programs to restore lost riparian vegetation.
	E041603	Cooperatively negotiate long-term agreements with local landowners to maintain and restore riparian communities along the lower reaches of Cow, Bear, and Battle Creeks.

Table D-3. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Develop a cooperative program to establish a continuous 130-mile riparian habitat zone along upper and lower Cottonwood Creek and its tributaries through conservation easements, fee acquisition, or voluntary landowner measures.	E051601	Develop a cooperative program to establish, restore, and maintain riparian habitat on Cottonwood Creek through conservation easements, fee acquisition, or voluntary landowner cooperation.
	E051602	Encourage the development of long-term measures in the comprehensive watershed management plan to further improve water temperatures. Develop a cooperative approach with counties and local agencies to implement land use management to protect riparian vegetation along the streams and developing programs to restore lost riparian vegetation.
	E051603	Cooperatively negotiate long-term agreements with local landowners to maintain and restore riparian communities along the lower reaches of Cottonwood Creek.
Protect and maintain riparian vegetation along Stony Creek, Elder Creek, and the Colusa Basin Ecological Unit channels and sloughs where possible. This will provide cover and other essential habitat requirements for native resident fish species and wildlife.	E061601	Develop a cooperative program to restore riparian vegetation where possible.
Eradicate arundo (false bamboo) and tamarisk (salt cedar) in watersheds where they have only small population, then concentrate on eradicating satellite populations extending beyond major infestations, and finally, reduce and eventually eliminate the most extensive populations.	E065301	Develop a cooperative pilot study to control arundo and tamarisk in streams within the Colusa Basin Ecological Zone.
Develop a cooperative program to restore and maintain riparian habitat along the lower 10 miles of Mill Creek.	E071601	Develop a cooperative program to restore and maintain riparian habitat along Mill Creek through acquisition of conservation easement or by voluntary landowner participation.
Develop a cooperative program to restore and maintain riparian habitat along Big Chico Creek.	E071603	Cooperate with local landowners to encourage revegetation of denuded stream reaches and to establish, restore, and maintain riparian habitat on Big Chico Creek.
	E071604	Cooperate with local landowners to encourage revegetation of denuded stream reaches and to establish, restore, and maintain riparian habitat on Butte Creek.

Table D-3. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Provide conditions for growth of riparian vegetation along sections of rivers in the Feather River/Sutter Basin Ecological Zone.	E081601	Purchase streambank conservation easements from willing sellers or establish voluntary incentive programs to improve salmonid habitat and instream cover along the Yuba River.
Preserve and expand the stream-meander belts in the Feather, Yuba, and Bear Rivers by adding a cumulative total of 1,000 acres of riparian lands in the meander zones.	E081602	Purchase streambank conservation easements from willing sellers or establish voluntary incentive programs to improve salmonid habitat and instream cover along the Feather River.
	E081603	Purchase streambank conservation easements from willing sellers or establish voluntary incentive programs to improve salmonid habitat and instream cover along the Bear River.
Establish and/or maintain a sustainable continuous corridor of riparian habitat along the lower American River and American River Basin creeks.	E091601	Protect riparian habitat along watercourses of the American River Basin.
	E091602	Plant riparian vegetation along watercourses of the American Basin.
	E091603	Reduce land use practices such as livestock grazing and watering along stream channels of the American River Basin that cause degradation of riparian habitat.
Enhance SRA habitat in American River Basin creeks and drainage canals and ditches and along the lower American River.	E091606	Improve levee-management practices to protect and enhance riparian and SRA habitat.
Reduce populations of invasive non-native plants that compete with the establishment and succession of native riparian vegetation along the American River. This will help to reestablish native riparian vegetation in floodplains, increase SRA cover, and increase habitat values for riparian-associated wildlife.	E095301	Reduce populations of invasive non-native plants that compete with the establishment and succession of native riparian vegetation along the American River. This will help to reestablish native riparian vegetation in floodplains, increase SRA cover, and increase habitat values for riparian-associated wildlife.
Restore riparian vegetation along Cache Creek, Putah Creek, and Yolo Bypass and Solano Ecological Unit channels and sloughs where possible to provide cover and other essential habitat requirements for salmon, steelhead, native resident fish species, and other wildlife.	E101601	Develop a cooperative program to restore riparian vegetation where possible and fill gaps in forest continuity.

Table D-3. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Reduce populations of invasive non-native plant species that compete with the establishment and succession of native riparian vegetation along Cache Creek and Putah Creek. Reducing populations of these species would assist in the natural reestablishment of native riparian vegetation in floodplains, increase SRA cover for fish, and increase habitat values for riparian-associated wildlife.	E101602	Develop a cooperative program to protect existing riparian corridors along creeks, streams, sloughs, and channels connecting to the Delta.
	E101603	Develop a cooperative program to plant riparian vegetation and provide for early development until it becomes naturally self-sustaining.
	E101604	Develop a cooperative control program for non-native riparian plants where necessary to ensure development of healthy natural riparian corridors.
	E105301	Develop a cooperative program to monitor the distribution and abundance of non-native plants and develop cooperative control programs as needed.
Restore perennial grasslands in the American River Basin Ecological Management Unit associated with existing or proposed wetlands.	E091801	Develop a cooperative program to restore perennial grasslands by acquiring conservation easements or purchasing land from willing sellers.
Cooperatively manage 111,285 acres of agricultural lands.	E061901	Increase the area of rice fields and other croplands flooded in winter and spring to provide high-quality foraging habitat for wintering and migrating waterfowl and shorebirds and associated wildlife.
	E061902	Convert agricultural lands in the Colusa Basin Ecological Zone from crop types of low forage value for wintering waterfowl and other wildlife to crop types of greater forage value.
	E061903	Defer fall tillage on rice fields in the Colusa Basin Ecological Zone to increase the forage for wintering waterfowl and associated wildlife.

Table D-3. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Cooperatively manage 108,832 acres of agricultural lands.	E071901	Increase the area of rice fields and other croplands flooded in winter and spring to provide high-quality foraging habitat for wintering and migrating waterfowl and shorebirds and associated wildlife.
	E071902	Convert agricultural lands in the Butte Basin Ecological Zone from crop types of low forage value for wintering waterfowl and other wildlife to crop types of greater forage value.
	E071903	Defer fall tillage on rice fields in the Butte Basin Ecological Zone to increase the forage for wintering waterfowl and associated wildlife.
Cooperatively manage 57,578 acres of agricultural lands in a manner consistent with the objectives of the Central Valley Habitat Joint Venture and the North American Waterfowl Management Plan.	E081901	Increase the area of rice fields and other croplands flooded in winter and spring to provide high-quality foraging habitat for wintering and migrating waterfowl and shorebirds and associated wildlife.
Restore and maintain migration corridors.	E091901	Purchase land or conservation easements from willing sellers on which to restore wildlife habitat to connect existing grassland or agricultural wildlife habitat.
Enhance 20,948 acres of private agricultural land to better support nesting and wintering waterfowl in a manner consistent with the objectives of the Central Valley Habitat Joint Venture and the North American Waterfowl Management Plan.	E091902	Develop cooperative programs with farmers to conduct wildlife-friendly practices.
Reduce entrainment of juvenile salmon, steelhead, sturgeon, and splittail into water diversions to levels that will not impair stock rebuilding or species restoration.	E034701	Develop a cooperative program to screen all diversions greater than 250 cfs and one-third to two-thirds of all smaller unscreened diversions. This programmatic level of action should be sufficient to provide the data necessary to modify this target through adaptive management.
	E034702	Develop a cooperative program to upgrade screening at diversions where current screening is ineffective. Where existing screening has proven less than effective and entrainment problems continue, immediate action should be taken to upgrade screens.



Table D-3. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
	E034703	Develop a cooperative program to reduce diversions when juvenile salmon are present in large or significant numbers. Even with screens, some diversions may pose a threat to young salmon and steelhead, and it may be necessary to modify diversion operations. Such determinations will be made after necessary monitoring and evaluation, on a case-by-case basis, with agency and stakeholder involvement. Consideration will be given to appropriate alternatives.
	E034704	Promote and support relocating water diversions and developing alternate methods of supplying water from the Sacramento River that protect fish but also minimize conflict with the maintenance of dynamic fluvial river processes.
Reduce or eliminate conflicts between the diversion of water and chinook salmon and steelhead populations at all diversion sites on Clear Creek.	E044702	Improve the survival of adult salmon and steelhead in Battle Creek by installing a rack at the head of Gover Diversion Canal to prevent straying.
Improve the survival of chinook salmon and steelhead in Butte Creek by cooperating in the installation of positive-barrier fish screens.	E074701	Improve the survival of juvenile chinook salmon and steelhead in Butte Creek by supporting the installation of screened portable pumps as an alternative to the Little Dry Creek diversion.
	E074702	Increase the survival of juvenile chinook salmon and steelhead in Butte Creek by helping local interests install positive-barrier fish screens at the Durham-Mutual Diversion Dam.
	E074703	Increase the survival of juvenile chinook salmon and steelhead in Butte Creek by helping local interests install positive-barrier fish screens at Adams Dam.
	E074704	Increase the survival of juvenile salmon and steelhead in Butte Creek by helping local interests install positive-barrier fish screens at Gorrill Dam.

Table D-3. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Improve the survival of juvenile anadromous fish in the Yuba River by installing, upgrading, or replacing fish screens.	E084701	Develop a cooperative program to improve efficiency of screening devices in the Yuba River at the Hallwood-Cordua water diversion; construct screens at the Brown's Valley water diversion and other unscreened diversions.
	E084703	Develop a cooperative program to evaluate and screen diversions in the Bear River to protect all life stages of anadromous fish.
	E084704	Develop a cooperative program to evaluate and screen diversions in the Feather River to protect all life stages of anadromous fish.
Reduce losses of juvenile salmon and steelhead in the lower American River and American River Basin creeks resulting from entrainment at water intake structures.	E094701	Upgrade the fish screens at the Fairbairn Water Treatment Plant to comply with DFG and National Marine Fisheries Service fish-screening criteria.
	E094702	Screen diversion from the Natomas Cross Channel, Natomas East Main Drainage Canal, Dry Creek, Coon Creek, and Auburn Ravine that operate during times when salmon and steelhead juveniles are present.
Screen all diversions in the Yolo Bypass channels and sloughs.	None.	None.
	E104701	Develop a cooperative program to construct a weir or screen at the lower end of the Knights Landing Ridge Cut Canal to keep adult salmon and steelhead from migrating into the Colusa Drain.
Minimize survival problems for adult and juvenile anadromous fish at the Red Bluff Diversion Dam by permanently raising the gates during the nonirrigation season and improving passage facilities during the irrigation season.	E034801	Upgrade fish passage facilities at the Red Bluff Diversion Dam.
Reduce blockage to fish migrations at the Anderson-Cottonwood Irrigation District (ACID) dam.	E034802	Evaluate the need to upgrade fish passage facilities at the ACID dam.
Reduce or eliminate conflicts between the diversion of water and chinook salmon and steelhead populations at all diversion sites in Battle Creek.	E044702	Improve the survival of adult salmon and steelhead in Battle Creek by installing a rack at the head of Gover Diversion Canal to prevent straying.

Table D-3. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Work with landowners and diverters in Cow Creek to reduce the adverse effects of 13 seasonal diversion dams in South Cow Creek, 10 diversion dams in Old Cow Creek, two diversion dams in North Cow Creek, and one diversion dam in Clover Creek that are barriers to migrating chinook salmon and steelhead. Doing so will allow access to 100% of the habitat below any natural bedrock falls.	E044801	Improve passage conditions in Cow Creek by acquiring water rights from willing sellers, removing diversions, or providing alternative sources of water during important periods.
Work with landowners and diverters in Bear Creek to reduce the adverse effects of dewatering the stream channel at seasonal diversion dams, which prevents passage by migrating chinook salmon.	E044802	Improve passage and habitat conditions in Bear Creek by acquiring water rights from willing sellers, evaluating the removal of diversion dams, or providing alternative sources of water during important periods.
Work with landowners, diverters, and other State or federal agencies managing Battle Creek to improve fish passage.	E044803	Develop a cooperative program to upgrade or replace existing fish ladders or evaluate the removal of diversion dams and other impediments to passage.
Work with landowners and diverters on Clear Creek to improve fish passage between its mouth and Whiskeytown Dam.	E044804	Develop a cooperative program to improve fish passage on Clear Creek by upgrading or replacing the fish ladder at McCormick Dam.
Reduce or eliminate conflicts in Battle Creek that require exclusion of anadromous fish from the upper section to protect the Coleman National Fish Hatchery water supply.	E044805	Develop an alternative or disease-free water supply for the hatchery to allow naturally spawning salmon and steelhead access to the full 41-mile reach of Battle Creek above the Coleman National Fish Hatchery weir.
Improve chinook salmon and steelhead survival in Antelope Creek by developing a cooperative program to reduce the use of seasonal diversion dams by 50% during the late spring, early fall, and winter.	E074801	Develop a cooperative program to evaluate the reduced use of seasonal diversion dams that may be barriers to migrating chinook salmon and steelhead in Antelope Creek by acquiring water rights or providing alternate sources of water.
Develop a cooperative program to improve the upstream passage of adult chinook salmon and steelhead in Big Chico Creek by providing access to 100% of habitat located below natural barriers.	E074802	Repair or reconstruct the fish ladders in Big Chico Creek to improve opportunities for the upstream passage of adult spring-run chinook salmon and steelhead trout.
	E074803	Repair the Lindo Channel weir and fishway at the Lindo Channel box culvert at the Five Mile Diversion to improve upstream fish passage.
Develop a cooperative approach to ensure unimpeded upstream passage of adult spring-run chinook salmon and steelhead in Mill Creek.	E074804	Cooperatively develop and implement an interim fish-passage corrective program at Clough Dam on Mill Creek until a permanent solution is cooperatively developed with the landowners.

Table D-3. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Develop a cooperative program to improve the upstream passage of adult spring-run chinook salmon and steelhead in Butte Creek to allow access to 100% of the habitat below the Centerville Head Dam.	E074805	Improve the survival and passage of chinook salmon and steelhead in Butte Creek by cooperatively developing and evaluating operational criteria and potential modifications to the Butte Slough outfall.
	E074806	Increase the survival of chinook salmon in Butte Creek by cooperatively helping local interests eliminate stranding at the drainage outfalls in the lower reach.
Increase adult and juvenile anadromous fish passage in the Yuba River by providing access to 100% of the available habitat below Englebright Dam.	E084801	Develop a cooperative program to improve survival of anadromous fish in the Yuba River by removing dams or constructing fish ladders, providing passage flows, keeping channels open, eliminating predator habitat at instream structures, and constructing improved fish bypasses at diversions.
	E084802	Facilitate passage of spawning adult salmonids in the Yuba River by maintaining appropriate flows through the fish ladders or modifying the fish ladders at diversion dams.
Improve survival of chinook salmon and steelhead in the Bear River by providing access to 100% of the habitat available below the South Sutter Irrigation District diversion dam.	E084803	Improve survival and passage of chinook salmon and steelhead in the Bear River by negotiating with landowners to remove or modify culvert crossings on the Bear River.
Prevent adult salmon and steelhead stranding during their upstream migrations.	E104701	Develop a cooperative program to construct a weir or screen at the lower end of the Knights Landing Ridge Cut Canal to keep adult salmon and steelhead from migrating upstream into the Colusa Basin drain.
Reduce the adverse effects of predatory fish by identifying and eliminating humanmade instream structures or operational conditions that allow unnatural rates of predation.	E035601	Selectively evaluate areas and make physical changes to structures in the Sacramento River, such as bridge abutments, diversion dams, and water intakes, that currently may attract predators and provide them with additional advantages in preying on juvenile salmon and steelhead. Pilot studies and evaluations are needed to determine the types of changes required and the potential degree of implementation.
Reduce illegal harvest of fish species to a minimum to maintain or increase populations by increasing enforcement efforts by 50% to 100%.	E035801	Increase enforcement efforts.

Table D-3. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Manage the legal harvest of chinook salmon, steelhead, and sturgeon by shifting harvest from natural stocks to hatchery-reared stocks where possible, or by reducing harvest of wild stocks until the naturally produced populations recover.	E035802	Develop a cooperative program to mark all hatchery salmon and steelhead, allowing selective harvest of hatchery fish while limiting harvest of wild fish. This action should be implemented on a short-term and experimental basis to ensure that it meets its objective and is cost effective.
	E035803	Encourage regulatory agencies to change fishing regulations (i.e., by restricting seasons, limits, and gear and reducing harvest of wild fish) to further reduce legal harvest and any ancillary effects of fishing gear or techniques. Restrictions should be severe in the short term. Long-term restrictions would depend on response of populations and effectiveness of restrictions and the degree of effectiveness of the action.
Develop harvest management strategies that allow wild, naturally produced fish spawning populations to attain levels that fully use existing and restored habitat, and focus harvest on hatchery-produced fish.	E045801	Control illegal harvest by providing increased enforcement efforts.
	E075801	
	E085801	
	E045802 E075802 E085802	Develop harvest management plans with commercial and recreational fishery organizations, resource management agencies, and other stakeholders to meet the target.
Develop harvest management strategies for Central Valley chinook salmon and steelhead populations that allow populations of naturally spawning fish to attain levels that fully use existing and restored habitat.	E045803	Reduce the harvest of wild, naturally produced steelhead populations where necessary by marking hatchery-reared fish and instituting a selective fishery.
	E075802	
	E085802	
	E095801	Control illegal harvest of chinook salmon and steelhead by increasing enforcement efforts.
	E095802	Develop harvest management plans for chinook salmon and steelhead with commercial and recreational fishery organizations, resource management agencies, and other stakeholders to meet target escapement and production goals for lower American River and American River Basin creeks.

Table D-3. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Limit hatchery stocking to populations that cannot be sustained through natural production.	E035901	Augment winter-run, spring-run, and late-fall-run chinook salmon and steelhead with hatchery-produced smolts during the short-term rebuilding phase of restoration efforts, and only when alternative measures are deemed insufficient to provide recovery of the populations. Stocking of hatchery-reared fish will be undertaken as experiments and will be adjusted or terminated as necessary depending on results.
Employ methods to limit straying and loss of genetic integrity of wild and hatchery supported stocks.	E035902	Rear salmon and steelhead in hatcheries on natal streams to limit straying. If hatchery augmentation of Sacramento River populations of salmon and steelhead is necessary, then hatcheries should be built on the Sacramento River for that purpose.
	E035903	Limit stocking of salmon and steelhead fry and smolts to natal watersheds to minimize straying that may compromise the genetic integrity of naturally producing populations.
Minimize further threats that hatchery fish will contaminate wild stocks of salmon and steelhead.	E035904	Where hatchery production is underway and continues, methods should be adopted and improved to select an appropriate cross-section of the adult population for spawning at the hatchery.
	E035905	Select spawning adults of appropriate genetic makeup to minimize genetic contamination of existing naturally produced and hatchery stocks of salmon and steelhead. Given the present difficulty of determining genetic makeup of spawning adults selected for hatcheries, this action will necessarily be experimental. Hatchery-reared adults may be preferentially selected or not selected if they are adequately marked or tagged, or have other identifiable features. Other methods may be developed to genetically categorize naturally produced or hatchery fish.
Limit hatchery stocking if populations of salmon or steelhead can be sustained by natural production.	E045901 E075901 E085901 E095901	Augment populations of fall-run chinook salmon and steelhead only when alternative measures are deemed insufficient to provide recovery of the populations.

Table D-3. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Minimize further threats that hatchery-reared fish will contaminate wild stocks of chinook salmon and steelhead.	E045902 E075902 E085902 E095902  E095903	Adopt methods for selecting adult spawners for the hatchery from an appropriate cross-section of the adult population available to the hatchery.  Develop a collaborative program to coded-wire tag a representative proportion of all Nimbus Hatchery fall-run chinook salmon.
Reduce losses of fish and wildlife resulting from pesticides, hydrocarbons, heavy metals, and other pollutants in the Sacramento River.	E035702   E035703  E035704	Develop a cooperative program to remedy heavy-metal pollution from Iron Mountain Mine to meet basin plan standards and implement reliable and proven remedies that ensure continued treatment and control of heavy-metal waste before water is discharged to the Sacramento River.  Develop a cooperative program to eliminate scouring of toxic metal-laden sediments in the Spring Creek and Keswick Reservoirs.  Control contaminant input to the Sacramento River system by constructing and operating stormwater treatment facilities and implementing industrial best management practices (BMPs) for stormwater and erosion control.
Reduce the application on agricultural lands of herbicides, pesticides, fumigants, and other agents toxic to fish and wildlife that have the greatest risk to fish and wildlife populations.	E095701  E095702	Enter into conservation easements with willing landowners to modify agricultural practices in ways to reduce loads and concentrations of contaminants.  Provide incentives to landowners to modify agricultural or other land use practices that contribute to the input of contaminants into waterways.
Restore and maintain water quality in the Cache Creek watershed.	E105701	Identify the sources and reduce the amounts of mercury and other contaminants coming into the watershed from upstream sources.
Restore and maintain water quality in the Putah Creek watershed.	E105702	Develop and implement a Streamkeeper program on Putah Creek.
<b>Water Quality Program</b>		
Reduce sediment loads that cause low intersubstrate dissolved oxygen concentrations that affect salmon spawning and rearing habitat and establish full salmon spawning and rearing activity.	Q090101	Possible management actions include gravel enhancement programs, channel restoration programs, development of river-corridor assessments and management strategies, and regulation of high-water temperature reservoir releases.

Table D-3. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
<b>Proposed Water Quality Program Actions (continued)</b>		
Decrease levels of nutrients, pathogens, nonseawater total dissolved solids (TDS), and total organic carbon (TOC) in drinking water supplies.	Q090201	Control algal blooms in upstream reservoirs and aquatic weed growth in the lower American River.
Reduce mercury in water and sediment to levels that do not adversely affect aquatic organisms, wildlife, and human health.	Q090301 Q080301 Q070301 Q060301 Q040301 Q030301 Q100301	Develop a variety of mercury remediation options and projects based on changing mercury loading, transport, transformation, or bioavailability for different sections of the watershed. Select and implement a remediation project(s) with a short-term time frame for expected results.
	Q090302 Q080302 Q070302 Q060302 Q040302 Q030302 Q100302	Select and implement new mercury remediation projects whose expected results have either intermediate- or long-term time-frames.
Reduce concentrations of pesticides in biota in the San Joaquin and Sacramento Rivers and the Delta.	Q090501 Q080501 Q070501 Q060501 Q050501 Q040501 Q030501 Q100501	Support conservation efforts to help achieve the Water Quality Program objectives. Develop and implement BMPs. On-farm conservation practices could include installation or implementation of the following features: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• tailwater ditch tarps,</li> <li>• land leveling,</li> <li>• cutback stream,</li> <li>• surge irrigation,</li> <li>• sprinkler germination,</li> <li>• drip irrigation,</li> <li>• shortened length of run,</li> <li>• gated surface pipe,</li> <li>• vegetated filter strip,</li> <li>• cover crop,</li> <li>• grassed waterway,</li> <li>• conservation tillage,</li> <li>• sediment basin,</li> <li>• tailwater return system,</li> <li>• irrigation management,</li> <li>• nutrient management,</li> <li>• integrated pest management, and</li> <li>• tailwater management.</li> </ul>



Table D-3. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Proposed Water Quality Program Actions (continued)		
Reduce metal loading of the Bay-Delta and its tributaries to levels that do not adversely affect aquatic habitat and other beneficial uses of Bay-Delta estuary waters and species dependent on the estuary.	Q090801	Remedial activities for cleanup of mines should be implemented as deemed appropriate by impacts to habitat and feasibility of remediation.
	Q080801	
	Q070801	
	Q060801	
	Q050801	
	Q040801	
	Q100801	
	Q090802	CALFED should participate with municipalities on the Brake Pad Consortium and other urban stormwater programs to assist in source reduction.
	Q080802	
	Q070802	
	Q060802	
	Q040802	
Q030802		
Q100802		
Decrease levels of nutrients, pesticides, pathogens, nonseawater TDS, and TOC in drinking water supplies.	Q040201	Reduce impacts from livestock grazing along the Sacramento River by use of BMPs.
	Q030201	
Water Use Efficiency Program		
Support implementation of water management techniques that increase the effectiveness of water use management and efficiency for agricultural uses.	None	No discrete actions have been identified, but a range of possible effects has been identified and analyzed in the Programmatic EIS/EIR, and the MSCS uses or incorporates the Programmatic EIS/EIR analysis.
Support implementation of measures that increase agricultural production per unit of water used, protect water quality, or increase environmental benefits while meeting agricultural needs.	None.	No discrete actions have been identified, but a range of possible effects has been identified and analyzed in the Programmatic EIS/EIR, and the MSCS uses or incorporates the Programmatic EIS/EIR analysis.
Provide urban water agencies with planning and technical assistance, financing assistance, and assurances for development and implementation of water management plans and BMPs.	None.	No discrete actions have been identified, but a range of possible effects has been identified and analyzed in the Programmatic EIS/EIR, and the MSCS uses or incorporates the Programmatic EIS/EIR analysis.
Support development and implementation of water recycling projects.	None.	No discrete actions have been identified, but a range of possible effects has been identified and analyzed in the Programmatic EIS/EIR, and the MSCS uses or incorporates the Programmatic EIS/EIR analysis.

Table D-3. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
<b>Water Transfer Program</b>		
Implement a framework of actions, policies, and processes that will facilitate transfers and the further development of a statewide water transfer market.	None.	No discrete actions have been identified, but a range of possible effects has been identified and analyzed in the Programmatic EIS/EIR, and the MSCS uses or incorporates the Programmatic EIS/EIR analysis.
<b>Watershed Management Program</b>		
Fund and implement watershed restoration, maintenance, conservation, and monitoring activities.	None.	Specific program actions have not yet been identified. The focus of the program is primarily in the upper watersheds of the Bay-Delta and, therefore, outside of the geographic scope of the MSCS. The potential impacts of implementing the program have been analyzed in the Programmatic EIS/EIR.
<b>Storage Facilities Program</b>		
Construct and operate enlarged or new surface water storage facilities.	None.	Construct and operate new or enlarge existing surface water storage reservoirs.
Construct and operate new groundwater storage facilities.	None.	Construct and operate new groundwater storage facilities.
<b>Conveyance and Storage Operations</b>		
Implement operating criteria needed to improve water management for beneficial uses.	None.	No discrete actions have been identified, but a range of possible effects has been identified and analyzed in the Programmatic EIS/EIR, and the MSCS uses or incorporates the Programmatic EIS/EIR analysis.
Implement a Water Management Strategy to provide operational flexibility to achieve environmental benefits.	None.	No discrete actions have been identified, but a range of possible effects has been identified and analyzed in the Programmatic EIS/EIR, and the MSCS uses or incorporates the Programmatic EIS/EIR analysis.

Table D-3. Continued

---

Notes:

Targets and actions are derived from the February 1999 revision of CALFED plans.

Acronyms:

ACID	Anderson-Cottonwood Irrigation District
BMP	best management practice
cfs	cubic feet per second
DFG	California Department of Fish and Game
EIS/EIR	Environmental Impact Statement/Environmental Impact Report
MSCS	Multi-Species Conservation Strategy
PG&E	Pacific Gas and Electric Company
SRA	shaded riverine aquatic
TOC	total organic carbon
TDS	total dissolved solids

Citations:

California Department of Fish and Game. 1993. Restoring Central Valley streams: a plan for action. November 1993. Sacramento, CA.

Table D-4. San Joaquin River Region: Proposed Programmatic CALFED Actions Evaluated in this Biological Opinion

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
<b>Ecosystem Restoration Program</b>		
For the Cosumnes River, where a natural streamflow pattern presently exists with natural winter and spring streamflows, maintain or restore summer and fall base flows.	E110101	Improve summer and fall base flows on the Cosumnes River by developing new water supplies along the river and by purchases from willing sellers.
	E110102	Cooperatively develop a program to minimize or eliminate unpermitted water diversions on the Cosumnes River, and review water allocation for the entire basin.
	E110103	Cooperatively develop a groundwater replenishment program to raise the water table in the Cosumnes River floodplain.
For the Mokelumne River, provide conditions to maintain the fishery and riparian resources in good condition by implementing and evaluating the flow regime in the Principles of Agreement (POA) for the Mokelumne River. The POA provide increased flows below Camanche Dam beyond present requirements, which will benefit the fishery and riparian resources of the lower Mokelumne River.	E110104	Provide target flows for the Mokelumne Rivers from storage releases, but only if there are sufficient inflows into storage reservoirs and carryover storage to meet target levels. The additional water would be obtained from developing new water supplies within the Central Valley basin, as well as from water transfers and willing sellers of water.
	E110105	Maintain or enhance summer and fall base flows on the Mokelumne River by developing new water supplies along the river and by purchases from willing sellers.
Provide enhanced streamflows below Woodbridge Dam by providing minimum flows recommended by the California Department of Fish and Game (DFG) in dry years:	E110106	Cooperatively evaluate the potential for minimizing water supply impacts by replacing the diversions at Woodbridge with other Delta diversions.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 200 cubic feet per second (cfs), November 1–April 14;</li> <li>• 250 cfs, April 15–April 30;</li> <li>• 300 cfs, May; and</li> <li>• 20 cfs, June 1–October 31.</li> </ul>		

Table D-4. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
<p>In normal years, minimum flows should be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 250 cfs, October 1–October 14;</li> <li>• 300 cfs, October 15–February 29;</li> <li>• 350 cfs, March;</li> <li>• 400 cfs, April;</li> <li>• 450 cfs, May;</li> <li>• 400 cfs, June;</li> <li>• 150 cfs, July; and</li> <li>• 100 cfs, August–September.</li> </ul> <p>In wet years, minimum flows should be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• 300 cfs, June 1–October 14;</li> <li>• 350 cfs, October 15–February 29;</li> <li>• 400 cfs, March; and</li> <li>• 450 cfs, April–May.</li> </ul> <p>For the Calaveras River, where the natural streamflow has been greatly altered, streamflows should be enhanced below New Hogan Dam by the minimum flows recommended by DFG.</p>	E110107	Cooperatively develop a program to minimize or eliminate unpermitted water diversions on the Mokelumne.
	E110108	Provide target flows for the Calaveras River from storage releases, but only if there are sufficient inflows into storage reservoirs and carryover storage to meet target levels. The additional water would be obtained from developing new water supplies within the Central Valley basin, as well as from water transfers and willing sellers of water.
	E110109	Cooperatively develop a program to minimize or eliminate unpermitted water diversions on the Calaveras River.
	E110110	A flow event should be provided in late February or early March, averaging 100–200 cfs in dry years, 300–400 cfs in normal years, and 600–800 cfs in wet years. Such flows would be provided only when inflows to New Hogan Reservoir are at these levels.
Maintain mean daily water temperatures at or below levels suitable for maintenance of all life stages of fall-run chinook salmon and steelhead resources.	E110502	Establish minimum pool size at New Hogan Reservoir to ensure cold-water releases into the Calaveras River.
Manage flow releases from tributary streams to provide adequate upstream and downstream passage of fall-run and late-fall-run chinook salmon, rainbow trout, and steelhead and spawning and rearing habitat for American shad, splittail, and sturgeon from the Merced River confluence to Vernalis.	E120101	Develop a cooperative program to purchase water from willing sellers or develop alternative sources of water.

Table D-4. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Maintain the following base flows in the Tuolumne River below Don Pedro Dam:	E130103	Develop a cooperative approach to coordinate flow releases to attain target levels.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• in critical and below years, flow releases should be:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- 50 cfs, June-September;</li> <li>- 100 cfs, October 1-15; and</li> <li>- 150 cfs, October 16-May 31, plus an 11,091-acre-foot (af) outmigration pulse flow;</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• in median critical dry years, flow releases should be:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- 50 cfs, June-September;</li> <li>- 100 cfs, October 1-15; and</li> <li>- 150 cfs, October 16-May 31, plus a 20,091-af outmigration pulse flow;</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• in intermediate critical dry years, flow releases should be:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- 50 cfs, June-September;</li> <li>- 150 cfs, October 1-15; and</li> <li>- 150 cfs, October 16-May 31, plus a 32,619-af outmigration pulse flow;</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• in median dry years, flow releases should be:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- 75 cfs, June-September;</li> <li>- 150 cfs, October 1-15; and</li> <li>- 150 cfs, October 16-May 31, plus a 37,060-af outmigration pulse flow;</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• in intermediate dry below-normal years, flow releases should be:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- 75 cfs, June-September;</li> <li>- 180 cfs, October 1-15; and</li> <li>- 180 cfs, October 16-May 31, plus a 35,920-af outmigration pulse flow;</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• in median-below-normal years, flow releases should be:               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- 75 cfs, June-September;</li> <li>- 200 cfs, October 1-15; and</li> <li>- 175 cfs, October 16-May 31, plus a 60,027-af outmigration pulse flow and a 1,736-af attraction pulse flow; and</li> </ul> </li> </ul>		

Table D-4. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• in all other year types, flow releases should be:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– 250 cfs, June–September;</li><li>– 300 cfs, October 1–15; and</li><li>– 300 cfs, October 16–May 31, plus a 89,882-af outmigration pulse flow and a 5,950-af attraction pulse flow.</li></ul></li></ul>		
Maintain the following base flows in the Stanislaus River below Goodwin Dam:	E130101	Develop a cooperative approach to coordinate flow releases to attain target levels.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• in critical, dry, and below-normal years, minimum flows should be 200–300 cfs except for a flow event of 1,500 cfs for 30 days in April and May;</li><li>• in above-normal years, minimum flows should be 300–350 cfs except for 800 cfs in June and 1,500 cfs in April and May; and</li><li>• in wet years, minimum flows should be 300–400 cfs except for 1,500 cfs from April through June.</li></ul>		
Provide the following 10-day spring flow events on the Stanislaus River: 2,500–3,000 cfs in late April or early May in normal years; 3,000–4,000 cfs in wet years. Such flows would be provided only when inflows to New Melones Reservoir are at these levels.	E130102	Develop a cooperative approach to coordinate flow releases to attain target levels.
Maintain the following base flows in the Merced River below Lake McClure:	E130104	Develop a cooperative approach to coordinate flow releases to attain target levels.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• in dry years, minimum instream flows at Shaffer Bridge should be:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– 15 cfs, June–October 15;</li><li>– 60 cfs, October 16–October 31 and January–May; and</li><li>– 75 cfs, November–December; and</li></ul></li><li>• in normal years, minimum instream flows at Shaffer Bridge should be:<ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>– 25 cfs, June–October 15;</li><li>– 75 cfs, October 16–October 31 and January–May; and</li><li>– 100 cfs, November–December.</li></ul></li></ul>		

Table D-4. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Provide the following 10-day spring flow events on the Merced River: 1,000–1,500 cfs in late April or early May in dry years; 2,000–2,500 cfs in normal years; and 3,000–4,000 cfs in wet years. Such flows would be provided only when inflows to Lake McClure are at these levels.	E130105	Develop a cooperative approach to coordinate flow releases to attain target levels.
Provide flows of suitable-quality water that more closely emulate natural annual and seasonal streamflow patterns in West San Joaquin tributary watersheds. Provide a total watershed flow of 250–500 cfs to the San Joaquin River in dry and normal years for a 10-day period in Late April to early May (approximately 5000–10,000 af).	E140101	Enter into agreements with water districts and wetland managers to provide return flows of high-quality water from irrigated agriculture and seasonal wetlands to the San Joaquin River.
	E140102	Enter into agreements with landowners and water districts to limit diversions of natural flows from streams to improve streamflows.
	E140103	Make seasonal releases from the California Aqueduct or Delta Mendota Canal into streams and wetlands.
	E140104	Limit capture of natural streamflows from westside tributaries into irrigation canals and ditches, and State and federal aqueducts.
On the Mokelumne River below Camanche Dam, provide for the annual supplementation of 1,200–2,500 cubic yards of gravel into the active stream channel to maintain quality spawning areas and to replace gravel that is transported downstream.	E110201	Develop a cooperative program to evaluate, implement, and monitor sediment supplementation on the Mokelumne River in a manner consistent with adaptive management.
On the Calaveras River, provide for the annual recruitment of 500–1,000 cubic yards of gravel into the active stream channel.	E110202	Cooperatively develop a program to protect all existing sources of gravel recruitment to the rivers.
	E110203	Develop a cooperative program to supplement gravel with artificial introductions.
	E110204	Develop a cooperative program with the aggregate resource industry to improve extraction activities within the Mokelumne River floodplain.
Restore the gravel transport and cleaning process to attain sufficient high quality salmon spawning habitat in each of the three streams for target population levels.	E110205	Develop a cooperative program to provide late-winter or early-spring flow events as needed, to establish appropriate flushing/channel maintenance flows.



Table D-4. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Reduce existing levels of erosion and maintain gravel recruitment in tributaries that sustain an adequate level of gravel recruitment, or restore desirable levels by directly manipulating and augmenting gravel supplies where the natural fluvial process has been interrupted by dams or other features that retain or remove the gravel supply.	E110206	Facilitate transport of fine sediments by restoring the river channel configuration as necessary so that it is consistent with planned flow regime and available sediment supply.
	E110207	Develop a cooperative program to improve the flexibility of upstream reservoir management to minimize fine sediment inputs to the lower Mokelumne and Calaveras Rivers.
	E110208	Develop a cooperative evaluation of mechanically cleaning spawning gravel at selected sites in the lower Mokelumne and Calaveras Rivers.
	E110209	Develop a cooperative program on the Cosumnes River to relocate sand and gravel extraction activities to areas beyond the natural stream-meander corridor.
	E130201	Evaluate the quality of spawning gravel in areas used by chinook salmon in the Stanislaus River. If indicated, renovate or supplement gravel supplies to enhance substrate quality by importing additional gravel as conditions require.
Preserve and expand the stream-meander belts in the Stanislaus, Tuolumne, and Merced Rivers by adding a cumulative total of 1,000 acres of riparian lands in the meander zones.	E130202	Evaluate the quality of spawning gravel in areas used by chinook salmon in the Tuolumne River. If indicated, renovate or supplement gravel supplies to enhance substrate quality.
	E130203	Evaluate the quality of spawning gravel in areas used by chinook salmon in the Merced River. If indicated, renovate or supplement gravel supplies to enhance substrate quality.
	E130301	Acquire riparian and meander-zone lands by purchasing them directly or acquiring easements from willing sellers, or provide incentives for voluntary efforts to preserve and manage riparian areas on private lands.
	E130302	Build local support for maintaining active meander zones by establishing a mechanism through which property owners would be reimbursed for lands lost to natural meander processes.
	E130303	Develop a cooperative program to improve opportunities for natural meander by removing riprap and relocating other structures that impair stream meander.

Table D-4. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
On the Merced River between the towns of Cressey and Snelling, isolate gravel pits, reconfigure dredge tailings, and restore a more natural channel configuration to 5-7 miles of disturbed stream channel. On the Tuolumne River, between river miles 25 and 51, isolate 15-30 gravel pits, reconfigure dredge tailings, and restore a more natural stream channel to 6-9 miles of disturbed stream channel. On the Stanislaus River, restore a more natural stream channel to 2.5-5 miles of disturbed stream channel.	E130304	Develop a cooperative program, consistent with flood control requirements, to restore more natural channel configurations to reduce salmonid predator habitat and improve migration corridors.
	E130305	Work with permitting agencies to appropriately condition future gravel- extraction permits. Coordinate the design and implementation of gravel-pit isolation and stream channel configuration with the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers, local water management agencies, and local governments.
	E130306	Develop a cooperative program with the counties, local agencies, and aggregate resource industry to develop and implement gravel-management programs for each of the three rivers.
	E130307	Develop a cooperative program to implement a salmonid spawning and rearing habitat restoration program, including reconstructing channels at selected sites by isolating or filling in in-channel gravel extraction areas.
Restore and improve opportunities for rivers to inundate their floodplain on a seasonal basis.	E130402	As needed, restore stream channel and overflow basin configurations within the floodplain.
	E110401	
	E110402	Minimize effects of permanent structures, such as bridges and diversion dams, on floodplain processes.
Reduce adverse effects of non-native fish species that have a significant effect on juvenile salmon production in the rivers.	E135601	Eliminate gravel pits within or connected to the rivers.
Provide conditions for growth of riparian vegetation along sections of rivers in the East San Joaquin Basin Ecological Zone.	E131601	Purchase streambank conservation easements from willing sellers or establish voluntary incentive programs to improve salmonid habitat and instream cover along the Stanislaus River.
	E131602	Purchase streambank conservation easements from willing sellers or establish voluntary incentive programs to improve salmonid habitat and instream cover along the Tuolumne River.
Restore 10-25 miles of stream channel, stream-meander belts, and floodplain processes along westside tributaries of the San Joaquin River.	E131603	Purchase streambank conservation easements from willing sellers or establish voluntary incentive programs to improve salmonid habitat and instream cover along the Merced River.

Table D-4. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
	E140401	Enter into agreements with willing landowners and irrigation districts to set back levees and allow floodplain processes such as stream-meander belts.
	E140402	Expand existing floodplain overflow basins by obtaining easements of titles from willing sellers of floodplain lands.
	E140403	Reduce or eliminate gravel mining and streambed altering from active stream channels.
Protect existing seasonal wetland habitat through fee acquisition or perpetual easements.	E111501	Develop and implement a cooperative program to improve management of existing, degraded seasonal wetland habitat.
Assist in protecting 52,500 acres of existing seasonal wetland habitat through fee acquisition or perpetual easements consistent with the goals of the Central Valley Habitat Joint Venture and the North American Waterfowl Management Plan.	E121501	Develop and implement a cooperative program to improve management of 52,500 acres of existing, degraded, seasonal wetland habitat.
Develop and implement a cooperative program to enhance 120,300 acres of existing public and private seasonal wetland habitat consistent with the goals of the Central Valley Habitat Joint Venture and the North American Waterfowl Management Plan.	E121502	Improve and manage seasonal wetland habitat throughout the ecological management zone.
Evaluate the feasibility of creating or improving seasonal wetland habitats.	E141501	Acquire lands adjacent to existing seasonal wetlands from willing sellers or conservation easements.
Provide 150,000 af of water to existing wetlands to improve waterfowl habitat.	E141502	Prove water to wetlands on a seasonal basis from the California Aqueduct, Delta Mendota Canal, or other source.
Restore and improve opportunities for rivers to inundate their floodplain on a seasonal basis.	E110401	As needed, restore stream channel and overflow basin configurations within the floodplain.
Restore a minimum of 1,240 acres of self-sustaining or managed diverse natural riparian habitat along the Mokelumne River and protect existing riparian habitat.	E111601	Develop a cooperative program to restrict further riparian vegetation removal, and establish a riparian corridor protection zones.
	E111602	Develop a cooperative program to implement riparian restoration activities.
	E111603	Encourage improved land-management practices and livestock grazing practices along stream riparian zones.

Table D-4. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Restore a minimum of 1,240 acres of self-sustaining or managed diverse natural riparian habitat along the Calaveras River and protect existing riparian habitat.	E111604	Purchase streambank conservation easements from willing sellers to widen riparian corridors.
	E111605	Develop a cooperative program to restore riparian woodlands along the entire Mokelumne River.
	E111606	Develop a cooperative program to restrict further riparian vegetation removal, and establish riparian corridor protection zones.
	E111607	Develop a cooperative program to implement riparian restoration activities.
	E111608	Encourage improved land management practices and livestock grazing practices along stream riparian zones.
	E111609	Purchase streambank conservation easements from willing sellers to widen riparian corridors.
Restore a minimum of 1,240 acres of self-sustaining or managed diverse natural riparian habitat along the Cosumnes River and protect existing riparian habitat.	E111610	Develop a cooperative program to restore riparian woodlands along the entire Calaveras River.
	E111611	Develop a cooperative program to restrict further riparian vegetation removal, and establish riparian corridor protection zones.
	E111612	Develop a cooperative program to implement riparian restoration activities.
	E111613	Encourage improved land-management practices and livestock grazing practices along stream riparian zones.
	E111614	Purchase streambank conservation easements from willing sellers to widen riparian corridors.
	E111615	Develop a cooperative program to restore riparian woodlands along the entire Cosumnes River.
Reduce the adverse effects of invasive riparian plants on native species and ecosystem processes, water quality and conveyance systems, and major rivers and their tributaries.	E115301	Develop and implement a coordinated control program to reduce or eliminate exotic invasive plant species from the riparian corridor along the Cosumnes, Mokelumne, and Calaveras Rivers.
Restore 50 stream miles of diverse, self-sustaining riparian community.	E121601	Develop a cooperative program to restrict further removal of riparian vegetation.

Table D-4. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Set back 10 miles of levees along the San Joaquin River between the Merced River confluence and Vernalis where feasible to reestablish the hydrologic connectivity between these channels and natural floodplains.	E121602	Develop a cooperative program to restore riparian habitat.
Preserve and expand the stream-meander belts in the Stanislaus, Tuolumne, and Merced Rivers by adding a cumulative total of 1,000 acres of riparian lands in the meander zones.	E121603	Improve land-management and livestock grazing practices along streams and riparian zones.
	E124901	Develop a cooperative program to acquire or obtain easements on floodplain and riparian land needed to meet restoration goals.
Restore and improve opportunities for rivers to inundate their floodplain on a seasonal basis.	E130401	As needed, restore stream channel and overflow basin configurations within the floodplain.
Restore 5 miles of riparian habitat totaling 500-1,000 acres.	E141601	Restore riparian forest habitat on lands by purchasing land from willing sellers or obtaining it via conservation easements.
Cooperatively enhance 15,290 acres of private agricultural land to support nesting and wintering waterfowl consistent with the objectives of the Central Valley Habitat Joint Venture and the North American Waterfowl Management Plan.	E121901	Increase the area of rice fields and other croplands flooded in winter and spring to provide high-quality foraging habitat for wintering and migrating waterfowl and shorebirds and associated wildlife.
Restore and maintain migration corridors of native plants that are more than one mile wide.	E141901	Purchase land or conservation easements on which to restore wildlife habitat to connect existing grassland or agricultural wildlife habitat.
Install fish screens representing the best available technology and operational constraints, as necessary, to minimize losses in diversions that limit the recovery of fish populations.	E114701	Consolidate diversions, seek alternative water sources, and install a permanent fish screen at North San Joaquin Conservation District diversion on the lower Mokelumne River.
	E114702	Improve fish screens and fish bypass system at Woodbridge Dam on the lower Mokelumne River.
	E114703	Develop a cooperative program to operate temporary screens at diversions where juvenile salmon rear or during seasons when they pass the diversion site.
	E114704	Consolidate and install screens on diversions in the Cosumnes River.

Table D-4. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Reduce entrainment of fish and other aquatic organisms into diversions by 50%, by volume, from the Merced River confluence to Vernalis.	E124701	Develop a cooperative approach to install state-of-the-art fish screens at El Solyo, Patterson, and West Stanislaus Irrigation District diversions.
Eliminate the loss of adult fall-run chinook salmon straying into the San Joaquin River upstream of the Merced River confluence.	E124702	Continue to annually install a temporary weir on the San Joaquin River immediately upstream from the confluence with the Merced River to block adult salmon migration.
Reduce entrainment of fish and other aquatic organisms into diversions to a level that will not impair restoration of salmon and steelhead by screening 50% of the water diverted, by volume, in the basin.	E134701	Improve the efficiency of existing diversion screens on the lower Merced River.
	E134702	Provide alternative sources of water to diverters legally diverting water from spawning and rearing areas of the three streams.
	E134703	Purchase water rights from diverters whose diversions entrain significant numbers of juvenile salmon or steelhead.
Improve anadromous fish passage at dams and diversion structures.	E114801	Cooperatively improve fish passage at Woodbridge Irrigation District diversions and Lake Lodi on the lower Mokelumne River.
	E114802	Cooperatively isolate the City of Lodi's Recreational Lake Lodi on the lower Mokelumne River to improve adult salmon and steelhead passage and juvenile fish survival.
	E114803	Develop a cooperative program to provide fish passage at temporary irrigation dams in the Calaveras River, Mormon Slough, and the Stockton Diverting Canal.
	E114804	Develop a cooperative program to install fish passage facilities at Bellota Weir, Clements Dam, and Cherryland Dam on the Calaveras River and provide passage flows.
Eliminate the loss of adult fall-run chinook salmon that stray into the San Joaquin River upstream of the Merced River confluence.	E134801	Develop a cooperative program to eliminate blockage of upstream-migrating fall-run chinook salmon and steelhead at temporary irrigation diversion dams erected during the irrigation season.
	E134802	Continue to annually install a temporary weir on the San Joaquin River immediately upstream of the confluence with the Merced River to block adult salmon migration.

Table D-4. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Reduce level of predation on juvenile salmonids below Woodbridge Dam on the lower Mokelumne River.	E115601	Develop a cooperative program to modify the stream channel and to rebuild the Woodbridge Dam fish passage and diversion screening facilities to minimize losses of downstream-migrating salmon and steelhead while maintaining other important attributes.
	E115602	Modify and improve the fish-bypass discharge at Woodbridge Dam.
Develop harvest management strategies that allow the spawning population of wild, naturally produced fish to attain levels that fully utilize existing and restored habitat and allow harvest to be focused on hatchery-produced fish.	E115801	Reduce or eliminate the illegal harvest of salmon and steelhead by increasing enforcement efforts.
	E115802	Reduce harvest of wild, naturally produced steelhead populations where necessary by marking hatchery-produced fish and instituting a selective fishery.
	E135801	Control illegal harvest through increased enforcement efforts.
	E135802	Reduce harvest of wild, naturally produced steelhead populations where necessary by marking hatchery-produced fish and instituting a selective fishery.
Employ methods to limit straying and loss of genetic integrity of wild and hatchery-supported stocks.	E115901	Rear hatchery salmon and steelhead in hatcheries on natal streams to limit straying.
	E115902	Limit stocking of salmon and steelhead fry and smolts to natal watersheds to minimize straying that may compromise the genetic integrity of naturally producing populations.
	E115903	Develop a plan to phase out the importation of egg or fry chinook salmon and steelhead to the Mokelumne River.
	E135901	Rear hatchery salmon and steelhead in hatcheries on natal streams to limit straying.
	E135902	Limit stocking of salmon and steelhead fry and smolts to natal watersheds to minimize straying that may compromise the genetic integrity of naturally producing populations.
Restore and maintain water quality in Camanche Reservoir on the Mokelumne River.	E115701	Support the East Bay Municipal Utility District in developing operating regimes at Pardee and Camanche Reservoirs that optimize water quality below Camanche Dam.

Table D-4. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Reduce the input of nonpoint-source contaminants into the Mokelumne River.	E115702	Support implementation of the cooperative agreement for the long-term remediation of Penn Mine.
	E115703	Develop an integrated program to coordinate and minimize agricultural pesticide and herbicide use in areas that drain into the Mokelumne River.
	E125701	Provide additional funding to enforce State laws regarding point- and nonpoint-source pollution.
Establish four additional populations and increase the population of riparian brush rabbits by 200% over current estimates so that a census of the population would be two times higher than the current estimate of 213-312 individuals.	E125702	Develop a cooperative program to strengthen water quality standards as needed.
	E134101	Reestablish 500 acres of large contiguous areas of riparian forest habitat that have dense brushy understories with adjacent upland habitat. These restored/reestablished riparian forests would have adjacent upland habitat with sufficient cover. Establish five additional populations within the species historical range; each population should have self-sustaining populations with a minimum of 250 individuals each. Maintain and establish connectivity between key habitats.
	E134102	Prohibit ground cover and litter removal to allow for dense brushy and herbaceous areas of a minimum size of 550 square yards within the riparian forest.
	E134103	More closely approximate the natural hydrological regime that allows for establishment and maintenance of mature riparian forest habitat. Additionally, encourage growth of wild rose, coyote bush, blackberries, elderberries, wild grape, box elder, valley oak, and cottonwoods to provide habitat.
	E134104	Provide high ground adjacent to current and expanded habitat with cover for protection from floods. Existing flood control levees adjacent to the park could be utilized for this escape habitat in this area to provide sufficient vegetative growth of grasses, forbs, and shrubs to lower predation pressure during these times.



Table D-4. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
	E134105	Provide fire breaks around current and expanded habitat to protect habitat destruction due to wildfire and control feral cat and dog population with yearly control efforts within and adjacent to the Park. Prohibit dogs within Caswell Memorial State Park.

Table D-4. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
<b>Water Quality Program</b>		
Reduce concentrations of pesticides in biota in the San Joaquin and Sacramento Rivers and the Delta.	Q120501 Q130501 Q140501	Support conservation efforts to help achieve the Water Quality Program objectives. Develop and implement best management practices (BMPs). On-farm conservation practices could include installation or implementation of the following features: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• tailwater ditch tarps,</li> <li>• land leveling,</li> <li>• cutback stream,</li> <li>• surge irrigation,</li> <li>• sprinkler germination,</li> <li>• drip irrigation,</li> <li>• shortened length of run,</li> <li>• gated surface pipe,</li> <li>• vegetated filter strip,</li> <li>• cover crop,</li> <li>• grassed waterway,</li> <li>• conservation tillage,</li> <li>• sediment basin,</li> <li>• tailwater return system,</li> <li>• irrigation management,</li> <li>• nutrient management,</li> <li>• integrated pest management, and</li> <li>• tailwater management.</li> </ul>
Reduce or manage salinity in the San Joaquin River and in the Delta Region to meet water quality objectives by such means as improving flow patterns using flow barriers, real-time management and increasing the assimilative capacity of the river through the Delta Mendota Canal circulation.	Q120601 Q140601  Q140602	Support on-farm conservation practices to treat drainage water, reduce salt loadings, reduce agricultural drainage water volume through improving management of irrigation systems; adopting new or improving existing irrigation practices, including shortening furrows; and improving irrigation scheduling. <p>Prepare salt reduction plans for each source of TDS (prepare water conservation plans and drainage and wastewater operation plans); provide incentives for water conservation and drainage water use; improve irrigation methods, irrigation management, and sequential reuse of drainage water (to improve water use efficiency and remove salt); and use sprinkler irrigation combined with furrow irrigation to reduce drainage volume to reduce short-term salt loading.</p>

Table D-4. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Eliminate the low intersubstrate dissolved oxygen concentrations that affect salmon spawning and rearing habitat and establish full salmon spawning and rearing activity.	Q130101	Possible management actions include gravel-enhancement programs, channel restoration programs, development of river-corridor assessments and management strategies, and regulation of high-water temperature reservoir releases.
Decrease levels of nutrients, pathogens, nonseawater total dissolved solids (TDS), and total organic carbon (TOC) in drinking water supplies.	Q130201 Q140203	Establish a watershed management program for the San Joaquin River.
Reduce metal loading of the Bay-Delta and its tributaries to levels that do not adversely affect aquatic habitat and other beneficial uses of Bay-Delta estuary waters and species dependent on the estuary.	Q130801 Q140801  Q130802 Q140802	Remedial activities for cleanup of mines should be implemented as deemed appropriate by impacts to habitat and feasibility of remediation.  CALFED should participate with municipalities on the Brake Pad Consortium and other urban stormwater programs to assist in source reduction.
Reduce sediment in areas to the degree that sediment does not cause negative impacts on beneficial uses of the surface water, including ecosystem benefits and municipal uses.	Q130901  Q130902	Develop and implement land use BMPs, particularly along tributary watercourses, to reduce soil erosion and fine sediment inputs.  Manage floodplains to help diminish the negative impact of fine sediment loads from anthropogenic sources by facilitating natural deposition on floodplain surfaces.
Decrease levels of nutrients, pathogens, nonseawater TDS, and TOC in drinking water supplies.	Q140201  Q140202  Q140204  Q140205  Q140502	Implement a watershed management program within the South Bay Aqueduct proper.  Develop and implement watershed management programs for Clifton Court and Bethany Reservoir to address nutrients and pathogens.  Control drainage of stormwaters into the aqueduct by physical modification of facilities.  Develop and implement a watershed management program to minimize drainage into the aqueduct.  Support projects which will recreate the stream channels and increase the size of flow structures, such as culverts, to help achieve reduction in pesticides.

Table D-4. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
Reduction in the impairment of environment beneficial uses of water that is associated with selenium concentrations and loadings.	Q140701	Treat agricultural drainage water to remove selenium through processes that include ion exchange, reverse osmosis, reduction with zero-valent iron, reduction with ferrous hydroxide, reduction with bacteria and other algal-bacterial treatments, on-farm management practices, volatilization from evaporation ponds and drainage reuse systems, and flow-through wetlands.
	Q140702	Encourage the development and use of alternative cropping and irrigation practices that will reduce subsurface drainage volumes as well as selenium discharges.
	Q140703	Encourage and support the use of a tradable loads program, as well as other economic incentives such as tiered-water pricing, as a means to achieve selenium load reductions. CALFED should work with the Grassland Area Farmers to build upon the results of their program.
	Q140704	Implement a program to retire lands to help meet water quality objectives for selenium under a tiered approach if needed to achieve selenium loading reduction objectives. Initially, up to 3,000 acres of lands with the greatest concentrations of selenium present in agricultural drainage would be targeted for retirement. If 3,000 acres is still inadequate to meet program goals, retirement would be expanded up to a total of 37,400 acres of lands with high selenium concentrations.
	Q140705	Reduce selenium loads from refineries to reduce selenium concentrations in biota to levels below human-health advisories.
	Q140706	Reduce selenium loads from refineries to reduce selenium concentrations in biota to levels below ecological-risk guidelines.
Decrease levels of nutrients, pesticides, pathogens, nonseawater TDS, and TOC in drinking water supplies.	Q140707	Reduce selenium loads from refineries through treatment of waste streams, use of alternative crude oil, sour water reuse, and wetland discharge treatment.

Table D-4. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
<b>Water Use Efficiency Program</b>		
Support implementation of water management techniques that increase the effectiveness of water use management and efficiency for agricultural uses.	None.	No discrete actions have been identified, but a range of possible effects has been identified and analyzed in the Programmatic EIS/EIR, and the MSCS uses or incorporates the Programmatic EIS/EIR analysis.
Support implementation of measures that increase agricultural production per unit of water used, protect water quality, or increase environmental benefits while meeting agricultural needs.	None.	No discrete actions have been identified, but a range of possible effects has been identified and analyzed in the Programmatic EIS/EIR, and the MSCS uses or incorporates the Programmatic EIS/EIR analysis.
Provide urban water agencies with planning and technical assistance, financing assistance, and assurances for development and implementation of water management plans and BMPs.	None.	No discrete actions have been identified, but a range of possible effects has been identified and analyzed in the Programmatic EIS/EIR, and the MSCS uses or incorporates the Programmatic EIS/EIR analysis.
Support development and implementation of water recycling projects.	None.	No discrete actions have been identified, but a range of possible effects has been identified and analyzed in the Programmatic EIS/EIR, and the MSCS uses or incorporates the Programmatic EIS/EIR analysis.
<b>Water Transfer Program</b>		
Implement a framework of actions, policies, and processes that will facilitate transfers and the further development of a statewide water transfer market.	None.	No discrete actions have been identified, but a range of possible effects has been identified and analyzed in the Programmatic EIS/EIR, and the MSCS uses or incorporates the Programmatic EIS/EIR analysis.
<b>Watershed Management Program</b>		
Fund and implement watershed restoration, maintenance, conservation, and monitoring activities.	None.	Specific program actions have not yet been identified. The focus of the program is primarily in the upper watersheds of the Bay-Delta and, therefore, outside of the geographic scope of the MSCS. The potential impacts of implementing the program have been analyzed in the Programmatic EIS/EIR.
<b>Storage Facilities Program</b>		
Construct and operate enlarged or new surface water storage facilities.	None.	Construct and operate new or enlarge existing surface water storage reservoirs.
Construct and operate new groundwater storage facilities.	None.	Construct and operate new groundwater storage facilities.

Table D-4. Continued

Program Target	Action Code	Programmatic Actions
<b>Conveyance and Storage Operations</b>		
None.	None.	No discrete actions have been identified, but a range of possible effects has been identified and analyzed in the Programmatic EIS/EIR, and the MSCS uses or incorporates the Programmatic EIS/EIR analysis.
Implement a Water Management Strategy to provide operational flexibility to achieve environmental benefits.		No discrete actions have been identified, but a range of possible effects has been identified and analyzed in the Programmatic EIS/EIR, and the MSCS uses or incorporates the Programmatic EIS/EIR analysis.

**Notes:**

Targets and actions are derived from the February 1999 revision of CALFED plans.

**Acronyms:**

af	acre-feet
BMP	best management practice
cfs	cubic feet per second
DFG	California Department of Fish and Game
EIR/EIS	Environmental Impact Report/Environmental Impact Statement
MSCS	Multi-Species Conservation Strategy
POA	Principles of Agreement
TDS	total dissolved solids
TOC	total organic carbon



Table D-5. CALFED Species Enhancement Conservation Measures

Federally Listed as Threatened or Endangered

Mammals

Riparian brush rabbit (*Sylvilagus bachmani riparius*)

1. Coordinate protection, enhancement, and restoration of riparian brush rabbit populations and its habitat with other federal and State programs (e.g., U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service [USFWS] species recovery plans) that could affect management of current and historical habitat use areas. Coordination would avoid conflicts among management objectives and identify opportunities for achieving multiple management objectives.
2. Conduct surveys to identify suitable habitat for establishment of additional populations in the Delta and along the San Joaquin River, and implement introductions to establish five additional populations in these areas by 2020.
3. Direct Ecosystem Restoration Program (ERP) actions proposed for the Stanislaus River toward protecting, enhancing, and restoring suitable riparian and associated flood refuge habitats in and adjacent to occupied habitat at Caswell Memorial State Park.
4. Develop and implement a monitoring plan to assess population status and trends.

San Joaquin Valley woodrat (*Neotoma fuscipes riparia*)

1. Coordinate protection, enhancement, and restoration of San Joaquin Valley woodrat populations and its habitat with other federal and State programs (e.g., USFWS species recovery plans and the U.S. Army Corps of Engineers' [USACE's] Sacramento and San Joaquin Basin Comprehensive Study) that could affect management of current and historical habitat use areas. Coordination would avoid conflicts among management objectives and identify opportunities for achieving multiple management objectives.
2. Direct ERP actions proposed for the Stanislaus River toward protecting, enhancing, and restoring suitable riparian and associated flood refuge habitats in and adjacent to occupied habitat at Caswell Memorial State Park.
3. Direct ERP actions proposed for the San Joaquin River and its major tributaries within the current range of the species toward protecting and enhancing existing occupied habitat, restoring suitable habitat adjacent to occupied habitat, and restoring suitable riparian habitat to create habitat corridors linking isolated populations.

Salt marsh harvest mouse (*Reithrodontomys raviventris*)

1. The geographic priorities for implementing ERP actions to protect, enhance, and restore saline emergent wetlands and associated habitats for the salt marsh harvest mouse should be (1) western Suisun Marsh, (2) Gallinas/Ignacio marshes, Napa marshes, and eastern Suisun Marsh, (3) Sonoma marshes, Petaluma marshes, and Highway 37 marshes west of Sonoma Creek, (4) Point Pinole marshes, (5) Highway 37 marshes east of Sonoma Creek, and (6) the Contra Costa County shoreline.
2. Coordinate protection, enhancement, and restoration of saltmarsh and associated habitats with other federal, State, and regional programs (e.g., the San Francisco Bay Ecosystem Goals Project and USFWS species recovery plans) that could affect management of current and historical habitat use areas. Coordination would avoid conflicts among management objectives and identify opportunities for achieving multiple management objectives.
3. Restore wetland and perennial grassland habitats adjacent to occupied habitats to create a buffer of natural habitat. This buffer would protect populations from adverse effects that could be associated with future changes in land use on nearby lands and provide habitat suitable for the natural expansion of populations.



Table D-5. Continued

Federally Listed as Threatened or Endangered
Mammals (Continued)
Salt marsh harvest mouse ( <i>Reithrodontomys raviventris</i> ) (Continued)
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>4. Initial species recovery efforts should be directed to locations where there are immediate opportunities for protection, enhancement, or restoration of suitable habitat.</li> <li>5. To the extent practicable, design dikes constructed in enhanced and restored saline emergent wetlands to provide optimal wetland-to-upland transitional habitat.</li> <li>6. To the extent practicable, direct ERP saltmarsh enhancement efforts toward existing degraded marshes that are of sufficient size and configuration to develop fourth-order tidal channels (marshes would most likely need to be at least 1,000 acres).</li> <li>7. To the extent practicable, design saltmarsh enhancements and restorations that provide low-angle upland slopes at the upper edge of marshes to provide suitable and sufficient wetland-to-upland transition habitat. Transition habitat zones should be at least 0.25 mile wide.</li> <li>8. Manage enhanced and restored habitat to avoid or minimize impacts on the salt marsh harvest mouse that could be associated with recreational uses on lands acquired or managed under conservation easements.</li> <li>9. Direct restoration efforts toward restoration of lands adjacent to occupied habitat.</li> <li>10. Direct restoration efforts toward improving tidal circulation to diked wetlands that currently sustain partial tidal exchange.</li> <li>11. Direct some habitat enhancements and restorations toward increasing habitat connectivity among existing and restored tidal marshes.</li> <li>12. To the extent practicable, control non-native predator populations in occupied habitat and saltmarshes enhanced and restored under the ERP.</li> <li>13. Control non-native invasive plants in existing saltmarshes where non-native plants have degraded habitat quality and in saltmarshes restored under the ERP.</li> <li>14. Monitor the use of restored saltmarsh habitats by salt marsh harvest mice and the rate at which restored habitats are colonized.</li> <li>15. Acquire conservation easements to adjust grazing regimes and enhance wetland-to-upland transition habitat conditions.</li> <li>16. To the extent consistent with CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED) objectives, manage lands purchased or acquired under conservation easements that are occupied by the species to maintain or increase their current population levels.</li> </ol>
Birds
California clapper rail ( <i>Rallus longirostris obsoletus</i> )
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The geographic priorities for implementing ERP actions to protect, enhance, and restore saline emergent wetlands and associated habitats for the California clapper rail should be (1) Gallinas/Ignacio marshes and Napa marshes, (2) Sonoma marshes, Petaluma marshes, and Highway 37 marshes west of Sonoma Creek, (3) Point Pinole marshes, (4) Highway 37 marshes east of Sonoma Creek, and (5) the Contra Costa County shoreline.</li> </ol>

Table D-5. Continued

Federally Listed as Threatened or Endangered

Birds (Continued)

California clapper rail (*Rallus longirostris obsoletus*) (Continued)

2. Coordinate protection, enhancement, and restoration of saltmarsh and associated habitats with other federal, State, and regional programs (e.g., the San Francisco Bay Ecosystem Goals Project and USFWS species recovery plans) that could affect management of current and historical habitat use areas. Coordination would avoid conflicts among management objectives and identify opportunities for achieving multiple management objectives.
3. Restore wetland and perennial grassland habitats adjacent to occupied nesting habitats to create a buffer of natural habitat. This buffer would protect nesting pairs from adverse effects that could be associated with future changes in land use on nearby lands and provide suitable foraging habitat and nesting habitat suitable for the natural expansion of populations.
4. Initial species recovery efforts should be directed to locations where there are immediate opportunities for protection, enhancement, or restoration of suitable habitat.
5. To the extent practicable, design dikes constructed in enhanced and restored saline emergent wetlands to provide optimal wetland-to-upland transitional habitat.
6. Direct ERP saltmarsh enhancement efforts toward existing degraded marshes that are of sufficient size and configuration to develop fourth-order tidal channels (marshes would most likely need to be at least 1,000 acres).
7. To the extent practicable, design saltmarsh enhancements and restorations that provide low-angle upland slopes at the upper edge of marshes to provide suitable and sufficient wetland-to-upland transition habitat. Transition habitat zones should be at least 0.25 mile wide.
8. Manage enhanced and restored habitat to avoid or minimize impacts on the California clapper rail that could be associated with recreational uses on lands acquired or managed under conservation easements.
9. Direct ERP restoration actions toward improving tidal circulation to diked wetlands that currently sustain partial tidal exchange.
10. Direct some habitat enhancements and restorations toward increasing habitat connectivity among existing and restored tidal marshes.
11. To the extent practicable, control non-native predator populations in occupied habitat and saltmarshes enhanced and restored under the ERP.
12. Identify and implement feasible methods for controlling invasive non-native marsh plants.
13. Monitor to determine use of restored saltmarsh habitat by California clapper rails and the rate at which restored habitats are colonized.

Least Bell's vireo (*Vireo bellii pusillus*)

1. Coordinate protection and restoration of riparian habitat with other federal, State, and nonprofit programs (e.g., the least Bell's vireo recovery plan team, Riparian Habitat Joint Venture, and USACE's Sacramento and San Joaquin Basin Comprehensive Study) that could affect management of historical habitat use areas. Coordination would avoid conflicts among management objectives and identify opportunities for achieving multiple management objectives.
2. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, protect existing riparian habitat from future changes in land use or other activities that could result in the loss or degradation of habitat that would be suitable for reintroductions or natural colonization of the species.

Table D-5. Continued

Federally Listed as Threatened or Endangered
<b>Birds (Continued)</b>
<b>Least Bell's vireo (<i>Vireo bellii pusillus</i>) (Continued)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>3. A portion of restored riparian habitat should be designed to include riparian scrub communities.</li> <li>4. To the extent practicable, restore riparian habitats in patch sizes sufficient to discourage nest parasitism by brown-headed cowbirds.</li> </ol>
<b>Reptiles</b>
<b>Giant garter snake (<i>Thamnophis gigas</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. A substantial portion of tidal wetlands to be restored under the ERP should be restored in the North Delta (the Yolo Basin and Bypass).</li> <li>2. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, protect existing and restore additional habitat in the east Delta to create a corridor of suitable habitat linking Stone Lakes, the Cosumnes River, and White Slough.</li> <li>3. To the extent practicable, design setback levees in the restored Stone Lakes/Cosumnes River/White Slough habitat corridor to include a mosaic of habitats.</li> <li>4. Identify opportunities for implementing levee maintenance practices in the Delta that will maintain suitable levee habitat or minimize the impacts of necessary maintenance on the species and its habitat.</li> <li>5. Incorporate restoration of permanent or seasonal flooded (April–October) suitable habitat as part of a mosaic of the seasonal wetland and agricultural land enhancements to be implemented under the ERP.</li> <li>6. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, locate ERP nontidal marsh restorations near existing occupied habitat, and design restorations to include suitable upland habitat at least 200 feet around restored wetlands.</li> <li>7. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, design levees to be upgraded for flood protection or conveyance to incorporate restoration of suitable wetland and upland habitats for the giant garter snake.</li> <li>8. Include improvements to and maintenance of suitable agricultural infrastructure habitat (i.e., ditches, drains, canals, and levees) as part of ERP actions to improve wildlife habitat values associated with agricultural lands.</li> <li>9. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, manage lands purchased or acquired under conservation easements that are occupied by the species to maintain or increase their current population levels.</li> <li>10. Monitor suitable wetlands restored in the Delta Region adjacent to or near occupied habitats to assess if and when (relative to habitat maturity) giant garter snakes occupy restored habitat or to identify reasons they are not using restored and apparently suitable habitat.</li> </ol>
<b>Fish</b>
<b>Delta smelt (<i>Hypomesus transpacificus</i>) and designated critical habitat</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Coordinate protection, enhancement, and restoration of occupied delta smelt habitats with other federal, State, and regional programs (e.g., the San Francisco Bay Ecosystem Goals Project, the Anadromous Fish Restoration Program, and USFWS recovery plans) that could affect management of current and historical habitat use areas. Coordination would avoid conflicts among management objectives and identify opportunities for achieving multiple management objectives.</li> <li>2. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, direct ERP actions toward setting back levees in the south Delta to increase shallow-water habitat.</li> </ol>

Table D-5. Continued

Federally Listed as Threatened or Endangered

Fish (Continued)

Delta smelt (*Hypomesus transpacificus*) and designated critical habitat (Continued)

3. Restore and enhance delta smelt habitat to provide suitable water quality (i.e., low concentrations of pollutants) and substrates for egg attachment (submerged tree roots, branches, rock, and emergent vegetation) to important spawning areas.
4. Expand Interagency Ecological Program (IEP) monitoring efforts in the south Delta for delta smelt.
5. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, initiate implementation of USFWS's "Rainbow Report" or similar documentation to provide increased water quality in the south Delta and eliminate or reduce the need for installation of barriers.
6. Monitor to determine if artificial substrates are used by delta smelt for spawning.
7. Protect critical rearing habitat from high salinity (>2 parts per thousand [ppt]) and high concentration of pollutants from February 1 to August 31.
8. Allow delta smelt unrestricted access to suitable spawning habitat and protect these areas from physical disturbance (e.g., heavy equipment operation) and flow disruption from December to July. Maintaining adequate flow and suitable water quality would attract migrating adults in the Sacramento and San Joaquin River channels and their tributaries, including Cache and Montezuma Sloughs and their tributaries.
9. All in-channel modification projects implemented under CALFED should use best management practices to minimize mobilization of sediments that might contain toxins, localize sediment movement, and reduce turbidity.

Sacramento splittail (*Pogonichthys macrolepidotus*)

1. Coordinate protection, enhancement, and restoration of occupied and historical Sacramento splittail habitats with other federal, State, and regional programs (e.g., the San Francisco Bay Ecosystem Goals Project, the Anadromous Fish Restoration Program, USFWS recovery plans, the Senate Bill [SB] 1086 program, and USACE's Sacramento and San Joaquin Basin Comprehensive Study) that could affect management of current and historical habitat use areas. Coordination would avoid conflicts among management objectives and identify opportunities for achieving multiple management objectives.
2. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, remove diversion dams that block splittail access to lower floodplain river spawning areas.
3. Minimize changes in the timing and volume of freshwater flows in the rivers to the Bay-Delta.
4. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, direct ERP actions toward setting back levees in the south Delta to increase shallow-water habitat.
5. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, reduce the extent of reversed flows in the lower San Joaquin and Delta from February through June.
6. Reduce the loss of splittail at south Delta pumping plants from predation and salvage handling and transport.
7. Reduce the loss of young splittail to entrainment into south-Delta pumping plants.
8. To the extent practicable, reduce the loss of splittail at 1,800 unscreened diversions in the Delta.
9. Reduce losses of adult splittail spawners during their upstream migrations to recreational fishery harvest.
10. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, improve Delta water quality, particularly in dry years when pesticide levels and total dissolved solids are high.

Table D-5. Continued

Federally Listed as Threatened or Endangered
Fish (Continued)
Sacramento splittail ( <i>Pogonichthys macrolepidotus</i> ) (Continued)
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>11. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, reduce the concentration of pollutants in the Colusa Basin drain and other agricultural drains into the Bay-Delta and its watershed.</li> <li>12. Modify operation of the DCC to minimize the potential to increase exposure of splittail population in the Delta to the south-Delta pumping plants.</li> <li>13. Modify operation of the barrier at the Head of Old River to minimize the potential for drawing splittail toward the south-Delta pumping plants.</li> <li>14. To the extent practicable, design and construct overflow basins from existing leveed lands in stages using construction design and operating schemes and procedures developed through pilot studies and project experience. The purpose of this action is to minimize the potential for stranding splittail as waters recede from overflow areas.</li> <li>15. Design and construct a new intake screen system at the entrance to Clifton Court Forebay that minimizes potential involvement of splittail. Connect intakes of Tracy Pumping Plant to Clifton Court Forebay.</li> <li>16. Consistent with CALFED objectives, design modifications to south-Delta channels to improve circulation and transport of north-of-Delta water to the south-Delta pumping plants. This action would ensure that habitat supports splittail and that transport of splittail to the south-Delta pumping plants is not increased.</li> <li>17. To the extent practicable, design seasonal wetlands that have hydrological connectivity with occupied channels to reduce the likelihood of stranding and to provide the structural conditions necessary for spawning.</li> <li>18. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, protect spawning areas by providing suitable water quality (i.e., low concentrations of pollutants) and substrates for egg attachment (e.g., submerged tree roots and branches, and above-water and submersed vegetation).</li> <li>19. Avoid or minimize adverse effects on rearing habitat of physical disturbance (e.g., sand and gravel mining, diking, dredging, and levee or bank protection and maintenance) and flow disruption (e.g., water diversions, in-channel barriers, or tidal gates).</li> <li>20. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, maintain a low salinity zone in historically occupied habitat of the Bay and Delta from February 1 to August 31.</li> <li>21. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, provide unrestricted access of adults to spawning habitat from December to July by maintaining adequate flow and water quality, and minimizing disturbance and flow disruption.</li> <li>22. Expand IEP monitoring efforts in the south Delta for Sacramento splittail.</li> <li>23. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, initiate implementation of the USFWS's "Rainbow Report" or similar documentation to provide increased water quality in the south Delta and eliminate or reduce the need for installation of barriers.</li> <li>24. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, reduce the effects on splittail from changes in reservoir operations and ramping rates for flood control.</li> <li>25. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, reduce the loss of freshwater and low-salinity splittail habitat in the Bay-Delta as a result of reductions in Delta inflow and outflow.</li> <li>26. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, increase the frequency of flood bypass flooding in non-wet years to improve splittail spawning and early rearing habitat.</li> </ol>

Table D-5. Continued

Federally Listed as Threatened or Endangered
<b>Fish (Continued)</b>
<b>Sacramento splittail (<i>Pogonichthys macrolepidotus</i>) (Continued)</b>
<p>27. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, ensure that the Yolo and Sutter Bypasses are flooded during the spawning season at least once every 5 years.</p> <p>28. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, improve the frequency, duration, and extent of bypass flooding in all years.</p> <p>29. Develop a water management plan to allocate multiyear water supply in reservoirs to protect drought-year supplies and the source of winter-spring Delta inflow and outflow needed to sustain splittail and their habitats.</p>
<b>Invertebrates</b>
<b>Delta green ground beetle (<i>Elaphrus viridis</i>) and designated critical habitat</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Coordinate protection, enhancement, and restoration of delta green ground beetle populations and its habitat with other federal and State programs (e.g., USFWS species recovery plans and management of the Jepson Prairie Preserve) that could affect management of current and historical habitat. Coordination would avoid conflicts among management objectives and identify opportunities for achieving multiple management objectives.</li> <li>2. Direct ERP actions toward protecting, enhancing, and restoring suitable vernal pool and associated grassland habitat within the species historical range, including expansion of Jepson Prairie Preserve westward to Travis Air Force Base.</li> <li>3. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, direct ERP actions toward protection of the Davis Antenna Site population.</li> <li>4. Conduct surveys to identify suitable habitat, including enhanced and restored habitats, for establishment of additional populations in the Delta and Bay Regions, and implement species introductions to establish three additional populations.</li> <li>5. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, manage lands purchased or acquired under conservation easements that are occupied by the species to maintain or increase current population levels, and enhance occupied habitat.</li> </ol>
<b>Valley elderberry longhorn beetle (<i>Desmocerus californicus dimorphus</i>) and designated critical habitat</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Coordinate protection and restoration of riparian habitats with other federal and State programs (e.g., USFWS recovery plans, the SB 1086 program, and USACE's Sacramento and San Joaquin Basin Comprehensive Study) that could affect management of occupied and historical habitat use areas. Coordination would avoid conflicts among management objectives and identify opportunities for achieving multiple management objectives.</li> <li>2. Within the species' current range, design ERP riparian habitat enhancements and restorations to include suitable riparian edge habitat, including elderberry savanna.</li> <li>3. Initially direct ERP riparian habitat actions toward enhancement and restoration of habitat located near occupied habitat to encourage the natural expansion of the species' range.</li> <li>4. Include sufficient buffer habitat around suitable restored and enhanced habitat within the species' range to reduce adverse effects associated with pesticide drift.</li> </ol>

Table D-5. Continued

Federally Listed as Threatened or Endangered
Invertebrates (Continued)
Valley elderberry longhorn beetle ( <i>Desmocerus californicus dimorphus</i> ) and designated critical habitat (Continued)
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, implement levee maintenance guidelines to protect suitable habitat.</li> <li>6. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, design levees to encourage the establishment and long-term maintenance of suitable habitat.</li> </ol>
Lange's metalmark butterfly ( <i>Apodemia mormo langei</i> )
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Coordinate protection and restoration of inland dune scrub habitats with other programs (e.g., USFWS recovery plans and management of the Antioch Dunes Preserve) that could affect management of occupied and historical habitat use areas. Coordination would avoid conflicts among management objectives and identify opportunities for achieving multiple management objectives.</li> <li>2. Conduct surveys to locate potential habitat restoration sites on Timmin soils and identify opportunities for and implement permanent protection, restoration, and management of these habitat to enhance habitat conditions for the Lange's metalmark.</li> <li>3. Monitor enhanced and restored habitat to determine the success of enhancement and restoration methods, and to determine the response of the Lange's metalmark populations to management.</li> </ol>
Plants
Soft bird's-beak ( <i>Cordylanthus mollis</i> ssp. <i>mollis</i> )
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Expand potential habitat by improving tidal circulation to diked wetlands that sustain some existing exchange.</li> <li>2. Identify opportunities for establishing new populations or expanding existing populations and habitat.</li> <li>3. Establish soft bird's-beak populations to existing and restored suitable habitat.</li> <li>4. Control and reduce populations of non-native marsh species with potential effects on soft bird's-beak and potential soft bird's-beak habitat.</li> <li>5. Monitor the population size and vigor of all extant occurrences at a 2-year interval for the duration of program; design and implement remediation measures if the recovery goal is not met.</li> <li>6. Modify conservation measures according to the adaptive management process as more understanding is developed of recovery needs.</li> </ol>
Suisun thistle ( <i>Cirsium hydrophilum</i> var. <i>hydrophilum</i> )
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Identify opportunities for establishing new populations or expanding existing populations and habitat.</li> <li>2. Control and reduce populations of non-native marsh species that might affect Suisun thistle and potential Suisun thistle habitat.</li> <li>3. Monitor the population size and vigor of all extant occurrences at a 2-year interval for the duration of the program.</li> <li>4. Modify conservation measures according to the adaptive management process as more understanding of recovery needs is developed.</li> </ol>



Table D-5. Continued

Federally Listed as Threatened or Endangered
<b>Plants (Continued)</b>
<b>Antioch Dunes evening-primrose (<i>Oenothera deltoides</i> ssp. <i>howellii</i>) and designated critical habitat, and Contra Costa wallflower (<i>Erysimum capitatum</i> ssp. <i>angustatum</i>) and designated critical habitat</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Coordinate protection and restoration of inland dune scrub habitats with other programs (e.g., USFWS recovery plans and management of the Antioch Dunes Preserve) that could affect management of occupied and historical habitat. Coordination would avoid conflicts among management objectives and identify opportunities for achieving multiple management objectives.</li> <li>2. Conduct surveys to locate potential habitat restoration sites on Tinnin soils. Identify opportunities for and implement permanent protection, restoration, and management of habitat to enhance habitat conditions for these species.</li> <li>3. Enhance and maintain existing occurrences.</li> <li>4. Annually monitor establishment success and modify establishment and management techniques as needed using adaptive management.</li> </ol>
<b>Crampton's tuctoria (<i>Tuctoria mucronata</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Establish three new self-sustaining populations in conjunction with establishment of Delta green ground beetle populations.</li> <li>2. Maintain existing populations.</li> </ol>
Other Evaluated Species
<b>Mammals</b>
<b>San Pablo California vole (<i>Microtus californicus sanpabloensis</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Coordinate protection, enhancement, and restoration of saltmarsh and associated habitats with other federal, State, and regional programs (e.g., the San Francisco Bay Ecosystem Goals Project and USFWS species recovery plans) that could affect management of current and historical habitat use areas. Coordination would avoid conflicts among management objectives and identify opportunities for achieving multiple management objectives.</li> <li>2. Restore wetland and perennial grassland habitats adjacent to occupied habitats to create a buffer of natural habitat. This buffer would protect populations from adverse effects that could be associated with future changes in land use on nearby lands and provide habitat suitable for the natural expansion of populations.</li> <li>3. Manage enhanced and restored habitat to avoid or minimize impacts on the San Pablo California vole that could be associated with recreational uses on lands acquired or managed under conservation easements.</li> <li>4. To the extent practicable, acquire, restore, and manage historical tidal saltmarshes and surrounding lands occupied by the San Pablo California vole along the west side of Point Pinole to tidal marsh with sufficient wetland-to-upland transition and adjacent upland habitat to improve habitat conditions for the species.</li> <li>5. To the extent practicable, control non-native predator populations in occupied habitat and saltmarshes enhanced and restored under the ERP.</li> <li>6. Identify and implement feasible methods for controlling invasive non-native marsh plants.</li> <li>7. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, manage lands purchased or acquired under conservation easements that are occupied by the species to maintain or increase their current population levels.</li> </ol>



Table D-5. Continued

Other Evaluated Species
Mammals (Continued)
<b>Suisun ornate shrew (<i>Sorex ornatus sinuosus</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The geographic priorities for implementing ERP actions to protect, enhance, and restore saline emergent wetlands and associated habitats for the Suisun ornate shrew should be (1) western Suisun Marsh, (2) Napa marshes and eastern Suisun Marsh, and (3) Sonoma marshes and Highway 37 marshes west of Sonoma Creek.</li> <li>2. Coordinate protection, enhancement, and restoration of saltmarsh and associated habitats with other federal, State, and regional programs (e.g., the San Francisco Bay Ecosystem Goals Project and USFWS species recovery plans) that could affect management of current and historical habitat use areas. Coordination would avoid conflicts among management objectives and identify opportunities for achieving multiple management objectives.</li> <li>3. Initial species recovery efforts should be directed to locations where there are immediate opportunities for protection, enhancement, or restoration of suitable habitat.</li> <li>4. To the extent practicable, direct ERP saltmarsh enhancement efforts toward existing degraded marshes that are of sufficient size and configuration to develop fourth-order tidal channels (marshes would likely need to be at least 1,000 acres).</li> <li>5. Restore wetlands and perennial grassland habitats adjacent to occupied habitats to create a buffer of natural habitat. This buffer would protect populations from adverse effects that could be associated with future changes in land use on nearby lands and provide habitat suitable for the natural expansion of populations.</li> <li>6. To the extent practicable, design saltmarsh enhancements and restorations that provide low-angle upland slopes at the upper edge of marshes to provide suitable and sufficient wetlands-to-upland transition habitat. Transition habitat zones should be at least 0.25 mile wide.</li> <li>7. Manage enhanced and restored habitat to avoid or minimize impacts on the Suisun ornate shrew that could be associated with recreational uses on lands acquired or managed under conservation easements.</li> <li>8. Direct saltmarsh habitat enhancements and restorations toward increasing habitat connectivity among existing and restored tidal marshes within the range of the Suisun ornate shrew.</li> <li>9. To the extent practicable, design dikes constructed in enhanced and restored saline emergent wetlands to provide optimal wetlands-to-upland transitional habitat.</li> <li>10. Identify and implement feasible methods for controlling invasive non-native marsh plants.</li> <li>11. To the extent practicable, control non-native predator populations in occupied habitat and saltmarshes enhanced and restored under the ERP.</li> <li>12. Provide interim management of occupied saltmarshes to maintain source populations until restored habitats have developed sufficiently to provide suitable habitat.</li> <li>13. Acquire conservation easements to adjust grazing regimes to enhance wetlands-to-upland transition habitat conditions in occupied habitat.</li> <li>14. Conduct research to determine use of restored saltmarsh habitats by Suisun ornate shrews and the rate at which restored habitats are colonized.</li> </ol>

Table D-5. Continued

Other Evaluated Species

Birds

Bank swallow (*Riparia riparia*)

1. Coordinate protection and restoration of channel meander belts and existing bank swallow colonies with other federal and State programs (e.g., the SB 1086 program and USACE's Sacramento and San Joaquin Basin Comprehensive Study) that could affect management of current and historical habitat use areas. Coordination would avoid conflicts among management objectives and identify opportunities for achieving multiple management objectives.
2. Proposed ERP actions designed to protect or restore stream meander belts should initially be implemented along reaches of the Sacramento River and its tributaries that support nesting colonies or nesting habitat.
3. Monitor to determine the response of bank swallows to restoration of stream meander belts and riparian habitat.
4. Coordinate with the U.S. Bureau of Reclamation and California Department of Water Resources (DWR) to phase spring-summer reservoir releases in a manner that would reduce the potential for adverse effects on nesting colonies that could result from large, pulsed releases.
5. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, protect all known nesting colonies from future changes in land use or activities that could adversely affect colonies.

California black rail (*Laterallus jamaicensis coturniculus*)

1. The geographic priorities for implementing ERP actions to protect, enhance, and restore saline emergent wetlands and associated habitats for the California black rail within the Bay Region should be (1) western Suisun Marsh, (2) Gallinas/Ignacio marshes, Napa marshes, and eastern Suisun Marsh, (3) Sonoma marshes, Petaluma marshes, and Highway 37 marshes west of Sonoma Creek, (4) Point Pinole marshes, (5) Highway 37 marshes east of Sonoma Creek, and (6) the Contra Costa County shoreline.
2. Coordinate protection, enhancement, and restoration of saltmarsh, freshwater marsh, and associated habitats with other federal, State, and regional programs (e.g., the San Francisco Bay Ecosystem Goals Project and USFWS species recovery plans) that could affect management of current and historical habitat use areas. Coordination would avoid conflicts among management objectives and identify opportunities for achieving multiple management objectives.
3. Restore wetland and perennial grassland habitats adjacent to occupied nesting habitats to create a buffer of natural habitat. This buffer would protect nesting pairs from adverse effects that could be associated with future changes in land use on nearby lands and provide suitable foraging habitat and nesting habitat suitable for the natural expansion of populations.
4. Initial species recovery efforts should be directed to locations where there are immediate opportunities for protection, enhancement, or restoration of suitable habitat.
5. To the extent practicable, design dikes constructed in enhanced and restored saline emergent wetlands to provide optimal wetland-to-upland transitional habitat.
6. Direct ERP saltmarsh and freshwater marsh enhancement efforts toward existing degraded marshes that are of sufficient size and configuration to develop fourth order tidal channels (marshes would most likely need to be at least 1,000 acres).
7. To the extent practicable, design saltmarsh and freshwater marsh enhancements and restorations that provide low-angle upland slopes at the upper edge of marshes to provide suitable and sufficient wetland-to-upland transition habitat. Transition habitat zones should be at least 0.25 mile wide.

Table D-5. Continued

Other Evaluated Species
<b>Birds (Continued)</b>
<b>California black rail (<i>Laterallus jamaicensis coturniculus</i>) (Continued)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>8. Manage enhanced and restored habitat to avoid or minimize impacts on the California black rail that could be associated with recreational uses on lands acquired or managed under conservation easements.</li> <li>9. Direct ERP habitat restorations toward improving tidal circulation to diked wetlands that currently sustain partial tidal exchange.</li> <li>10. Direct some habitat enhancements and restorations toward increasing habitat connectivity among existing and restored tidal marshes.</li> <li>11. To the extent practicable, control non-native predator populations in occupied habitat and saltmarshes and freshwater marshes enhanced and restored under the ERP.</li> <li>12. Identify and implement feasible methods for controlling invasive non-native marsh plants.</li> <li>13. Monitor to determine use of restored saltmarsh and freshwater marsh habitats by California black rails and the rate at which restored habitats are colonized.</li> <li>14. Acquire conservation easements in occupied habitat to adjust grazing regimes and enhance wetland-to-upland transition habitat conditions.</li> </ol>
<b>California yellow warbler (<i>Dendroica petechia brewsteri</i>) and Little willow flycatcher (<i>Empidonax traillii brewsteri</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Coordinate protection and restoration of riparian habitat with other federal, State, and nonprofit programs (e.g., the Riparian Habitat Joint Venture, the SB 1086 program, and USACE's Sacramento and San Joaquin Basin Comprehensive Study) that could affect management of current and historical habitat use areas. Coordination would avoid conflicts among management objectives and identify opportunities for achieving multiple management objectives.</li> <li>2. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, protect existing suitable riparian habitat corridors from future changes in land use or other activities that could result in the loss or degradation of habitat.</li> <li>3. A portion of restored riparian habitat should be designed to include riparian scrub communities.</li> <li>4. To the extent practicable, restore riparian habitats in patch sizes sufficient to discourage nest parasitism by brown-headed cowbirds.</li> </ol>
<b>Greater sandhill crane (<i>Grus canadensis tabida</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, implement ERP actions in concert with the species recovery strategies identified in Assembly Bill 1280 and the Pacific Flyway Plan.</li> <li>2. Implementation of proposed ERP actions to enhance agricultural habitats should give priority to improving the abundance and availability of upland agricultural forage (e.g., corn and winter wheat) in the core use area centered around Bract Tract.</li> <li>3. Implementation of proposed ERP actions to restore wetlands should give priority to restoring and managing wetland habitat within the core use area centered on Bract Tract that would provide suitable roosting habitat.</li> <li>4. Avoid or minimize recreational uses in the core area centered on Bract Tract that could disrupt crane habitat use patterns from October through March.</li> </ol>

Table D-5. Continued

Other Evaluated Species

Birds (Continued)

Greater sandhill crane (*Grus canadensis tabida*) (Continued)

5. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, at least 10% of agricultural lands to be enhanced under the ERP in the Delta and the Butte Sink should be managed to increase forage abundance and availability for cranes. Priority should be given to implementing these habitat improvements within 10 miles of the core habitat centered on Bract Tract.
6. Monitor to determine use of protected, restored, and enhanced habitats by sandhill cranes in core wintering areas.

Saltmarsh common yellowthroat (*Geothlypis trichas sinuosa*)

1. The geographic priorities for implementing ERP actions to protect, enhance, and restore saline emergent wetlands and associated habitats for the saltmarsh common yellowthroat should be (1) Gallinas/Ignacio marshes and Napa marshes, (2) Sonoma marshes, Petaluma marshes, and Highway 37 marshes west of Sonoma Creek, (3) Point Pinole marshes, (4) Highway 37 marshes east of Sonoma Creek, and (5) the Contra Costa County shoreline.
2. Coordinate protection, enhancement, and restoration of saltmarsh and associated habitats with other federal, State, and regional programs (e.g., the San Francisco Bay Ecosystem Goals Project and USFWS species recovery plans) that could affect management of current and historical habitat use areas. Coordination would avoid conflicts among management objectives and identify opportunities for achieving multiple management objectives.
3. Restore wetland and perennial grassland habitats adjacent to occupied nesting habitats to create a buffer of natural habitat. This buffer would protect nesting pairs from adverse effects that could be associated with future changes in land use on nearby lands and provide suitable foraging habitat and nesting habitat suitable for the natural expansion of populations.
4. Initial species recovery efforts should be directed to locations where there are immediate opportunities for protection, enhancement, or restoration of suitable habitat.
5. To the extent practicable, design dikes constructed in enhanced and restored saline emergent wetlands to provide optimal wetland-to-upland transitional habitat.
6. Direct ERP saltmarsh enhancement efforts toward existing degraded marshes that are of sufficient size and configuration to develop fourth-order tidal channels (marshes would most likely need to be at least 1,000 acres).
7. To the extent practicable, design saltmarsh enhancements and restorations that provide low-angle upland slopes at the upper edge of marshes to provide suitable and sufficient wetland-to-upland transition habitat. Transition habitat zones should be at least 0.25 mile wide.
8. Manage enhanced and restored habitat to avoid or minimize impacts on the saltmarsh common yellowthroat that could be associated with recreational uses on lands acquired or managed under conservation easements.
9. Direct ERP restorations toward improving tidal circulation to diked wetlands that currently sustain partial tidal exchange.
10. Direct some habitat enhancements and restorations toward increasing habitat connectivity among existing and restored tidal marshes.
11. To the extent practicable, control non-native predator populations in occupied habitat and saltmarshes enhanced and restored under the ERP.

Table D-5. Continued

Other Evaluated Species
<b>Birds (Continued)</b>
<b>Saltmarsh common yellowthroat (<i>Geothlypis trichas sinuosa</i>) (Continued)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>12. Identify and implement feasible methods for controlling invasive non-native marsh plants.</li> <li>13. Monitor to determine the use of restored saltmarsh habitat by saltmarsh common yellowthroats and the rate at which restored habitats are colonized.</li> </ol>
<b>San Pablo song sparrow (<i>Melospiza melodia samuells</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The geographic priorities for implementing ERP actions to protect, enhance, and restore saline emergent wetlands and associated habitats for the San Pablo song sparrow should be (1) Gallinas/Ignacio marshes and Napa marshes, (2) Sonoma marshes, Petaluma marshes, and Highway 37 marshes west of Sonoma Creek, (3) Point Pinole marshes, and (4) Highway 37 marshes east of Sonoma Creek.</li> <li>2. Coordinate protection, enhancement, and restoration of saltmarsh and associated habitats with other federal, State, and regional programs (e.g., the San Francisco Bay Ecosystem Goals Project and USFWS species recovery plans) that could affect management of current and historical habitat use areas. Coordination would avoid conflicts among management objectives and identify opportunities for achieving multiple management objectives.</li> <li>3. Restore wetlands and perennial grassland habitats adjacent to occupied nesting habitats to create a buffer of natural habitat. This buffer would protect nesting pairs from adverse effects that could be associated with future changes in land use on nearby lands and provide suitable foraging habitat and nesting habitat suitable for the natural expansion of populations.</li> <li>4. Initial species recovery efforts should be directed to locations where there are immediate opportunities for protection, enhancement, or restoration of suitable habitat.</li> <li>5. Design dikes constructed in enhanced and restored saline emergent wetlands to provide optimal wetlands-to-upland transitional habitat.</li> <li>6. To the extent practicable, direct ERP saltmarsh enhancement efforts toward existing degraded marshes that are of sufficient size and configuration to develop fourth-order tidal channels (marshes would most likely need to be at least 1,000 acres).</li> <li>7. To the extent practicable, design saltmarsh enhancements and restorations that provide low-angle upland slopes at the upper edge of marshes to provide suitable and sufficient wetlands-to-upland transition habitat. Transition habitat zones should be at least 0.25 mile wide.</li> <li>8. Manage enhanced and restored habitat to avoid or minimize impacts on the San Pablo song sparrow that could be associated with recreational uses on lands acquired or managed under conservation easements.</li> <li>9. Identify and implement feasible methods for controlling invasive non-native marsh plants.</li> <li>10. Conduct research to determine use of restored saltmarsh habitats by San Pablo song sparrows and the rate at which restored habitats are colonized.</li> <li>11. To the extent practicable, control non-native predator populations in occupied habitat and saltmarshes enhanced and restored under the ERP.</li> </ol>

Table D-5. Continued

Other Evaluated Species

Birds (Continued)

Suisun song sparrow (*Melospiza melodia macularis*)

1. The geographic priorities for implementing ERP actions to protect, enhance, and restore saline emergent wetlands and associated habitats for the Suisun song sparrow should be (1) western Suisun Marsh, (2) eastern Suisun Marsh, and (3) the Contra Costa County shoreline.
2. Coordinate protection, enhancement, and restoration of saltmarsh and associated habitats with other federal, State, and regional programs (e.g., the San Francisco Bay Ecosystem Goals Project and USFWS species recovery plans) that could affect management of current and historical habitat use areas. Coordination would avoid conflicts among management objectives and identify opportunities for achieving multiple management objectives.
3. Restore wetlands and perennial grassland habitats adjacent to occupied nesting habitats to create a buffer of natural habitat. This buffer would protect nesting pairs from adverse effects that could be associated with future changes in land use on nearby lands and provide suitable foraging habitat and nesting habitat suitable for the natural expansion of populations.
4. Initial species recovery efforts should be directed to locations where there are immediate opportunities for protection, enhancement, or restoration of suitable habitat.
5. To the extent practicable, design dikes constructed in enhanced and restored saline emergent wetlands to provide optimal wetlands-to-upland transitional habitat.
6. To the extent practicable, direct ERP saltmarsh enhancement efforts toward existing degraded marshes that are of sufficient size and configuration to develop fourth-order tidal channels (marshes would most likely need to be at least 1,000 acres).
7. To the extent practicable, design saltmarsh enhancements and restorations that provide low-angle upland slopes at the upper edge of marshes to provide suitable and sufficient wetlands-to-upland transition habitat. Transition habitat zones should be at least 0.25 mile wide.
8. Control non-native invasive plants in existing saltmarshes where non-native plants have degraded habitat quality and in saltmarshes restored under the ERP.
9. Manage enhanced and restored habitat to avoid or minimize impacts on the Suisun song sparrow that could be associated with recreational uses on lands acquired or managed under conservation easements on the Suisun song sparrow.
10. Direct saltmarsh habitat enhancements and restorations toward increasing habitat connectivity among existing occupied and restored tidal marshes.
11. To the extent practicable, direct ERP restorations to improve tidal circulation to diked wetlands that currently sustain partial tidal exchange.
12. To the extent practicable, control non-native predator populations in occupied habitat and saltmarshes enhanced and restored under the ERP.
13. Identify and implement feasible methods for controlling invasive non-native marsh plants.
14. Conduct research to determine use of restored saltmarsh habitats by Suisun song sparrows and the rate at which restored habitats are colonized.
15. Acquire conservation easements to adjust grazing regimes to enhance wetlands-to-upland transition habitat conditions.

Table D-5. Continued

Other Evaluated Species
<b>Birds (Continued)</b>
<b>Swainson's hawk (<i>Buteo swainsoni</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Proposed ERP actions designed to restore valley/foothill riparian habitat should initially be implemented in the Delta.</li> <li>2. To the extent practicable, design restored seasonal wetlands in occupied habitat to provide overwinter refuge for rodents to provide source prey populations during spring and summer.</li> <li>3. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, enhance at least 10% of agricultural lands to be enhanced under the ERP in the Delta, Sacramento River, and San Joaquin River Regions to increase forage abundance and availability within 10 miles of occupied habitat.</li> <li>4. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, manage lands purchased or acquired under conservation easements that are occupied by the species to maintain or increase their current population levels.</li> <li>5. To the extent practicable, manage restored or enhanced habitats under the ERP to maintain desirable rodent populations and minimize impacts associated with rodent control.</li> </ol>
<b>Western yellow-billed cuckoo (<i>Coccyzus americanus occidentalis</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Coordinate protection and restoration of riparian habitat with other federal, State, and nonprofit programs (e.g., the Riparian Habitat Joint Venture, the SB 1086 program, and USACE's Sacramento and San Joaquin Basin Comprehensive Study) that could affect management of current and historical habitat use areas. Coordination would avoid conflicts among management objectives and identify opportunities for achieving multiple management objectives.</li> <li>2. Initially direct ERP actions to restore suitable valley/foothill riparian forest and woodland along at least 10 contiguous miles of channels in the Delta to create a riparian forest corridor at least 200 meters wide.</li> <li>3. Restore contiguous blocks of suitable valley/foothill riparian forest and woodland at least 200 meters wide and 500 acres in size along reaches of the Sacramento River adjacent to occupied habitat (Red Bluff to Colusa).</li> </ol>
<b>Fish</b>
<b>Longfin smelt (<i>Spirinchus thaleichthys</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Coordinate protection, enhancement, and restoration of occupied longfin smelt habitats with other federal, State, and regional programs (e.g., the San Francisco Bay Ecosystem Goals Project, the Anadromous Fish Restoration Program, and USFWS recovery plans) that could affect management of current and historical habitat use areas to avoid conflicts among management objectives and identify opportunities for achieving multiple management objectives.</li> <li>2. Improve January and February flows for the longfin smelt during the second and subsequent years of drought periods.</li> <li>3. Provide sufficient Delta outflows for the longfin smelt from December through March.</li> <li>4. Provide suitable water quality and substrates for egg attachment (submerged tree roots, branches, rock, and emergent vegetation) to spawning areas in the Delta and tributaries of northern Suisun Bay.</li> <li>5. Provide unrestricted access to suitable spawning habitat and protect these areas from physical disturbance (e.g., heavy equipment operation) and flow disruption from December to July. Maintaining adequate flow and suitable water quality would attract migrating adults in the Sacramento and San Joaquin River channels and their tributaries, including Cache and Montezuma Sloughs and their tributaries.</li> <li>6. Conduct research to determine the relationship between X2 and longfin smelt abundance and distribution.</li> </ol>



Table D-5. Continued

Other Evaluated Species
<b>Fish (Continued)</b>
<b>Longfin smelt (<i>Spirinchus thaleichthys</i>) (Continued)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>7. Consistent with CALFED objectives, mobilize organic carbon in the Yolo Bypass to improve food supplies by ensuring flow through the bypass at least every other year.</li> <li>8. Consistent with CALFED objectives, operate diversions to minimize adverse effects of diversions on longfin smelt during the peak spawning period (January–March).</li> <li>9. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, protect the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers and tributary channels from physical disturbance (e.g., sand and gravel mining, diking, dredging, and levee or bank protection and maintenance) and flow disruption (e.g., water diversions that result in entrainment and in-channel barriers or tidal gates) from February 1 to August 31.</li> <li>10. Protect critical rearing habitat from high salinity (&gt;2 ppt) and high concentration of pollutants from February 1 to August 31.</li> </ol>
<b>Sacramento perch (<i>Archoplites interruptus</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Coordinate protection, enhancement, and restoration of the Sacramento perch and its habitats with other federal, State, and regional programs (e.g., USFWS recovery plans) that could affect management of current and historical habitat use areas. Coordination would avoid conflicts among management objectives and identify opportunities for achieving multiple management objectives.</li> <li>2. Implement reintroductions into suitable habitat, and manage habitat to maintain introduced populations.</li> </ol>
<b>Plants</b>
<b>Alkali milkvetch (<i>Astragalus tener</i> var. <i>tener</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Protect extant populations, and reintroduce species near extirpated populations.</li> <li>2. Monitor status and distribution of populations for the duration of CALFED, and design and implement conservation measures if a decline in population size or vigor is observed.</li> </ol>
<b>Bristly sedge (<i>Carex comosa</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Identify and implement opportunities to restore suitable wetland habitat within ERP nontidal freshwater marsh restoration actions.</li> </ol>
<b>Delta coyote-thistle (<i>Eryngium racemosum</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Survey all extant populations and other suitable habitat and update ecological, population, and land ownership information.</li> <li>2. Based on survey results, bring at least an additional 10 of the largest naturally occurring populations that are viable in the long term into permanent protected status and provide sufficient buffers for each. New populations will be evaluated based on geographic representation, viability, genetics, ecology, and opportunity for long-term protection. The objective is to establish a collection of protected populations that represent the full range of the species' biological and ecological amplitude.</li> <li>3. Manage the protected populations for long-term viability. This measure includes research into the coyote-thistle's ecological requirements (biotic and abiotic) and appropriate management strategies. Evaluate and implement appropriate habitat management measures for maintaining populations and suitable habitat.</li> <li>4. Establish and protect new populations in newly created floodplain habitat along the San Joaquin River and associated sloughs in Merced and Stanislaus counties. Study the genetic structure of extant populations before establishment activities begin so that new populations are created using appropriate genetic stock.</li> </ol>



Table D-5. Continued

Other Evaluated Species
<b>Plants (Continued)</b>
<b>Delta coyote-thistle (<i>Eryngium racemosum</i>) (Continued)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>5. Restore, enhance, and protect unoccupied suitable habitat near existing populations, and avoid impacts on existing populations to the greatest extent practicable during restoration activities.</li> <li>6. Monitor population trends for all natural protected and unprotected populations once every 5 years for the life of CALFED.</li> <li>7. Once methods for successful population creation, restoration, and repatriation have been tested, evaluated, and implemented, monitor trends for these populations once a year for 5 years and then once every 2 years for an additional 6 years. When any of these populations demonstrates successful establishment, monitor trends every 5 years for the remainder of CALFED.</li> </ol>
<b>Delta mudwort (<i>Limosella subulata</i>) and Delta tule pea (<i>Lathyrus jepsonii</i> var. <i>jepsonii</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Maintain processes that support the dynamic habitat of Delta mudwort and Delta tule pea throughout the species' range and associated with existing source populations.</li> <li>2. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, create unvegetated, exposed substrate at tidal margins of restored and created tidal fresh emergent wetland and riparian habitat.</li> <li>3. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, incorporate suitable habitat for these species into levee designs.</li> <li>4. Incorporate sufficient edge habitat to support the species in levee set back and channel island habitat restoration designs.</li> <li>5. Maximize sinuosity of restored and created slough channels to increase water-land edge habitat.</li> <li>6. Maintain and restore habitat and populations throughout the species geographic ranges, and expand the species ranges to the historical and ecological ranges based on hydrological, salinity, and other habitat attributes.</li> <li>7. Monitor existing populations and their habitat at 5-year intervals.</li> </ol>
<b>Mason's lilaeopsis (<i>Lilaeopsis masonii</i>) and Sulsun Marsh aster (<i>Aster lentus</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Maintain processes that support the dynamic habitat distributed throughout the species' range and associated with existing source populations (species occurs on eroding margins of levees).</li> <li>2. To the extent practicable, design restoration of tidal habitats to create unvegetated, exposed substrate habitat at tidal margins of tidal fresh emergent wetlands and riparian habitat.</li> <li>3. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, incorporate sufficient edge habitat to support the species in levee setback and channel island habitat restoration designs.</li> <li>4. To the extent practicable, maximize sinuosity of restored and created slough channels to increase water-land edge habitat.</li> <li>5. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, maintain and restore habitat and populations throughout the species' geographic ranges and expand habitat and populations to their historical and ecological ranges based on hydrologic, salinity, and other habitat requirements of the species.</li> <li>6. Consistent with CALFED objectives, incorporate suitable habitat for these species in bank protection designs used in CALFED actions.</li> <li>7. Monitor status and distribution of the species at 5-year intervals and document expansion of the species into restored habitat for the duration of the program.</li> </ol>

Table D-5. Continued

Other Evaluated Species	
<b>Plants (Continued)</b>	
<b>Northern California black walnut (<i>Juglans californica</i> var. <i>hindsii</i>) (native stands)</b>	
1. Protect, manage, and maintain existing native stands in conjunction with restoration of riparian habitats.	
<b>Point Reyes bird's-beak (<i>Cordylanthus maritimus</i> ssp. <i>palustris</i>)</b>	
1. Identify and implement restoration of suitable habitat in high marsh and marsh/upland transition areas. Incorporate suitable high marsh and margin habitat in ERP saltmarsh restoration actions.	
2. Maintain, enhance, and restore Point Reyes bird's-beak habitat around San Pablo Bay in conjunction with restoration of saline emergent wetlands.	
3. Prepare and implement a management plan to control and reduce non-native weeds near existing and new populations.	
<b>Notes:</b>	
<b>List of Acronyms</b>	
CALFED	CALFED Bay-Delta Program
DWR	California Department of Water Resources
ERP	Ecosystem Restoration Program
IEP	Interagency Ecological Program
ppt	parts per thousand
SB	Senate Bill
USACE	U.S. Army Corps of Engineers
USFWS	U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service



## **Appendix E. EWA Operating Principles**



## **ENVIRONMENTAL WATER ACCOUNT**

### **OPERATING PRINCIPLES AGREEMENT**

The US Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS), the National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) and the California Department of Fish and Game (DFG) (collectively, the Management Agencies), and the US Bureau of Reclamation (Reclamation) and the California Department of Water Resources (DWR) (collectively, the Project Agencies) enter into this Environmental Water Account Operating Principles Agreement on the tools and operations principles for implementing the Environmental Water Account program (EWA) set forth herein and described in the Record of Decision (ROD) for the CALFED Bay-Delta Program to which this Agreement is attached.

#### **Recitals**

This Agreement establishes the Environmental Water Account (EWA) program, sets forth the EWA's general operating principles, and describes the tools which are available for use by the EWA. The EWA is a cooperative management program whose purpose is to provide protection to the fish of the Bay-Delta estuary through environmentally beneficial changes in the operations of the State Water Project (SWP) and federal Central Valley Project (CVP), at no uncompensated water cost to the projects' water users. The EWA is intended to provide sufficient water, combined with the Ecosystem Restoration Program and the regulatory baseline, to address CALFED's fishery protection and restoration/recovery needs. This approach to fish protection requires the acquisition of alternative sources of project water supply, called the "EWA assets," which will be used to augment streamflows, Delta outflows, to modify exports to provide fishery benefits and to replace the regular project water supply interrupted by the changes to project operations. The replacement water will compensate for reductions in deliveries relative to existing facilities, project operations and the regulatory baseline as defined in the CALFED Record of Decision that result from EWA actions.

These principles are intended to apply generally, but may not provide the necessary direction in all circumstances. Issues will be resolved as they arise by mutual agreement among all five signatory agencies.

The five state and federal agencies that execute this agreement will have responsibility for implementing the EWA. The Management Agencies will manage the EWA assets and will exercise their biological judgment to determine what SWP/CVP operational changes are beneficial to the Bay-Delta ecosystem and/or the long-term survival of fish species, including those listed under the State and Federal Endangered Species Acts. The Project Agencies will cooperate with the Management Agencies in administering the EWA, including banking, borrowing, and conveyance of EWA assets and making the operational changes proposed by the Management Agencies. The Project Agencies will also be responsible for acquiring EWA assets for the first year.

This Agreement is consistent with the regulatory responsibilities, statutory authorities, including CVP and SWP project purposes, of the five state and federal agencies. After the first year, acquisitions may be made pursuant to a public process that may employ other agencies or third parties to acquire assets.

**Article I.**  
**ESTABLISHMENT OF THE**  
**ENVIRONMENTAL WATER ACCOUNT PROGRAM**

**1. Establishment**

The Management Agencies and Project Agencies hereby establish the Environmental Water Account program (EWA) to be implemented in accordance with the Operations Principles and using the Tools set forth hereunder. Each of the Management Agencies and Project Agencies will appoint an EWA coordinator.

**2. Initial and Annual Assets**

The Management Agencies and Project Agencies will take the following actions to acquire the initial assets for the EWA, and will take all necessary and appropriate steps to acquire them each year thereafter. Assets acquired under sub-articles a-d, below, will vary from year to year depending on hydrological and regulatory conditions, and are therefore not certain. The tools used to acquire the assets are described in Article III of this Agreement. Other tools may be developed as appropriate to acquire functionally equivalent assets

**a. SWP Pumping of (b)(2)/ERP Upstream Releases**

As provided in Article III.1.b.i, the current modeling indicates that the average annual value of this asset is approximately 40,000 acre-feet.

**b. EWA Use of SWP Excess Capacity**

As provided in Article III.1.b.ii, the current modeling indicates the average annual value of this asset is approximately 75,000 acre-feet.

**c. Export/Inflow Ratio Flexibility**

As provided in Article III.1.b.iv(B), the current modeling indicates the average annual value of this asset is approximately 30,000 acre-feet.

**d. 500 cfs SWP Pumping Increase**

As provided in Article III.1.b.iv(A), the current modeling indicates that the average annual value of this asset is approximately 50,000 acre-feet.

**e. Water Purchases**

The Project Agencies shall acquire from willing sellers each year 150,000 acre-feet of water from sources south of the Delta and at least 35,000 acre-feet of water from sources upstream of the Delta or their functional equivalents. The upstream-of-Delta purchases may grow in subsequent years. These purchases shall be arranged so that assets may be kept in storage for the entire water year, until such time as the EWA managers release the assets to compensate for an EWA action, or until they are transferred to other EWA storage facilities.

**f. One-time Acquisition of Stored Water Equivalent**

In order to launch the EWA and to provide sufficient collateral as defined in Article II.2.c.i of this Agreement for the EWA to function as intended, the Project Agencies shall acquire 200,000 acre-feet of stored water or its functional equivalent from south-of-Delta sources. This water is intended to be used as collateral for borrowing, and will be released only when all other assets have been expended. The related storage is intended to function as long-term storage space, including after the water has been released. Provided the asset's function is not impaired, the acquisition of this asset may take any number of forms, including without limitation such transactions as source shifting, or reductions in contractor deliveries.

**g. Source Shifting Agreement**

The Project Agencies shall arrange with one or more of their contractors to use water totaling at least 100,000 acre-feet from either an alternative source, or at a subsequent time, to allow for storage of the project water in San Luis Reservoir as an EWA asset or to enable an operational curtailment without causing a summer "low-point problem." The EWA will repay this water during the initial 4-year term of the EWA, unless other arrangements are made. Upon repayment, the opportunity to employ the source-shifting tool will become available again.

**3. Definition of Operational EWA**

As described in Endangered Species Act biological opinions, Conservation Agreement, Record of Decision, the Project contractors will receive certain commitments if, among other things, there is an operational EWA. The EWA shall be considered operational in any one year when the one-time 200,000 acre-feet of stored water equivalent has been acquired and when: 1) the EWA includes deposits of the 185,000 acre-feet of purchased water as described above; 2) a source-shifting agreement of at least 100,000 acre-feet; and 3) the variable tools (items 2a-d above) are all in place. The Management and Project Agencies shall make all attempts to have all items in place by December 31, 2000, so that ESA commitments may be provided to the water users.

**4. Science Review Panel**

The CALFED Science Program will convene a scientific panel familiar with the EWA and its operations. The Management Agencies and Project Agencies will keep this panel informed on a monthly basis through the CALFED Ops Group reporting process.



The panel will convene on an annual basis to review the EWA operations.

**5. Term**

The EWA shall expire on September 30, 2004 and any remaining assets shall revert to the Project Agencies, unless the EWA is extended by written agreement among the Management Agencies and Project Agencies and the assets remain in the EWA. The EWA may be terminated at any time if all five signatory agencies execute a written agreement to do so.

**6. Continuation of EWA**

Before the EWA expires, the Management Agencies and Project Agencies will assess the success of EWA operations and analyze the potential impacts from new facilities and expanded conveyance capacity. The Agencies will then determine the appropriate size and composition of an EWA, as well as the EWA's sharing in the benefits from new facilities, in the fifth and future years.

**Article II  
General Operational Principles**

**1. The Management Agencies and Project Agencies Shall Cooperate to Implement the EWA**

**a. Curtailments and Borrowing**

The Project Agencies shall make the operational curtailments and agree to the borrowing transactions proposed by the Management Agencies that are consistent with these principles and this Agreement.

**b. Acquisitions and Banking**

The Project Agencies shall acquire the EWA assets from willing sellers in the first year. The Project Agencies and Management Agencies will establish EWA water banking and accounting mechanisms consistent with the intended EWA fishery benefits and ESA commitments.

**i. Manner of Acquiring and Holding EWA Assets**

The Project agencies shall, in consultation with the Management Agencies, acquire, hold, and deal with the EWA assets they acquire in a manner that serves the purposes of the EWA program.

**ii. Release of Assets**

The acquisition and banking arrangements made for EWA assets shall provide for their unconditional release to the Projects or to the Projects' designees upon approval by the Management Agencies.

**c. Use of Project Water Rights**

The Project Agencies shall use their respective water rights to acquire EWA assets to the greatest extent permitted by State and federal law, including California water rights law, and by the requirements of their respective water supply and other contracts. If changes to these or other water rights are needed to acquire, transfer, or release EWA assets, the Project Agencies shall take timely steps to secure those changes in accordance with State water law. The Project Agencies shall cooperate in all water rights actions and matters to optimize their flexibility in acquiring, conveying, storing and releasing EWA assets.

**d. Use of CALFED Ops Group**

The Management Agencies and the Project Agencies shall participate in the CALFED Ops Group to report regularly on the EWA's operations, to help resolve issues that may arise, and to communicate with stakeholders. Whenever issues affecting the interests of non-signatory parties arise, such parties shall be afforded the opportunity to fully participate in the resolution of those issues.

**e. Exchange of EWA Assets**

If the Management Agencies decide to do so, the Project Agencies may exchange EWA assets for assets of a character, such as location, seasonality or year-type, more suitable to EWA purposes.

**f. Sale of EWA Assets**

When storage capacity for EWA assets is not available or EWA assets are otherwise subject to loss, the Management Agencies may direct the Project Agencies to sell EWA assets which are not at that time pledged or identified for release under these Principles. No other benefits may be conferred to the EWA as a result of such sales. Any provisions for transfer or conveyance of assets sold or being sold shall not be governed by these principles. The proceeds of sale of EWA assets shall be accounted for and, to the extent provided by law, remain as EWA funds.

**g. Coordination**

The Management Agencies and the Project Agencies will hold regular meetings to share information and ideas and will coordinate their respective activities to optimize the implementation of the EWA.

**h. Coordinated Operations Agreement**

The Project Agencies shall continue to adhere to the general sharing principles contained in the 1986 Coordinated Operations Agreement (COA) as modified by interim operating agreements to reflect changes in regulatory standards, facilities, and operating conditions, including the EWA.

Implementation of the EWA shall not establish precedents for future negotiations or modifications of the COA. Future negotiations or modifications of the COA shall not inhibit effective EWA implementation.

## **2. EWA Shall Cause No Reduction in Project Deliveries**

### **a. Except Where Contractor Agrees**

The principles under this Article shall all be subject to the qualification that reductions in deliveries shall be allowed where the affected contractor or contractors agree to them, as in the case of source-shifting agreements.

### **b. No Harm To Deliveries Principle**

The intent of the EWA is to provide substantive fishery protections by taking advantage of project flexibility. The use of EWA assets to compensate for operational curtailments shall not change the timing, location, or amount of water deliveries the projects would have made to its users operating under the Regulatory Baseline in the absence of the EWA. Reference in these Principles to "reductions in deliveries" shall include only uncompensated changes in timing, location, or amount of deliveries. In the operation of the EWA, it is the intent of the Project Agencies and Management Agencies to minimize water quality impacts associated with EWA operations.

#### **i. "Operational Curtailment"**

An operational change at the Delta CVP/SWP facilities, pursuant to the Management Agencies' request, that causes a reduction in Project south-of-Delta water exports beyond the regulatory baseline for existing facilities as established in the Record of Decision, is referred to in these Principles as an "operational curtailment."

#### **ii. Identification of Asset For Release**

At the time of every operational curtailment, the Management Agencies must identify an asset sufficient to provide replacement water for any potential reductions in deliveries to contractors. When necessary to ensure no reductions in deliveries, such EWA assets shall be released to the Projects to allow delivery in the same amount and at the same time and place as the foregone export.

#### **iii. Time of Release of Asset**

Except when project water is borrowed, the EWA asset identified for release to the affected project shall be released no later than the time the proposed operational curtailment is implemented. "Released" means that the asset becomes available to and the unconditional property of the affected project or its designee and is no longer held for EWA purposes.

**iv. Delta Smelt Export/Flow Ratio**

The reduced exports necessary to achieve the annual spring 2:1 Vernalis- flow-to-Project-export ratio required by the 1995 USFWS biological opinion for Delta smelt shall be provided from either EWA assets and/or CVPIA Section 3406(b)(2) yield dedication.

**v. Cross Channel Gate Closure**

Impacts on project deliveries of any closure of the Delta Cross Channel Gates pursuant to State Water Resources Control Board (SWRCB) Decision D-1641 or any future decision implementing those objectives in the SWRCB's 1995 Water Quality Control Plan allowing for discretionary Gate closure for fishery purposes shall be attributed to the Regulatory Baseline. Recognizing potential conflicts that may arise during dry conditions, the Project Agencies and the Management Agencies will ensure full consideration of all appropriate factors required for a decision based on the then-available best scientific data and evaluation, particularly including water supply, water quality, and endangered species as well as tradeoffs. The EWA shall compensate the Projects pursuant to these principles when the Management Agencies advise Reclamation to close the Gates for a time outside such regulatory baseline conditions and such closure leads to export reductions.

**c. Borrowing; No Reduction in Deliveries**

The EWA may borrow water from the SWP or CVP to achieve fishery protections upon their approval, provided that such borrowing will not result in any reduction in deliveries. Borrowing against EWA assets shall cause no reduction in deliveries in the year of borrowing or in the subsequent water year.

**i. Identification and Pledge of Asset As Collateral**

When the Management Agencies borrow project water to implement an EWA fishery action, they shall identify and pledge as a guaranty collateral sufficient to provide replacement water for any potential reductions in deliveries to contractors in the same amount and at the same time as the borrowed water would have been delivered.

**ii. Sufficiency**

The Project Agencies shall assess sufficiency of the collateral, in part, on the likelihood that the borrowed water will be replaced naturally by virtue of the wetness of the year. Thus, foreseeing favorable hydrology, collateral need not be in existence at the time of borrowing, but may consist of the EWA's ability to provide replacement water with later-acquired assets to assure no reduction in project deliveries should actual circumstances turn out to be different from those foreseen.

**iii. Project Allocations and Deliveries**

When project water has been borrowed from storage, project allocation and delivery decisions shall be made as if the water had not been borrowed.

**iv. Disencumbering of Collateral or Release of Asset**

Each borrowing transaction shall explicitly describe the conditions upon which the identified collateral will either be disencumbered or released to project water supply. "Disencumbered" means no longer serving as collateral subject to release under the borrowing transaction.

**v. "Year"**

Unless otherwise indicated, as used throughout these Principles, "year" means "water year", beginning on October 1 and ending on September 30.

**vi. Project Borrowing From EWA**

The projects may borrow from EWA assets on the condition the borrowed water shall be repaid when or before the EWA needs it to cover an operational curtailment.

**d. Use of Excess Capacity**

The EWA shall be entitled to use excess capacity in SWP or CVP conveyance facilities, on an equal priority with Level 4 acquisitions mandated by the CVPIA.

**i. "Excess Capacity"**

"Excess capacity" means capacity available after project operational requirements and contract commitments have been met. In the case of the SWP, it also means after any wheeling for SWP contractors and any wheeling of CVP water for delivery to federal contractors for whom the SWP has traditionally wheeled water: San Joaquin National Cemetery, Musco Olive Co. and the users of the Cross Valley Canal.

**ii. Exception to the Principle**

There is one exception to the general principle that the EWA shall cause no reduction in project deliveries, and to the specific principle that only the excess of the SWP's current conveyance capacity is available to the EWA: the SWP's equal sharing with the EWA of b(2) and ERP upstream releases that the SWP could otherwise have pumped and used itself. This sharing is one of the EWA tools.

**e. Banking in Project Reservoirs**

EWA assets may be stored, or "banked", in project reservoirs upstream of the Delta and in San Luis Reservoir, provided the Projects do not incur any additional adverse operational impacts.

**i. Priority of EWA to Project Storage**

Unless the Management Agencies and the Project Agencies make other arrangements, EWA assets will have a lower priority for storage space in project reservoirs than regular project storage and thus will be released first. Regular project storage includes reservoir operations for project purposes, such as flood control, downstream temperature control, minimum downstream flows for fish, regulatory requirements, and contract water supply including contractor carryover water.

**SWP Use of Federal Share of San Luis.** Pursuant to Supplemental Agreement No. 1 for the Operation of the San Luis Unit, during the term of this Principles Agreement, the CVP shall give precedence to EWA water for storage in the unused share of San Luis Reservoir. The CVP shall agree to allow the SWP to use its share of storage in San Luis Reservoir only to the extent that such use does not impair operation of the EWA.

**ii. Protocols or Standards For Storage, Spill, and Loss of EWA Water In Upstream Project Reservoirs**

In light of the difficulty and complexity of accounting for the storing of other than regular project water in a multi-purpose reservoir, the Project and Management Agencies shall jointly establish reasonable and practical standards or protocols for determining when an EWA asset may be stored and when it would spill or be lost from upstream project storage.

**iii. Consequential EWA Upstream Storage**

Where an EWA asset is used to pay for an operational curtailment limiting the export of project stored water, the project water that remains in storage as a consequence shall become an EWA asset. The conversion of project water to EWA water shall occur only to the extent that EWA storage could otherwise have taken place within the regular project operational and regulatory constraints of the reservoir, to be determined in accordance with the protocols and standards developed by the affected Project Agency.

**f. Agreement on Further Conditions and Requirements; Water Accounting**

The Project Agencies and the Management Agencies shall enter into an agreement that further specifies, to the greatest degree practicable, the conditions and requirements upon which: assets are to be released to the projects to compensate for operational curtailments; borrowing may occur; collateral for borrowing is to be disencumbered or released; and water transfers and exchanges may take place. Provisions for forecasting EWA actions, accounting for EWA assets and for all project water impacted by the EWA, including impacts to coordinated CVP/SWP operations, should be included in this agreement.

**3. No Increased Costs**

EWA shall impose no net, increased incremental costs upon the projects. The Management Agencies and Project Agencies shall develop a financing plan to cover all costs of the EWA from non-contractor funding sources. The plan may include the establishment of a revolving account with annual deposits to pay for fluctuating EWA costs. The plan shall address increased Project operating costs, both power and ancillary costs, of both the SWP and CVP resulting from implementation of the EWA; crediting the EWA as appropriate for reduced operating costs; crediting the EWA for certain power benefits; and revenues realized from the sale of EWA assets. The Management Agencies and Project Agencies shall develop and recommend this plan, including any necessary legislation, to the CALFED Policy Group within 90 days following the adoption of the ROD.

Considering the importance of acquiring water to the success of the EWA, the Project Agencies and Management Agencies shall meet and confer to develop alternatives for funding power and other incidental EWA costs, if such costs interfere with the successful operation of the EWA.

**4. The EWA Shall Be Responsible For Mitigating Its Water Quality, Water Rights, and Environmental Impacts As Required By Law**

**Article III  
Description of the EWA Tools**

The following are the EWA tools for acquiring and using alternative sources of project water supply to offset the effects of operational curtailments imposed under the EWA program so that project deliveries will not be affected. While the requirements have been described in Article I (Establishment), any additional tools or arrangements that are determined to be beneficial to the EWA may be acquired at the discretion of the Management Agencies and Project Agencies.

**1. Acquisition of Water for the EWA**

**a. Purchases**

The Project Agencies (who are initially designated to undertake the purchases of EWA assets) will use EWA funds to purchase EWA assets from willing sellers both upstream and south of the Delta. "South of the Delta" means the export service areas served by the projects' Delta pumping plants, and may include Project contractors. "Upstream of the Delta" includes the legal Delta itself, as well as all tributaries to the Delta. Purchases can include leases, options, long-term agreements, and any other property or contractual transaction that makes alternative project water supplies available south of the Delta or available for conveyance to south of the Delta. In addition to direct diversion and stored water supplies, purchases will include the acquisition of storage space in both surface reservoirs and groundwater basins to bank EWA assets.

Explicit provision will be made in the purchase transaction for calling upon the asset and releasing it to provide water to replace project deliveries as needed to offset the impact of an EWA operational curtailment. The Agencies will coordinate EWA water acquisition with Level 4 refuge water acquisitions to ensure the priority accomplishment of both each year.

**b. Delta Operations**

There are four tools involving Delta project operations under which ESA water assets are to be acquired.

**i. Sharing of b(2) and ERP Water Pumped by the SWP**

The SWP and the EWA will share, on a 50-50 basis, water:

- (1) which has been released from storage or is otherwise made available for upstream purposes

under either CVPIA Section 3406(b)(2) or the ERP and arrives in the Delta with no further ERP or b(2) purposes to serve;

- (2) which exceeds the export capacity of the CVP Tracy pumping plant;
- (3) for which the SWP and EWA both have demand south of the Delta; and
- (4) which the SWP has capacity to pump.

Pumping of b(2) or ERP water where either the SWP or the ERP is demand-limited south of the Delta (i.e., there is no place for the water to go) will not count against the 50% share of the one which does have demand for the water.

#### **ii. Joint Point: SWP Wheeling of CVP and EWA water**

The SWP will use excess capacity it may have at its Banks pumping plant to pump water for both the CVP and the EWA, to be shared between them on a 50-50 basis. The CVP water could be either from storage or under its Delta water rights to divert unstored water. The EWA water could be either from non-project water acquired north of the Delta, or stored or unstored water pumped under CVP or SWP water rights. If either the CVP or EWA is demand-limited, the other's use of joint point will not count against its 50% share.

"Joint Point" is a term that is used in recent SWRCB Delta proceedings and decisions (e.g., WR 95-6; WR 98-9; D-1641) to refer to the ability of the SWP and CVP to utilize each other's point of diversion in the south Delta, i.e., their points of diversion may be used "jointly". It is used here, however, in a slightly different way, to refer to the use (mainly) of the SWP point of diversion *alone*; and, specifically, to the wheeling of EWA as well as CVP water.

Use of excess capacity for the EWA, CVP, and Level 4 refuge water will take precedence over all other non-project pumping, except, as noted above, for wheeling water to respond to facility outages and wheeling to supply CVP contractors for whom the SWP has traditionally wheeled CVP water, namely, San Joaquin National Cemetery, Musco Olive Co. and the users of the Cross Valley Canal.

#### **iii. SWP Appropriation of Unregulated Flow**

The SWP may use its own Delta diversion rights to pump water from the Delta for EWA purposes when the SWP has capacity but no demand. It would be used in cases where Joint Point could also be used but where it would be preferable to create EWA assets south of the Delta to offset SWP rather than CVP losses to operational curtailments. As an adjunct to Joint Point, it would simply utilize SWP rather than CVP water rights to pump excess flows for the EWA's share. It would not affect the CVP's own share of excess SWP capacity.

#### **iv. Project Pumping Made Possible by Regulatory Relaxations**

##### **(A) Relaxation of the Section 10 Constraint**

The SWP is limited under Section 10 of the Rivers and Harbors Act, pursuant to US Army Corps of Engineers (Corps) Public Notice 5820-A, to a three-day average rate of diversion of water into Clifton Court Forebay of 13,250 acre-feet per day. This is equal to



an average, around-the-clock diversion rate of 6,680 cfs. (That rate may be increased during winter months when the San Joaquin River flow is above 1,000 cfs.)

Permission has been obtained from the Corps to increase the base diversion rate by the equivalent of 500 cfs to 7,125 cfs for the months of July, August, and September, through 2002. This 500 cfs will be dedicated in its entirety to pumping for the EWA.

**(B) Relaxation of the Export/Inflow Ratio**

Under D-1641, and anticipated under the SWRCB order to be issued upon completion of the Bay-Delta water rights hearing, project exports are limited at different times of the year to a certain percentage of Delta inflow (usually either 35% or 65%). This limitation is called the Export/Inflow, or E/I, ratio. Both D-1641 and the 1995 Water Quality Control Plan, consistent with the 1994 Principles for Agreement (Bay-Delta Accord), allow for these ratios to be relaxed upon the meeting of certain requirements.

Relaxations of the E/I ratio will be sought as appropriate and used to create EWA assets south of the Delta.

**2. Banking of EWA Assets**

**a. Generally**

Generically, banking is the storing for later use of water that would otherwise be used or lost in the present. Water can be banked and used within the same water year or carried over for use in a subsequent water year. Even though the acquisition of stored water does not carry the idea of converting a transitory asset into a durable asset, it is included here as an EWA banking transaction as well as a species of EWA asset acquisition. Like the acquisition of assets, banking transactions must provide for access to and the release of the stored EWA assets to the projects.

Priority of EWA assets in storage generally will turn on the provisions of the banking document. Usually, if imported water is physically stored in a groundwater basin, it will have a first and exclusive right to the water stored. If EWA water is stored in a surface reservoir, it usually will be junior to other rights and will spill first.

Banking EWA water south of the Delta should have the highest priority in importance, in that it creates assets which are both durable and which may be released without the ability to move water from the Delta being an issue.

**b. Banking in Project Reservoirs**

EWA water may be stored in project reservoirs upstream of the Delta as well as in San Luis Reservoir, with a lower priority than regular project water. The EWA will share this storage priority with water acquired for Level 4 refuge needs.

**c. Source-Shifting Agreements**

The purpose of water banking is to have water available for use at a time other than its original availability. Source-shifting agreements fall under this functional definition of "banking". Source-shifting (or "demand-shifting") agreements are agreements with a water agency, like MWD, which are able, at certain times, to call on non-Delta sources of water to temporarily create an asset for use by the EWA. These assets can be used for EWA operational curtailments. Replacement of the source-shifted water occurs at an agreed-upon subsequent time without any incremental impacts to the Projects.

**3. Borrowing**

Borrowing of project water, specifically water in San Luis Reservoir, is a tool intended to enhance the effectiveness and use of EWA assets. Project water in San Luis Reservoir may be borrowed to support an operational curtailment in lieu of immediately releasing an EWA asset, where the borrowed water is not needed at that time to make project deliveries, to avoid water quality and supply problems associated with the San Luis low point, or to satisfy reasonable carryover storage objectives.

An appropriate EWA asset will be pledged to assure that, if the borrowed water is not otherwise made up, release of the pledged asset will cause project deliveries not to be affected by the borrowing transaction.

**4. Transfers and Delta Conveyance**

Transfers will be used mainly to create assets south of the Delta out of assets upstream of the Delta. They can also be used to make acquisitions south of the Delta suitable for release to project use, where a change in the legal place or purpose of use or point diversion of the water is needed.

**IV.**

**Additional Provisions**

**1. Contingent on Appropriation or Allotment of Funds**

The expenditure or advance of any money or the performance of any obligation of the United States or the State of California under this Agreement shall be contingent upon appropriation or allotment of funds. No liability shall accrue to the United States or the State of California for failure to perform any obligation under this Agreement in the event that funds are not appropriated.

The project schedules described in this document depend upon certain assumptions about state and federal budgets, optimized construction schedules, willing sellers and other contingencies.

These assumptions may change as the CALFED Program progresses and appropriate revisions to

the CALFED Program may be necessary. Consistent with federal law, nothing in this document constrains the discretion of the President or his successor from making whatever budgetary or legislative proposals he or his successors deem appropriate or desirable.

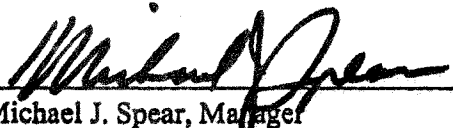
**2. Modification Only By Written Agreement**

The terms of this EWA Operations Principles Agreement may be modified by written agreement executed by all parties.

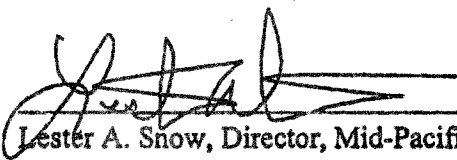
Having considered the contents of this document, its attachments and the documents supporting this decision, we hereby adopt these Principles.

Signed and dated:

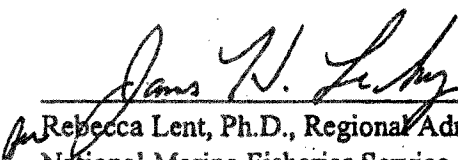
**United States of America**

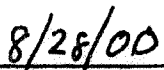
  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Michael J. Spear, Manager  
California-Nevada Operations  
U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service

  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

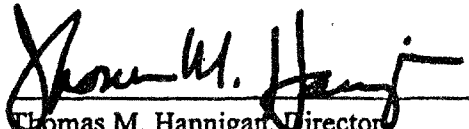
  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Lester A. Snow, Director, Mid-Pacific Region  
U.S. Bureau of Reclamation

  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

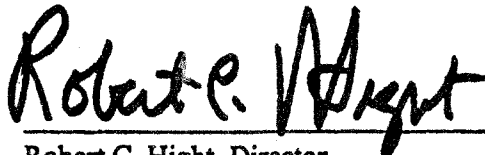
  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Rebecca Lent, Ph.D., Regional Administrator  
National Marine Fisheries Service

  
\_\_\_\_\_  
Date

State of California

  
Thomas M. Hannigan, Director  
California Department of Water Resources

8/28/2000  
Date

  
Robert C. Hight, Director  
California Department of Fish and Game

6/28/00  
Date



## **Appendix F. Take Avoidance Measures for Animals and Plants**

---

This appendix presents take avoidance measures for animals and plants listed in Appendix B, Table B-1. Take avoidance measures are to be implemented when a species or its habitat is present within the action area of a project. These measures will assist in reducing the indirect effects of an action to an evaluated species or its habitat. If take of a listed or proposed species or its habitat cannot be avoided, the Service must be contacted.



Table F-1. Take Avoidance Measures for Animals and Plants

General Avoidance Measures
(Note: General avoidance measures are applicable to the evaluated species groups indicated except where superseded by avoidance measures described under "Additional Avoidance Measures".)
<b>All Evaluated Species</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Before implementing actions that could result in take or the loss or degradation of occupied habitat, conduct surveys in suitable habitat within portions of the species' range that could be affected by CALFED actions to determine the presence and distribution of the species if sufficient existing information to determine presence or absence of the species in affected areas is not available.</li> <li>2. Avoid or minimize (except as noted in specific species avoidance measures described below) CALFED actions that could result in take of evaluated species or the loss or degradation of habitat occupied by evaluated species.</li> <li>3. Avoid CALFED actions that could result in the substantial loss or degradation of suitable habitat in areas that support core populations of evaluated species and that are essential to maintaining the viability and distribution of evaluated species.</li> <li>4. Manage recreational uses at new storage reservoirs to avoid or minimize recreation-related impacts on evaluated species.*</li> <li>5. Minimize potential effects of construction-related runoff into nearby wetlands that support evaluated species through use of siltation control barriers, detention basins, or other appropriate methods.*</li> <li>6. Design restorations and use construction methods that would minimize the release of sediment into wetlands or water bodies occupied by evaluated species as a direct result of construction activities or subsequent erosion.</li> </ol>
<b>Fish</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Avoid or minimize implementing transfers of water from sources that support flows that are beneficial to maintaining populations of evaluated aquatic species.*</li> <li>2. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, place consolidated intakes in areas that support minimal numbers of evaluated fish species.*</li> <li>3. Design and construct a new fish-screen system at the entrance to Clifton Court Forebay to alleviate the loss of evaluated fish species to predation in the forebay and to the existing fish-bypass and collection facility within the forebay.*</li> <li>4. Screen intakes or connect intakes of the Tracy Pumping Plant (Central Valley Project) to the screened Clifton Court Forebay to alleviate loss of evaluated fish species at the Tracy Fish Protection Facility.*</li> <li>5. Screen all Delta diversions that may entrain evaluated fish species.*</li> <li>6. Water transfers should be conducted in a manner that avoids increased exports during periods when evaluated fish species are more vulnerable to damage or loss at project facilities.*</li> <li>7. Construction and operation of new conveyance features to the south-Delta pumping plants should be designed to minimize losses of evaluated fish species.*</li> <li>8. Construction and operation of new conveyance features to the south-Delta pumping plants should be designed to minimize losses of evaluated fish species.</li> <li>9. Design and operate proposed new diversions from the Sacramento River to minimize adverse effects on migrating evaluated fish species, to avoid blocking upstream migration of fish to the Sacramento River, and to improve habitat conditions for evaluated fish species.*</li> </ol>



Table F-1.. Continued

General Avoidance Measures
<b>Fish (Continued)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>10. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, construct and operate in-channel barriers and restrictions in the Delta to provide sufficient leeway to adjust hydraulics in various channels to ensure evaluated fish species are not being drawn in greater numbers or proportions toward the pumps or being affected by poor water quality. Implement monitoring and testing necessary to design, construct, and operate barriers and restrictions. Develop and implement procedures and operating criteria for barrier systems to protect fish. Implement monitoring and testing necessary to ensure against excessive movement of fish toward the south-Delta pumping plants.*</li> <li>11. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, constrain operation of a barrier at the head of Old River during key periods as necessary to minimize the extent evaluated fish species are exposed to the south-Delta pumping plants. Implement monitoring and testing necessary to balance the loss of evaluated fish species from the San Joaquin River, and the west, central, and south Delta.</li> <li>12. Implement measures on an emergency basis during extended droughts to protect water supplies dedicated to meet Delta inflow and outfall criteria deemed essential in maintaining evaluated fish populations. Such measures would be implemented infrequently and would be used only to readjust water supplies to levels expected without this set of CALFED actions. Measures may include additional dedicated surface or ground water stored specifically for this purpose, special options for the purchase of needed additional supplies, or emergency provisions that would reduce other water supply demands. Another measure is to initially implement the actions to the extent feasible to determine potential effects on seasonal and critical-year water supplies, and develop a long-term water management plan that includes this and other actions to minimize effects of reallocation in other seasons and critical years.*</li> <li>13. Avoid or minimize implementing proposed actions in occupied habitat areas that could have a substantial adverse effect on the distribution or abundance of evaluated fish species.*</li> <li>14. To the extent consistent with achieving CALFED objectives, design and operate conveyance facilities to avoid entrapping or entraining evaluated species.*</li> <li>15. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, design and construct overflow basins from existing leveed lands in stages using construction design, operating schemes, and procedures developed through pilot studies and project experience to minimize the potential for stranding as waters recede from overflow areas.*</li> <li>16. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, develop and implement methods that minimize potential adverse effects of changes to hydraulics, water quality, and habitat on evaluated fish species when restoring tidal wetlands from subsided leveed lands.*</li> <li>17. To the extent practicable, confine additional pumping to times and area to channels with minimal concentrations of evaluated fish species.*</li> <li>18. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, confine additional winter diversions necessary to manage restored seasonal habitats to non-dry years when water supplies are sufficient to minimize any effects on downstream transport, export pumping ratios, and foodweb productivity.</li> </ol>
<b>Plants</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. To the extent consistent with achieving CALFED objectives, operate barriers and other instream structures affecting tidal movement in a manner that will not adversely affect the hydrology supporting populations of evaluated plant species.*</li> <li>2. Avoid or minimize direct disturbance to populations and individuals of evaluated plant species.*</li> </ol>

Table F-1. Continued

Additional Avoidance Measures	
Federally Listed as Threatened or Endangered	
<b>Mammals</b>	
<b>Glant kangaroo rat (<i>Dipodomys ingens</i>)</b>	
1. To the extent practicable, capture individuals from occupied habitat that would be affected by CALFED actions, and relocate them to nearby suitable existing, restored, or enhanced habitat.	
<b>Riparian brush rabbit (<i>Sylvilagus bachmani riparius</i>) and San Joaquin Valley woodrat (<i>Neotoma fuscipes riparia</i>)</b>	
1. Avoid CALFED actions that could result in harm or mortality to individuals or to the viability of the species' population or that could result in the degradation or loss of occupied habitat.	
2. Avoid or minimize implementing transfers of water from sources that support riparian vegetation in occupied habitat.*	
<b>San Joaquin kit fox (<i>Vulpes macrotis mutica</i>)</b>	
1. Comply with standardized U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (the Service's) guidelines when implementing CALFED actions within potentially occupied habitat (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1999a, 1999b).	
<b>Salt marsh harvest mouse (<i>Reithrodontomys raviventris</i>)</b>	
1. Minimize the adverse effects of CALFED actions that could artificially stabilize salinity ranges in occupied habitat.	
2. To the extent practicable, trap and relocate individuals that would be unlikely to avoid construction equipment or escape inundation resulting from restoration of suitable nearby habitat.*	
<b>Birds</b>	
<b>Aleutian Canada goose (<i>Branta canadensis leucopareta</i>)</b>	
None	
<b>Bald eagle (<i>Haliaeetus leucocephalus</i>)</b>	
1. Avoid or minimize construction- and recreation-related disturbances that could be associated with implementing CALFED actions within 0.5 mile of active nest sites during the nesting period (February-July).	
2. Avoid CALFED actions that could result in the loss of traditional nesting trees or degradation of natural habitat within 0.5 mile of traditional nest trees.	
<b>California brown pelican (<i>Pelecanus occidentalis californicus</i>)</b>	
None	
<b>California condor (<i>Gymnogyps californianus</i>)</b>	
1. Avoid CALFED actions that could result in harm or mortality to individuals or to the viability of the population.	
<b>California clapper rail (<i>Rallus longirostris obsoletus</i>)</b>	
1. Conduct surveys to determine the presence and distribution of California clapper rails in suitable nesting habitat before implementing CALFED actions that could result in the loss or degradation of habitat.	
2. Avoid or minimize CALFED actions that could result in the degradation or loss of occupied nesting habitat.	
3. Avoid disturbances that could be associated with CALFED actions near active nest sites during the nesting period (mid-March-July).	

Table F-1. Continued

Additional Avoidance Measures
Federally Listed as Threatened or Endangered
<b>Birds (Continued)</b>
<b>California least tern (<i>Sterna antillarum browni</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Monitor foraging habitat used by terns from the Alameda Colony to ensure proposed changes in Delta outflows that could affect water quality or turbidity do not adversely affect the abundance or availability of prey species.</li> <li>2. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, protect colonies that may establish elsewhere in the Multi-Species Conservation Strategy (MSCS) Focus Area as a result of natural expansion of the Delta population from future changes in land use or other activities that could adversely affect colonies.</li> </ol>
<b>Least Bell's vireo (<i>Vireo bellii pusillus</i>)</b>
None
<b>Northern spotted owl (<i>Strix occidentalis caurina</i>) and designated critical habitat</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Avoid construction- and recreation-related disturbances that could be associated with implementing CALFED actions within 0.5 mile of active nest sites during the nesting period (March-June).</li> <li>2. Avoid or minimize CALFED actions that could result in the loss of traditional nesting sites or degradation of natural habitat within 0.5 mile of traditional nest sites.</li> </ol>
<b>Western snowy plover (<i>Charadrius alexandrinus nivosus</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Before implementing CALFED actions that could result in the loss or degradation of occupied nesting habitat, conduct surveys to determine the presence and distribution of western snowy plovers in suitable habitat within its known nesting range.</li> <li>2. Avoid or minimize CALFED actions that could result in the degradation or loss of occupied nesting habitat.</li> <li>3. Avoid disturbances to nesting birds and nest sites that could be associated with implementing CALFED actions near active nest sites during the nesting period (March-July).</li> </ol>
<b>Reptiles</b>
<b>Alameda whipsnake (<i>Masticophis lateralis euryxanthus</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. To the extent practicable, capture individuals from habitat that would be affected by CALFED actions, and relocate them to nearby suitable existing restored, or enhanced habitat.</li> </ol>
<b>Giant garter snake (<i>Thamnophis gigas</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. To the extent practicable, remove or exclude individuals from construction corridors before construction is initiated.*</li> </ol>
<b>Blunt-nosed leopard lizard (<i>Gambelia sika</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. To the extent practicable, capture individuals from occupied habitat that would be affected by CALFED actions, and relocate them to nearby suitable existing, restored, or enhanced habitat.</li> </ol>
<b>Amphibians</b>
<b>California red-legged frog (<i>Rana aurora draytonii</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Avoid CALFED actions that could adversely affect the connectivity of habitat corridors among existing metapopulations.</li> </ol>

## **Appendix G. Compensation Measures for Animals and Plants**

---

This appendix presents compensation measures for animals and plants listed in Appendix B, Table B-1. These compensation measures are to be implemented as part of a Service-approved compensation plan when take of these species cannot be avoided. The Service must be contacted before implementing compensation measures for listed or proposed species.



Table G-1. Compensation Measures for Animals and Plants

* Federally Listed as Threatened or Endangered
<b>Mammals</b>
<b>Giant kangaroo rat (<i>Dipodomys ingens</i>)</b>
1. Where CALFED actions would adversely affect occupied habitat, (a) acquire, protect, and manage 1–3 acres of existing occupied habitat for every acre within the same area of occupied habitat affected by CALFED actions or (b) enhance or restore 1–3 acres of suitable habitat near affected areas for every acre of occupied habitat affected.
<b>Riparian brush rabbit (<i>Sylvilagus bachmani riparius</i>) and San Joaquin Valley woodrat (<i>Neotoma fuscipes riparia</i>)</b>
None
<b>San Joaquin kit fox (<i>Vulpes macrotis mutica</i>)</b>
1. Where CALFED actions would adversely affect occupied habitat, (a) acquire, protect, and manage 1–3 acres of existing occupied habitat for every acre within the same area of occupied habitat affected by CALFED actions or (b) enhance or restore 1–3 acres of suitable habitat near affected areas for every acre of occupied habitat affected.
2. Comply with standardized U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service's (the Service's) guidelines when implementing CALFED actions within potentially occupied habitat (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1999a, 1999b).
<b>Salt marsh harvest mouse (<i>Reithrodontomys raviventris</i>)</b>
1. Provide interim management of occupied saltmarshes to maintain source populations until restored habitats have developed sufficiently to provide suitable habitat.
2. Avoid or minimize restoring tidal action to diked marshes that are occupied by salt marsh harvest mice until restoration has been initiated in the western Suisun Marsh. Restoration would consist of at least twice as much tidal, high marsh, and wetland-to-upland transition habitat as would be affected by restoration of tidal exchange. In addition, an equal amount of occupied habitat in the eastern Suisun Marsh should be maintained as managed marsh as would be affected by restoration of occupied habitat. This action would provide suitable species habitat until newly restored habitat in the western Suisun Marsh has developed sufficiently to provide suitable salt marsh harvest mouse habitat.
3. Restore or enhance 2–5 acres of additional in-kind habitat for every acre of affected and occupied saline emergent wetland habitat. This compensation should be implemented before the impact occurs and near the affected location.*
4. To the extent practicable, include project design features that allow for onsite reestablishment and long-term maintenance of saline emergent wetland vegetation following project construction.*
<b>Birds</b>
<b>Aleutian Canada goose (<i>Branta canadensis leucopareia</i>)</b>
1. Enhance or restore 1–2 acres of suitable natural or agricultural habitat near affected areas to replace every acre of traditional wintering habitat that is permanently lost or degraded as a result of CALFED actions.
<b>Bald eagle (<i>Haliaeetus leucocephalus</i>), California brown pelican (<i>Pelecanus occidentalis californicus</i>), California condor (<i>Gymnogyps californianus</i>), California least tern (<i>Sterna antillarum browni</i>), Least Bell's vireo (<i>Vireo bellii pusillus</i>), Northern spotted owl (<i>Strix occidentalis caurina</i>) and designated critical habitat</b>
None

Table G-1. Continued

Federally Listed as Threatened or Endangered
<b>Birds (Continued)</b>
<b>California clapper rail (<i>Rallus longirostris obsoletus</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Restore or enhance 2-5 acres of additional in-kind habitat for every acre of affected and occupied saline emergent wetland habitat. This compensation should be implemented before the impact occurs and near the affected location.*</li> <li>2. To the extent practicable, include project design features that allow for onsite reestablishment and long-term maintenance of saline emergent wetland vegetation following project construction.*</li> </ol>
<b>Western snowy plover (<i>Charadrius alexandrinus nivosus</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Restore or enhance 1-2 acres of suitable nesting habitat near affected areas for each acre of occupied nesting habitat that is converted to unsuitable nesting habitat as a result of CALFED actions.</li> </ol>
<b>Reptiles</b>
<b>Alameda whipsnake (<i>Masticophis lateralis euryxanthus</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Where CALFED actions would adversely affect occupied habitat, (a) acquire, protect, and manage 2-5 acres of existing occupied habitat for every acre within the same area of occupied habitat affected by CALFED actions or (b) enhance or restore 2-5 acres of suitable habitat near affected areas for every acre of occupied habitat affected.</li> </ol>
<b>Giant garter snake (<i>Thamnophis gigas</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Replace potentially occupied habitat that would be permanently lost or degraded by CALFED actions at ratio of 2-3 acres of restored habitat for every acre of affected habitat.</li> <li>2. Restore potentially occupied habitat that would be temporarily degraded by CALFED actions onsite immediately following project completion.</li> </ol>
<b>Blunt-nosed leopard lizard (<i>Gambella sila</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Where CALFED actions would adversely affect occupied habitat, (a) acquire, protect, and manage 1-3 acres of existing occupied habitat for every acre within the same area of occupied habitat affected by CALFED actions or (b) enhance or restore 1-3 acres of suitable habitat near affected areas for every acre of occupied habitat affected.</li> </ol>
<b>Amphibians</b>
<b>California red-legged frog (<i>Rana aurora draytonii</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Where CALFED actions would adversely affect occupied habitat, (a) acquire, protect, and manage 1-3 acres of existing occupied habitat for every acre of occupied habitat affected by CALFED actions or (b) enhance or restore 1-3 acres of suitable habitat near affected areas for every acre of occupied habitat affected.</li> </ol>
<b>Fish</b>
<b>Delta smelt (<i>Hypomesus transpacificus</i>) and designated critical habitat</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. CALFED actions that have temporary impacts (less than 1 year) on shallow-water habitat within the range of the delta smelt will protect or restore 1 acre of in-kind habitat for each acre of affected habitat.</li> <li>2. CALFED actions that have long-term (greater than 1 year) impacts on shallow water habitat shall protect or restore 3 acres of in-kind habitat for each acre of affected habitat.</li> </ol>
<b>Sacramento splittail (<i>Pogonichthys macrolepidotus</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Restore or enhance 1-3 times the linear footage of affected shaded riverine aquatic overhead cover near where impacts are incurred.*</li> </ol>

Table G-1. Continued

Federally Listed as Threatened or Endangered
<b>Fish (Continued)</b>
2. Restore or enhance 1-3 times the amount of nearshore habitat affected by levee upgrades near where impacts are incurred.*
<b>Tidewater goby (<i>Eucyclogobius newberryi</i>)</b>
None
<b>Invertebrates</b>
<b>Delta green ground beetle (<i>Elaphrus viridis</i>) and designated critical habitat</b>
1. Replace potentially occupied habitat that would be permanently lost or degraded by CALFED actions at a ratio of 2-5 acres of restored habitat for every acre of affected habitat.
<b>Valley elderberry longhorn beetle (<i>Desmocerus californicus dimorphus</i>) and designated critical habitat</b>
1. Until the valley elderberry longhorn beetle has been recovered, implement the Service's guidelines for mitigating project effects on the valley elderberry longhorn beetle to compensate for CALFED impacts on the species.
<b>Lange's metalmark butterfly (<i>Apodemia mormo langei</i>), California freshwater shrimp (<i>Syncaris pacifica</i>), and Callippe silverspot butterfly (<i>Speyeria callippe callippe</i>)</b>
None
<b>Conservancy fairy shrimp (<i>Branchinecta conservatio</i>), longhorn fairy shrimp (<i>Branchinecta longiantenna</i>), vernal pool tadpole shrimp (<i>Lepidurus packardii</i>), and vernal pool fairy shrimp (<i>Branchinecta lynchi</i>)</b>
1. If implementation of CALFED actions could result in relatively minor impacts on these species, implement mitigation actions identified in the Service's programmatic biological opinion for projects that could have small effects on these species (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1996).
<b>Plants</b>
<b>Ione buckwheat (<i>Eriogonum apricum</i> var. <i>apricum</i>), Ione manzanita (<i>Arctostaphylos myrtifolia</i>), Stebbins' morning-glory (<i>Calystegia stebbinsii</i>), Pine Hill ceanothus (<i>Ceanothus roderickii</i>), Pine Hill flannelbush (<i>Fremontodendron californicum</i> ssp. <i>decumbens</i>), El Dorado bedstraw (<i>Gallium californicum</i> ssp. <i>sierrae</i>), Layne's ragwort (<i>Senecio layneae</i>), pallid manzanita (<i>Arctostaphylos myrtifolia</i>), San Benito evening-primrose (<i>Camissonia benitensis</i>), Hartweg's golden sunburst (<i>Pseudobahia bairdii</i>), San Joaquin adobe sunburst (<i>Pseudobahia petersonii</i>), Merced phacelia (<i>Phacelia ciliata</i> var. <i>opaca</i>), and showy Indian clover (<i>Trifolium amoenum</i>)</b>
1. Monitor all sites occupied by these species that are managed under CALFED, especially following management activities; through adaptive management, modify activities as needed to maintain or increase current population levels.
<b>Slender orcutt grass (<i>Orcuttia tenuis</i>), Hoover's spurge (<i>Chamaesyce hooveri</i>), succulent owl's clover (<i>Castilleja campestris</i> ssp. <i>succulenta</i>), and Colusa grass (<i>Neostaphia colusana</i>)</b>
1. Where species-occupied, low-quality, non-natural habitat is lost or degraded as a result of CALFED actions, preserve existing species habitat at a ratio of 3 acres of preserved habitat for every acre of affected habitat and restore 1 acre of habitat elsewhere for every acre of affected habitat. Preserved and restored habitats must be located within 40 miles on the same geomorphic surface as the affected habitat.



Table G-1. Continued

Federally Listed as Threatened or Endangered
Plants (Continued)
<b>Baker's larkspur (<i>Delphinium bakeri</i>) and yellow larkspur (<i>Delphinium luteum</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. If occupied low-quality habitat is lost or degraded as a result of CALFED actions, preserve existing species habitat at a ratio of 3 acres of preserved habitat for every acre of removed habitat and restoration of 1 acre of habitat elsewhere for every acre of removed habitat. Preserved and restored habitats must be located within 40 miles on the same geomorphic surface as the affected habitat.</li> </ol>
<b>San Joaquin woollythreads (<i>Lambertia congdonii</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. If occupied habitat is lost or degraded as a result of CALFED actions, preserve (preferably by acquisition) 6 acres of high-quality occupied habitat and preserve 1 acre of suitable unoccupied habitat for every acre of habitat affected by CALFED.</li> <li>2. Develop a seedbank from all populations affected by implementation of CALFED actions, and use the collected seed for inoculating unoccupied suitable habitat.</li> </ol>
<b>Marin western flax (<i>Hesperolimon congestum</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. If occupied habitat is lost or degraded as a result of CALFED actions, preserve (preferably by acquisition) 6 acres of high-quality occupied habitat and preserve 1 acre of suitable unoccupied habitat elsewhere for every acre of unoccupied suitable habitat affected by CALFED. Preserved and restored habitats must be located within a 40-mile radius on the same geomorphic surface as the affected habitat.</li> <li>2. Develop a seedbank from all populations affected by implementation of CALFED actions, and use the collected seed for inoculating unoccupied suitable habitat.</li> </ol>
<b>Hoover's eriastrum (<i>Eriastrum hooveri</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. If occupied habitat is lost or degraded as a result of CALFED actions, restore or create 1 acre of suitable habitat for each acre of affected habitat. Preserved and restored habitats must be located within a 40-mile radius on the same geomorphic surface as the affected habitat.</li> <li>2. Develop a seedbank from all populations affected by implementation of CALFED actions, and use the collected seed for inoculating unoccupied suitable habitat.</li> </ol>
<p>Clara Hunt's milk-vetch (<i>Astragalus clarianus</i>), large-flowered fiddleneck (<i>Amsinckia grandiflora</i>) and designated critical habitat, California seabite (<i>Suaeda californica</i>), Sonoma sunshine (<i>Blennosperma bakeri</i>), Loch Lomond button-celery (<i>Eryngium constancei</i>), Contra Costa goldfields (<i>Lasthenia conjugens</i>), Butte County meadowfoam (<i>Limnanthes floccosa</i> ssp. <i>californica</i>), Sebastopol meadowfoam (<i>Limnanthes vincularis</i>), few-flowered navarretia (<i>Navarretia leucocephala</i> ssp. <i>pauciflora</i>), many-flowered navarretia (<i>Navarretia leucocephala</i> ssp. <i>pleiantha</i>), San Joaquin Valley orcutt grass (<i>Orcuttia inaequalis</i>), hairy orcutt grass (<i>Orcuttia pilosa</i>), Sacramento orcutt grass (<i>Orcuttia viscida</i>), Green's tucoria (<i>Tucoria greenii</i>), Chinese Camp brodiaea (<i>Brodiaea pallida</i>), white sedge (<i>Carex albida</i>), Tiburon mariposa lily (<i>Calochortus tiburonensis</i>), Tiburon Indian paintbrush (<i>Castilleja affinis</i> ssp. <i>neglecta</i>), Tiburon jewelflower (<i>Streptanthus niger</i>), Pitkin Marsh lily (<i>Lilium pardalinum</i> ssp. <i>pitkinense</i>), Kenwood Marsh checkerbloom (<i>Sidalcea oregana</i> ssp. <i>valida</i>), Sonoma alopecurus (<i>Alopecurus aequalis</i> var. <i>sonomensis</i>), Napa blue grass (<i>Poa napensis</i>), Callistoga popcorn-flower (<i>Plagiobothrys strictus</i>), palmate-bracted bird's-beak (<i>Cordylanthus palmatus</i>), Sonoma spineflower (<i>Chorizanthe valida</i>), white-rayed pentachaeta (<i>Pentachaeta bellidiflora</i>), Soft bird's-beak (<i>Cordylanthus mollis</i> ssp. <i>mollis</i>), Sulson thistle (<i>Cirsium hydropyllum</i> var. <i>hydropyllum</i>), Antioch Dunes evening-primrose (<i>Oenothera deltoides</i> ssp. <i>howellii</i>) and designated critical habitat, Contra Costa wallflower (<i>Erysimum capitatum</i> ssp. <i>angustatum</i>) and designated critical habitat, Crampton's tucoria (<i>Tucoria mucronata</i>), and California vervain (<i>Verbena californica</i>)</p>
None

Table G-1. Continued

Federally Proposed for Listing as Threatened or Endangered	
<b>Birds</b>	
Mountain plover ( <i>Charadrius montanus</i> )	
None	
<b>Plants</b>	
Santa Cruz tarplant ( <i>Holocarpha macradenia</i> )	
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. If occupied habitat is lost or degraded as a result of CALFED actions, preserve (preferably by acquisition) 6 acres of high-quality occupied habitat and preserve 1 acre of suitable unoccupied habitat for every acre of habitat affected by CALFED.</li> <li>2. Develop a seedbank from all populations affected by implementation of CALFED actions, and use the collected seed for inoculating unoccupied suitable habitat.</li> </ol>	
Federal Candidate for Listing	
<b>Amphibians</b>	
California tiger salamander ( <i>Ambystoma californiense</i> )	
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Where CALFED actions would adversely affect occupied habitat, (a) acquire, protect, and manage 1-3 acres of existing occupied habitat for every acre of occupied habitat affected by CALFED actions or (b) enhance or restore 1-3 acres of suitable habitat near affected areas for every acre of occupied habitat affected.</li> <li>2. To the extent practicable, remove or exclude individuals from the affected area to avoid construction-related mortality of individuals or, if habitat will be permanently lost as a result of actions, capture individuals from the affected area and relocate to nearby suitable existing, restored, or enhanced habitat that does not support non-native predator populations.</li> </ol>	
<b>Fish</b>	
McCloud River redband trout ( <i>Oncorhynchus mykiss</i> ssp. 2)	
None	
Other Evaluated Species	
<b>Mammals</b>	
Greater western mastiff-bat ( <i>Eumops perotis californicus</i> )	
None	
California wolverine ( <i>Gulo gulo luteus</i> ), Merced kangaroo rat ( <i>Dipodomys heermanni dixonii</i> ), and Nelson's antelope ground squirrel ( <i>Ammospermophilus nelsoni</i> )	
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Where CALFED actions would adversely affect occupied habitat, (a) acquire, protect, and manage 1-3 acres of existing occupied habitat for every acre within the same area of occupied habitat affected by CALFED actions or (b) enhance or restore 1-3 acres of suitable habitat near affected areas for every acre of occupied habitat affected.</li> </ol>	
Ringtail ( <i>Bassariscus astutus</i> )	
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Where CALFED actions would adversely affect occupied habitat, (a) acquire, protect, and manage 2-5 acres of existing occupied habitat for every acre within the same area of occupied habitat affected by CALFED actions or (b) enhance or restore 2-5 acres of suitable habitat near affected areas for every acre of occupied habitat affected.</li> </ol>	

Table G-1. Continued

Other Evaluated Species
<b>Mammals (Continued)</b>
<b>San Pablo California vole (<i>Microtus californicus sanpabloensis</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Restore or enhance 2-5 acres of additional in-kind habitat for every acre of affected and occupied saline emergent wetland habitat. This compensation should be implemented before the impact occurs and near the affected location.*</li> </ol>
<b>Suisun ornate shrew (<i>Sorex ornatus sinuosus</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Avoid or minimize restoring tidal action to diked marshes that are occupied by Suisun ornate shrews until restoration has been initiated in the western Suisun Marsh. Restoration would consist of at least twice as much tidal, high marsh, and wetlands-to-upland transition habitat as would be affected by restoration of tidal exchange. In addition, an equal amount of occupied habitat in the eastern Suisun Marsh should be maintained as managed marsh as would be affected by restoration of occupied habitat. This action would provide suitable species habitat until newly restored habitat in the western Suisun Marsh has developed sufficiently to provide suitable Suisun ornate shrew habitat.</li> <li>2. Restore or enhance 2-5 acres of additional in-kind habitat for every acre of affected and occupied saline emergent wetland habitat. This compensation should be implemented before the impact occurs and near the affected location.*</li> </ol>
<b>Birds</b>
<p>American peregrine falcon (<i>Falco peregrinus anatum</i>), Bank swallow (<i>Riparia riparia</i>), California gull (<i>Larus californicus</i>), Double-crested cormorant (rookery) (<i>Phalacrocorax auritus</i>), Grasshopper sparrow (<i>Ammodramus savannarum</i>), Tricolored blackbird (<i>Agelaius tricolor</i>), and Osprey (<i>Pandion hallaetus</i>)</p>
None
<b>Black tern (<i>Chlidonias niger</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Restore or enhance 1-2 acres of suitable nesting emergent wetland habitat near affected areas for each acre of occupied nesting habitat that is converted to unsuitable nesting habitat.</li> </ol>
<p>Black-crowned night heron (rookery) (<i>Nycticorax nycticorax</i>), snowy egret (rookery) (<i>Egretta thula</i>), great egret (rookery) (<i>Casmerodius albus</i>), great blue heron (rookery) (<i>Ardea herodias</i>), and white-faced ibis (<i>Plegadis chihi</i>)</p>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Restore or enhance 1-5 acres of suitable valley/foothill riparian or emergent wetland nesting habitat near affected areas for each acre of occupied nesting habitat that is converted to unsuitable nesting habitat as a result of CALFED actions.</li> </ol>
<b>California black rail (<i>Laterallus jamaicensis coturniculus</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Avoid or minimize restoring tidal action to diked marshes that are occupied by California black rails until restoration has been initiated in the western Suisun Marsh. Restoration would consist of at least twice as much tidal, high marsh, and wetland-to-upland transition habitat as would be affected by restoration of tidal exchange. In addition, an equal amount of occupied habitat in the eastern Suisun Marsh should be maintained as managed marsh as would be affected by restoration of occupied habitat. This action would provide suitable species habitat until newly restored habitat in the western Suisun Marsh has developed sufficiently to provide suitable California black rail habitat.</li> <li>2. Restore or enhance 2-5 acres of additional in-kind habitat for every acre of affected and occupied saline emergent and tidal fresh emergent wetland habitat. This compensation should be implemented before the impact occurs and near the affected location.*</li> </ol>

Table G-1. Continued

Other Evaluated Species
<b>Birds (Continued)</b>
California yellow warbler ( <i>Dendroica petechia brewsteri</i> ) and Little willow flycatcher ( <i>Empidonax traillii brewsteri</i> )
1. Fully mitigate for impacts on existing nesting habitat that may be associated with Watershed Program or other CALFED actions.
Cooper's hawk ( <i>Accipiter cooperii</i> )
1. Restore or enhance 2-5 acres of suitable nesting habitat near the affected area for each acre of occupied nesting habitat that is converted to unsuitable nesting habitat as a result of CALFED actions.
Golden eagle ( <i>Aquila chrysaetos</i> )
1. Enhance or restore 1-5 acres of suitable foraging habitat to replace every acre of traditional foraging habitat permanently lost or degraded as a result of CALFED actions.
Greater sandhill crane ( <i>Grus canadensis tabida</i> )
1. Restore functional habitat use areas (i.e., habitat is used traditionally and consistently for at least 5 years) before any habitat use areas in core area centered on Bract Tract are converted to unsuitable habitat or the degraded as a result of CALFED actions.
2. To the extent practicable, implement ERP restoration of suitable crane habitats (i.e., seasonal wetlands, grasslands, upland croplands, and seasonally flooded agriculture) concurrent with ERP actions that would convert suitable existing habitat to unsuitable habitat (e.g., tidal habitats).
Long-billed curlew ( <i>Numenius americanus</i> )
1. Restore or enhance 1-2 acres of suitable mudflat, seasonal wetland, grassland, upland cropland, or seasonally flooded agricultural foraging habitat for each acre of traditional foraging habitat that is converted to unsuitable foraging habitat as a result of CALFED actions.
Long-eared owl ( <i>Asio otus</i> )
1. Restore or enhance 2-5 acres of suitable nesting habitat for each acre of occupied nesting habitat that is converted to unsuitable nesting habitat as a result of CALFED actions.
Northern harrier ( <i>Circus cyaneus</i> ) and short-eared owl ( <i>Asio flammeus</i> )
1. Restore or enhance 1-2 acres of suitable wetland or grassland nesting habitat for each area of occupied nesting habitat that is converted to unsuitable nesting habitat as a result of CALFED actions.
Saltmarsh common yellowthroat ( <i>Geothlypis trichas sinuosa</i> ) and San Pablo song sparrow ( <i>Melospiza melodia samuells</i> )
1. Restore or enhance 2-5 acres of additional in-kind habitat for every acre of affected and occupied saline emergent wetland habitat. This compensation should be implemented before the impact occurs and near the affected location.*
2. To the extent practicable, include project design features that allow for onsite reestablishment and long-term maintenance of saline emergent wetland vegetation following project construction.*

Table G-1. Continued

Other Evaluated Species
<b>Birds (Continued)</b>
<b>Suisun song sparrow (<i>Melospiza melodia maxillaris</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Avoid or minimize restoring tidal action to diked marshes that are occupied by Suisun song sparrows until restoration has been initiated in the western Suisun Marsh. Restoration would consist of at least twice as much tidal, high marsh, and wetlands-to-upland transition habitat as would be affected by restoration of tidal exchange. In addition, an equal amount of occupied habitat in the eastern Suisun Marsh should be maintained as managed marsh as would be affected by restoration of occupied habitat. This action would provide suitable species habitat until newly restored habitat in the western Suisun Marsh has developed sufficiently to provide suitable Suisun song sparrow habitat.</li> <li>2. Restore or enhance 2-5 acres of additional in-kind habitat for every acre of affected and occupied saline emergent wetland habitat. This compensation should be implemented before the impact occurs and near the affected location.*</li> <li>3. To the extent practicable, include project design features that allow for onsite reestablishment and long-term maintenance of saline emergent wetland vegetation following project construction.*</li> </ol>
<b>Swainson's hawk (<i>Buteo swainsoni</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. To the extent practicable, implement ERP restoration or enhancement of suitable Swainson's hawk habitats (i.e., riparian forest and woodland, grassland, and upland croplands) concurrent with ERP actions that would convert suitable existing habitat to unsuitable habitat (e.g., tidal habitats).</li> </ol>
<b>Western burrowing owl (<i>Athene cunicularia hypugea</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Restore or enhance 1-2 acres of suitable nesting habitat for each acre of occupied nesting habitat that is converted to unsuitable nesting habitat as a result of CALFED actions.</li> </ol>
<b>Western least bittern (<i>Exobrychus exilis hesperis</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Restore or enhance 1-2 acres of suitable nesting wetland or grassland habitat for each acre of occupied nesting habitat that is converted to unsuitable nesting habitat as a result of CALFED actions.</li> </ol>
<b>Western yellow-billed cuckoo (<i>Coccyzus americanus occidentalis</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Restore or enhance 2-5 acres of additional in-kind habitat for every acre of affected habitat near where impacts are incurred before implementing actions that could result in the loss or degradation of habitat.*</li> <li>2. To the extent practicable, include project design features that allow for onsite reestablishment and long-term maintenance of riparian vegetation following project construction.*</li> </ol>
<b>White-tailed kite (<i>Elanus leucurus</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Restore or enhance 2-5 acres of suitable nesting habitat near affected areas for each acre of occupied nesting habitat that is converted to unsuitable nesting habitat as a result of CALFED actions. Restored or enhanced compensation habitat should be located in areas that support nesting pairs near valley oak woodlands.</li> </ol>
<b>Yellow-breasted chat (<i>Icteria virens</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Restore or enhance 2-5 acres of suitable nesting habitat near affected areas for each acre of occupied nesting habitat that is converted to unsuitable nesting habitat as a result of CALFED actions.</li> </ol>
<b>Reptiles</b>
<b>San Joaquin whipsnake (<i>Masticophis flagellum ruddocki</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Where CALFED actions would adversely affect occupied habitat, (a) acquire, protect, and manage 1-3 acres of existing occupied habitat for every acre of occupied habitat affected by CALFED actions or (b) enhance or restore 1-3 acres of suitable habitat near affected areas for every acre of occupied habitat affected.</li> </ol>

Table G-1. Continued

Other Evaluated Species
<b>Reptiles (Continued).</b>
<b>Western pond turtle (<i>Clemmys marmorata</i>)</b>
1. Where CALFED actions would adversely affect occupied habitat, (a) acquire, protect, and manage 1–5 acres of existing occupied habitat for every acre within the same area of occupied habitat affected by CALFED actions or (b) enhance or restore 1–5 acres of suitable habitat near affected areas for every acre of occupied habitat affected.
<b>Amphibians</b>
<b>Foothill yellow-legged frog (<i>Rana boylei</i>) and Western spadefoot toad (<i>Scaphiopus hammondi</i>)</b>
1. Where CALFED actions would adversely affect occupied habitat, (a) acquire, protect, and manage 1–3 acres of existing occupied habitat for every acre of occupied habitat affected by CALFED actions or (b) enhance or restore 1–3 acres of suitable habitat near affected areas for every acre of occupied habitat affected.
<b>Limestone salamander (<i>Hydromantes brunus</i>) and Shasta salamander (<i>Hydromantes shastae</i>)</b>
1. Where CALFED actions would adversely affect occupied habitat, (a) acquire, protect, and manage 2–5 acres of existing occupied habitat for every acre of occupied habitat affected by CALFED actions or (b) enhance or restore 2–5 acres of suitable habitat near affected areas for every acre of occupied habitat affected.
<b>Fish</b>
<b>Hardhead (<i>Mylopharodon conocephalus</i>), rough sculpin (<i>Cottus asperimus</i>), and Sacramento perch (<i>Archoplites interruptus</i>)</b>
None
<b>Longfin smelt (<i>Spirinchus thaleichthys</i>)</b>
1. CALFED actions that have temporary impacts (less than 1 year) on shallow-water habitat within the range of the longfin smelt will protect or restore 1 acre of in-kind habitat for each acre of affected habitat. 2. CALFED actions that have long-term (greater than 1 year) impacts on shallow-water habitat will protect or restore 3 acres of in-kind habitat for each acre of affected habitat.
<b>Invertebrates</b>
<b>Mid-Valley fairy shrimp (<i>Branchinecta</i> n. sp. "mid-valley")</b>
1. If implementation of CALFED actions could result in relatively minor impacts on these species, implement mitigation actions identified in the Service's programmatic biological opinion for projects that could have small effects on these species (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service 1996).
<b>Monarch butterfly (aggregation areas) (<i>Danaus plexippus</i>)</b>
None
<b>Shasta sideband (<i>Monadenia troglodytes</i>)</b>
1. Where CALFED actions would adversely affect occupied habitat, (a) acquire, protect, and manage 2–5 acres of existing occupied habitat for every acre within the same area of occupied habitat affected by CALFED actions or (b) enhance or restore 2–5 acres of suitable habitat near affected areas for every acre of occupied habitat affected.

Table G-1. Continued

Other Evaluated Species
<b>Plants</b>
<p>Alkali milkvetch (<i>Astragalus tener</i> var. <i>tener</i>), Bristly sedge (<i>Carex consosa</i>), Northern California black walnut (<i>Juglans californica</i> var. <i>hindsii</i>) (native stands), Point Reyes bird's-beak (<i>Cordylanthus maritimus</i> ssp. <i>palustris</i>), Red-flowered lotus (<i>Lotus rubriflorus</i>), lesser saltscare (<i>Atriplex minuscula</i>), Ferris's milkvetch (<i>Astragalus tener</i> var. <i>ferrisiae</i>), Ahart's dwarf rush (<i>Juncus leiospermus</i> var. <i>ahartii</i>), pincushion navarretia (<i>Navarretia myersii</i>), North Coast semaphore grass (<i>Pleuropogon hooverianus</i>), Henderson's bent grass (<i>Agrostis hendersonii</i>), Mason's ceanothus (<i>Ceanothus masonii</i>), Heckard's pepper-grass (<i>Lepidium latipes</i> var. <i>heckardii</i>), Mt. Diablo phacelia (<i>Phacelia phacelioides</i>), mad-dog skullcap (<i>Scutellaria lateriflora</i>), Marin checkerbloom (<i>Sidalcea hickmanii</i> ssp. <i>viridis</i>), eel-grass pondweed (<i>Potamogeton zosteriformis</i>), California beaked-rush (<i>Rhynchospora californica</i>), Marin knotweed (<i>Polygonum marinense</i>), tree-anemone (<i>Carpenteria californica</i>), Sharsmith's onion (<i>Allium sharsmithae</i>), Klamath manzanita (<i>Arctostaphylos klamathensis</i>), Shasta clarkia (<i>Clarkia borealis</i> ssp. <i>arida</i>), beaked clarkia (<i>Clarkia rostrata</i>), Hall's tarplant (<i>Hemizonia halliana</i>), Pale-yellow layia (<i>Layia heterotricha</i>), Bellinger's meadowfoam (<i>Limnanthes floccosa</i> ssp. <i>bellingeriana</i>), Mt. Tedoc linanthus (<i>Linanthus serrulatus</i>), Shasta snow-wreath (<i>Neviusia cliffonii</i>), Contra Costa manzanita (<i>Arctostaphylos manzanita</i> ssp. <i>laevigata</i>), Mt. Diablo bird's-beak (<i>Cordylanthus nidularius</i>), Ben Lomond buckwheat (<i>Eriogonum nudum</i> var. <i>decurrens</i>), diamond-petaled California poppy (<i>Eschscholzia rhombipetala</i>), Tehama County western flax (<i>Hesperolinon tehamense</i>), Red Hills ragwort (<i>Senecio clevelandii</i> var. <i>heterophyllus</i>), Marsh checkerbloom (<i>Sidalcea oregana</i> ssp. <i>hydrophilla</i>), and Mt. Hamilton jewelflower (<i>Streptanthus callistus</i>)</p>
None
<b>Delta coyote-thistle (<i>Eryngium racemosum</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. For any actions that result in the loss or degradation of habitat or populations, unprotected naturally occurring habitat and populations will be brought under protection at a ratio of 2:1 (twice the amount of habitat acreage and number of individuals lost), and additional new habitat and populations will be restored or created at a ratio of 2:1. New populations would be established using appropriate, local genetic stock.</li> <li>2. Monitor annually the status, distribution, and trend of restored and created populations for 5 years and then once every 2 years for an additional 6 years. Once successful establishment has been demonstrated, monitor population trends every 5 years for the duration of CALFED.</li> </ol>
<b>Delta mudwort (<i>Limosella subulata</i>) and Delta tule pea (<i>Lathyrus jepsonii</i> var. <i>jepsonii</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. For each linear foot of occupied habitat lost, create 5–10 linear feet of suitable habitat, of equal or higher habitat quality, within one year of loss.</li> </ol>
<b>Mason's lilacopsis (<i>Lilacopsis masonii</i>) and Suisun Marsh aster (<i>Aster lentus</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. For each linear foot of occupied habitat lost, create 5–10 linear feet, depending on habitat quality, of suitable habitat within 1 year of loss.</li> </ol>
<b>Rose mallow (<i>Hibiscus lasiocarpus</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Before implementing actions to rehabilitate or restore levees, conduct research to determine the extent and physical and biological qualities of existing habitat and populations.</li> <li>2. For each linear foot of species-occupied habitat lost or degraded as a result of CALFED actions, create 5–10 linear feet of suitable habitat of equal or higher habitat quality, within 1 year of loss.</li> </ol>

Table G-1. Continued

## Other Evaluated Species

## Plants (Continued)

Irish Hill buckwheat (*Eriogonum apricum* var. *prostratum*), Parry's horkella (*Horkella parryi*), Mt. Diablo manzanita (*Arctostaphylos auriculata*), Baker's manzanita (*Arctostaphylos bakeri* ssp. *bakeri*), Sharsmith's harebell (*Campanula sharsmithiae*), Congdon's lomatium (*Lomatium congdonii*), showy madia (*Madia radiata*), San Antonio Hills monardella (*Monardella antonina* ssp. *antonina*), Mt. Diablo jewelflower (*Streptanthus hispidus*), Arburua Ranch jewelflower (*Streptanthus insignis* ssp. *lyonii*), and thread-leaved beardtongue (*Penstemon filiformis*)

1. Monitor all sites occupied by these species that are managed under CALFED, especially following management activities; through adaptive management, modify activities as needed to maintain or increase current population levels.

Boggs Lake hedge-hyssop (*Gratiola heterosepala*), vernal pool saltscale (*Atriplex persistens*), hispid bird's-beak (*Cordylanthus mollis* ssp. *hispius*), legenere (*Legenere ilmosa*), and spiny-sealed button-celery (*Eryngium spinosepalum*)

1. Where species-occupied, low-quality, non-natural habitat is lost or degraded as a result of CALFED actions, preserve existing species habitat at a ratio of 3 acres of preserved habitat for every acre of affected habitat and restore 1 acre of habitat elsewhere for every acre of affected habitat. Preserved and restored habitats must be located within 40 miles on the same geomorphic surface as the affected habitat.

Marsh skullcap (*Scutellaria galericulata*), Mariposa clarkia (*Clarkia biloba* ssp. *australis*), Hospital Canyon larkspur (*Delphinium californicum* ssp. *interius*), Panoche peppergrass (*Lepidium Jaredii* ssp. *album*), and rock sanicle (*Sanicula saxatilis*)

1. If occupied low-quality habitat is lost or degraded as a result of CALFED actions, preserve existing species habitat at a ratio of 3 acres of preserved habitat for every acre of removed habitat and restoration of 1 acre of habitat elsewhere for every acre of removed habitat. Preserved and restored habitats must be located within 40 miles on the same geomorphic surface as the affected habitat.

Silky cryptantha (*Cryptantha crinita*), big tarplant (*Blepharizonia plumosa* ssp. *plumosa*), Lost Hills crownscale (*Atriplex vallicola*), Carquinez goldenbush (*Isocoma arguta*), shaggyhair lupine (*Lupinus spectabilis*), saw-toothed lewisia (*Lewisia serrata*), and adobe-lily (*Fritillaria pluriflora*)

1. If occupied habitat is lost or degraded as a result of CALFED actions, preserve (preferably by acquisition) 6 acres of high-quality occupied habitat and preserve 1 acre of suitable unoccupied habitat for every acre of habitat affected by CALFED.
2. Develop a seedbank from all populations affected by implementation of CALFED actions, and use the collected seed for inoculating unoccupied suitable habitat.

Sanford's arrowhead (*Sagittaria sanfordii*), four-angled spike-rush (*Eleocharis quadrangulata*), slough thistle (*Cirsium crassicaule*), and Point Reyes bird's-beak (*Cordylanthus maritimus* ssp. *palustris*)

1. If occupied habitat is lost or degraded as a result of CALFED actions, restore or create 1 acre of suitable habitat supported by a natural hydrologic regime for every acre of affected habitat.



Table G-1. Continued

Other Evaluated Species
Plants (Continued)
<p>Napa western flax (<i>Hesperolinon serpentinum</i>), Rawhide Hill onion (<i>Allium tuolumnense</i>), Red Hills soaproot (<i>Chlorogalum grandiflorum</i>), Brandegee's eriogonum (<i>Eriogonum brandegeae</i>), Brewer's western flax (<i>Hesperolinon breweri</i>), Dimorphic snapdragon (<i>Antirrhinum subcordatum</i>), Drymaria-like western flax (<i>Hesperolinon drymariaoides</i>), Madera linanthus (<i>Linanthus serrulatus</i>), Hall's bush mallow (<i>Malacothamnus hallii</i>), Ahart's paronychia (<i>Paronychia ahartii</i>), and English peak greenbriar (<i>Smilax jamesii</i>)</p>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. If occupied habitat is lost or degraded as a result of CALFED actions, preserve (preferably by acquisition) 6 acres of high-quality occupied habitat and preserve 1 acre of suitable unoccupied habitat elsewhere for every acre of unoccupied suitable habitat affected by CALFED. Preserved and restored habitats must be located within a 40-mile radius on the same geomorphic surface as the affected habitat.</li> <li>2. Develop a seedbank from all populations affected by implementation of CALFED actions, and use the collected seed for inoculating unoccupied suitable habitat.</li> </ol>
<p>Mt. Hamilton coreopsis (<i>Coreopsis hamiltonii</i>), El Dorado County mule ears (<i>Wyethia reticulata</i>), most beautiful jewel-flower (<i>Streptanthus albidus</i> ssp. <i>peramoenus</i>), recurved larkspur (<i>Delphinium recurvatum</i>), Big Bear Valley woollypod (<i>Astragalus leucolobus</i>), Jepson's milk-vetch (<i>Astragalus rattanii</i> var. <i>jepsonianus</i>), Mt. Diablo fairy-lantern (<i>Calochortus pulchellus</i>), dwarf soaproot (<i>Chlorogalum pomeridianum</i> var. <i>minus</i>), Diablo helianthella (<i>Helianthella castanea</i>), Congdon's tarplant (<i>Hemizonia parryi</i> ssp. <i>congdonii</i>), Brittlescale (<i>Atriplex depressa</i>), San Joaquin spearscale (<i>Atriplex joaquiniana</i>), Indian Valley brodiaea (<i>Brodiaea coronaria</i> ssp. <i>rosea</i>), and heartscale (<i>Atriplex cordulata</i>)</p>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. If occupied habitat is lost or degraded as a result of CALFED actions, restore or create 1 acre of suitable habitat for each acre of affected habitat. Preserved and restored habitats must be located within a 40-mile radius on the same geomorphic surface as the affected habitat.</li> <li>2. Develop a seedbank from all populations affected by implementation of CALFED actions, and use the collected seed for inoculating unoccupied suitable habitat.</li> </ol>
<p>* Compensation measures are adopted from the Multi-Species Conservation Strategy (MSCS) Technical Report, "Evaluation Tables and MSCS Conservation Measures for NCCP Communities". All other compensation measures are from MSCS Attachment E, "Multi-Species Conservation Strategy Prescriptions and Conservation Measures for Evaluated Species".</p>
Acronyms:
MSCS     Multi-Species Conservation Strategy
Citations:
U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1996. Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta native fishes recovery plan. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Portland, OR
U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service. 1999a. Standardized recommendations for protection for the San Joaquin kit fox prior to or during ground disturbance. Sacramento, CA.
_____. 1999b. San Joaquin kit fox survey protocol for the northern range. Sacramento, CA.

## **Appendix H. Recommended Project Implementation Measures for Animals and Plants**

---

This appendix presents recommended project implementation measures to provide for or increase the level of benefits associated with implementing CALFED actions for animals and plants listed in Appendix B, Table B-1.



Table H-1. Recommended Project Implementation Measures for Animals and Plants

Recommended General Project Implementation Measures
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Design restorations and use construction methods that would minimize the release of sediment as a direct result of construction activities or subsequent erosion.*</li> <li>2. Minimize effects of construction-related runoff into nearby wetlands through use of siltation control barriers, detention basins, or other appropriate methods.*</li> <li>3. CALFED actions that could mobilize large quantities of toxic materials from the soil should include an analysis to determine the amount of contaminants that could be mobilized, and if released and contaminant loadings could be harmful to evaluated species, modify actions to the extent practicable to reduce loadings of mobilized contaminants.</li> <li>4. Avoid or minimize restoring habitat or constructing facilities on lands currently managed to provide high values for evaluated species if restored habitat would be of lesser value to these species.*</li> <li>5. Avoid or minimize implementing transfers of water from sources that support emergent wetland and riparian vegetation, and high-value seasonally flooded agricultural habitat.*</li> <li>6. Avoid or minimize implementing transfers of water from sources that support flows that are beneficial to maintaining populations of native aquatic species.*</li> <li>7. To the extent practicable, include project design features that allow for onsite reestablishment and long-term maintenance of aquatic, shaded riverine aquatic overhead cover, wetland, and riparian habitat following project construction.*</li> <li>8. Provide sufficient outflow from storage reservoirs sufficient to support the long-term maintenance of existing aquatic, wetland, and riparian habitats downstream of storage reservoirs.*</li> <li>9. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, construct channel islands in sloughs that have relatively poor shallow-water and shaded riverine aquatic (SRA) habitats such that the net gain in these habitats is positive.*</li> <li>10. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, design shallow-water habitat enhancements and restorations to address the habitat needs of native estuarine fish and avoid providing optimal conditions for non-native species.*</li> <li>11. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, design levee improvements and conveyance facilities to incorporate restoration of shallow aquatic tidal habitat.*</li> <li>12. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, design and construct overflow basins from existing leveed lands in stages using construction design, operating schemes, and procedures developed through pilot studies and project experience to minimize the potential for stranding as waters recede from overflow areas.*</li> <li>13. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, develop and implement methods that minimize potential adverse effects of changes to hydraulics, water quality, and habitat on estuarine fish species when restoring tidal wetlands from subsided leveed lands.*</li> <li>14. Avoid or minimize restoring nontidal saline emergent habitat with high habitat values to tidal wetlands or other habitat types.*</li> <li>15. To the extent consistent with achieving CALFED objectives, select Delta islands that support little or no emergent vegetation along adjacent channels for use as storage facilities.*</li> <li>16. To the extent practicable, before restoring habitat in areas that support emergent vegetation, restore habitat in locations that do not support tidal emergent vegetation. This will ensure there is no net loss of habitat over the period restoration is implemented.*</li> </ol>

Table H-1. Continued

Recommended General Project Implementation Measures	
17.	To the extent consistent with achieving CALFED objectives, design wetlands to include transition habitat to uplands and upland buffer habitat area that would support small mammal populations and provide suitable foraging habitat for raptors and other grassland-associated species.*
18.	To the extent consistent with achieving CALFED objectives, manage restored and enhanced seasonal wetlands to maximize the availability or quantity of suitable forage for waterfowl and sandhill cranes.*
19.	To the extent consistent with achieving CALFED objectives, design restored and enhanced wetlands and seasonally flooded agricultural habitats to include areas of habitat suitable for small mammals. These areas would serve as refuge during periods when wetlands are flooded and would provide source populations for reoccupation of wetland areas during periods that wetlands are dry.*
20.	To the extent consistent with achieving CALFED objectives, manage storage operations to create seasonal wetland habitat areas along shorelines and lands exposed during drawdown periods.*
21.	To the extent consistent with achieving CALFED objectives, include project design features that allow for onsite reestablishment and long-term maintenance of natural seasonal wetland vegetation following project construction.*
22.	To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, operate barriers in a manner that will not adversely affect the hydrology supporting riparian vegetation upstream of barriers.*
23.	To the extent consistent with achieving CALFED objectives, design and manage restored grasslands to maximize prey abundance and availability for raptors and provide habitat for other grassland-associated species.*
24.	To the extent practicable, restore aquatic, wetland, riparian, and grassland habitats on agricultural lands that have relatively low forage value (e.g., orchards and vineyards).*
25.	Avoid or minimize changing cropping practices on upland croplands that provide high forage values for wildlife.*
26.	To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, avoid constructing storage and conveyance facilities and associated infrastructure on upland cropland with high wildlife forage habitat value.*
Recommended Species Specific Project Implementation Measures	
Federally Listed as Threatened or Endangered	
<b>Birds</b>	
<b>Aleutian Canada goose (<i>Branta canadensis leucopareta</i>)</b>	
1.	To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, direct proposed actions for improving agricultural habitats for wildlife to protecting and improving traditional wintering habitat.
<b>Bald eagle (<i>Haliaeetus leucocephalus</i>)</b>	
1.	To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, design and manage new storage reservoirs to optimize nesting habitat suitability.
<b>California least tern (<i>Sterna antillarum browni</i>)</b>	
1.	To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, maintain conservation easements to protect the Pittsburg Colony from adjacent land uses.
2.	To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, maintain habitat values of ponds used for nesting by the Pittsburg Colony if Pacific Gas and Electric Company's (PG&E's) Pittsburg Power Plant ceases operation or if PG&E modifies operations in a manner that would degrade the suitability of pond nesting habitat.

Table H-1. Continued

Recommended Species Specific Project Implementation Measures	
Federally Listed as Threatened or Endangered	
<b>Birds (Continued)</b>	
<b>Northern spotted owl (<i>Strix occidentalis caurina</i>) and designated critical habitat</b>	
1. To the extent consistent with CALFED actions, design and implement CALFED Watershed Program actions to maintain, enhance, or restore suitable habitat within the species' current range.	
<b>Amphibians</b>	
<b>California red-legged frog (<i>Rana aurora draytonii</i>)</b>	
1. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, enhance or restore suitable habitats near occupied habitat.	
<b>Invertebrates</b>	
<b>California freshwater shrimp (<i>Syncaris pacifica</i>), Conservancy fairy shrimp (<i>Branchinecta conservatio</i>), longhorn fairy shrimp (<i>Branchinecta longiantenna</i>), vernal pool tadpole shrimp (<i>Lepidurus packardii</i>), and vernal pool fairy shrimp (<i>Branchinecta lynchi</i>)</b>	
1. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, enhance or restore suitable habitats to benefit these species in occupied habitat.	
<b>Plants</b>	
<b>Slender orcutt grass (<i>Orcuttia tenuis</i>), Hoover's spurge (<i>Chamaesyce hooveri</i>), succulent owl's clover (<i>Castilleja campestris</i> ssp. <i>succulenta</i>), Colusa grass (<i>Neostaphia colusana</i>), Baker's larkspur (<i>Delphinium bakeri</i>), yellow larkspur (<i>Delphinium luteum</i>), San Joaquin woollythreads (<i>Lembotria congdonii</i>), Marin western flax (<i>Hesperolinon congestum</i>), and Hoover's eriastrum (<i>Eriastrum hooveri</i>)</b>	
1. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, enhance or restore suitable habitats to benefit these species in occupied habitat.	
Federally Proposed for Listing as Threatened or Endangered	
<b>Birds</b>	
<b>Mountain plover (<i>Charadrius montanus</i>)</b>	
1. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, manage a portion of agricultural habitats within traditional wintering areas to maintain or enhance foraging habitat conditions.	
<b>Plants</b>	
<b>Santa Cruz tarplant (<i>Holocarpha macradenia</i>)</b>	
1. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, enhance or restore suitable habitats to benefit these species in occupied habitat.	
Federal Candidate for Listing	
<b>Amphibians</b>	
<b>California tiger salamander (<i>Ambystoma californiense</i>)</b>	
1. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, enhance or restore suitable habitats near occupied habitat.	

Table H-1. Continued

Recommended Species Specific Project Implementation Measures
Other Evaluated Species
<b>Mammals</b>
<b>Greater western mastiff-bat (<i>Eumops perotis californicus</i>)</b>
1. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, manage lands purchased or acquired under conservation easements that support roost sites to protect roost sites from disturbances that could cause their abandonment and from management actions that could result in the loss or degradation of roosting structures.
<b>Ringtail (<i>Bassariscus astutus</i>)</b>
1. To the extent consistent with Ecosystem Restoration Program (ERP) objectives, restore valley/foothill riparian habitats adjacent to occupied habitats to create a buffer of natural habitat. This buffer would protect populations from adverse effects that could be associated with future changes in land use on nearby lands and provide suitable habitat for the natural expansion of populations.
<b>Birds</b>
<b>Black tern (<i>Chlidonias niger</i>)</b>
1. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, design and manage wetland habitat restorations and enhancements to provide suitable nesting and foraging habitat conditions.
2. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, restore wetland habitats adjacent to nesting colonies to create a buffer of natural tern habitat. This buffer would protect colonies from adverse effects that could be associated with future changes in land use on nearby lands and provide suitable foraging and nesting habitat for the natural expansion of populations.
<b>Black-crowned night heron (rookery) (<i>Nycticorax nycticorax</i>), snowy egret (rookery) (<i>Egretta thula</i>), great egret (rookery) (<i>Casmerodius albus</i>), great blue heron (rookery) (<i>Ardea herodias</i>), and white-faced ibis (<i>Plegadis chihi</i>)</b>
1. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, design and manage valley/foothill riparian, wetland, and agricultural habitat restorations and enhancements to provide suitable nesting and foraging habitat conditions.
2. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, restore habitats adjacent to nesting colonies to create a buffer of natural habitat. This buffer would protect colonies from adverse effects that could be associated with future changes in land use on nearby lands and provide foraging and nesting habitat suitable for the natural expansion of populations.
<b>Cooper's hawk (<i>Accipiter cooperii</i>)</b>
1. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, restore valley/foothill riparian habitats adjacent to occupied nesting habitats to create a buffer of natural habitat. This buffer would protect nesting pairs from adverse effects that could be associated with future changes in land use on nearby lands and provide foraging and nesting habitat suitable for the natural expansion of populations.
<b>Double-crested cormorant (rookery) (<i>Phalacrocorax auritus</i>)</b>
1. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, manage existing reservoirs that support breeding populations, and design and manage new storage reservoirs to provide suitable nesting and foraging habitat conditions.
<b>Golden eagle (<i>Aquila chrysaetos</i>)</b>
1. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, manage restored or enhanced habitats under the ERP to maintain desirable rodent populations and minimize impacts associated with rodent control.

Table H-1. Continued

Recommended Species Specific Project Implementation Measures
Other Evaluated Species
<b>Birds (Continued)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>2. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, restore perennial grasslands adjacent to traditional nest sites to provide foraging and nesting habitat suitable for the natural expansion of populations.</li> </ol>
<b>Grasshopper sparrow (<i>Ammodramus savannarum</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, design and manage grassland and agricultural habitat restorations and enhancements within the species' range to provide suitable nesting and foraging habitat conditions.</li> </ol>
<b>Long-billed curlew (<i>Numenius americanus</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, design and manage aquatic, wetland, grassland, and agriculture habitat restorations and enhancements to provide suitable foraging habitat.</li> </ol>
<b>Long-eared owl (<i>Asio otus</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, enhance and restore natural and agricultural habitats adjacent to occupied nesting habitats to create buffer habitat. This buffer would protect nesting pairs from adverse effects that could be associated with future changes in land use on nearby lands and provide foraging and nesting habitat suitable for the natural expansion of populations.</li> <li>2. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, manage restored or enhanced habitats to maintain desirable rodent populations and minimize impacts associated with rodent control.</li> </ol>
<b>Northern harrier (<i>Circus cyaneus</i>) and short-eared owl (<i>Asio flammeus</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, design and manage wetland, grassland, and agricultural land habitat restorations and enhancements to provide suitable nesting and foraging habitat conditions.</li> <li>2. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, restore wetland and perennial grassland habitats adjacent to occupied nesting habitats to create a buffer zone of natural habitat. This buffer zone would protect nesting pairs from adverse effects that could be associated with future changes in land use on nearby lands and provide suitable foraging habitat and nesting habitat suitable for the natural expansion of populations.</li> <li>3. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, manage enhanced agricultural lands to maintain or increase prey populations.</li> </ol>
<b>Tricolored blackbird (<i>Agelaius tricolor</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, design and manage wetland and agricultural habitat restorations and enhancements to provide suitable nesting and foraging habitat conditions.</li> <li>2. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, enhance and restore natural and agricultural habitats adjacent to known nesting colonies to create a buffer zone of natural habitat. This buffer zone would protect colonies from adverse effects that could be associated with future changes in land use on nearby lands and provide foraging and nesting habitat suitable for the natural expansion of populations.</li> </ol>
<b>Western burrowing owl (<i>Athene cunicularia hypugae</i>)</b>
<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, design and manage grassland and agricultural land habitat restorations and enhancements to provide suitable foraging habitat conditions.</li> <li>2. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, restore perennial grasslands adjacent to occupied nesting habitats to provide foraging and nesting habitat suitable for the natural expansion of populations.</li> </ol>



Table H-1. Continued

Recommended Species Specific Project Implementation Measures
Other Evaluated Species
<b>Birds (Continued)</b>
<b>Western burrowing owl (<i>Athene cunicularia hypugea</i>) (Continued)</b>
3. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, manage restored or enhanced habitats to maintain desirable rodent populations and minimize impacts associated with rodent control.
<b>Western least bittern (<i>Exobrychus exilis hesperis</i>)</b>
1. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, design and manage wetland habitat restorations and enhancements to provide suitable nesting and foraging habitat conditions.
2. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, restore wetland habitats adjacent to occupied nesting habitats to create a buffer zone of natural habitat. This buffer zone would protect nesting pairs from adverse effects that could be associated with future changes in land use on nearby lands and provide foraging and nesting habitat suitable for the natural expansion of populations.
<b>White-tailed kite (<i>Elanus leucurus</i>)</b>
1. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, enhance and restore natural habitats and agricultural habitats adjacent to occupied nesting habitats to create a buffer zone of natural habitat. This buffer zone would protect nesting pairs from adverse effects that could be associated with future changes in land use on nearby lands and provide foraging and nesting habitat suitable for the natural expansion of populations.
2. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, manage restored or enhanced habitats under the ERP to maintain desirable rodent populations and minimize impacts associated with rodent control.
<b>Yellow-breasted chat (<i>Icteria virens</i>)</b>
1. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, design and manage riparian habitat restorations and enhancements to provide suitable nesting and foraging habitat conditions.
<b>Amphibians</b>
<b>Foothill yellow-legged frog (<i>Rana boylei</i>) and western spadefoot toad (<i>Scaphiopus hammondi</i>)</b>
1. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, enhance or restore suitable habitats near occupied habitat.
<b>Invertebrates</b>
<b>Mid-Valley fairy shrimp (<i>Branchinecta</i> n. sp. "mid-valley")</b>
1. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, enhance or restore suitable habitats to benefit the species in occupied habitat.
<b>Plants</b>
<b>Rose mallow (<i>Hibiscus lasiocarpus</i>)</b>
1. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, create unvegetated, exposed substrate at tidal margins of restored and created tidal fresh emergent wetland and riparian habitat.
2. To the extent consistent with CALFED objectives, incorporate suitable habitat for this species into levee improvement, levee setback, and channel island habitat restoration designs.
3. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, maximize sinuosity of restored and created slough channels to increase water-land edge habitat.

Table H-1. Continued

## Recommended Species Specific Project Implementation Measures

## Other Evaluated Species

## Birds (Continued)

Boggs Lake hedge-hyssop (*Gratiola heterosepala*), vernal pool saltscale (*Atriplex persistens*), hispid bird's-beak (*Cordylanthus mollis* ssp. *hispius*), legenere (*Legenere ilmosa*), spiny-sealed button-celery (*Eryngium spinosepalum*), marsh skullcap (*Scutellaria galericulata*), Mariposa clarkia (*Clarkia biloba* ssp. *australis*), Hospital Canyon larkspur (*Delphinium californicum* ssp. *interius*), Panoche peppergrass (*Lepidium jaredii* ssp. *album*), rock sanicle (*Sanicula saxatilis*), Red Hills ragwort (*Senecio clevelandii* var. *heterophyllus*), silky cryptantha (*Cryptantha crinita*), big tarplant (*Blepharizonia plumosa* ssp. *plumosa*), Lost Hills crownscale (*Atriplex vallicola*), Carquinez goldenbush (*Isocoma arguta*), shaggyhair lupine (*Lupinus spectabilis*), adobe-lily (*Fritillaria pluriflora*), Sanford's arrowhead (*Sagittaria sanfordii*), four-angled spike-rush (*Eleocharis quadrangulata*), slough thistle (*Cirsium crassicaule*), Point Reyes bird's-beak (*Cordylanthus maritimus* ssp. *palustris*), Napa western flax (*Hesperolimon serpentinum*), Rawhide Hill onion (*Allium tuolumnense*), Red Hills soaproot (*Chlorogalum grandiflorum*), Brandegee's eriastrum (*Eriastrum brandegee*), Brewer's western flax (*Hesperolimon breweri*), Dilmorphic snapdragon (*Antirrhinum subcordatum*), Drymaria-like western flax (*Hesperolimon drymaroides*), Madera linanthus (*Linanthus serrulatus*), Hall's bush mallow (*Malacothamnus hallii*), Ahart's paronychia (*Paronychia ahartii*), English peak greenbriar (*Smilax jamesii*), Mt. Hamilton coreopsis (*Coreopsis hamiltonii*), El Dorado County mule ears (*Wyethia reticulata*), most beautiful jewel-flower (*Streptanthus albidus* ssp. *peramoenus*), recurved larkspur (*Delphinium recurvatum*), Big Bear Valley woollypod (*Astragalus leucolobus*), Jepson's milk-vetch (*Astragalus rattanii* var. *jepsonianus*), Mt. Diablo fairy-lantern (*Calochortus pulchellus*), dwarf soaproot (*Chlorogalum pomeridianum* var. *minus*), Diablo helianthella (*Helianthella castanea*), Congdon's tarplant (*Hemizonia parryi* ssp. *congdonii*), Brittlescale (*Atriplex depressa*), San Joaquin spearscale (*Atriplex joaquiniana*), and heartscale (*Atriplex cordulata*)

1. To the extent consistent with ERP objectives, enhance or restore suitable habitats to benefit these species in occupied habitat.

\* Recommended project implementation measures are adopted from the Multi-Species Conservation Strategy (MSCS) Technical Report, "Evaluation Tables and MSCS Conservation Measures for Natural Community Conservation Plan (NCCP) Communities". All other recommended project implementation measures are from MSCS Attachment E, "Multi-Species Conservation Strategy Prescriptions and Conservation Measures for Evaluated Species".

## Acronyms:

ERP Ecosystem Restoration Program  
 MSCS Multi-Species Conservation Strategy  
 NCCP Natural Community Conservation Plan  
 PG&E Pacific Gas and Electric Company  
 SRA shaded riverine aquatic



## **Appendix I. Botanical Inventory Guidelines**



## **Guidelines for Conducting and Reporting Botanical Inventories for Federally Listed, Proposed and Candidate Plants**

These guidelines describe protocols for conducting botanical inventories for federally listed, proposed and candidate plants, and describe minimum standards for reporting results. The Service will use, in part, the information outlined below in determining whether the project under consideration may affect any listed, proposed, or candidate plants, and in determining the direct, indirect, and cumulative effects.

Field inventories should be conducted in a manner that will locate listed, proposed, or candidate species (target species) that may be present. The entire project area requires a botanical inventory, except developed agricultural lands. The field investigator(s) should:

1. Conduct inventories at the appropriate times of year when target species are present and identifiable. Inventories will include all potential habitats. Multiple site visits during a field season may be necessary to make observations during the appropriate phenological stage of all target species.
2. If available, use a regional or local reference population to obtain a visual image of the target species and associated habitat(s). If access to reference populations(s) is not available, investigators should study specimens from local herbaria.
3. List every species observed and compile a comprehensive list of vascular plants for the entire project site. Vascular plants need to be identified to a taxonomic level which allows rarity to be determined.
4. Report results of botanical field inventories that include:
  - a. a description of the biological setting, including plant community, topography, soils, potential habitat of target species, and an evaluation of environmental conditions, such as timing or quantity of rainfall, which may influence the performance and expression of target species
  - b. a map of project location showing scale, orientation, project boundaries, parcel size, and map quadrangle name
  - c. survey dates and survey methodology(ies)
  - d. if a reference population is available, provide a written narrative describing the target species reference population(s) used, and date(s) when observations were made
  - e. a comprehensive list of all vascular plants occurring on the project site for each habitat type
  - f. current and historic land uses of the habitat(s) and degree of site alteration



- g. presence of target species off-site on adjacent parcels, if known
  - h. an assessment of the biological significance or ecological quality of the project site in a local and regional context
5. If target species is(are) found, report results that additionally include:
- a. a map showing federally listed, proposed and candidate species distribution as they relate to the proposed project
  - b. if target species is (are) associated with wetlands, a description of the direction and integrity of flow of surface hydrology. If target species is (are) affected by adjacent off-site hydrological influences, describe these factors.
  - c. the target species phenology and microhabitat, an estimate of the number of individuals of each target species per unit area; identify areas of high, medium and low density of target species over the project site, and provide acres of occupied habitat of target species. Investigators could provide color slides, photos or color copies of photos of target species or representative habitats to support information or descriptions contained in reports.
  - d. the degree of impact(s), if any, of the proposed project as it relates to the potential unoccupied habitat of target habitat.
6. Document findings of target species by completing California Native Species Field Survey Form(s) and submit form(s) to the Natural Diversity Data Base. Documentation of determinations and/or voucher specimens may be useful in cases of taxonomic ambiguities, habitat or range extensions.
7. Report as an addendum to the original survey, any change in abundance and distribution of target plants in subsequent years. Project sites with inventories older than 3 years from the current date of project proposal submission will likely need additional survey. Investigators need to assess whether an additional survey(s) is (are) needed.
8. Adverse conditions may prevent investigator(s) from determining presence or identifying some target species in potential habitat(s) of target species. Disease, drought, predation, or herbivory may preclude the presence or identification of target species in any year. An additional botanical inventory(ies) in a subsequent year(s) may be required if adverse conditions occur in a potential habitat(s). Investigator(s) may need to discuss such conditions.
9. Guidance from California Department of Fish and Game (CDFG) regarding plant and plant community surveys can be found in Guidelines for Assessing the Effects of Proposed Developments on Rare and Endangered Plants and Plant Communities, 1984.

Please contact the CDFG Regional Office for questions regarding the CDFG guidelines and for assistance in determining any applicable State regulatory requirements.





## **Appendix J. Milestones**



## Appendix J. CALFED Ecosystem Restoration Program Stage 1 Milestones

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<b>Delta and East Side Tributaries</b>		
<b><u>Ecological Processes</u></b>		
Develop a methodology for evaluating delta flow and hydrodynamic patterns and begin implementation of an ecologically based plan to restore conditions in the rivers and sloughs of the Delta sufficient to support targets for the restoration of aquatic resources.	Bay-Delta Hydrodynamics	Central Valley chinook salmon and steelhead, green sturgeon, delta smelt, longfin smelt, and Sacramento splittail
Develop and implement temperature management programs within major tributaries in the Eastside Delta Tributaries EMZ. The goal of the programs should be achievement of the ERP temperature targets for salmon and steelhead. The programs shall include provisions to: a) develop accurate and reliable water temperature prediction models; b) evaluate the use of minimum carryover storage levels and other operational tools; c) evaluate the use of new facilities such as temperature control devices; and d) recommend operational and/or physical facilities as a long-term solution.	Central Valley Stream Temperatures	Central Valley fall/late fall-run chinook salmon and steelhead
Provide a fall or early winter outflow that emulates the first "winter" rain through the Delta.	Central Valley Streamflow	all Central Valley salmonids
Complete a fluvial geomorphic assessment of coarse sediment supply needs and sources to maintain, improve, or supplement gravel recruitment and natural sediment transport processes linked to stream channel maintenance, erosion and deposition, maintenance of fish spawning areas, and the regeneration of riparian vegetation. Develop and implement a program to reduce erosion and maintain gravel recruitment on at least one tributary within the Eastside Delta Tributaries EMZ.	Coarse Sediment Supply	all races of chinook salmon, steelhead, splittail, delta smelt, green sturgeon, bank swallow, California yellow warbler, western yellow-billed cuckoo, Least Bell's vireo, valley elderberry longhorn beetle, Norther California black walnut

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
Develop floodplain management plans, including feasibility studies to construct setback levees, to restore and improve opportunities for rivers to inundate their floodplain on a seasonal basis for at least one tributary within the Eastside Delta Tributary EMZ.	Natural Floodplain and Flood Processes	all Central Valley salmonids, Sacramento splittail, delta smelt, longfin smelt, western yellow-billed cuckoo, California yellow warbler, Least Bell's vireo, San Joaquin Valley woodrat, Valley elderberry long-horn beetle, Northern California black walnut
<b><u>Habitats</u></b>		
In the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta EMZ, cooperatively enhance at least 15% of the ERP target for wildlife friendly agricultural practices.	Agricultural Lands	greater sandhill crane, giant garter snake, Swainson's hawk
Restore a minimum of 15 miles of slough habitat (widths less than 50 to 75 feet) in each of the North, East, South, Central and West Delta EMUs that allows for the colonization of delta mudwort and delta tule pea.	Delta Sloughs	all Central Valley salmonids, delta smelt, Sacramento splittail, Sacramento perch, giant garter snake, delta mudwort, delta tule pea
Restore a minimum of 500, 250, 1,000, and 2,500 acres of nontidal emergent wetland in the North, East, South, and Central and West Delta Ecological Management units respectively.  Establish at least one population of bristly sedge in each EMU.	Fresh Emergent Wetland (nontidal)	giant garter snake, California black rail, bristly sedge
Restore a minimum of 500, 500, 4,000, and 5,000 acres of tidal emergent wetland in the North, East, South, and Central and West Delta Ecological Management units respectively.	Fresh Emergent Wetland (tidal)	all Central Valley salmonids, green sturgeon, longfin smelt, delta smelt, Sacramento splittail, California black rail, Mason's lilacopsis, delta mudwort, delta tule pea
Conduct surveys to locate potential habitat restoration sites capable of supporting Antioch dunes evening primrose, Contra Costa wallflower, and Lange's metalmark butterfly. Enhance 50 acres of low to moderate quality Antioch inland dune scrub habitat to support these species. Annually monitor establishment success.	Inland Dune Scrub	Lange's metalmark butterfly, Antioch dunes evening primrose, Contra Costa wallflower

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
Restore a minimum of 125 acres of channel islands and 125 acres of shoals in the Delta.	Midchannel Islands and Shoals	all Central Valley salmonids, Sacramento splittail, delta smelt, black rail
Develop and implement a program to establish, restore, and maintain riparian habitat to improve floodplain habitat, salmonid shaded riverine aquatic habitat, and instream cover along at least one tributary within the Eastside Delta Tributary EMZ	Riparian and Riverine Aquatic Habitats	Central Valley steelhead, fall/late fall-run chinook salmon, western yellow-billed cuckoo, Valley elderberry long-horn beetle, riparian brush rabbit, California yellow warbler, Least Bell's vireo, little willow flycatcher, delta coyote thistle
Implement 25 percent of the ERP target for diverse, self-sustaining riparian community for each EMU in the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta EMZ.	Riparian and Riverine Aquatic Habitats	Central Valley fall/late fall-run chinook salmon, steelhead, western yellow-billed cuckoo, little willow flycatcher, California yellow warbler
Restore a minimum of 300 acres of self-sustaining or managed diverse natural riparian habitat along the Mokelumne River, Cosumnes River, and Calaveras River and protect existing riparian habitat.	Riparian and Riverine Aquatic Habitats	Central Valley fall/late fall-run chinook salmon, steelhead, western yellow-billed cuckoo, little willow flycatcher, California yellow warbler, Valley elderberry long-horn beetle
Enhance, protect and restore 1,000 to 1,500 acres of seasonal wetlands in the East Delta EMU for optimum greater sandhill crane habitat.	Seasonal Wetlands	greater sandhill crane, Swainson's hawk
Restore a minimum of 500, 250, 500, and 750 acres of tidal perennial aquatic habitat in the North, East, South, and Central and West Delta Ecological Management units respectively.	Tidal Perennial Aquatic Habitat	all Central Valley salmonids, delta smelt, Sacramento splittail, longfin smelt, green sturgeon
<b><u>Stressors Reduction</u></b>		
Develop and implement a program to address inadequate instream flows for steelhead and chinook salmon on streams within Eastside Delta tributaries. Where appropriate provide adequate flows for Sacramento splittail and green sturgeon.	Dams and Other Structures	steelhead, fall/late fall-run chinook salmon, green sturgeon, Sacramento splittail

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
Provide unimpeded upstream and downstream passage for salmon and steelhead on Eastside Delta tributaries.	Dams and Other Structures	all Central Valley salmonids
Assist in the development and implementation of a black and clapper rail impact reduction program.	Disturbance	California black rail, California clapper rail
Develop and begin implementation of a program to reduce or eliminate the influx of non-native aquatic species in ship ballast water.	Invasive Aquatic Organisms	all covered fish species
Complete installation of fish passage facilities at Bellota Weir, Clements Dam, and Cherryland Dam on the Calaveras River and provide passage flows.	Dams and Other Structures	Central Valley fall/late fall-run chinook salmon and steelhead
Develop and begin implementation of a demonstration program to reduce invasive non-native plant abundance within at least one EMU in the Delta.	Invasive Aquatic Plants	Susun Marsh aster, Mason's lilaeopsis, delta mudwort, delta tule pea
Implement a program to improve fish passage and reduce predation on juvenile salmonids below Woodbridge Dam on the lower Mokelumne River that includes the following elements: (1) improving the form and function of the stream channel; (2) rebuilding the Woodbridge Dam fish passage and diversion screening facilities to minimize losses of downstream migrating salmon and steelhead; and (3) improving the fish bypass discharge.	Predation and Competition	Central Valley fall/late fall-run chinook salmon, steelhead
Consolidate and screen 50 small agricultural diversions in the Delta, prioritized according to size, location, and season of operation.	Water Diversions	all R and r covered fish
Upgrade screens at Southern Energy's Contra Costa power plants with screens acceptable to the Fish and Wildlife Agencies.	Water Diversions	all R and r covered fish

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Actions to minimize or eliminate low dissolved oxygen conditions (DO sag) in lower San Joaquin River near Stockton (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Complete studies of causes for DO sag in San Joaquin River near Stockton.</li> <li>• Define and implement corrective measures for DO sag.</li> <li>• Finalization of investigation of methods to reduce constituents that cause low DO for inclusion in total maximum daily load (TMDL) recommendation by the Central Valley RWQCB.</li> <li>• Finalization of Basin Plan Amendment and TMDL for constituents that cause low DO in the San Joaquin River.</li> <li>• Implement appropriate source and other controls and other management practices, as recommended in the TMDL, to reduce anthropogenic oxygen depleting substances loadings and minimize or eliminate low DO conditions.</li> </ul>	dissolved oxygen, oxygen depleting substances, nutrients, total organic carbon (TOC)	Salmonids, delta smelt, Sacramento splittail, longfin smelt, green sturgeon
Develop, implement, and support measures to reduce pollutant (oxygen depleting substances, nutrients, and ammonia) discharges from concentrated animal feeding operations. (from Phase II Report)	oxygen depleting substances, nutrients, TOC, ammonia	Salmonids, Sacramento splittail
Encourage regulatory activity to reduce discharge of oxygen reducing substances and nutrients by unpermitted dischargers. (from Phase II Report)	dissolved oxygen, oxygen depleting substances, nutrients	Salmonids, Sacramento splittail



Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Actions to reduce fine sediment loading to streams, especially Tuolumne, Merced, Stanislaus, Cosumnes, Napa, and Petaluma Rivers, and Sonoma Creek, due to human activities (from Phase II Report and Water Quality Program Plan):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Participate in implementation of USDA sediment reduction program.</li> <li>• Implement sediment reduction BMPs in construction areas, on agricultural lands, for urban stormwater runoff, and other specific sites.</li> <li>• Implement stream restoration and revegetation work.</li> <li>• Quantify and determine ecological impacts of sediments in target watersheds, implement corrective actions.</li> </ul>	turbidity/ sedimentation	Salmonids
<p>Conduct the necessary research to determine no adverse ecological/biological effects threshold concentrations for mercury in sediments and key organisms in the Bay-Delta estuary and its watershed.</p>	mercury	Salmonids, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake, salt marsh harvest mouse, California clapper rail, California black rail
<p>Conduct the following mercury evaluation and abatement work in the Cache Creek watershed (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Support development and implementation of TMDL for mercury.</li> <li>• Determine bioaccumulation effects in creek and Delta.</li> <li>• Source, transport, inventory, mapping and speciation of mercury.</li> <li>• Participate in Stage I remediation (drainage control) of mercury mines as appropriate.</li> <li>• Determine sources of high levels of bioavailable mercury</li> </ul>	mercury	Salmonids, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake
<p>Conduct the following mercury evaluation and abatement work in the Delta (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Determine methylization (part of bioaccumulation) process in Delta.</li> <li>• Determine sediment mercury concentration in areas that would be dredged during levee maintenance or conveyance work.</li> <li>• Determine potential impact of ecosystem restoration work on methyl mercury levels in lower and higher trophic level organisms.</li> </ul>	mercury	Salmonids, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake, salt marsh harvest mouse, California clapper rail, California black rail

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Conduct the following pesticide work (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Develop diazinon and chlorpyrifos hazard assessment criteria with CDFG and the Department of Pesticide Regulations.</li> <li>• Support development and implementation of a TMDL for diazinon.</li> <li>• Develop BMPs for dormant spray and household uses.</li> <li>• Determine the ecological significance of pesticide discharges.</li> <li>• Support implementation of BMPs.</li> <li>• Monitor to determine effectiveness of BMPs</li> </ul>	carbofurans, chloropyrifos, diazinon	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake, possibly other species depending on type of actions and specific sites.
<p>Conduct the following selenium work:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Conduct selenium research to fill data gaps in order to refine regulatory goals of source control actions; determine bioavailability of selenium under several scenarios (from Phase II Report).</li> <li>• Evaluate and, if appropriate, implement real-time management of selenium discharges (from Phase II Report).</li> <li>• Expand and implement source control, treatment, and reuse programs (from Phase II Report).</li> <li>• Coordinate with other programs; e.g., recommendations of San Joaquin Valley Drainage Implementation Program, CVPIA for retirement of lands with drainage problems that are not subject to correction in other ways (from Phase II Report).</li> <li>• Support development and implementation of TMDL for selenium in the San Joaquin River watershed (focus on Grassland area).</li> </ul>	selenium	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake, salt marsh harvest mouse, California clapper rail, California black rail
<p>Conduct the following actions in reduce organochlorine pesticide inputs to streams (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Participate in implementation of USDA sediment reduction program.</li> <li>• Implement sediment reduction BMPs on agricultural lands and other specific sites.</li> <li>• Implement BMPs for urban/industrial stormwater runoff and discharges to reduce PCB and organochlorine pesticides.</li> </ul>	chlorodane, DDT, PCBs, toxaphene	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Conduct the following trace metals work (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Determine spatial and temporal extent of metal pollution.</li> <li>Determine ecological significance and extent of copper contamination.</li> <li>Evaluate impacts of other metals such as cadmium, zinc, and chromium.</li> <li>Participate in Brake Pad Partnership to reduce introduction of copper.</li> <li>Partner with municipalities on evaluation and implementation of stormwater control facilities.</li> <li>Participate in remediation of mine sites as part of local watershed restoration and Delta restoration.</li> </ul>	cadmium, copper, zinc	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake, salt marsh harvest mouse, California clapper rail, California black rail
<p>Conduct the following unknown toxicity work (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Conduct appropriate studies to identify unknown toxicity, and develop management actions as appropriate.</li> </ul>	toxicity of unknown origin	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon
<b>Suisun Marsh and North San Francisco Bay</b>		
<b><u>Habitats</u></b>		
<p>Restore and maintain a minimum of three linear miles of riparian habitat along corridors of existing riparian scrub and shrub vegetation in each of the Ecological Management Units of the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Management Zone.</p>	Riparian and Riverine Aquatic Habitats	Sacramento splittail, all Central Valley salmonids, Valley elderberry long-horn beetle, riparian brush rabbit, California yellow warbler, Least Bell's vireo, little willow flycatcher

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>In the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay EMZ, restore a minimum of 7,000 acres of Saline Emergent Wetland by restoring tidal action in the Suisun Bay and Marsh Ecological Management Unit (including 200 acres of muted tidal marsh along the Contra Costa shoreline) and a cumulative total of 1,000 acres in the Napa River, Sonoma Creek, Petaluma River, and San Pablo Bay Ecological Management Units. Restore high marsh and high-marsh upland transition habitat in conjunction with restoration of saline emergent wetland. Develop cooperative programs to acquire, in fee-title or through a conservation easement, the land needed for tidal restoration, and complete the needed steps to restore the wetlands to tidal action. Begin aggressive program of control of non-native plant species that are threatening the known populations of Suisun thistle, Suisun Marsh aster, soft bird's beak, and Point Reyes bird's beak.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Bring into protection at least 25% of currently occupied, but unprotected Suisun Marsh aster habitat, spread throughout the North, East, South Delta and Napa River Ecological Units, and ensure appropriate management.</li> <li>-Expand suitable tidal slough habitat for Suisun Marsh aster by 25 linear miles.</li> <li>-Identify at least three protected and managed sites for introduction of at least three additional populations of Suisun thistle; increase overall population size at least threefold.</li> <li>-Establish at least one new population of soft bird's beak with high likelihood of success in restored habitat in each of the Suisun Bay and Marsh EMU, the Napa River EMU, and the Petaluma River EMU.</li> <li>-Establish at least one new Point Reyes bird's beak population in the Petaluma River and San Pablo Bay EMUs.</li> </ul>	Saline Emergent Wetland	All Central Valley salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, Suisun song sparrow, San Pablo song sparrow, California Clapper rail, California black rail, Suisun thistle, soft bird's beak, Point Reyes bird's-beak, salt marsh harvest mouse, Suisun ornate shrew, San Pablo California vole, Suisun aster, salt marsh common yellow throat

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Restore suitable, occupied slough edge habitat for delta mudwort and delta tule pea by at least 5 miles in the Suisun Bay and Marsh EMU and by at least 10 miles in the Napa River EMUs.</p> <p>Bring at least 25% the currently existing but unprotected occurrences of delta mudwort and delta tule into protection through purchase or conservation agreement, and ensure appropriate management.</p>	Saline Emergent Wetland	all Central Valley salmonids, delta smelt, Sacramento splittail, California black rail, Mason's lilaeopsis, delta mudwort, delta tule pea
In the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Management Zone, restore and manage a minimum of 500 acres of seasonal wetland, and improve management of a minimum of 7,000 acres of existing, degraded seasonal wetland in a manner that provides suitable habitat for salt marsh harvest mouse, San Pablo California vole, and Suisun ornate shrew.	Seasonal Wetlands	salt marsh harvest mouse, San Pablo California vole, Suisun ornate shrew
Restore a minimum of 400 acres of tidal perennial aquatic habitat in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Management Zone.	Tidal Perennial Aquatic Habitat	all Central Valley salmonids, delta smelt, Sacramento splittail, longfin smelt

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Develop a cooperative program to acquire, manage and restore 100 acres of vernal pools and 500 to 1,000 acres of adjacent buffer areas in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay EMZ.</p> <p>Protect all existing known occurrences of Crampton's tuctoria through conservation easement or purchase from willing sellers (including CNDDDB Element Occurrence #2 and any new populations that are found). Identify at least two protected and managed sites for introduction of additional populations; begin introduction and monitor for success.</p> <p>Manage at least 250 acres of the ERP target for vernal pools near the Jepson Prairie preserve as suitable habitat for alkali milk vetch. Establish new populations on protected and appropriately managed lands. Bring 50% of currently unprotected, existing populations into protection through purchase or conservation agreement, and ensure appropriate management.</p>	Vernal Pools	Delta green ground beetle, Crampton's tuctoria, Alkali milk- vetch
<b><u>Stressors Reduction</u></b>		
Develop a program to consolidate, screen, or eliminate 25% of the unscreened diversions in Suisun Marsh.	Water Diversions	all R and r covered fish
Develop, implement, and support measures to reduce pollutant (oxygen depleting substances, nutrients, and ammonia) discharges from concentrated animal feeding operations. (from Phase II Report)	oxygen depleting substances, nutrients, TOC, ammonia	Salmonids, Sacramento splittail
Encourage regulatory activity to reduce discharge of oxygen reducing substances and nutrients by unpermitted dischargers. (from Phase II Report)	dissolved oxygen, oxygen depleting substances, nutrients	Salmonids, Sacramento splittail

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Actions to reduce fine sediment loading to streams, especially Tuolumne, Merced, Stanislaus, Cosumnes, Napa, and Petaluma Rivers, and Sonoma Creek, due to human activities (from Phase II Report and Water Quality Program Plan):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Participate in implementation of USDA sediment reduction program.</li> <li>• Implement sediment reduction BMPs in construction areas, on agricultural lands, for urban stormwater runoff, and other specific sites.</li> <li>• Implement stream restoration and revegetation work.</li> <li>• Quantify and determine ecological impacts of sediments in target watersheds, implement corrective actions.</li> </ul>	turbidity/ sedimentation	Salmonids
<p>Conduct the necessary research to determine no adverse ecological/biological effects threshold concentrations for mercury in sediments and key organisms in the Bay-Delta estuary and its watershed.</p>	mercury	Salmonids, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake, salt marsh harvest mouse, California clapper rail, California black rail
<p>Conduct the following pesticide work (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Develop diazinon and chlorpyrifos hazard assessment criteria with CDFG and the Department of Pesticide Regulations.</li> <li>• Support development and implementation of a TMDL for diazinon.</li> <li>• Develop BMPs for dormant spray and household uses.</li> <li>• Determine the ecological significance of pesticide discharges.</li> <li>• Support implementation of BMPs.</li> <li>• Monitor to determine effectiveness of BMPs</li> </ul>	carbofurans, chloropyrifos, diazinon	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake, possibly other species depending on type of actions and specific sites.

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Conduct the following selenium work:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Conduct selenium research to fill data gaps in order to refine regulatory goals of source control actions; determine bioavailability of selenium under several scenarios (from Phase II Report).</li> <li>• Evaluate and, if appropriate, implement real-time management of selenium discharges (from Phase II Report).</li> <li>• Expand and implement source control, treatment, and reuse programs (from Phase II Report).</li> <li>• Coordinate with other programs; e.g., recommendations of San Joaquin Valley Drainage Implementation Program, CVPIA for retirement of lands with drainage problems that are not subject to correction in other ways (from Phase II Report).</li> <li>• Support development and implementation of TMDL for selenium in the San Joaquin River watershed (focus on Grassland area).</li> </ul>	selenium	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake, salt marsh harvest mouse, California clapper rail, California black rail
<p>Conduct the following actions in reduce organochlorine pesticide inputs to streams (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Participate in implementation of USDA sediment reduction program.</li> <li>• Implement sediment reduction BMPs on agricultural lands and other specific sites.</li> <li>• Implement BMPs for urban/industrial stormwater runoff and discharges to reduce PCB and organochlorine pesticides.</li> </ul>	chlorodane, DDT, PCBs, toxaphene	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake



Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Conduct the following trace metals work (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Determine spatial and temporal extent of metal pollution.</li> <li>• Determine ecological significance and extent of copper contamination.</li> <li>• Evaluate impacts of other metals such as cadmium, zinc, and chromium.</li> <li>• Participate in Brake Pad Partnership to reduce introduction of copper.</li> <li>• Partner with municipalities on evaluation and implementation of stormwater control facilities.</li> <li>• Participate in remediation of mine sites as part of local watershed restoration and Delta restoration.</li> </ul>	cadmium, copper, zinc	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake, salt marsh harvest mouse, California clapper rail, California black rail
<p>Conduct the following unknown toxicity work (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Conduct appropriate studies to identify unknown toxicity, and develop management actions as appropriate.</li> </ul>	toxicity of unknown origin	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<b>Sacramento River Basin</b>		
<b><u>Ecological Processes</u></b>		
<p>Construct a network of channels totaling 20 miles within the Sutter and Yolo Bypasses that effectively drains flooded lands after floodflows stop entering the bypasses. The channels should be designed to allow juvenile anadromous and resident fish to move from rearing and migratory areas.</p> <p>Develop and begin implementation of a program in the Yolo Basin to restore channel-floodplain connectivity and floodplain processes. Design natural stream channel configurations and expand floodplain overflow areas in the lower Cache and Putah Creek floodplains, as well as in channels and sloughs of the upper Yolo Bypass to provide connections with the Delta in a manner consistent with flood control requirements. Diversions (water source) into the Yolo Basin should not result in direct or indirect adverse impacts to salmonids. Project design features would include sloughs and creek channels, setback levees, and wetlands, where feasible and consistent with flood protection.</p>	Natural Floodplain and Flood Processes	Central Valley chinook salmon and steelhead, Sacramento splittail
Develop and implement temperature management programs within major tributaries in the Sacramento River Basin. The goal of the programs should be achievement of the ERP temperature targets for salmon and steelhead. The programs shall include provisions to: a) develop accurate and reliable water temperature prediction models; b) evaluate the use of minimum carryover storage levels and other operational tools; c) evaluate the use of new facilities such as temperature control devices; and d) recommend operational and/or physical facilities as a long-term solution.	Central Valley Stream Temperatures	Central Valley fall/late fall-run chinook salmon and steelhead

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
Develop and implement a program to address the thermal impacts of irrigation return flows in the Sacramento River Basin. The goal of the program should be achieve Basin Plan objectives for water temperature. The program should include provisions to: a) identify locations of irrigation return flows with thermal impacts; b) develop measures to avoid or eliminate thermal impacts from irrigation return flows; and c) prioritize problem sites based on impacts to chinook salmon and steelhead. If feasible, proceed with implementation of some or all actions to address thermal impacts of irrigation return flows.	Central Valley Stream Temperatures	Central Valley fall/late fall-run chinook salmon and steelhead
Design and begin implementation of an ecologically based streamflow regulation plan for Yuba River, Butte Creek, Big Chico Creek, Deer Creek, Mill Creek , Antelope Creek, Battle Creek, Cottonwood Creek, and Clear Creek.	Central Valley Streamflow	all Central Valley salmonids, green sturgeon, Sacramento splittail, western yellow-billed cuckoo, yellow warbler, Least Bell's vireo
Complete a fluvial geomorphic assessment of coarse sediment supply needs and sources to maintain, improve, or supplement gravel recruitment and natural sediment transport processes linked to stream channel maintenance, erosion and deposition, maintenance of fish spawning areas, and the regeneration of riparian vegetation. Develop and implement a program to reduce erosion and maintain gravel recruitment on at least one tributary within each EMZ in the Sacramento River Basin.	Coarse Sediment Supply	all races of chinook salmon, steelhead, splittail, delta smelt, green sturgeon, bank swallow, California yellow warbler, western yellow-billed cuckoo, Least Bell's vireo, valley elderberry longhorn beetle, Norther California black walnut
Develop floodplain management plans, including feasibility studies to construct setback levees, to restore and improve opportunities for rivers to inundate their floodplain on a seasonal basis for at least one tributary within each of the EMZs in the Sacramento River Basin. Among the areas to be included are the lower 10 miles of Clear Creek, Antelope Creek, and Deer Creek, and the lower reach of Cottonwood Creek.	Natural Floodplain and Flood Processes	all Central Valley salmonids, Sacramento splittail, delta smelt, longfin smelt, western yellow-billed cuckoo, California yellow warbler, Least Bell's vireo, San Joaquin Valley woodrat, Valley elderberry long-horn beetle, Northern California black walnut

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
Protect 15,000 acres within the Inner River Zone areas between Red Bluff and Colusa reaches within identified the Sacramento River Conservation Area. Establish between 3 and 5 habitat preserves for bank swallows along the upper reaches of the Sacramento River capable of supporting 5000 bank swallow burrows between the towns of Colusa and Red Bluff.	Stream Meander	all Central Valley salmonids, steelhead, western yellow-billed cuckoo, Least Bell's vireo, Swainson's hawk, Valley elderberry longhorn beetle, bank swallow
<b><u>Habitats</u></b>		
In the American River Basin, Butte Basin, Colusa Basin, Feather River/Sutter Basin EMZs, cooperatively enhance at least 15 to 25% of the ERPP target for wildlife friendly agricultural practices.	Agricultural Lands	greater sandhill crane, giant garter snake, Swainson's hawk
<p>Develop and implement a program to establish, restore, and maintain riparian habitat to improve floodplain habitat; salmonid shaded riverine aquatic habitat, and instream cover along at least one tributary within each of the following Ecological Management Zones: American River Basin, Butte Basin, Colusa Basin, Cottonwood Creek, Feather River/Sutter Basin, North Sacramento Valley, Sacramento River, and Yolo Basin. While restoring habitat conditions in the American River EMZ, maintain continuous corridors of suitable riparian habitat for valley elderberry longhorn beetle.</p> <p>Protect existing known occurrences of northern California black walnut native stands through conservation easement or purchase.</p> <p>Identify at least 3 protected and managed sites for introduction of additional populations of northern California black walnut; begin introduction and monitor for success. Population creation should be part of a broader effort to restore riparian areas which historically contained walnut.</p>	Riparian and Riverine Aquatic Habitats	all Central Valley salmonids, western yellow-billed cuckoo, Valley elderberry long-horn beetle, California yellow warbler, Least Bell's vireo, little willow flycatcher

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
In the Cottonwood Creek EMZ, complete (1) long-term agreements with local landowners to establish, restore, and maintain riparian communities along 25 percent of the upper and 25 percent of the lower reaches of Cottonwood Creek, and (2) the development of a comprehensive watershed management plan that supports local land use decisions to protect existing riparian and restore lost riparian.	Riparian and Riverine Aquatic Habitats	all Central Valley salmonids, California yellow warbler, western yellow-billed cuckoo, Least Bell's vireo, little willow flycatcher
Restore 2 miles of the 10 mile target of riparian habitat restoration along the lower reaches of each of the following tributaries: Battle, Clear, Deer, Mill, Butte, Big Chico, Antelope, Feather, Yuba, and Bear Rivers.	Riparian and Riverine Aquatic Habitats	all Central Valley salmonids, California yellow warbler, western yellow-billed cuckoo, little willow flycatcher, Least Bell's vireo, Valley elderberry long-horn beetle
Implement 25 percent of the ERP target for enhancing, protecting, and restoring seasonal wetlands in the following EMZs: American River Basin, Butte Basin, Colusa Basin, and Feather River/Sutter Basin.	Seasonal Wetlands	greater sandhill crane, Swainson's hawk, giant garter snake
<b><u>Stressors Reduction</u></b>		
Develop and implement a program to address inadequate instream flows for steelhead and chinook salmon on streams within Sacramento River Basin tributaries. Where appropriate provide adequate flows for Sacramento splittail and green sturgeon.	Dams and Other Structures	all Central Valley salmonids, green sturgeon, Sacramento splittail
Provide unimpeded upstream and downstream passage for salmon and steelhead on Sacramento River Basin tributaries.	Dams and Other Structures	all Central Valley salmonids, green sturgeon, Sacramento splittail
On Big Chico Creek, repair the Lindo Channel weir and fishway at the Lindo Channel box culvert at the Five Mile Diversion to improve upstream fish passage.	Dams and Other Structures	all Central Valley salmonids
Develop and implement a solution to improve passage of upstream migrant adult fish and downstream migrant juvenile fish Battle Creek.	Dams and Other Structures	all Central Valley salmonids, green sturgeon

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
Evaluate the feasibility of constructing fish passage facilities at the Grays Bend-Old River-Freemont weir complex at the upper end of the Yolo Bypass.	Dams and Other Structures	all Central Valley salmonids
Develop a program to reduce or eliminate fish stranding in the Sacramento, Feather and Yuba rivers and the Colusa Basin drain and Sutter Bypass in the active stream channels, floodplains, shallow ponds and borrow areas. Develop protocols for ramping flow reductions. Conduct surveys of stranding under a range of flow conditions and recommend solutions.	Stranding	all Central Valley salmonids, green sturgeon, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail
Install positive barrier fish screens on all diversions greater than 250 cfs in all EMZs and 25% of all smaller unscreened diversions in the Sacramento River Basin. Among those diversions to be screened are the DWR Pumping Plants and 50% of small diversion located on east side of Sutter Bypass, the Bella Vista diversion in the upper Sacramento River near Redding, East-West Diversion Weir, Weir 5, Weir 3, Guisti Weir and Weir 1 in the Sutter Bypass, White Mallard Dam, Morton Weir, Drivers Cut Outfall and Colusa Shooting/Tarke Weir Outfall and associated diversion screens in the Butte Sink..	Water Diversions	all R and r covered fish
Develop, implement, and support measures to reduce pollutant (oxygen depleting substances, nutrients, and ammonia) discharges from concentrated animal feeding operations. (from Phase II Report)	oxygen depleting substances, nutrients, TOC, ammonia	Salmonids, Sacramento splittail

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Actions to minimize or eliminate inter-substrate low dissolved oxygen conditions in salmonid spawning and rearing habitat, especially in the Mokelumne, Cosumnes, American, Merced, Tuolumne, and Stanislaus Rivers (from Phase II Report and Water Quality Program Plan):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Develop inter-substrate DO testing for salmonid spawning and rearing habitat.</li> <li>• Conduct comprehensive surveys to assess the extent and severity of inter-substrate low DO conditions.</li> <li>• Develop and begin implementing appropriate best management practices (BMPs), including reducing anthropogenic fine sediment loads, to minimize or eliminate inter-substrate low DO conditions.</li> </ul>	dissolved oxygen, turbidity/ sedimentation	Salmonids
Encourage regulatory activity to reduce discharge of oxygen reducing substances and nutrients by unpermitted dischargers. (from Phase II Report)	dissolved oxygen, oxygen depleting substances, nutrients	Salmonids, Sacramento splittail
<p>Actions to reduce fine sediment loading to streams, especially Tuolumne, Merced, Stanislaus, Cosumnes, Napa, and Petaluma Rivers, and Sonoma Creek, due to human activities (from Phase II Report and Water Quality Program Plan):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Participate in implementation of USDA sediment reduction program.</li> <li>• Implement sediment reduction BMPs in construction areas, on agricultural lands, for urban stormwater runoff, and other specific sites.</li> <li>• Implement stream restoration and revegetation work.</li> <li>• Quantify and determine ecological impacts of sediments in target watersheds, implement corrective actions.</li> </ul>	turbidity/ sedimentation	Salmonids
Conduct the necessary research to determine no adverse ecological/biological effects threshold concentrations for mercury in sediments and key organisms in the Bay-Delta estuary and its watershed.	mercury	Salmonids, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake, salt marsh harvest mouse, California clapper rail, California black rail

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Conduct the following mercury evaluation and abatement work in the Cache Creek watershed (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Support development and implementation of TMDL for mercury.</li> <li>• Determine bioaccumulation effects in creek and Delta.</li> <li>• Source, transport, inventory, mapping and speciation of mercury.</li> <li>• Participate in Stage 1 remediation (drainage control) of mercury mines as appropriate.</li> <li>• Determine sources of high levels of bioavailable mercury</li> </ul>	mercury	Salmonids, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake
<p>Conduct the following mercury evaluation and abatement work in the Sacramento River (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Determine, inventory, and sources of high levels of bioavailable mercury</li> <li>• Refine mercury models.</li> <li>• Participate in remedial activities.</li> </ul>	mercury	Salmonids, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake
<p>Conduct the following pesticide work (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Develop diazinon and chlorpyrifos hazard assessment criteria with CDFG and the Department of Pesticide Regulations.</li> <li>• Support development and implementation of a TMDL for diazinon.</li> <li>• Develop BMPs for dormant spray and household uses.</li> <li>• Determine the ecological significance of pesticide discharges.</li> <li>• Support implementation of BMPs.</li> <li>• Monitor to determine effectiveness of BMPs</li> </ul>	carbofurans, chloropyrifos, diazinon	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake, possibly other species depending on type of actions and specific sites.
<p>Conduct the following actions in reduce organochlorine pesticide inputs to streams (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Participate in implementation of USDA sediment reduction program.</li> <li>• Implement sediment reduction BMPs on agricultural lands and other specific sites.</li> <li>• Implement BMPs for urban/industrial stormwater runoff and discharges to reduce PCB and organochlorine pesticides.</li> </ul>	chlorodane, DDT, PCBs, toxaphene	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake



Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Conduct the following trace metals work (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Determine spatial and temporal extent of metal pollution.</li> <li>• Determine ecological significance and extent of copper contamination.</li> <li>• Evaluate impacts of other metals such as cadmium, zinc, and chromium.</li> <li>• Participate in Brake Pad Partnership to reduce introduction of copper.</li> <li>• Partner with municipalities on evaluation and implementation of stormwater control facilities.</li> <li>• Participate in remediation of mine sites as part of local watershed restoration and Delta restoration.</li> </ul>	cadmium, copper, zinc	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake, salt marsh harvest mouse, California clapper rail, California black rail
<p>Conduct the following unknown toxicity work (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Conduct appropriate studies to identify unknown toxicity, and develop management actions as appropriate.</li> </ul>	toxicity of unknown origin	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon
<b>San Joaquin River Basin</b>		
<b><u>Ecological Processes</u></b>		
<p>Develop and implement temperature management programs within major tributaries in the San Joaquin River Basin. The goal of the programs should be achievement of the ERP temperature targets for salmon and steelhead. The programs shall include provisions to: a) develop accurate and reliable water temperature prediction models; b) evaluate the use of minimum carryover storage levels and other operational tools; c) evaluate the use of new facilities such as temperature control devices; and d) recommend operational and/or physical facilities as a long-term solution.</p>	Central Valley Stream Temperatures	Central Valley fall/late fall-run chinook salmon and steelhead

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
Develop and implement a program to address the thermal impacts of irrigation return flows in the San Joaquin River Basin. The goal of the program should be achieve Basin Plan objectives for water temperature. The program should include provisions to: a) identify locations of irrigation return flows with thermal impacts; b) develop measures to avoid or eliminate thermal impacts from irrigation return flows; and c) prioritize problem sites based on impacts to chinook salmon and steelhead. If feasible, proceed with implementation of some or all actions to address thermal impacts of irrigation return flows.	Central Valley Stream Temperatures	Central Valley fall/late fall-run chinook salmon and steelhead
Complete a fluvial geomorphic assessment of coarse sediment supply needs and sources to maintain, improve, or supplement gravel recruitment and natural sediment transport processes linked to stream channel maintenance, erosion and deposition, maintenance of fish spawning areas, and the regeneration of riparian vegetation. Develop and implement a program to reduce erosion and maintain gravel recruitment on at least one tributary within each EMZ within the San Joaquin River Basin. In the East San Joaquin Basin EMZ, complete fluvial geomorphic assessments on all tributaries.	Coarse Sediment Supply	all races of chinook salmon, steelhead, splittail, delta smelt, green sturgeon, bank swallow, California yellow warbler, western yellow-billed cuckoo, Least Bell's vireo, valley elderberry longhorn beetle, Northern California black walnut
Develop floodplain management plans, including feasibility studies to construct setback levees, to restore and improve opportunities for rivers to inundate their floodplain on a seasonal basis for at least one tributary within each of the EMZs in the San Joaquin River Basin. Among the areas to be included are at least 10 miles of stream channel in the West San Joaquin EMZ.	Natural Floodplain and Flood Processes	all Central Valley salmonids, Sacramento splittail, delta smelt, longfin smelt, western yellow-billed cuckoo, California yellow warbler, Least Bell's vireo, San Joaquin Valley woodrat, Valley elderberry long-horn beetle, Northern California black walnut

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
Develop a cooperative program to restore salmonid spawning and rearing habitat in the Tuolumne, Stanislaus, and Merced Rivers that includes the following elements: (1) reconstructing channels at selected sites by isolating or filling in inchannel gravel extraction areas; (2) increasing natural meander by removing riprap and relocating other structures that impair stream meander; and (3) restoring more natural channel configurations to reduce salmonid predator habitat and improve migration corridors.	Stream Meander (also Predation and Competition)	Central Valley fall/late fall-run chinook salmon, steelhead, western yellow-billed cuckoo, California yellow warbler, bank swallow
Restore and maintain a defined stream-meander zone and increase floodplain habitat on the San Joaquin River between Vernalis and the mouth of the Merced River.	Stream Meander	Sacramento splittail, Central Valley fall/late fall-run chinook salmon, steelhead, bank swallow
Establish a river meander corridor between the Chowchilla Bypass and Mendota Pool to expand the floodway corridor to convey increased anticipated floodflows and restore floodplain habitat.	Stream Meander	Sacramento splittail, Central Valley fall/late fall-run chinook salmon, steelhead, bank swallow
<b><u>Habitats</u></b>		
In the San Joaquin River and West San Joaquin Basin EMZs, cooperatively enhance at least 15 to 25% of the ERPP target for wildlife friendly agricultural practices	Agricultural Lands	Swainson's hawk, greater sandhill crane, giant garter snake
In the West San Joaquin Basin EMZ, restoring or create 100 acres of fresh emergent wetland habitat.	Fresh Emergent Wetland	giant garter snake
In the West San Joaquin Basin EMZ, restore or enhance 1,000 acres of perennial grassland associated with existing or proposed wildlife corridors, wetlands, or floodplain habitats.	Perennial Grasslands	Swainson's hawk, greater sandhill crane

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
Develop and implement a program to establish, restore, and maintain riparian habitat to improve floodplain habitat, salmonid shaded riverine aquatic habitat and instream cover along at least one tributary within the East San Joaquin and San Joaquin River EMZs.	Riparian and Riverine Aquatic Habitats	Central Valley steelhead, fall/late fall-run chinook salmon, western yellow-billed cuckoo, Valley elderberry long-horn beetle, riparian brush rabbit, California yellow warbler, Least Bell's vireo, little willow flycatcher, delta coyote thistle
<p>Implement 25 percent of the ERP target for diverse, self-sustaining riparian community for all EMZs in the San Joaquin River Basin.</p> <p>Bring at least three of the currently existing but unprotected delta coyote thistle occurrences into protection through purchase or conservation agreement, and ensure appropriate management.</p> <p>Increase suitable habitat for delta coyote thistle by at least 20% and the number of populations and individuals by at least 10% through habitat management and protection.</p> <p>Establish two new riparian brush rabbit habitat preserves within the historical range of the species. Protect and enhance a minimum of 150 contiguous acres of mature, shrub-rich riparian forest and associated highwater refugia on the San Joaquin River, between the Merced River confluence and Vernalis, and on each of the east-side tributaries (the Stanislaus, Tuolumne and Merced rivers) for habitat values and as potential riparian brush rabbit re-introduction sites.</p>	Riparian and Riverine Aquatic Habitats	San Joaquin Valley woodrat, delta coyote thistle, western yellow-billed cuckoo, Valley elderberry long-horn beetle, riparian brush rabbit

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<b><u>Stressors Reduction</u></b>		
Develop and implement a program to address inadequate instream flows for steelhead and chinook salmon on streams within San Joaquin River tributaries. Where appropriate provide adequate flows for Sacramento splittail and green sturgeon.	Dams and Other Structures	steelhead, fall/late fall-run chinook salmon, green sturgeon, Sacramento splittail
Provide unimpeded upstream and downstream passage for salmon and steelhead on San Joaquin River Basin tributaries.	Dams and Other Structures	steelhead, fall/late fall-run chinook salmon
Initiate a feasibility study of restoring steelhead migration into upper watershed areas (e.g., upstream of major low-elevation dams) in at least one San Joaquin River Basin EMZ Tributary.	Dams and Other Structures	steelhead
Install positive barrier fish screens on all diversions greater than 250 cfs in all EMZs and 25% of all smaller unscreened diversions in the San Joaquin River Basin. Among those diversions to be screened are the El Solyo, Patterson, and West Stanislaus irrigation district diversions.	Water Diversions	all R and r covered fish

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Actions to minimize or eliminate low dissolved oxygen conditions (DO sag) in lower San Joaquin River near Stockton (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Complete studies of causes for DO sag in San Joaquin River near Stockton.</li> <li>• Define and implement corrective measures for DO sag.</li> <li>• Finalization of investigation of methods to reduce constituents that cause low DO for inclusion in total maximum daily load (TMDL) recommendation by the Central Valley RWQCB.</li> <li>• Finalization of Basin Plan Amendment and TMDL for constituents that cause low DO in the San Joaquin River.</li> <li>• Implement appropriate source and other controls and other management practices, as recommended in the TMDL, to reduce anthropogenic oxygen depleting substances loadings and minimize or eliminate low DO conditions.</li> </ul>	<p>dissolved oxygen, oxygen depleting substances, nutrients, total organic carbon (TOC)</p>	<p>Salmonids, delta smelt, Sacramento splittail, longfin smelt, green sturgeon</p>
<p>Develop, implement, and support measures to reduce pollutant (oxygen depleting substances, nutrients, and ammonia) discharges from concentrated animal feeding operations. (from Phase II Report)</p>	<p>oxygen depleting substances, nutrients, TOC, ammonia</p>	<p>Salmonids, Sacramento splittail</p>
<p>Actions to minimize or eliminate inter-substrate low dissolved oxygen conditions in salmonid spawning and rearing habitat, especially in the Mokelumne, Cosumnes, American, Merced, Tuolumne, and Stanislaus Rivers (from Phase II Report and Water Quality Program Plan):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Develop inter-substrate DO testing for salmonid spawning and rearing habitat.</li> <li>• Conduct comprehensive surveys to assess the extent and severity of inter-substrate low DO conditions.</li> <li>• Develop and begin implementing appropriate best management practices (BMPs), including reducing anthropogenic fine sediment loads, to minimize or eliminate inter-substrate low DO conditions.</li> </ul>	<p>dissolved oxygen, turbidity/ sedimentation</p>	<p>Salmonids</p>

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
Assess the ecological effects of low DO conditions in Suisun Marsh due to adding oxygen-depleted water from anthropogenic sources (from Water Quality Program Plan).	dissolved oxygen, oxygen depleting substances, nutrients, TOC	Delta smelt, Sacramento splittail, longfin smelt, salmonids, green sturgeon
Encourage regulatory activity to reduce discharge of oxygen reducing substances and nutrients by unpermitted dischargers. (from Phase II Report)	dissolved oxygen, oxygen depleting substances, nutrients	Salmonids, Sacramento splittail
<p>Actions to reduce fine sediment loading to streams, especially Tuolumne, Merced, Stanislaus, Cosumnes, Napa, and Petaluma Rivers, and Sonoma Creek, due to human activities (from Phase II Report and Water Quality Program Plan):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Participate in implementation of USDA sediment reduction program.</li> <li>• Implement sediment reduction BMPs in construction areas, on agricultural lands, for urban stormwater runoff, and other specific sites.</li> <li>• Implement stream restoration and revegetation work.</li> <li>• Quantify and determine ecological impacts of sediments in target watersheds, implement corrective actions.</li> </ul>	turbidity/ sedimentation	Salmonids
Conduct the necessary research to determine no adverse ecological/biological effects threshold concentrations for mercury in sediments and key organisms in the Bay-Delta estuary and its watershed.	mercury	Salmonids, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake, salt marsh harvest mouse, California clapper rail, California black rail
<p>Conduct the following pesticide work (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Develop diazinon and chlorpyrifos hazard assessment criteria with CDFG and the Department of Pesticide Regulations.</li> <li>• Support development and implementation of a TMDL for diazinon.</li> <li>• Develop BMPs for dormant spray and household uses.</li> <li>• Determine the ecological significance of pesticide discharges.</li> <li>• Support implementation of BMPs.</li> <li>• Monitor to determine effectiveness of BMPs</li> </ul>	carbofurans, chloropyrifos, diazinon	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake, possibly other species depending on type of actions and specific sites.

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Conduct the following selenium work:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Conduct selenium research to fill data gaps in order to refine regulatory goals of source control actions; determine bioavailability of selenium under several scenarios (from Phase II Report).</li> <li>• Evaluate and, if appropriate, implement real-time management of selenium discharges (from Phase II Report).</li> <li>• Expand and implement source control, treatment, and reuse programs (from Phase II Report).</li> <li>• Coordinate with other programs; e.g., recommendations of San Joaquin Valley Drainage Implementation Program, CVPIA for retirement of lands with drainage problems that are not subject to correction in other ways (from Phase II Report).</li> <li>• Support development and implementation of TMDL for selenium in the San Joaquin River watershed (focus on Grassland area).</li> </ul>	selenium	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake, salt marsh harvest mouse, California clapper rail, California black rail
<p>Conduct the following actions in reduce organochlorine pesticide inputs to streams (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Participate in implementation of USDA sediment reduction program.</li> <li>• Implement sediment reduction BMPs on agricultural lands and other specific sites.</li> <li>• Implement BMPs for urban/industrial stormwater runoff and discharges to reduce PCB and organochlorine pesticides.</li> </ul>	chlorodane, DDT, PCBs, toxaphene	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake

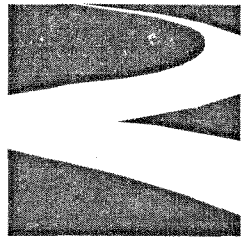
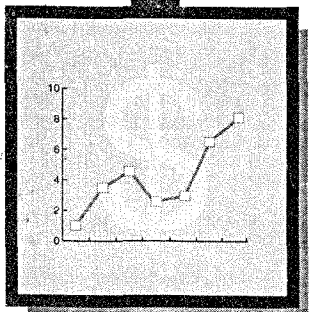
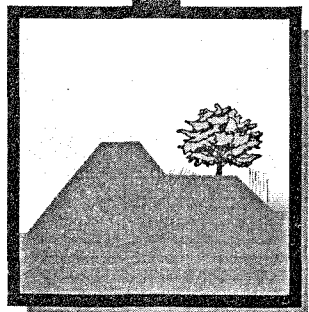
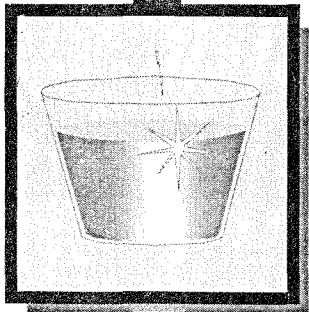
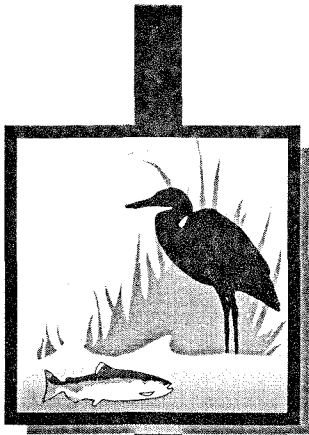


Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Conduct the following trace metals work (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Determine spatial and temporal extent of metal pollution.</li> <li>• Determine ecological significance and extent of copper contamination.</li> <li>• Evaluate impacts of other metals such as cadmium, zinc, and chromium.</li> <li>• Participate in Brake Pad Partnership to reduce introduction of copper.</li> <li>• Partner with municipalities on evaluation and implementation of stormwater control facilities.</li> <li>• Participate in remediation of mine sites as part of local watershed restoration and Delta restoration.</li> </ul>	cadmium, copper, zinc	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake, salt marsh harvest mouse, California clapper rail, California black rail
<p>Conduct the following unknown toxicity work (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Conduct appropriate studies to identify unknown toxicity, and develop management actions as appropriate.</li> </ul>	toxicity of unknown origin	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon
<b>Research Milestones</b>		
<p>Develop and implement a comprehensive monitoring, assessment and research program (CMARP) for terrestrial and aquatic habitats and species populations acceptable to the fish and wildlife agencies. Conduct rangewide surveys for all "R" and "r" covered plants and animals in the MSCS Focus Area.</p>		
<p>Develop and begin implementation of a study to determine appropriate conditions for the germination and establishment of riparian woody plants along the Sacramento River and San Joaquin River. Complete development of a cooperative program to plant vegetation on unvegetated riprapped banks consistent with flood control requirements.</p>		

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
Conduct a study to investigate the effects of the road through Olcott Lake on vernal pool hydrology and impacts on vernal pool species.		
Conduct instream flow studies to determine the flows necessary to support all life stages of anadromous and estuarine fish species.		
Conduct an investigation of in-channel structures that focuses on the following issues: (1) habitat suitability for both predator and prey fishes; (2) predator-prey interactions; and (3) recommendations for reducing predation on juvenile salmonids.		
Conduct experimental introductions of Sacramento perch into nontidal perennial aquatic habitats		
Assess the impact of hatchery practices on naturally spawning populations of chinook salmon and steelhead and operate hatcheries in a manner consistent with safe genetic practices that will maintain genetic integrity of all Central Valley anadromous salmonid populations.		
Through the use of existing, expanded, and new programs, monitor adult anadromous salmonid returns to each watershed within the MSCS focus area. Monitoring techniques, data compilation and analysis, and reporting should be standardized among researchers and watersheds to the greatest extent possible.		

August 28, 2000





CALFED  
BAY-DELTA  
PROGRAM

# Attachment 6b

## Programmatic Endangered Species Act

### Section 7 Biological Opinions

#### National Marine Fisheries Service

August 28, 2000





**UNITED STATES DEPARTMENT OF COMMERCE**  
**National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration**  
NATIONAL MARINE FISHERIES SERVICE

Southwest Region  
501 West Ocean Boulevard, Suite 4200  
Long Beach, California 90802-4213

August 28, 2000

In Reply Refer to:  
SWR-00-SA-0110:MEA

Mr. Lester A. Snow  
Regional Director  
United States Bureau of Reclamation  
2800 Cottage Way  
Sacramento, California 95825-1898

Dear Mr. Snow:

This document transmits the National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS) biological opinion for the implementation phase of the CALFED Bay-Delta Program. This biological opinion is based on NMFS' review of the proposed CALFED Bay-Delta Program, and its effects on the federally endangered Sacramento River winter-run chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*), threatened Central Valley steelhead (*O. mykiss*), and threatened Central Valley spring-run chinook salmon (*O. tshawytscha*) and their designated critical habitat in accordance with Section 7 of the Endangered Species Act of 1973, as amended (16 U.S.C. 1531 *et seq.*). Your August 18, 2000 request for a programmatic consultation, made on behalf of the Bureau of Reclamation (Reclamation) and the other Federal co-lead agencies for the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (Environmental Protection Agency, Army Corps of Engineers, Natural Resources Conservation Service, and Fish and Wildlife Service), was received on August 18, 2000.

This document also transmits NMFS' Essential Fish Habitat (EFH) Conservation Recommendations for Pacific coast salmon, coastal pelagic species, and west coast groundfish which may be effected by the proposed action as required by the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (MSFCMA) as amended (16 U.S.C. 1801 *et seq.*). While EFH designations for salmon have yet to be approved by the Secretary of Commerce, we expect them to be forthcoming and provide these recommendations to facilitate your consultation obligations.

The biological opinion and EFH conservation recommendations are based on information provided in the Programmatic Environmental Impact Statement (PEIS) for the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (Program) and the Multi-Species Conservation Strategy (MSCS), an appendix to the PEIS, which is the biological assessment for the Program. A complete administrative record of this consultation is on file in NMFS' Sacramento Area Office, Sacramento, California.

Based upon the best available scientific and commercial information, this biological opinion concludes that implementation of the CALFED Bay-Delta Program is not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of federally endangered Sacramento River winter-run chinook salmon, threatened Central Valley steelhead, and threatened Central Valley spring-run chinook salmon or result in the destruction or adverse modification of designated critical habitat for these species.




However, implementation of the CALFED Bay-Delta Program addressed in this biological opinion is anticipated to result in incidental take of listed species. Due to the programmatic nature of the PEIS and CALFED's Preferred Program Alternative, the project specific and action specific information necessary to determine the amount and extent of incidental take of endangered Sacramento River winter-run chinook salmon, threatened Central Valley steelhead, and threatened Central Valley spring-run chinook salmon associated with individual CALFED Program activities/actions is lacking. Therefore, incidental take of endangered Sacramento River winter-run chinook salmon, threatened Central Valley steelhead, and threatened Central Valley spring-run chinook salmon is not authorized in this biological opinion. NMFS anticipates that Reclamation and/or other Federal CALFED co-lead action agencies, as appropriate, will initiate project specific or action specific consultations tiered to this programmatic consultation. These future consultations, tiered under this programmatic consultation, will evaluate and estimate the amount of incidental take of listed species associated with action specific implementation plans and, if appropriate, authorize the amount and extent of incidental take.

As provided in 50 CFR § 402.16, reinitiation of formal consultation is required if: (1) the amount or extent of taking specified in the incidental take statement is exceeded; (2) new information reveals effects of the action that may affect listed species or critical habitat in a manner or to an extent not previously considered in this opinion; (3) the action is subsequently modified in a way that causes an effect on listed species or critical habitat not considered in this opinion; or (4) a new species is listed or critical habitat is designated that may be affected by the action. Since this programmatic consultation does not provide incidental take authorization, Reclamation and/or Federal CALFED co-lead action agencies shall initiate consultations with the NMFS for action specific implementation plans, which may effect listed anadromous salmonids and are to be tiered under this programmatic biological opinion.

Reclamation and the Federal CALFED co-lead agencies have a statutory requirement under section 305(b)(4)(B) of the MSFCMA to submit a detailed response in writing to NMFS that includes a description of measures proposed for avoiding, mitigating, or offsetting the impact of the activity on EFH, as required by section 305(b)(4)(B) of the MSFCMA and 50 CFR 600.920(j) within 30 days. If unable to complete a final response within this time limit, an interim written response should be provided to NMFS within 30 days. A detailed response should follow.

If you have any questions concerning the biological opinion or the attached EFH conservation recommendations please contact Mr. Michael Aceituno in our Sacramento Area Office, 650 Capitol Mall, Suite 6070, Sacramento, CA 95814. Mr. Aceituno may be reached by telephone at (916) 498-6498.

Sincerely,

  
Rebecca Lent, Ph.D.  
Regional Administrator

Enclosure

# **CALFED BAY-DELTA PROGRAM**

## **PROGRAMMATIC BIOLOGICAL OPINION (Endangered Species Act - Section 7 Consultation)**

and

## **ESSENTIAL FISH HABITAT CONSERVATION RECOMMENDATIONS (Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act - EFH Consultation)**

Prepared by  
National Marine Fisheries Service  
Southwest Region

August 28, 2000





## Endangered Species Act -Section 7 Consultation

### BIOLOGICAL OPINION

**Agency:** CALFED - Federal Co-Lead Agencies (Bureau of Reclamation, Fish and Wildlife Service, Army Corps of Engineers, Environmental Protection Agency, National Marine Fisheries Service, and Natural Resources Conservation Service)

**Activity:** CALFED Bay-Delta Program Final Programmatic Environmental Impact Statement/Environmental Impact Report - Preferred Program Alternative

**Consultation Conducted By:** National Marine Fisheries Service, Southwest Region.

**Date Issued:** August 28, 2000

### INTRODUCTION

This document transmits the National Marine Fisheries Service' (NMFS) biological opinion on the effects of the Preferred Program Alternative described in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (CALFED Program) Final Programmatic Environmental Impact Statement/Environmental Impact Report (PEIS/EIR), dated July 2000, on federally listed endangered Sacramento River winter-run chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*), threatened Central Valley spring-run chinook salmon (*O. tshawytscha*), threatened Central Valley steelhead (*O. mykiss*), and threatened Central California Coast steelhead (*O. mykiss*) in accordance with section 7 of the Endangered Species Act of 1973 (ESA), as amended (16 U.S.C. 1531 et seq.).

This consultation is intended to address in a comprehensive manner the numerous and widely varied actions related to the implementation of the CALFED Program. While CALFED Program actions are clearly interrelated and interdependent, many actions implemented by the various CALFED Agencies are not and could not be considered as stand alone actions. Nevertheless, the U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service (USFWS) and NMFS have agreed with the other CALFED Agencies that to facilitate ESA compliance, the activities that are listed in the Project Description would be evaluated as a suite of actions all related in one form or another to the CALFED Program. Therefore, this biological opinion addresses the effects upon listed species resulting from the implementation of this suite of actions as a whole and also provides a strategy, or process, for ESA compliance on the individual activities that cumulatively make up the CALFED Program.

CALFED Program implementation , in conjunction with the Multi-Species Conservation Strategy and programmatic biological opinions, will provide benefits in subsequent site specific consultations. Specifically, individual projects that qualify for consultation will be evaluated within the context of the program as a whole, including the major elements designed to improve the environmental baseline and lead to recovery of targeted species. These major elements will be

subject to on-going monitoring, evaluation, and the application of adaptive management. Site specific biological opinions will take into account the environmental benefits that accrue from the CALFED Program. As a result, the NMFS and the USFWS anticipate the implementation of the overall CALFED Program will streamline the ESA compliance process and, as actions to benefit listed species are implemented, will reduce the need for additional provisions to satisfy legal requirements.

A number of key program actions related to the implementation of a variety of activities, especially those related to addressing the needs of listed species, are considered in developing this biological opinion at the programmatic level. These key program actions are critical to the overall determination of how implementation of this suite of actions may, or may not jeopardize listed species because the effects of the actions are evaluated in the aggregate. If key program actions are not implemented at this programmatic level, or new information becomes available, consultation would be reinitiated at the programmatic level to ascertain how the lack of implementation of any action(s), or new information, affects the evaluation of effects upon listed species associated with the overall implementation of the suite of actions being considered and the subsequent conclusions made in this biological opinion.

The project-specific or tiered consultations that will follow this programmatic consultation will rely on implementation of the key program actions to direct the development and implementation of the project-specific actions. If the CALFED Program fails to implement conservation measures or if new information becomes available then reinitiation on the programmatic level may be necessary.

## **BACKGROUND**

The CALFED Program was initiated in May 1995 by then Governor Pete Wilson and the Clinton Administration to address environmental and water management problems associated with the Bay-Delta. In June 1995, State and Federal agencies launched a partnership to develop and implement a comprehensive, long-term management plan for the Bay-Delta. The management plan is intended to address problems of the Bay-Delta system within four critical, often competing, resource categories: ecosystem quality, water quality, levee system integrity, and water supply reliability. The CALFED Program officially involves the 18 CALFED Agencies with management or regulatory responsibilities in the Bay-Delta. Stakeholder input is facilitated through the Bay-Delta Advisory Committee (BDAC).

At its inception, the CALFED Program was divided into two planning phases (Phase I and II) and an implementation phase (Phase III). During Phase I, the CALFED Program concentrated on identifying and defining the problems confronting the Bay-Delta system. A mission statement and guiding principles were developed, along with CALFED Program objectives and an array of potential actions to meet them. Phase I was completed in September 1996.

During Phase II the CALFED Program developed a preferred program alternative (Preferred Program Alternative) and conducted a comprehensive programmatic environmental review process. Because the CALFED solution area is so large, and because it is approaching its task in an integrated, comprehensive way, environmental review must be conducted on a very broad level. Phase II ends following the signing of a Federal Record of Decision (ROD) and State Certification of the Final PEIS/PEIR. Phase III will begin with implementation of the CALFED Program. The CALFED Program solution plan is expected to take 30 years or more to complete.

## CONSULTATION HISTORY

Early in Phase I, from July 1995 to July 1996, the co-lead Federal CALFED Agencies held more than 30 public meetings and workshops around the State to involve Californians in developing a Bay-Delta solution. The participating Federal agencies included NMFS, Natural Resources Conservation Service (NRCS), Army Corps of Engineers (Corps), Bureau of Reclamation (Reclamation), Environmental Protection Agency (EPA), and the USFWS. The problems of the Bay-Delta were defined and a range of alternative solutions was developed. Additionally, three preliminary alternatives for Delta water conveyance were identified for further analysis during Phase II. The first conveyance configuration relied primarily on the existing conveyance system, with some minor changes in the south Delta. The second configuration relied on enlarging channels within the Delta. The third configuration included in-channel modifications and a conveyance channel that would move some water around the Delta. Each of these alternatives also included new ground and surface water storage options. Proposed management actions were grouped into six CALFED Program elements (i.e., levee system integrity, water quality improvements, ecosystem restoration, water use efficiency measures, water transfers, and watershed management). In February 1996, the CALFED Program released 20 draft alternative solutions, each including hundreds of actions to help solve the Bay-Delta problems.

CALFED Agencies participated on management and technical teams (e.g., the Water Management Strategy [WMS] and Multi-Species Conservation Strategy [MSCS] teams, and the Ecosystem Restoration Program [ERP] Focus Group) and contributed to several planning documents developed during Phase II, including the Draft (March 1998) and Final (July 2000) PEIS/PEIR; and Administrative Draft (March 31, 2000), Draft (April 17, 2000) and Final (July 2000) MSCS, which serves as the biological assessment for the CALFED Program section 7 consultation.

In June 1996, the list of alternatives was refined to three conceptual comprehensive approaches. In September 1996, the CALFED Agencies released the Phase I Final Report and launched a two-year environmental review of the conceptual alternative solutions. This action concluded Phase I of the CALFED Program and moved it into Phase II.

From June 1996 to December 1997, the CALFED Agencies held hundreds of public meetings to continue to involve the public in the process. Technical staff from various agencies worked with stakeholders to further refine the list of alternatives.

From March 1997 to November 1997, the CALFED Agencies released draft reports for four programs that were common to all of the alternatives. These draft reports included: the Ecosystem Restoration Program Plan, the Water Quality Component Report, the Water Use Efficiency Report, and the Delta Levee System Integrity Program Report.

In December 1997, more than \$60 million in ecosystem restoration program projects were funded. This led to an additional \$24 million in ecosystem restoration projects being funded in February 1998.

On March 16, 1998, the CALFED Agencies released a draft PEIS/PEIR containing the refined draft alternatives. The release was followed by a 105-day public comment period, which ended on July 1, 1998. Additionally, during the March 16, 1998 to July 1, 1998 time frame, the CALFED Agencies conducted further technical analyses to develop the draft Preferred Program Alternative, while also hosting public meetings, hearings, and workshops to continue to get public input.

In September 1998, another \$25.5 million in ecosystem restoration projects were funded. In December 1998, the CALFED Agencies issued the Revised Phase II Report and draft framework plan for a Preferred Program Alternative.

On June 25, 1999, the CALFED Agencies released a revised draft PEIS/PEIR, which was followed by a 90-day comment period.

In July 2000, the CALFED Agencies released the final PEIS/PEIR which was followed by a 30-day comment period.

On August 18, 2000, NMFS received a request for initiation from Reclamation, which is serving as the lead agency for this consultation.

## **BIOLOGICAL OPINION**

### **Description of the Proposed Action**

#### *A. Geographic Scope and Action Area*

The geographic scope of CALFED includes two distinct areas, the "Problem Area" and the "Solution Area". The Problem Area is defined as the legal Delta and Suisun Bay and Marsh. The Solution Area is much broader in extent than the Problem Area; encompassing the Central Valley watershed, the upper Trinity River watershed, the southern California water system service area, San Pablo Bay, San Francisco Bay, portions of the Pacific Ocean out to the Farallon Islands, and a near-shore coastal zone that extends from about Morro Bay to the Oregon border (CALFED MSCS, July 2000). The primary focus area of CALFED's MSCS includes the legally defined Delta, Suisun Bay and Marsh, the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers and their tributaries

downstream of major dams, and the potential locations of reservoirs. This is the area defined as the “Action Area” for purposes of the following Biological Opinion.

Areas outside the MSCS Focus Area but within the CALFED Solution Area such as watersheds above major dams, including a portion of the upper Trinity River watershed, and included within CALFED’s Watershed Program Area, other Central Valley Project (CVP) and State Water Project (SWP) service areas that are located outside the MSCS Focus Area, the outer bay region including near-shore coastal areas are not included within the action area for the following biological opinion. This is because potential CALFED actions either do not extend into these areas or potential effects cannot be determined until individual CALFED actions or groups of actions are identified and defined. Since these actions outside the MSCS Focus Area are not evaluated in this opinion, they will not be subject to application under this programmatic biological opinion and will be evaluated, if necessary, under separate consultations.

### *B. CALFED Bay-Delta Program*

The CALFED Program is a long-term comprehensive plan to restore ecological health and improve water management for beneficial uses of the Bay-Delta system. The CALFED Program addresses issues in four general problem areas: ecosystem quality, water quality, water management, and levee system integrity. The following CALFED Program components were developed to solve issues in the problem areas:

- Levee System Integrity Program (LSIP)
- Water Quality Program (WQP)
- Ecosystem Restoration Program (ERP)
- Water Use Efficiency Program (WUEP)
- Water Transfer Program (WTP)
- Watershed Program (WP)
- Storage
- Conveyance
- Environmental Water Account (EWA)
- Science Program
- Multi-Species Conservation Strategy (MSCS)
- Governance Plan

Most CALFED Program elements are described in technical appendices to the PEIS/PEIR. Storage and Conveyance are described separately. The EWA is an operational strategy intended to improve fish protection while not adversely affecting water supply.

All aspects of the CALFED Program are interrelated and interdependent. Ecosystem restoration is dependent upon supply and conservation. Supply is dependent upon water use efficiency and consistency in regulation. Water quality is dependent upon water use efficiency and consistency in regulations, improved conveyance, levee stability and healthy watersheds.

The CALFED Program includes a framework guiding implementation that addresses the scope, complexity, and duration of the CALFED Program, and the relative uncertainty regarding the CALFED Program's approach in resolving issues in the problem areas. Implementation is supported by an Implementation Plan that describes Stage 1 actions, CALFED Program integration, governance, and financing. In addition, a Science Program is included to carry out monitoring, assessment and research; and a MSCS will be followed to achieve compliance with the ESA. Implementation of the CALFED Program will be guided by an adaptive management approach with monitoring of performance to help modify (adapt) future actions and contribute to decision making. Also, the CALFED Program will be guided by the principle of balanced implementation of CALFED Program elements.

The term of this programmatic biological opinion includes Phase III of the CALFED Program (30 years or more), provided the CALFED Program remains in compliance with this programmatic biological opinion. NMFS will evaluate the CALFED Program's consistency with this biological opinion at numerous points in the future, including:

- During review of annual reports submitted by the CALFED Program.
- During subsequent, tiered informal and formal consultation on Action Specific Implementation Plans (ASIPs).
- After 4 years of implementation when sufficient data is collected and analyzed to fully evaluate the effectiveness of the WMS, together with other conservation elements, in meeting the conservation objectives of the CALFED Program.
- At the conclusion of Stage 1 to assess the Program's compliance in achieving the conservation objectives established in the CALFED "Milestones."

If NMFS determines that the CALFED Program is not in compliance with this biological opinion, the CALFED Agencies will reinitiate this programmatic consultation. In addition, refer to the Reinitiation Statement in this consultation for further reasons for reinitiation.

The following sections describe the CALFED Program and its elements in greater detail.

#### *Levee System Integrity Program (LSIP)*

The LSIP's goal is to improve levees and levee management in the legal Delta and will investigate the level of levee work in Suisun Marsh, which together define its scope. All projects under the LSIP will be implemented to be fully consistent with other CALFED Program elements, including the ERP, Conveyance, and MSCS. Project-specific plans will incorporate appropriate elements of these other programs and strategies. Individual projects pursued under the LSIP, including each of the levee plans described below, will fully evaluate all alternatives during tiered environmental review and will fully analyze and address effects under section 7 or section 10 of the ESA. The LSIP is comprised of the following five elements in the Delta, and a plan for Suisun Marsh levees:

Delta Levee Base Level Protection Plan. The CALFED Program will provide funding to participating local agencies in the Delta to reconstruct certain Delta levees to a uniform, base-level standard. The tentative standard is the Public Law (PL) 84-99 Delta Specific Standard (PL 84-99). Constructing levees to the PL 84-99 criteria is a prerequisite for, but not a guarantee of, post-flood Federal disaster assistance. This plan will evaluate the estimated 520 miles of non-Federal levees in the Delta and recommend levee segments that should conform with the Delta Specific Standard criteria. In addition, a funding mechanism will be established to support the routine inspection and maintenance of levees in the Delta, and for emergency response.

Delta Levee Special Improvement Projects. These projects will target areas that will provide flood protection above base-level standards for some islands protecting public benefits such as water quality, the ecosystem, life and personal property, agricultural production, cultural resources, recreation, and local and Statewide infrastructure. The scope of the Delta Levee Special Improvement Projects encompasses the Delta and levees bordering the northern Suisun Bay from Van Sickle Island to Montezuma Slough. Maintenance of upgraded levees will occur in conformance with specific criteria, consistent with meeting ERP objectives.

Delta Levee Subsidence Control Plan. The goal of this plan is to minimize the risk to levee integrity from land subsidence, in coordination with other CALFED Program elements. Measures will be implemented to reduce, eliminate, or reverse subsidence within a “zone of influence” (approximately 0-500 ft) adjacent to affected levees. Subsidence control techniques include:

- Geotechnical engineering principles and practices in conjunction with proven construction methods.
- Modifying seepage control, dewatering efforts, excavations, and land management activities near levees to best manage levee integrity.
- Strategically locating and constructing stability and drainage berms.
- Restricting practices such as land leveling, ditching, and certain other ground surface modifications within the zone of influence.
- Promoting high ground water levels and vegetation growth, where appropriate, to limit subsidence due to oxidation.

Delta Levee Emergency Management and Response Plan. The goals of this plan are to enhance existing emergency management response capabilities in the Delta, and to develop a stable funding source for emergency response. Future planning will concentrate on improving funding, resources, and response by State and Federal agencies; integrating response by all levels of government; clarification of regulatory procedures; and improving dispute resolution procedures.



Delta Levee Risk Assessment and Risk Management Strategy. The goals of this strategy are to quantify the risks to Delta levees, evaluate the consequences, and develop an appropriate risk management strategy by the end of Stage 1.

Suisun Marsh Levee System Plan. The CALFED Program will evaluate whether to include the Suisun Marsh levee system in the Levee Integrity Plan, and, if included, what level of protection is appropriate. This plan will evaluate the appropriate level of protection for Suisun Marsh levees, evaluate the best method of protection, and implement the method during Stage 1. This plan may protect part of the levee system by rehabilitating and maintaining some levees to protect managed wetlands and develop new tidal wetlands. Implementation will incorporate ERP and MSCS actions, consistent with NMFS-approved recovery plans.

#### Proposed Levee System Integrity Program Stage 1 Actions

The CALFED Agencies will evaluate the following LSIP actions proposed for implementation in Stage 1. These proposed Stage 1 actions are representative of the overall set of proposed actions in the LSIP.

- Initiate the Levee Program Coordination Group. Develop and implement an outreach, coordination, and partnering program with local landowners including individuals, cities, counties, reclamation districts, resource conservation districts, water authorities, irrigation districts, farm bureaus, other interest groups, and the general public to assure participation in planning, design, implementation, and management of levee projects (yr 1).
- Obtain short-term Federal and State funding authority as a bridge between the existing Delta Flood Protection Authority (AB 360) and long-term levee funding (yr 1-5).
- Obtain long-term Federal and State funding (yr 1-7).
- Conduct project level environmental documentation and obtain appropriate permits for each action/group of actions (yr 1-7).
- Implement demonstration projects for levee designs, construction techniques, sources of material, reuse of dredge material, and maintenance techniques that maximize ecosystem benefits while still protecting lands behind levees. Give priority to those levee projects which include both short (i.e., construction) and long-term (i.e., maintenance and design) ecosystem benefits, and provide increased information (yr 1-7).
- Adaptively coordinate Delta levee improvements with ecosystem improvements by incorporating successful techniques for restoring, enhancing, or protecting ecosystem values developed by levee habitat demonstration projects or ecosystem restoration projects into levee projects. Continue to develop techniques as major levee projects are implemented (yr 1-7).
- Fund levee improvements up to PL 84-99 criteria in Stage 1; e.g., proportionally distribute available funds to entities making application for cost sharing of Delta levee improvements (yr 1-7).
- Further improve levees which have significant Statewide benefits in Stage 1; e.g., State-wide benefits to water quality and highways (yr 1-7).

- Coordinate Delta levee improvements with Stage 1 water conveyance, water quality improvements (yr 1-7).
- Enhance existing emergency response plans; e.g., establish a revolving fund, refine command and control protocol, stockpile flood fighting supplies, establish standardized contacts for flood fighting and recovery operations, and outline environmental considerations during emergencies (yr 1-7).
- Implement current Best Management Practices (BMPs) to correct subsidence effects on levees. Assist CALFED Program's Science Program activities to quantify the effect and extent of inner-island subsidence and its linkages to all CALFED Program objectives (yr 1-7).
- Develop BMPs for the reuse of dredge materials (yr 1).
- Institute a program for using Bay and Delta dredge material to repair Delta levees and restore Delta habitat (yr 1-7).
- Complete total risk assessment for Delta levees and develop and begin implementation of risk assessment options as appropriate to mitigate potential consequences (yr 1-7).
- Complete the evaluation of the best method for addressing the Suisun Marsh levee system (yr 1-2).

#### *Water Quality Program (WQP)*

The CALFED Program's WQP will strive to create water quality conditions that fully support a healthy and diverse ecosystem and the multiplicity of human uses of water. The geographic scope of the WQP encompasses five regions: the legal Delta; the Bay Region which includes Suisun Bay and Marsh, San Pablo Bay, and the San Francisco Bay watershed; the Sacramento River Region, bounded by the ridge tops of the Sacramento River watershed or hydrologic region; the San Joaquin River Region which includes both the San Joaquin River and Tulare Lake hydrologic basins; and, SWP and CVP service areas outside the Central Valley.

The CALFED Program's Water Quality Technical Group has identified the following water quality parameters of concern to beneficial uses: mercury, selenium, trace metals (copper, cadmium, and zinc), pesticides (carbofuran, chlorodane, chlorpyrifos, DDT, diazinon, PCBs, and toxaphene), drinking water disinfection by-product precursors (bromide and total organic carbon), dissolved oxygen and oxygen reducing substances, ammonia, salinity (total dissolved solids), temperature, turbidity and sedimentation, pathogens, nutrients (nitrogen and phosphorus), pH (alkalinity), chloride, boron, sodium absorption ratio, and toxicity of unknown origin. These parameters provide the focal points for developing and implementing the CALFED Program's water quality actions. The July 2000 WQP Plan, a technical appendix to the CALFED Program's Final PEIS/PEIR, provides a full description of the WQP. Individual projects pursued under the WQP will fully evaluate all alternatives during tiered environmental review and will fully analyze and address effects under section 7 or section 10 of the ESA.

## Water Quality Program Plan

The WQP, largely through its agency-stakeholder Water Quality Technical Group, has developed programmatic actions to address water quality parameters of concern and beneficial use impairments. Water quality impairments or problems and associated programmatic actions to treat these problems are described in the WQP Plan. The WQP Plan is organized by the following sections: low dissolved oxygen and oxygen depleting substances, drinking water, mercury, pesticides, organochlorine pesticides, salinity, selenium, trace metals, turbidity and sedimentation, toxicity of unknown origin, and a section on implementation strategy. The environmental water quality components, including proposed actions, were transferred to and are now administered under the ERP. However, to maintain consistency between the Draft PEIS and Final PEIS, CALFED Agencies have left the environmental components in the WQP Plan.

## Proposed Water Quality Program Stage 1 Actions

The CALFED Agencies will evaluate the following water quality actions proposed for implementation in Stage 1. These proposed Stage 1 actions are representative of the overall set of proposed actions in the WQP Plan.

### General Water Quality Actions

- Prepare project level environmental documentation and permitting as needed (yr 1-7).
- Coordinate with other CALFED Program elements to ensure that in-Delta actions maximize potential for Delta water quality improvements (yr 1-7).
- Continue to clarify use of and fine-tune water quality performance targets and goals (yr 1-7).

### Environmental Water Quality Action:

Conduct the following mercury evaluation and abatement work:

#### *Cache Creek:*

- Risk appraisal and advisory for human health impacts of mercury (yr 1-5).
- Support development and implementation of Total Maximum Daily Load (TMDL) for mercury (yr 1-7).
- Determine bioaccumulation effects in creeks and the Delta (yr 1-4).
- Source, transport, inventory, mapping and speciation of mercury (yr 1-7).
- Information Management/Public Outreach (yr 5-7).
- Participate in Stage 1 remediation (drainage control) of mercury mines as appropriate (yr 3-5).
- Investigate sources of high levels of bioavailable mercury (yr 4-7).

#### *Sacramento River:*

- Investigate sources of high levels of bioavailable mercury; inventory, map, and refine other models (yr 3-7).
- Participate in remedial activities (yr 7).

#### *Delta:*

- Research methylization (part of bioaccumulation) process in Delta (yr 1-2).

- Determine sediment mercury concentration in areas that would be dredged during levee maintenance or conveyance work (yr 3-7).
- Determine potential impact of ecosystem restoration work on methyl mercury levels in lower and higher trophic level organisms (yr 3-5).

Conduct the following pesticide work:

- Develop diazinon and chlorpyrifos hazard assessment criteria with the CDFG and the Department of Pesticide Regulations (yr 1).
- Support development and implementation of a TMDL for diazinon (yr 1-7).
- Develop BMPs for dormant spray and household uses (yr 1-3).
- Study the ecological significance of pesticide discharges (yr-1-3).
- Support implementation of BMPs (yr 2-7).
- Monitor to determine effectiveness (yr 4-7).

Conduct the following trace metals work:

- Determine spatial and temporal extent of metal pollution (yr 3-7).
- Determine ecological significance and extent of copper contamination (yr 1-3).
- Review impacts of other metals such as cadmium, zinc, and chromium (yr 1).
- Participate in Brake Pad Partnership to reduce introduction of copper (yr 1-7).
- Partner with municipalities on evaluation and implementation of stormwater control facilities (yr 2-5).
- Participate in remediation of mine sites as part of local watershed restoration and Delta restoration (yr 2-7).

Conduct the following selenium work:

- Conduct selenium research to fill data gaps in order to refine regulatory goals of source control actions; determine bioavailability of selenium under several scenarios (yr 1-5).
- Evaluate and, if appropriate, implement real-time management of selenium discharges (yr 1-7).
- Expand and implement source control, treatment, and reuse programs (yr 1-7).
- Coordinate with other programs (yr 1-7); e.g., recommendations of San Joaquin Valley Drainage Implementation Program, and CVPIA for retirement of lands with drainage problems that are not subject to correction in other ways.

Conduct the following sediment reduction work/organochlorine pesticides:

- Participate in implementation of the United States Department of Agriculture (USDA) sediment reduction program (yr 1-7).
- Promote sediment reduction in construction areas and urban stormwater, and other specific sites (yr 1-7).
- Implement stream restoration and revegetation work (yr 4-7).
- Quantify and determine ecological impacts of sediments in target watersheds, implement corrective actions (yr 4-7).
- Coordinate with ERP on sediment needs (yr 1-3).

Conduct the following work addressing dissolved oxygen (DO) and oxygen depleting substances (including nutrients):

- Complete studies of causes for DO sag in San Joaquin River near Stockton (yr 1-2).
- Define and implement corrective measures for DO sag (yr 1-7).

- Encourage regulatory activity to reduce nutrients discharged by unpermitted dischargers (yr 1-7).
- Develop inter-substrate DO testing in conjunction with the ERP (yr 2-4).
- Study nutrient effects on beneficial uses (yr 4-7).
- Develop, implement, and support measures to reduce pollutant (oxygen depleting substances, nutrients, and ammonia) discharges from concentrated animal feeding operations (yr 1-7).
- Support finalizing investigation of methods to reduce constituents that cause low DO for inclusion in TMDL recommendation by the Central Valley Regional Water Quality Control Board (yr 2).
- Support finalization of Basin Plan Amendment and TMDL for constituents that cause low DO in the San Joaquin River (yr 2).
- Support implementation of appropriate source and other controls as recommended in the TMDL (yr 3).
- Participate in identifying unknown toxicity and addressing as appropriate (yr 1-7).

#### Drinking Water Quality Actions

Actions specific to drinking water improvements:

- Work with Bay Area water suppliers as they develop a Bay Area Blending/ Exchange Project (yr 1-7).
- Address drainage problems in the San Joaquin Valley to improve downstream water quality (yr 1-7).
- Implement source controls in the Delta and its tributaries (yr 1-7).
- Support ongoing efforts of the Delta Drinking Water Quality Council (yr 1-7).
- Invest in treatment technology demonstrations (yr 1-7).
- Control runoff into the California Aqueduct and other similar conveyances (yr 1-7+).
- Address water quality problems at the North Bay Aqueduct (yr 1-7).
- Conduct comprehensive evaluations, pilot programs, and full scale actions to reduce Total Organic Carbon (TOC) contribution through control of algae, aquatic weeds, agricultural runoff, and watershed improvements (yr 1-7).
- Improve DO concentrations in the San Joaquin River near Stockton (yr 1-3).
- Study recirculation of export water to reduce salinity and improve DO in the San Joaquin River. If feasible, and consistent with ERP goals and objectives, implement a pilot program (yr 1-4).

#### *Ecosystem Restoration Program (ERP)*

The ERP will improve and increase aquatic and terrestrial habitats and improve ecological functions in the Bay-Delta estuary and its watershed to support sustainable populations of diverse plant and animal species. All CALFED Program elements will contribute in varying degrees to this goal, with the ERP being the principal CALFED Program element designed to restore the ecological health of the Bay-Delta system. The ERP includes actions throughout the Bay-Delta watershed, focusing on the restoration of ecological processes and important habitats. The

CALFED Program proposes to improve ecosystem quality for the Bay-Delta system in order to reduce conflicts among beneficial uses of California's water. Individual projects pursued under the ERP will fully evaluate all alternatives during tiered environmental review and will fully analyze and address effects under section 7 or section 10 of the ESA.

The primary geographic focus area of the ERP is the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta, Suisun and San Pablo Bay, the Sacramento River below Shasta Dam, the San Joaquin River below the confluence with the Merced River, and their major tributary watersheds directly connected to the Bay-Delta system below major dams and reservoirs. This primary geographic focus area is divided into 14 ecological management zones (discussed in ERP Plan Volume II). The secondary geographic focus area is the upper watersheds surrounding the primary focus area and Central and South San Francisco Bay and their local watersheds.

Success of the CALFED Program hinges upon the full and successful funding and implementation of the ERP, MSCS, other existing and tiered biological opinions, as well as other environmental commitments. Although NMFS anticipates that some ERP actions will be refined or altered, based upon new information and adaptive management, the successful implementation of nearly all actions is necessary to achieve the species recovery goals identified in the ERP. The ERP is not designed as mitigation for projects to improve water supply reliability or to bolster the integrity of Delta levees, although it is expected that the environmental benefits associated with implementation of the ERP will facilitate the review of such projects. Improving ecological processes and increasing the amount and quality of habitat are co-equal with other CALFED Program goals related to water supply reliability, water quality, and levee system integrity.

The ERP is comprised of a Strategic Plan and a two-volume restoration plan: Volume I which describes the ecosystem elements or attributes (ecological processes, habitats, species and species groups, and anthropogenic stressors) the program addresses; and, Volume II which presents the ecological management zones and proposed programmatic actions. The ERP would require individual section 7 consultations for actions which may affect listed species.

### Ecosystem Restoration Program Strategic Plan and Goals

The ERP Strategic Plan contains the following goals and objectives:

- Goal 1: Achieve recovery of at-risk native species dependent on the Delta and Suisun Bay as the first step toward establishing large, self-sustaining populations of these species; support similar recovery of at-risk native species in San Francisco Bay and the watershed above the estuary; and minimize the need for future endangered species listings by reversing downward population trends of native species that are not listed.
- Goal 2: Rehabilitate natural processes in the Bay-Delta estuary and its watershed to fully support, with minimal ongoing human intervention, natural aquatic and associated terrestrial biotic communities and habitats, in ways that favor native members of those communities.

- Goal 3: Maintain and/or enhance populations of selected species for sustainable commercial and recreational harvest, consistent with the other ERP goals.
- Goal 4: Protect and/or restore functional habitat types in the Bay-Delta estuary and its watershed for ecological and public values such as supporting species and biotic communities, ecological processes, recreation, scientific research, and aesthetics.
- Goal 5: Prevent the establishment of additional non-native invasive species and reduce the negative ecological and economic impacts of established non-native species in the Bay-Delta estuary and its watershed.
- Goal 6: Improve and/or maintain water and sediment quality conditions that fully support healthy and diverse aquatic ecosystems in the Bay-Delta estuary and watershed; and eliminate, to the extent possible, toxic impacts to aquatic organisms, wildlife, and people.

There are several objectives under each goal. ERP goals and objectives are integrated with those of the CALFED Program's MSCS, WQP, and Nonnative Invasive Species Strategic Plan.

The ERP Strategic Plan also presents and describes:

- An ecosystem based management approach for restoring and managing the Bay-Delta ecosystem.
- An adaptive management process that is sufficiently flexible and iterative to respond to changing Bay-Delta conditions and to incorporate new information about ecosystem structure and function.
- The value and application of conceptual models in developing restoration actions and defining information needs, with examples of their development and use.
- Institutional and administrative considerations necessary to implement adaptive management, to ensure scientific credibility of the restoration program and to engage the public in the restoration program.
- Decision rules and criteria to help guide the selection and prioritization of restoration actions.
- Opportunities and constraints to be considered in developing a restoration program.

### Ecosystem Restoration Program Plan

The ERP Plan is composed of two volumes. Volume I presents the elements or components of the ERP. These "ecosystem elements" are organized into four categories: ecological processes (e.g., central valley stream flows, Bay-Delta hydrodynamics, bay-delta aquatic foodweb); habitats (e.g., tidal perennial aquatic, saline emergent wetland, riparian and riverine aquatic); species and species groups (species designated for recovery, species designated for contribute to recovery, species assemblages designated for enhance and/or conserve biotic communities, harvested species to be maintained and/or enhanced); and, stressors (e.g., water diversions, nonnative invasive species, contaminants, gravel mining). Consult ERP Plan Volume I for the complete list and description of ERP ecosystem elements (total of 106 elements).

ERP Plan Volume II identifies over 600 programmatic actions to be implemented throughout the Bay-Delta estuary and its watershed over the 30-year period of the CALFED Program. Volume II also gives targets for the ecosystem elements (e.g., acres of tidal fresh emergent wetland to be restored). Volume II is organized by Ecological Management Zones. The primary ERP geographic focus area is divided into 14 Ecological Management Zones: Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta, Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay, Sacramento River, North Sacramento Valley, Cottonwood Creek, Colusa Basin, Butte Basin, Feather River/Sutter Basin, American River Basin, Yolo Basin, Eastside Delta Tributaries, San Joaquin River, East San Joaquin, and West San Joaquin. Each zone is further divided into Ecological Management Units. Under each Ecological Management Zone are the ecosystem elements and associated proposed programmatic actions and restoration targets that the ERP will address in that zone. There is also a section in Volume II that gives ERP targets, MSCS species goal prescriptions, and MSCS conservation measures for species and species groups ecosystem elements.

#### Proposed Ecosystem Restoration Program Stage 1 Actions

CALFED Agencies will evaluate the following ERP actions proposed for implementation in Stage 1. These proposed Stage 1 actions are representative of the overall set of proposed actions in the ERP:

- Develop and implement an outreach, coordination, and partnering program with local landowners and individuals, cities, counties, reclamation districts, the Delta Protection Commission, resource conservation districts, water authorities, irrigation districts, farm bureaus, other interest groups, and the general public to assure participation in planning design, implementation, and management of ecosystem restoration projects (yr 1-7).
- Conduct project level environmental documentation and permitting as needed for each bundle of Stage 1 actions (yr 1-7).
- Fully coordinate with other ongoing activities which address ecosystem restoration in the Bay-Delta system; e.g., CVPIA, Four Pumps Agreement, Non-native Invasive Species Task Force (yr 1-7).
- Implement habitat restoration in the Delta, Suisun Bay and Marsh, and Yolo Bypass to improve ecological function and facilitate recovery of endangered species consistent with the goals of the ERP Strategic Plan and MSCS. Habitat restoration efforts in Stage 1 will: restore 2,000 acres of tidal perennial aquatic habitat; restore 200 acres of deep open water nontidal perennial aquatic habitat; restore 300 acres of shallow open water nontidal perennial aquatic habitat; enhance and restore 50 miles of Delta slough habitat; enhance and restore 50 to 200 acres of midchannel islands; restore 8,000 to 12,000 acres of fresh emergent (tidal) wetlands; restore 4,000 acres of fresh emergent (non-tidal) wetlands; restore 25 miles of riparian and riverine aquatic habitat; restore 1,000 to 2,000 acres of perennial grassland; and establish 8,000 to 12,000 acres of wildlife-friendly agricultural habitat. These actions represent approximately one-fourth of the acreage identified in the ERP to be restored during the 30-year implementation period (yr 1-7).
- Implement large-scale restoration projects on select streams and rivers (e.g., Clear Creek, Deer Creek, and the Tuolumne River) that would include implementation of all long-term



restoration measures in coordination with the watershed management common program and monitoring of subsequent ecosystem responses to learn information necessary for making decisions about implementing similar restorations in later stages (yr 1-7).

- Implement an EWA that acquires water for ecosystem and species recovery needs, substantially through voluntary purchases in the water transfer market in its first few years and developing additional assets over time (yr 1-7).
- Pursue full implementation of ERP upstream flow targets, over and above EWA assets and regulatory actions, through voluntary purchases of at least 100,000 acre-feet of water by the end of Stage 1. Evaluate how the ERP water acquisitions and EWA water acquisitions will be integrated most effectively (yr 1-7).
- Complete targeted research and scientific evaluations needed to resolve the high priority issues and the uncertainties identified in the ERP Strategic Plan (e.g., instream flow, non-native organisms, and Bay-Delta food web dynamics) to provide direction for implementing the adaptive management process and information necessary for making critical decisions in later stages (yr 1-7).
- Establish partnerships with universities for focused research (yr 1-7).
- Acquire floodplain easements, consistent with ecosystem and flood control needs along the Sacramento and San Joaquin Rivers (yr 4-7).
- Continue high priority actions that reduce direct mortality to fishes (yr 1-7):
  - Screen existing unscreened or poorly screened diversions in the Delta, on the Sacramento River, San Joaquin River, and tributary streams based on a systematic priority approach.
  - Remove select physical barriers to fish passage.
- Continue gravel management, e.g., isolate gravel pits on San Joaquin River tributaries and relocate gravel operations on Sacramento River tributaries. Most gravel work would be implemented in subsequent stages with designs and plans for ecosystem reclamation of gravel mining sites (yr 1-7).
- Develop and begin implementing a CALFED Program comprehensive non-native (exotic) invasive species prevention, control, and eradication plan including the following (yr 1-7):
  - Implement invasive plant management program in Cache Creek.
  - Develop ballast water management program.
  - Develop early-response invasive organism control programs.
  - Evaluate CALFED Program implementation actions and how those actions may benefit non-native species to the detriment of native species or the Bay-Delta ecosystem.
- Provide incremental improvements in ecosystem values throughout the Bay-Delta system in addition to habitat corridors described above, e.g., pursue actions that are opportunity-based (willing sellers, funding, permitting), provide incremental improvements on private land through incentives, and develop partnerships with farmers on “environmentally friendly” agricultural practices (yr 1-7).
- Incorporate ecosystem improvements with levee associated subsidence reversal plans (yr 1-7).
- Evaluate the feasibility of harvest management to protect weaker fish stocks (yr 1-7).

- Implement projects on selected streams to provide additional upstream fishery habitat by removing or modifying barriers (yr 1-7).
- Assist in the preparation of detailed, ecosystem-based restoration and recovery plans for any priority species identified in the ERP Strategic Plan and the MSCS for which up-to-date plans are not available. Begin implementing appropriate additional restoration actions identified in these plans (yr 1-7).
- Identify and advance specific regional ERP goals (yr 1-7).

Additional draft ERP Stage 1 actions are presented by Ecological Management Zone in Appendix D of the ERP Strategic Plan.

#### *Water Use Efficiency Program (WUEP)*

The WUEP relies on a combination of technical assistance, incentives, and directed studies for the four WUEP elements: Agricultural Water Conservation, Urban Water Conservation, Water Recycling, and Managed Wetlands.

Technical assistance programs and directed studies will begin for all four elements. Incentive programs will be designed to award CALFED Program grant funding for projects that demonstrate potential to provide the CALFED Program water supply reliability, water quality, or ecosystem restoration benefits.

The WUEP includes water conservation and water recycling actions to facilitate efficient use of water at the regional and local level. Individual projects pursued under the WUEP will fully evaluate all alternatives during tiered environmental review and will fully analyze and address effects under section 7 or section 10 of the ESA. The programmatic water use efficiency actions include the following:

#### Water Conservation Related Actions

- Work with the California Urban Water Conservation Council (CUWCC) and the Agricultural Water Management Council (AWMC) to identify appropriate urban and agricultural water conservation measures, set appropriate levels of effort, and, in the case of the urban effort, identify a proper entity and process to certify or endorse water suppliers that are implementing cost-effective feasible measures.
- Expand State and Federal programs to provide sharply increased levels of planning, technical, and financing assistance and develop new ways of providing assistance in the most effective manner.
- Assist urban water suppliers comply with the Urban Water Management Planning Act (UWMPA).
- Assist water suppliers and water users to identify and implement water management measures that can yield multiple benefits, including improved water quality and reduced ecosystem impacts.

- Identify and implement practices to improve water management on managed wetlands.
- Gather better information on water use, identify opportunities to improve water use efficiency, and measure the effectiveness of conservation practices.
- Identify, in region-specific Strategic Plans for Agricultural Areas, quantifiable objectives to assure improvements in water management.

#### Water Recycling Actions:

- Assist local and regional agencies comply with the water recycling provisions in the UWMPA.
- Expand State and Federal recycling programs in order to provide increased levels of planning, technical, and financing assistance (both loans and grants), and develop new ways of providing assistance in the most effective manner.
- Provide regional planning assistance that can increase opportunities for use of recycled water.

#### Proposed Water Use Efficiency Program Stage 1 Actions

CALFED Agencies will evaluate the following WUEP actions proposed for implementation in Stage 1. These proposed Stage 1 actions are representative of the overall set of proposed actions in the WUEP.

- Expand existing State and Federal agricultural Water Conservation Programs to support on farm and district efforts. Expand State and Federal programs to provide technical and planning assistance to local agencies and districts in support of local and regional conservation and recycling programs (yr 1-7).
- Expand existing State and Federal conservation programs to support urban water purveyor efforts. Expand State and Federal programs to provide technical and planning assistance in support of conservation and recycling programs (yr 1-7).
- Utilize AB 3616 of the AWMC to evaluate and endorse Agricultural Water Management Plans to implement cost-effective water management practices by agricultural districts. Identify and secure ongoing funding sources for Agricultural Water Management Council and its members seeking to actively participate in the development, review, and implementation of these plans (yr 1-7).
- Develop Urban Water Management Plan Certification Process - Select an agency to act as certifying entity, obtain legislative authority, carry out public process to prepare regulations, and implement program (yr 1-3).
- Implement Urban BMPs Certification Process. Implement a process for certification of water suppliers' compliance with terms of the Urban Memorandum of Understanding (MOU) with respect to BMPs analysis and implementation for urban water conservation. Provide funding support for the CUWCC to carry out this function (yr 1-7).
- Prepare a program implementation plan, including a proposed organizational structure consistent with the overall CALFED Program governance structure, for a competitive grant/loan incentive program for WUEP (yr 1). This will include:

- Incentives in the agricultural sector that will consider several factors, including: (i) potential for reducing irrecoverable water losses; (ii) potential for attaining environmental and/or water quality benefits from WUEP measures which result in reduced diversions; (iii) regional variation in water management options and opportunities; (iv) availability and cost of alternative water supplies; and (v) whether the recipient area experiences recurrent water shortages due to regulatory or hydrological restrictions. Many of these factors are included in the Quantifiable Objectives for Agricultural Water Use Efficiency, and as such, the Quantifiable Objectives will be an important component of the agricultural incentive criteria.
- Incentives in the urban sector will assist in identifying and implementing urban water conservation measures that are supplemental to BMPs in the Urban MOU process and are cost effective from a Statewide perspective.
- Incentives for water recycling in the urban and agricultural areas.
- Annual reporting and evaluation mechanisms to gauge effectiveness of the program.
- Finalize and implement the methodology for Refuge Water Management which was described in the June 1998 "Interagency Coordinated Program for Wetland Water Use Plan, Central Valley, California" (yr 1-3).
- Research effort to establish appropriate reference conditions for evaluating program progress, and to identify improved methods for WUEP (yr 1-7).
- Assess the need for additional water rights protections. Evaluate the need for additional State regulations or legislation providing protection for water right holders who have implemented WUEP measures and subsequently transferred water to other beneficial uses (yr 1-4).
- Water Management. Develop State legislation that requires appropriate measurement of water use for all water users in California (yr 1-3).
- Create a Public Advisory Committee to advise State and Federal agencies on structure and implementation of assistance programs, and to coordinate State, Federal, regional and local efforts for maximum effectiveness of program expenditures (yr 1).

### *Water Transfer Program (WTP)*

The CALFED Program's WTP will encourage the development of a more effective water transfer market that facilitates water transfers and streamlines the approval process while protecting water rights, environmental conditions, and local economic interests. CALFED Agencies have legal and regulatory responsibility for review and approval of most water transfers and also have jurisdiction over many of the storage and conveyance facilities required to make water transfers work. These agencies are in a position to improve or facilitate the operations of the water market by adopting policies and implementing programs that will allow transfers to be completed efficiently while protecting the environment. The Strategic Plan for Implementation provides direction and prioritization for implementation of the CALFED Program's WTP, and includes the following actions:

### Interactive California Water Market Information Web Site

- Develop the On Tap on-line water market information source for California water transfers.

### Environmental, Socio-economic, and Water Resource Protection

- Recommend establishment of a California Water Transfers Information Clearinghouse (CWTIC) to ensure that decisions regarding proposed water transfers can be made with all parties in possession of complete and accurate information and to facilitate assessment of potential third party impacts.
- Require additional water transfer analysis regarding direct and indirect impacts. The California Department of Water Resources (DWR), Reclamation, and the State Water Resources Control Board (SWRCB) will require transfer proponents to provide analysis of the direct and indirect impacts of a proposed transfer, in addition to CEQA, ESA compliance or other environmental requirements.
- Develop improved tracking protocols to ensure that water transferred to an instream flow can be tracked and then delivered to the intended destination.
- Work with stakeholders and the State Legislature to assist local agencies in development of groundwater management programs to protect groundwater basins in water transfer source areas.

### Technical, Operational, and Administrative Rules

- Work to streamline the current water transfer approval processes through development of new tools, clarification of existing policies, refinement of processes and addition of staff and resources.
- Work with stakeholder representatives to clarify and define what water is deemed transferrable under what conditions.
- Work with stakeholder representatives to resolve conflicts over carriage water criteria.
- Work with stakeholder representatives to develop criteria that protect other legal users of water from injury as a result of refill of a reservoir after the transfer of stored water.

### Wheeling and Access to State/Federal Facilities

- Improve forecasting tools and more widely disclose potential pumping and conveyance capacity in project facilities, including limiting factors and inherent risks.
- Work with stakeholder representatives to consider modification of policies and procedures for transporting non-project water through existing project water conveyance facilities.
- Work with stakeholder representatives to develop cost criteria associated with transporting transferred water through State or Federal conveyance facilities.

## Proposed Water Transfer Program Stage 1 Actions

CALFED Agencies will evaluate the following actions proposed for implementation in Stage 1. These proposed Stage 1 actions are representative of the overall set of proposed actions in the WTP.

- Develop an Interactive Water Transfer Information Web-site. CALFED Agencies will develop, implement, and maintain an interactive, publicly available web-site called On TAP (by the end of year 2000) (yr 1).
- Establish the CWTIC to operate and maintain the On TAP web-site, collect and disseminate data and information relating to water transfers and potential transfer impacts, and perform research using historic data to understand water transfer impacts (by year 2001) (yr 1).
- Coordinate with CALFED Agencies to require water transfer applicants to provide additional impact assessment information (yr 1-4).
- Identify, arrange, fund, and carry out a specific number of targeted water transfers for in-stream environmental purposes as part of the ERP, with a goal of using these transfers to evaluate the effectiveness of and make any necessary improvements to the California Water Code Section 1707 procedures and tracking protocols (yr 1-3).
- Establish a groundwater assistance program to fund studies to gather groundwater data and to enable local entities to develop and implement local groundwater management/monitoring programs (yr 1-2).
- Develop a streamlined water transfer approval process including "pre-certification" of certain classes of transfers and expedited environmental review procedures (yr 1-6).
- Work with stakeholder representatives to clarify and define what water is deemed transferrable under what conditions (yr 1-3).
- Continue to work with stakeholder representatives to resolve conflicts over carriage water criteria (yr 1-3).
- Establish a refill criteria policy for reservoir storage based water transfers (yr 1).
- Begin forecast and disclosure processes of potential conveyance capacity in existing export facilities (Reclamation and DWR). This would be an on-going activity, occurring in conjunction with hydrologic forecasts (yr 1-7).
- Work with stakeholders to develop an agreed upon set of criteria and procedures governing the determination of transport system availability and costs, including the procedures to determine the fair reimbursement to the water conveyance facility operator (yr 1-3).

### *Watershed Program (WP)*

The WP will use a comprehensive, integrated, basin-wide approach with a goal to improve conditions in the Bay-Delta system. This WP will emphasize local participation and provide financial and technical assistance for local watershed stewardship, and promote coordination and collaboration among watershed efforts.

The geographic scope of the WP encompasses the entire scope of the CALFED Program. The WP will support activities that provide benefits to the Delta, Suisun Bay, and Suisun Marsh.

The WP covers a broad geographic range and currently lacks project-specific measures for evaluation. Individual projects pursued under the WP will fully evaluate all alternatives during tiered environmental review and will fully analyze and address effects under section 7 or section 10 of the ESA. CALFED will ensure that appropriate measures to conserve special status species are included in all program actions.

There are five WP elements: coordination and assistance; adaptive management and monitoring; education and outreach; integration with other CALFED Program elements; and watershed processes and relationships. These elements, associated proposed programmatic actions, and an implementation strategy are described in the WP Plan.

The primary objectives of the WP are:

- Facilitate and improve coordination, collaboration, and assistance among government agencies, other organizations, and local watershed groups.
- Develop watershed monitoring and assessment protocols.
- Support education and outreach.
- Integrate the WP with other CALFED Program elements.
- Define the relationship between watershed processes and the goals and objectives of the CALFED Program.
- Implement a strategy that will ensure support and long term sustainability of local watershed activities.

Watershed activities will be supported that:

- are community based
- are collaborative and are consistent with the CALFED Program
- address multiple watershed issues
- are coordinated with and supported at multiple levels
- provide ongoing implementation
- include monitoring protocols
- increase learning and awareness.

#### Proposed Watershed Program Stage 1 Actions

The CALFED Program will evaluate the following WP actions proposed for implementation in Stage 1. These proposed Stage 1 actions are representative of the overall set of proposed actions in the WP Plan.

- Fund and implement community based watershed restoration, maintenance, conservation, and monitoring activities that support the goals and objectives of the CALFED Program (yr 1-7).
- Assist local watershed groups and government agencies to address common issues, including roles and responsibilities, funding support, technical assistance, information exchange, and to ensure effective communication and implementation among government agencies and stakeholder groups (yr 1-7).
- Implement a funding process and provide watershed stewardship funds to build the capacity of locally controlled watershed groups that ensure participation of local landowner groups (yr 1-7).
- Improve the use and usefulness of existing or future watershed information management functions to provide data and other information to people involved in watershed management (yr 3-7).
- Ensure the completion of project level environmental documentation and permitting; assist with documentation and permitting processes as appropriate (yr 1-7).
- Evaluate the benefits that accrue from watershed plans and projects designed to achieve CALFED Program goals and objectives (yr 3-7).
- Establish, fund, and maintain watershed restoration and maintenance assistance to aid local watershed groups and private landowners in project concept, design, and implementation (yr 1-7).
- Collaborate with other CALFED Program and non-CALFED Program elements on watershed related activities (yr 1-7).
- Provide appropriate information and assistance to stakeholders and the State Legislature to develop a Statewide umbrella Watershed Management Act (yr 1).

### *Water Management Strategy (WMS)*

The WMS describes a framework to coordinate and integrate the water management tools in the program, evaluate the success of implementation efforts, and select additional tools needed to achieve the CALFED Program's water reliability objectives. The CALFED Program has identified three primary goals for the WMS: increase the utility of available water supplies (making water suitable for more uses and reuses); improve access to existing or new water supplies in an economically efficient manner, for environmental, urban and agricultural beneficial uses; and, improve flexibility of managing water supply and demand in order to reduce conflicts between beneficial uses and decrease system vulnerability.

The tools that will be used to achieve the goals and objectives of the WMS include: the WUEP (agricultural, urban, and wetland water conservation and water recycling); the WTP; Conveyance, including South Delta Improvements; Storage; and, operational strategies, such as real-time diversion management and an EWA. In addition to these primary tools, the WMS will rely on additional CALFED Program tools to provide additional benefits. These include the WP, the WQP, and real-time monitoring through the Science Program.



## Storage

The CALFED Program has initiated the Integrated Storage Investigation (ISI) to provide a comprehensive assessment of alternative surface and groundwater storage options and their utility to overall water management.

Decisions to implement new or expanded surface and groundwater storage will be predicated upon completing site-specific feasibility studies and complying with all environmental review and permitting requirements. Individual storage projects pursued under the WMS will fully evaluate project-level alternatives that are consistent with the decision documents in conformance with the legal requirements of section 404 of the Clean Water Act, as implemented under the MOU between the EPA and the COE regarding implementation of section 404, as implemented under the Memorandum of Understanding for section 404 of the Clean Water Act for the CALFED Program. The level of analysis required for specific storage projects will depend upon the programs and related commitments of the CALFED Program, including those related to water use efficiency, water transfers, and the ERP, being implemented. Direct and indirect effects, as appropriate, will be addressed under section 7 or section 10 of the ESA.

Site-specific studies of storage opportunities will be coordinated under the ISI. Specifically, the ISI will evaluate surface storage, groundwater storage, power facility re-operation, and removal of barriers to fish passage and, where appropriate, the potential for conjunctive operation of these different types of storage. These investigations will contribute to compliance with the requirements, within the Clean Water Act Section 404 Guidelines, and pursuant to the MOU between EPA and the COE.

The range of total new storage evaluated in Phase II was from zero up to about six Million acre-feet (MAF). Maximum Sacramento River off-stream or enlarged on-stream surface storage potential is estimated to be about three MAF of storage, while south of Delta off-aqueduct surface storage potential is estimated to be about two MAF of storage. Other types of surface storage considered in Phase II include San Joaquin River tributary storage and in-Delta storage. The CALFED Program will evaluate the feasibility of expanding two existing reservoirs and constructing a new off-stream reservoir with a total capacity of 950 thousand-acre-feet (TAF); and a major expansion of groundwater storage for an additional 500 TAF to one MAF. In addition, the CALFED Program will study two potential reservoir locations through partnerships with local agencies.

The CALFED Program will continue to evaluate surface and groundwater storage opportunities; initiate permitting, NEPA and CEQA documentation; and proceed with construction, only if all conditions are satisfied. In addition, the CALFED Program will continue to refine and periodically update the WMS. ISI studies will evaluate the utility of specific storage projects in providing water quality, water supply reliability, and ecosystem benefits. This information, together with information gained from implementation of other CALFED Program elements and updated information on California's changing water management needs, will be considered in an Evaluation Framework. This Evaluation Framework will include: 1) a comprehensive hierarchy

of objectives for the CALFED Program; 2) well-defined measures of performance associated with the achievement of objectives; and 3) a basis for comparison of alternative long-term water management strategies. The Evaluation Framework will provide a structure for periodically updating the WMS and determining appropriate levels of the future investment in various water management tools.

#### Proposed Stage 1 Storage Actions

The CALFED Program will evaluate the following Storage actions proposed for implementation during Stage 1. These proposed Stage 1 actions are representative of the overall set of proposed actions in the Storage program. Each storage action will require project-specific consultation under section 7 or a permit under section 10 of the ESA.

Groundwater Banking and Conjunctive Use The goal is to develop locally managed and controlled groundwater and conjunctive use projects with a total of 500 TAF to one MAF of additional storage. This effort includes developing partnerships with local agencies and landowners in both the north-of-Delta and south-of-Delta areas, and includes the potential construction of several south-of-Delta projects. Additional south-of-Delta and north-of-Delta projects, if feasible, could be constructed in later stages.

- Finalize agreements with new local project proponents for joint planning and development (yr 1).
- Begin feasibility studies (yr 1).
- Report on the performance of feasibility studies, implemented projects, and potential benefits and beneficiaries (yr 3).
- Implement early stages of the most promising projects (yr 1-5).
- Pursue implementation of additional projects (yr 1-7).
- Support legislation that supports groundwater management by local agencies at the sub-basin level.

Surface Storage CALFED Agencies identified a list of twelve potential surface storage projects that are in varying stages of the environmental review or feasibility process. Actions taken in Stage 1 will focus on completing the necessary studies (technical work and environmental reviews) needed before implementing or proceeding with the six surface storage projects:

- In-Delta storage project (approximately 250 TAF). CALFED will evaluate leasing or purchasing the Delta Wetlands project, and will evaluate initiating a new project, in the event that Delta Wetlands proves cost prohibitive or infeasible (Planning: yr 1-2, Construction: yr 3-7).
- Evaluate expanding CVP storage in Shasta Lake by approximately 300 TAF by raising the Shasta Dam by three to six feet (Planning: yr 1-4, Construction yr 6-7).
- Evaluate expanding Los Vaqueros Reservoir by up to 400 TAF with local partners as part of a Bay Area water quality and water supply reliability initiative. As an existing reservoir operated by the Contra Costa Water District (CCWD), the Los Vaqueros

Reservoir is subject to a number of mandates, agreements, and requirements in existing biological opinions. CALFED intends to work with CCWD and interested stakeholders to assure that previous commitments, including local voter approval required for expansion, are maintained ( yr 1-7).

- Evaluate off-stream storage at Sites Reservoir, with a project capacity of up to 1.9 MAF (yr 1-5).
- Evaluate additional storage options in the upper San Joaquin River watershed. Consider additional storage capacity of between 250-700 TAF (yr 1-6).
- Evaluate enlarging Millerton Lake at Friant Dam or a functionally equivalent storage program in the region. The CALFED Program will join local partners to evaluate this project in Stage 1 (yr 1-6).

Power Facilities Re-operation Evaluation Evaluate the potential to re-operate some hydroelectric facilities to produce ecosystem benefits and water supply. The following ISI actions may be taken:

- Identify beneficiaries and negotiate cost sharing agreements (yr 1-7).
- Work with CALFED Agencies, the Public Utilities Commission, the SWRCB, the Federal Energy Regulatory Commission, and interested stakeholders to identify re-operation opportunities (yr 1-2).
- Develop environmental documentation on re-operation (yr 3-5).
- Perform feasibility studies and economic analyses (yr 3-5).
- Obtain permits, negotiate operating agreements, and seek site specific authorization including section 7 authorization. This may require design of facilities modifications to accommodate new operational priorities (yr 5-7).

Fish Migration Barrier Removal Evaluations To compliment ERP efforts to improve fish passage, the ISI Fish Migration Barrier Removal Program will identify obstructions, such as small dams, and consider modification or removal in order to restore anadromous fish access to critical upstream spawning and rearing habitat. The following actions will be taken:

- Work with CALFED Agencies, the SWRCB, local water agencies, and interested stakeholders to identify opportunities for modification or removal of obstructions such as small dams (yr 1-2).
- Develop environmental documentation (yr 3-5).
- Perform feasibility studies and economic analyses (yr 3-5).
- Obtain permits, negotiate agreements, and seek site specific authorization as required. This may require design on facilities modifications or removal actions. (yr 5-7).
- Identify beneficiaries and negotiate cost sharing agreements (yr 5-7).
- Begin construction (if needed) and begin new operations if conditions and linkages are satisfied (yr 6-7).

## Conveyance

The CALFED Program will evaluate a through-Delta approach to conveyance based upon the existing Delta configuration with some modifications. The CALFED Program will evaluate the effectiveness of this conveyance approach, and add additional conveyance and/or other water management actions if necessary. The initial through-Delta conveyance will be continually monitored, analyzed, and improved to maximize the potential of the through-Delta approach to meet CALFED Program goals and objectives, consistent with the CALFED Program's Solution Principles. In the event of a finding that a through-Delta conveyance system is inadequate to achieve CALFED Program goals and objectives, additional actions may be implemented. The CALFED Program may also evaluate and pursue: 1) an isolated conveyance facility (a canal connecting the Sacramento River in the northern Delta to the SWP and CVP export facilities in the southern Delta); 2) source water blending or substitution; and/or 3) other actions through supplemental programmatic analysis.

As part of the Conveyance Program, the CALFED Program has incorporated the south Delta and north Delta regions to address conveyance improvements and related problems in Stage 1. Conveyance improvements for the South Delta set forth in the Final Programmatic EIR/EIS are identified as allowing SWP export capacity to increase from the current authorized levels with seasonal increases, as authorized in Corps Permit PN5820A. The proposed increases would allow up to 8,500 cfs pumping in 2003 and ultimately up to 10,300 cfs at the end of Stage 1. The EIR/EIS identifies a number of measures that will be part of the conveyance modifications including new fish screens, ecosystem restoration as part of the ERP, permanent operable barriers or their functional equivalent in selected South Delta channels, and other measures.

Improvements in export capabilities will be accompanied by associated operations which will maintain diversion capabilities for south Delta water users and provide for fish protection. CALFED implementing documents set forth a schedule for securing appropriate regulatory permits and completing a project-specific operations plan that addresses the potential impacts of increased pumping. This plan will need to reflect the nature and timing of the construction and operation of new project facilities and implementation of ecosystem improvements, and a more specific project description following completion of additional planning and environmental studies.

Decisions to implement conveyance actions will be predicated upon completing site-specific feasibility studies and complying with all environmental review and permitting requirements. Individual conveyance projects pursued under the WMS will fully evaluate all alternatives during tiered environmental review and will fully analyze and address direct and indirect effects under section 7 or section 10 of the ESA. Operational rules and facilities needed for use of additional export capability will be determined during ESA consultation on the project-specific environmental documentation prepared for the various conveyance elements.

### Proposed Conveyance Stage 1 Actions (South Delta)

The CALFED Program will evaluate the following Conveyance actions proposed for implementation in Stage 1. These proposed Stage 1 actions are representative of the overall set of proposed actions in the Conveyance Program.

- Pursue construction and evaluation of a 500 cfs test facility at the Tracy Pumping Plant to develop best available fish screening and salvage technology for the intakes to the SWP and CVP export facilities (yr 1-7).
- Pursue authorization for construction of a new screened intake for Clifton Court Forebay (CCFB) for the full export capacity of the SWP (yr 1-7).
- Implement the Joint Point of Diversion (JPOD) for the SWP and CVP (yr 1-7).
- Evaluate and decide on whether to retain a separate CVP intake facility or to consolidate with the SWP facility. An intertie between Clifton Court Forebay and the Tracy Pumping Plant will be required if the export location is consolidated at Clifton Court Forebay and will be evaluated if exports continue at both locations. Also, evaluate and potentially implement an intertie between the projects downstream of the export pumps (yr 1-7).
- Evaluate increased SWP pumping by 500 cfs from July through September (yr 1-4).
- Facilitate interim SWP export flexibility up to 8,500 cfs, with appropriate environmental constraints including ESA requirements (yr 4).
- Obtain permits including ESA authorization to use full SWP capacity of 10,300 cfs, consistent with all applicable operational constraints, for water supply and environmental benefits (yr 7).
- For purposes of the project level environmental analysis for the South Delta Improvements, evaluate various operable barrier configuration alternatives or their functional equivalents. All barrier operations will be done in conjunction with water operations to avoid impacts to fish. Potential barriers include the installation of a permanent fish migration barrier at the Head of Old River, and the construction of three permanent flow control structures at Old River at Tracy, Middle River upstream of Victoria Canal, and at Grant Line Canal. The Grant Line Canal barrier would be constructed and operated in accordance with conditions and directions specified by the USFWS, CDFG, and NMFS. (yr 1-7).
- Monitor barrier effects on fish, stages, circulation, and water quality (yr 1-7).
- Evaluate the dredging of selected channel segments (yr 3-7).

### Additional Actions Required During Stage 1 (South Delta)

- Implement south Delta ERP goals (yr 1-7).
- Consolidate, extend, and screen local agricultural diversions based on priority and initiate a screen maintenance program (yr 1-7).
- Develop a strategy to resolve regional water quality problems including actions to improve San Joaquin River DO conditions and the San Joaquin River drainage as described in the CALFED Program's WQP. Evaluate the feasibility of re-circulation of water pumped from the Delta by the CVP and SWP. If feasible, and consistent with the CALFED Program's ecosystem restoration goals and objectives, implement a pilot program (yr 1-7).

- Continue implementation of the Vernalis Adaptive Management Plan. Include development of a long-term plan describing actions of the San Joaquin River Group Authority to improve water management practices (yr 1-7).

#### Proposed North Delta Stage 1 Actions

- Evaluate and implement improved operational procedures for the Delta Cross Channel (DCC) to address fishery and water quality concerns (yr 1-4).
- Evaluate a screened through-Delta facility with a diversion capacity of up to 4,000 cfs on the Sacramento River to improve drinking water quality in the event the water quality program measures do not result in continuous improvement toward CALFED drinking water goals. This evaluation would consider the effectiveness of water quality measures and how to operate the DCC in conjunction with this new diversion structure to improve drinking water quality, while maintaining fish recovery. If the environmental review demonstrates that this diversion facility is needed to address drinking water quality concerns, and can be constructed and operated without adverse effects to anadromous and estuarine fish, construction may begin late in Stage 1 subject to section 7 authorization (yr 1-4).
- Evaluate opportunities to resolve local flood concerns and create tidal wetlands and riparian habitat by constructing new setback levees, improving existing levees, and dredging channels in the north Delta, especially the channels of the lower Mokelumne River system. Any proposed channel modifications would be consistent with the CALFED Program's current direction on Delta conveyance and ecosystem goals (yr 1-7).
- Facilitate regionwide coordination of all CALFED Program related projects in the north Delta region (yr 1-7).

#### Proposed Stage 1 Actions Throughout the Delta Region

- Evaluate how water supplies can best provide a level of public health protection equivalent to Delta source water quality of 50 parts per billion (ppb) bromide and three parts per million (ppm) Total Organic Carbon (yr 1-7). This will include an equivalent level of investigation and studies on all of the actions which could be used to achieve the CALFED Program's targets.
- Evaluate the CALFED Program's progress toward measurable water quality goals and ecosystem restoration objectives, with particular emphasis on fish recovery (yr 6-7).
- Conduct additional environmental review to determine if construction of an isolated conveyance facility component of a dual Delta conveyance (presently not an element of the CALFED Program's Preferred Program Alternative) is warranted. A decision to construct such a facility would require separate environmental review and alternatives analysis that has not been done as part of the CALFED Program's programmatic analysis (yr 1-7).

### Additional Actions Required During Stage 1 (Throughout the Delta Region)

- Fully implement actions, consistent with the MSCS, that mitigate for the direct and indirect environmental affects of project features and actions (yr 1-7).
- Improve flood control through levee improvements, levee setbacks, channel dredging, and floodplain restoration to be fully consistent with regional ERP actions (yr 1-7).
- Screen agricultural intakes to assure ecosystem protection (yr 1-7).

### Environmental Water Account (EWA)

An essential goal of the CALFED Program is to provide increased water supply reliability to water users while at the same time assuring the availability of sufficient water to meet fish protection and restoration/recovery needs as one part of the overall ERP. As a means to achieve these objectives, the CALFED Program will provide commitments under the ESA and CESA to SWP and CVP export facilities only for the first four years of Stage 1. These commitments are based on fully providing water from existing regulatory means, a fully implemented EWA, flows and habitat restoration provided through the ERP, and the ability to obtain additional assets should they be necessary.

The EWA is a new water source provided to: (1) augment instream flows and Delta outflows; and (2) reduce Delta exports from CVP/SWP export facilities during key periods of fish and aquatic ecosystem concerns. The CALFED Agencies will also continue to work with other diverters in the Delta watershed to resolve local fishery-diversion conflicts based on the site-specific needs and opportunities for each diversion. The CALFED Agencies have crafted the EWA so that it has no effect on the existing water rights of other water right holders in the watershed.

Overall Purpose, Framework and Administration The EWA will be established, as part of the EWA Operating Principles Agreement (see Appendix B, hereby incorporated as part of this project description), to provide water for the protection and recovery of fish in addition to water available through existing regulatory actions related to project operations. The EWA Operating Principles Agreement will be interpreted to be consistent with this project description. To the extent that the EWA Operating Principles Agreement provides greater specificity, the EWA Operating Principles Agreement will be the controlling document.

The EWA will be funded jointly by the State and Federal governments and will be authorized to acquire, bank, transfer and borrow water and arrange for its conveyance. EWA assets will be managed by the State and Federal fish and wildlife agencies (the USFWS, NMFS, and CDFG) in coordination with project operators and stakeholders. Initial acquisition of assets for the EWA will be made by Federal and State agencies (Reclamation and DWR). Subsequently, it is anticipated that acquisitions may be made pursuant to a public process that may take advantage of other agencies or third parties to acquire assets.

Baseline Level of Protection DWR and Interior will provide a baseline of environmental protection. The CALFED Agencies recognize that the SWRCB may adjust the CVP and SWP

responsibilities for complying with the 1995 Delta Water Quality Control Plan (WQCP), as part of its on-going Bay-Delta Water Rights Hearings. The outcome of those hearings may affect the nature of this baseline. The CVP's and SWP's regulatory baseline, primarily for fish needs, identified as Tier 1 in the EWA discussion below, will include:

- **1993 Winter-run Salmon Biological Opinion (NMFS)**

- **1995 Delta Water Quality Control Plan (SWRCB)**

At this time, the CVP and SWP are responsible for meeting flow related objectives contained in this plan. The CALFED Agencies recognize that the SWRCB may adjust or re-allocate the responsibilities for meeting the 1995 Delta Water Quality Control Plan, as part of its ongoing Bay-Delta Water Rights hearings. Adjustment of responsibility to meet the Plan does not affect the baseline level of protection for purposes of the EWA.

Appropriate CALFED Agencies will develop a strategy to deal with the rare circumstances when the CVP obligation under the WQCP exceeds the 450 TAF annual cap for use of CVPIA Section 3406(b)(2) water. In the strategy, developed in conjunction with part of the Governor's Drought Contingency Plan, the Agencies will use their available resources to create an insurance policy to eliminate impacts to water users, while not adversely affecting other uses.

- **1995 Delta Smelt Biological Opinion (USFWS)**

The export curtailment contained in the 1995 Delta Smelt Biological Opinion (item 2 on page 19), commonly referred to as the "2 to 1 Vernalis flow/export ratio", will be met by Section 3406(b)(2) of the CVPIA and EWA. This objective calls for the SWP and CVP to reduce combined exports, below what is allowed in the 1995 Water Quality Control Plan during a 31-day period in April and May. The 1995 WQCP allows exports to be 100% of the base San Joaquin River flow at Vernalis during the April-May pulse period. The CVP reduction in pumping will be conducted pursuant to the accounting policy for Section 3406(b)(2) of the CVPIA and/or through reimbursement by the EWA. The SWP will be reimbursed by the EWA for its participation in reducing exports pursuant to the 2 to 1 Vernalis flow/export ratio.

The CVP and SWP will be operated pursuant to the terms of the San Joaquin River Agreement through 2011. While the SJRA is in effect, the exports may be reduced beyond what is called for by the 2 to 1 Vernalis flow/export ratio and San Joaquin River flows may be augmented by water acquired from upstream sources during that same time period. Such an augmentation will not be included as part of the SWP share of Vernalis flow. While operating per the SJRA, the SWP and CVP will also receive reimbursement from the EWA or pursuant to Section 3406(b)(2) for the additional curtailment. If the SJRA is not implemented for any reason, the operations will default back to the biological opinion operation, as per the terms of the SJRA.



- **Full Use of 800 TAF Supply of Water Pursuant to Section 3406(b)(2) of the CVPIA in Accordance with Interior's October 5, 1999 Decision, clarified as follows:**

*Water Resulting from Refill of Reservoirs ("Reset"):* Water which is available under the (b)(2) Policy as a result of refill of reservoirs following upstream releases ("reset") will not be used in a manner which results in increased export reductions. Upstream releases of (b)(2) water pumped by the SWP and made available to the EWA will not be subject to the "reset" provision.

*Export Curtailments which Result in Increased Storage ("Offset"):* Where a prescribed (b)(2) export curtailment results in a reduction in releases from upstream reservoirs and hence increased storage, the charge to the (b)(2) account will be offset to the extent that the increased storage will result in increased delivery (beyond forecast delivery at the time of the export curtailment) to south-of-Delta CVP contractors in the remainder of the water year. If such deliveries cannot be increased in that water year, such additional water stored in upstream reservoirs shall be available for other (b)(2) uses without charge. Where the delivery to export users in the remainder of the water year will not be increased and end-of-year storage will be increased, there will be no offset to the charge to the (b)(2) account.

The Secretary of the Interior is expected to make a decision later this year on Trinity River flows, pursuant to the original Trinity authorization, the Trinity Restoration Act of 1984, and the CVPIA. The substance of the decision is unknown and therefore cannot be addressed at this time. It is separate and will not be affected by the ROD for the CALFED Program.

Other Environmental Protections The regulatory baseline above also assumes that other environmental protections contained in biological opinions, regulations or statutes remain in place. These protections include, without limitation, Level 2 refuge water supplies, as required by the CVPIA. The CVP will use its share of the benefits from joint point of diversion, to the extent available, to provide water required by its Level 2 refuge water supply mandates, but using such benefits will not create any limitation on the Level 2 supply available for refuges.

Operating Rules The ground rules for operating the EWA are detailed in the EWA Operating Principles Agreement, executed by DWR, Reclamation, CDFG, the USFWS, and NMFS. The ground rules are based on the principle that the EWA will provide flows allowing fish recovery while not resulting in uncompensated reductions in deliveries to south of Delta CVP/SWP contractors.

Asset Development Immediate development of assets for the first year is critical to EWA success. Initial water purchases and lease of groundwater storage will be secured from willing sellers by the end of 2000. In addition to assets to be acquired annually, as shown in a following table, an initial one-time acquisition of 200 TAF of south-of-Delta storage or its functional equivalent will be acquired from a variety of sources to assure the effectiveness of the EWA and provide assurances for SWP and CVP water supply/deliveries. This initial deposit will also provide

collateral for the first year's borrowing. The related storage is intended to function as long-term storage for other EWA assets as they become available.

Borrowing agreements will allow the EWA to borrow water from the CVP and SWP for necessary actions during a water year as long as the water can be repaid without affecting the following year's allocations. To the extent practicable, borrowing from the SWP and CVP will be shared. The limitations on borrowing will be developed as part of the agreement. Source shifting agreements with south-of-Delta water providers for 100 TAF will be used to enhance the effectiveness of the EWA, and to help provide assurance that SWP and CVP water deliveries will not be affected by EWA operations. To provide regulatory stability during the initial period of Stage 1, the CALFED Agencies will provide a commitment, subject to legal requirements, that for the first four years of Stage 1, there will be no reductions, beyond existing regulatory levels, in CVP or SWP Delta exports resulting from measures to protect fish under the ESA and CESA. This commitment will be based on the availability of three tiers of assets:

**Tier 1** is baseline water, provided by existing regulation and operational flexibility. The regulatory baseline consists of the biological opinions on winter-run salmon and delta smelt, 1995 Delta Water Quality Control Plan, and 800 TAF of CVP yield pursuant to CVPIA Section 3406(b)(2).

**Tier 2** consists of the assets in the EWA combined with the benefits of the ERP and is an insurance mechanism that will allow water to be provided for fish over and above Tier 1, when needed without reducing deliveries to water users. Tier 1 and Tier 2 are, in effect, a water budget for the environment and will be used to avoid the need for Tier 3 assets as described subsequently.

**Tier 3** is based upon the commitment and ability of the CALFED Agencies to make additional water available should it be needed. It is unlikely that assets beyond those in Tier 1 and Tier 2 will be needed to meet ESA requirements. However, if further assets are needed in specific circumstances, Tier 3 will be provided. In considering the need for Tier 3 assets, the fish and wildlife agencies will consider the views of an independent science panel. Although the CALFED Agencies do not anticipate needing access to Tier 3 water assets, the CALFED Agencies will prepare an implementation strategy for Tier 3 by August 2001, establish a timely scientific panel process, and identifying tools and funding should implementation of Tier 3 prove necessary.

**Table 1.** List of EWA assets. Some assets may be replaced by functional equivalents, if determined to be appropriate by the EWA Managing Agencies (USFWS, CDFG, NMFS)

Action Description	Water Available Annually(Average)
<b>SWP Pumping of (b)(2)/ERP Upstream Releases<sup>1</sup></b>	40,000 acre-feet <sup>2</sup>
<b>EWA Use of Joint Point<sup>3</sup></b>	75,000 acre-feet
<b>Export/Inflow Ratio Flexibility</b>	30,000 acre-feet
<b>500 cfs SWP Pumping Increase</b>	50,000 acre-feet
<b>Purchases - South of Delta</b>	150,000 acre-feet
<b>Purchases - North of Delta<sup>4</sup></b>	35,000 acre-feet
<b>TOTAL</b>	380,000 acre-feet
<b>Storage acquisition</b>	200,000 acre-feet of storage, filled when acquired in Year 1
<b>Source-shifting agreement</b>	100,000 acre-feet at any time

<sup>1</sup>The EWA and the SWP will share equally the (b)(2) and ERP upstream releases pumped by the SWP after they have served their (b)(2) and ERP purposes.

<sup>2</sup>The amount of water derived from the first four actions will vary based on hydrologic conditions.

<sup>3</sup>The EWA will share access to joint point, with the CVP receiving 50% of the benefits.

<sup>4</sup>This is the amount of water targeted for the first year; higher amounts are anticipated in subsequent years.

### *Science Program*

The CALFED Science Program includes implementing the Comprehensive Monitoring, Assessment, and Research Program (CMARP) as an integral aspect of the overall CALFED Program. The scope of the Science Program will encompass all elements of the CALFED Program: ecosystem restoration, water supply reliability, water use efficiency and conservation, water quality, and levees integrity. The purpose of the Science Program is to provide new information and scientific interpretations necessary to implement, monitor, and evaluate the success of the CALFED Program. The Science Program will build on the work of the Interagency Ecological Program (IEP) and other scientific efforts in the CALFED Program area.

The CALFED Program is organized around the concept of adaptive management because there is incomplete knowledge of how the ecosystem functions, the effects of human stressors on ecosystem structure and function, and the ecological and other effects of individual CALFED Program

actions. Monitoring key system functions (or indicators), completing focused research to obtain better understanding, and staging implementation based on information gained are all central to the adaptive management process.

In order to better integrate scientific review into the CALFED Program, the Governor and the Secretary of the Interior will appoint an independent science board to provide oversight and peer review for the overall program. Also, specific independent science panels may be convened as standing bodies or on an as needed basis. For example, the Science Program will assist with convening an independent science panel to review the implementation and operation of the EWA. In addition, the existing ERP Interim Science Board will likely become the ERP Science Panel, and provide ongoing independent review of the ERP.

The CALFED Science Program will accomplish the following in stage 1:

- Appoint an independent science board for the CALFED Program as a whole by the middle of 2001.
- Appoint an independent science panel for the EWA by the middle of 2001.
- Coordinate existing monitoring and scientific research programs.
- refine the set of ecological, operational, and other predictive models that will be used in the evaluative process by the end of 2001.
- Establish performance measures and indicators, and a consistent strategy of on-going development of these, for each of the program areas.
- Develop an annual science report, format and content, which includes:
  - Status of the species and effectiveness of efforts to improve conditions, including EWA, ERP and water management strategies, and provide recommendations to maximize fishery benefits while minimizing impacts to water supply.
  - Assessment of progress and effectiveness of each program element as indicated by performance measures and indicators.
  - Complete feasibility study to establish and construct CALFED Science Center
  - Recommend research and/or program adjustments.
- Prepare first annual report by the end of 2001

CALFED intends to invest approximately \$ 300 million in the science program during stage 1.

#### Other Proposed Science Program Stage 1 Actions

In addition, the CALFED Program will evaluate the following Science Program actions proposed for implementation in Stage 1. These proposed Stage 1 actions are representative of the overall set of proposed actions for the Science Program.

- Periodic review and refinement of the monitoring, data assessment and research plan from a long term perspective (yr 1-7).

- Periodic review and refinement of the monitoring, data assessment and research plan from a short term perspective which would include all elements of the Phase III, Stage 1 Program (yr 1-7).
- Help management define triggers and time periods which determine the need for a change in program direction (yr 1-7).
- Continue to develop and refine conceptual models to be used in evaluating actions undertaken by the programs. In keeping with the adaptive management format, the models will be continually updated with information generated by program actions (yr 1-7).
- Evaluate the effectiveness of the adaptive management process on the program decision making process (yr 1-7).
- Review the progress toward achieving overall CALFED Program goals and objectives and whether individual programs are progressing at similar paces (yr 1-7).
- Complete monitoring identified by the Diversion Effects on Fisheries Team to provide feedback on actual diversion effects of south Delta pumps (yr 2-7).
- Design long-term, system wide, baseline monitoring with focused research to increase understanding of ecological processes and ways to reduce uncertainty; definition of needed studies is currently under development (yr 1-7).
- Provide available data on need to reduce bromides, total dissolved solids, total organic carbon, pesticides and heavy metals (yr 5).
- Provide available data on water quality in the south Delta and lower San Joaquin River (yr 1-7).
- Monitor and assess the impacts of water use efficiency measures on water demands and available supplies, and develop better information for water balances in the Bay-Delta system (yr 1-7).
- Prepare annual reports on status and progress, including such information as: performance of habitat restoration actions compared to expected results, summaries of any new information on the relative importance of various stressors, and any need for adjustments in actions or conceptual models (yr 1-7).
- Analyze status and need for adjustments of actions for later stages (yr 5-7).
- Monitor and report land use changes, such as agricultural land conversion, resulting from CALFED Program actions (yr 2-7).
- Hire an interim science leader and subsequently hire a chief scientist (yr 1-2).
- Appoint an Independent Science Board and an independent science panel for the EWA (yr 1-2).
- Coordinate existing monitoring and scientific research programs (yr 1-7).
- Refine the set of ecological, operational, and other predictive models that will be used in the evaluation process (yr 1-2).
- Establish and refine performance measures and indicators for each of the program areas (yr 1-7).

## *Multi-Species Conservation Strategy (MSCS)*

The MSCS serves as a biological assessment for the CALFED Program and describes the CALFED Program strategy for achieving compliance with the ESA, CESA, and Natural Community Conservation Planning Act during implementation of the CALFED Program. As a biological assessment, it summarizes the CALFED Program and analyzes its effects on 244 listed, proposed, and candidate species, and species of concern. As a “conservation strategy” it outlines conservation goals for species that will be effected by the Program, and identifies strategies for achieving those goals and ESA compliance.

### Conservation Goals and Prescriptions

The MSCS identifies conservation goals for 244 species as well as species prescriptions and conservation measures to achieve these goals. The CALFED Program has established a goal to recover 19 species, contribute to the recovery of 25 species, and maintain 200 species. A goal of “recovery” was established for those species whose recovery is dependent on restoration of the Delta and Suisun Bay/Marsh systems. Recovery is achieved when the decline of a species is arrested or reversed, threats to the species are neutralized, and the species long-term survival in nature is assured. Recovery is equivalent, at minimum, to the requirements for de-listing a species under ESA and CESA. With respect to anadromous salmonids within the MSCS Focus Area, recovery is equivalent, at a minimum, to completing the actions within the ERP Ecological Management Zones that are required for delisting a species under the federal and state ESAs. The goal “contribute to recovery” was assigned to species for which CALFED Program actions affect only a limited portion of the species’ range and/or CALFED Program actions have limited effects on the species. To achieve the goal of contributing to a species’ recovery, the CALFED Agencies are expected to undertake some of the actions under its control and within its scope that are necessary to recover the species. The goal “maintain” was assigned to species expected to be minimally affected by CALFED Program actions. For this category, the CALFED Agencies will avoid, minimize, and compensate for any adverse effects to the species commensurate with the level of effect on the species. Actions may not actually contribute to the recovery of the “maintain” species; however, at a minimum, they will be expected to not contribute to the need to list a species or degrade the status of a listed species. The CALFED Agencies will also, to the extent practicable, improve habitat conditions for these species.

Specific prescriptions were developed to achieve the conservation goals described above for each species. The prescriptions incorporate the measures identified in State and Federal recovery plans, where available, other relevant information, and professional judgment. Prescriptions include measures to enhance habitats and species and are not directly linked to the CALFED Program’s adverse impacts.

As the CALFED Program proceeds during the next 30 years, it is anticipated that California’s landscapes could change significantly and that new information will be available through research and monitoring. Consequently, species goals and prescriptions will likely change through time through adaptive management, and as new recovery plans are finalized or updated.

## Framework for Federal Endangered Species Act Compliance

The CALFED Agencies will take actions necessary to meet the following conditions: 1) the fishery protections elements of the Program must be implemented as described in the EIS/EIR, including the ERP and EWA implementation and funding commitments; 2) Tier 3 measures must be provided, if and when needed; and, 3) implementation of the milestones must be demonstrated; and 4) the initial and annual assets of the EWA must be acquired for the EWA.

The program will be continuously monitored to ensure that it is implemented as intended and the elements necessary for regulatory commitments, i.e., conditions as described in the Conservation Agreement are implemented. In the event that information from monitoring or any other source indicates that any of the Program elements necessary for regulatory commitments are not being met or will not be met, notification will be provided, by the agency which developed the information, to the affected Agencies, as appropriate. Upon notification, the affected agencies will meet promptly to identify and assess measures which can be taken to remedy any noncompliance or anticipated noncompliance with the conditions, and will immediately implement measures. If NMFS determines that a situation of noncompliance exists and the affected agencies are unable to remedy noncompliance within a reasonable time period that NMFS prescribes, not to exceed 60 days, the regulatory commitments will be suspended or terminated. Upon a determination of noncompliance, formal consultation will be reinitiated and NMFS will issue a new or amended biological opinion with conditions prescribing alternative regulatory requirements. If the compliance with the conditions set out above is subsequently achieved, the initial regulatory commitments may be revised and reflected through new or amended programmatic biological opinions. Nothing described here will affect NMFS from exercising our regulatory authority.

The MSCS describes program-level strategies to achieve compliance with ESA, including strategies to address the indirect effects of actions taken under the CALFED Program, and strategies for completing tiered consultations, as appropriate. The CALFED Program's compliance strategies will, in part, be developed and implemented as part of future CALFED Program projects tiered from this programmatic biological opinion.

Entities implementing CALFED Program actions which may effect listed species will be required to develop Action Specific Implementation Plans (ASIPs). ASIPs will be developed for individual CALFED Program actions or groups of actions when enough detailed information is available about the actions to analyze fully their impacts on species and habitats, and develop appropriate measures to avoid, minimize, and compensate for impacts. Specifically, individual projects that qualify for consultation will be evaluated within the context of the program as a whole, which includes major elements designed to improve the environmental baseline and lead to the recovery of targeted species. These major elements will be subject to on-going monitoring, evaluation, and the application of adaptive management. Site specific biological opinions will take into account the environmental benefits that accrue from the CALFED Program.

## Service Area Effects

Implementation of the CALFED Program's Preferred Program Alternative related to water supply reliability will be determined largely in an incremental fashion through an adaptive management process. Because of this, it is not possible to accurately estimate the scope of potential service area effects on species and habitats. Project-level or site-specific impacts may not be known until Phase III of the CALFED Program (implementation). Therefore, the CALFED Program strategy for addressing indirect effects in the service areas includes identifying a short-term strategy based on critical species needs for recovery and restoration, and a long-term strategy for dealing with impacts that cannot be predicted when the biological opinions are issued.

CALFED Agencies will use a two-step process to address potential service area effects that are currently unknown. First, CALFED Agencies will determine the potential presence and scope of any service area effects. Then, to address the effects it has identified, CALFED Agencies will integrate proactive, conservation planning approaches with specific conservation measures. To do this, CALFED Agencies will develop the four conservation measures listed below during Phase III.. These measures, as described in the MSCS on pages 4-17 and 4-18, attempt to address these effects at the project level and at the program level.

- Providing technical assistance and other support to entities preparing Habitat Conservation Plans (HCPs) or conservation programs addressing effects of land use changes in the service areas.
- Evaluating each future water supply reliability program or project during planning and including appropriate measures to address indirect effects in the ASIPs. This may include implementing the applicable conservation measures already in the MSCS to conserve species relative to service area effects or developing new measures.
- Developing or contributing to conservation programs to address the critical needs of species in CALFED Program service areas not already covered by conservation plans.

## *Governance Plan*

The interim governance structure will be in place from the time of the Programmatic ROD until a long-term permanent structure is adopted through State and Federal legislation. For interim governance, CALFED Agencies propose adoption of the current CALFED Program structure being used during the planning stage, but adapted for implementation. The interim governance structure, including identification of how decisions will be made, will be set forth in a new Implementation MOU which the agencies will develop and execute by the time of the ROD. The current structure is made up of the Policy Group reporting to the Governor of California and the Secretary of the Interior, public advisory groups, the CALFED Program Executive Director and staff, and State and Federal agencies and teams. This structure, with additions and modifications, will serve to bridge the gap until a permanent commission is established.

Interim Program Management Responsibilities The LSIP management will remain with DWR, CDFG, and other existing agencies. The CALFED Program will continue to manage the ERP, in



coordination with the appropriate agencies. The State and Federal fish and wildlife agencies (CDFG, USFWS, NMFS) will manage the EWA assets, in coordination with the ERP and water project operations (Reclamation and DWR). CALFED Program will be assigned program management for the WP. The CALFED Program and appropriate agencies (such as Reclamation, EPA, DHS, DWR, and SWRCB) will manage the WQP. For the WTP, CALFED Program will provide program direction, oversight, and coordination among CALFED Program areas and among agencies with jurisdiction over water transfers and use of project facilities. Agencies with jurisdiction over water transfers would retain authority to implement any changes in their own policies or procedures. DWR, Reclamation, and CALFED Program will manage the WUEP. DWR, Reclamation, and CALFED Program will manage the Storage Program Element. Reclamation and DWR will manage the Conveyance Program element. CALFED Program will manage the Science Program (as consistent with the Implementation MOU).

### Milestones

Milestones are a list of ERP, MSCS, and WQP actions the CALFED Program will fully implement in Stage 1 to address covered species. Milestones are a subset of the ERP actions the fish and wildlife agencies expect will be implemented in Stage 1, to achieve the Program's conservation goals. The complete list of milestones appears in Appendix C. A full description of the function and significance of the milestones to this consultation is included in the Appendix.

The Program's objectives for ecosystem restoration are to improve and increase aquatic and terrestrial habitats and improve ecological functions in the Bay-Delta to support sustainable populations of diverse plants and animal species. The ERP, MSCS, and WQP are the principal Program elements designed to meet these objectives. Implementation of the ERP will be informed by the Science Program, which will conduct pertinent research, and monitor and evaluate the implementation of ERP, MSCS, and WQP actions. The ERP, MSCS, WQP, and the Science Program are directly relevant and important for FESA, CESA and NCCPA compliance. To ensure that the ERP, MSCS, and WQP are implemented in a manner and to an extent sufficient to sustain programmatic FESA, CESA and NCCPA compliance for all Program elements, the USFWS, NMFS and CDFG (fish and wildlife agencies) have developed Milestones for ERP, MSCS, and WQP implementation. The Milestones include Science Program actions that are relevant for ERP, MSCS, and WQP implementation. The fish and wildlife agencies have concluded that the Milestones, if achieved along with expected additional ERP actions, define an adequate manner and level of ERP, MSCS, and WQP implementation for Stage 1.

The ERP, MSCS, and WQP are the Program's blueprint for the restoration of the Bay-Delta. The MSCS is not a separate blueprint or supplemental restoration program and does not supplant the ERP. The measures and goals in the MSCS are consistent with the ERP's measures and goals. However, the MSCS is a conservation strategy and a regulatory compliance strategy for the entire Program. The MSCS addresses the potential adverse effects and beneficial effects of all Program actions, including ERP actions and other Program actions such as levee system integrity actions, water conveyance actions and storage actions. Based in large part on the ERP, the MSCS' premise is that the Program as a whole, including all Program elements, will improve and increase

aquatic and terrestrial habitats and improve ecological functions in the Bay-Delta. The ERP therefore serves two purposes: 1) to achieve Program objectives for ecosystem restoration and species recovery, and 2) to enable actions from all Program elements to be completed in compliance with FESA, CESA and the NCCPA through implementation of ASIPs.

To serve both of these purposes, ERP implementation must be informed both by the best available scientific information and by information about the implementation of other Program actions. Information about the implementation of other Program actions is necessary to ensure that they do not conflict or limit the success of the ERP. In addition, ERP restoration actions must be implemented concurrent, and at a commensurate level, with the implementation of other Program actions to ensure that the Program as a whole continues to increase aquatic and terrestrial habitats and improve ecological functions in the Bay-Delta. The Milestones are intended to establish, based on the best information currently available, a group of actions derived from the ERP, MSCS, and WQP that 1) establish an adequate level of implementation during Stage 1, 2) would not be inhibited by proposed Stage 1 actions in other Program elements, and 3) would enable proposed Stage 1 actions in other Program elements to be completed in compliance with FESA, CESA and the NCCPA through implementation of ASIPs.

The Program's development of annual, near-term, and long-term ERP implementation priorities and strategies will be based on the goals and objectives of the ERP Strategic Plan, the MSCS, FESA recovery plans, and implementation plans developed for specific ecological management zones, and will be informed by the Science Program. The Milestones represent the MSCS' goals and objectives with respect to the ERP. As with ERP implementation priorities and strategies generally, the fish and wildlife agencies intend that the Science Program will provide information concerning the Milestones. Specifically, the fish and wildlife agencies will seek review within the Science Program of 1) whether other Program elements conflict with implementation priorities and strategies so as to limit the success of the ERP, MSCS, and WQP, and 2) whether the implementation priorities and strategies will ensure that the Program as a whole continues to increase aquatic and terrestrial habitats and improve ecological functions in the Bay-Delta. As the Science Program develops information about implementation, the USFWS, NMFS and CDFG will revise the Milestones as necessary, consistent with the FESA and the NCCPA.

The CALFED Program will develop annual ERP implementation plans using the ERP Strategic Plan for Ecosystem Restoration and the MSCS. Members of the Science Program, the Agency/Stakeholder Ecosystem Team ("ASET") the CALFED Program will work cooperatively to develop annual ERP implementation plans and to define the long-term priorities for the ERP. The fish and wildlife agencies will participate fully in the process for developing annual ERP implementation plans. The fish and wildlife agencies' participation will include, but not be limited to, participation in the ASET. Through participation in the annual ERP implementation plan process, the fish and wildlife agencies will help ensure 1) that each plan is based on the best available information regarding ecosystem restoration and the Bay-Delta system, 2) that each plan will achieve substantial progress toward meeting the Milestones, and 3) that the Science Program will provide information to achieve applicable Milestones. As new information becomes available and conceptual models are tested and refined as part of this process, the fish and

wildlife agencies anticipate that priorities reflected in the Milestones may change, and that new issues or questions may emerge. Through the annual ERP implementation process, Science Program members, the CALFED Program, and ASET members may propose revisions to the Milestones based on pertinent new information. If the fish and wildlife agencies determine that the proposed revisions are warranted and are consistent with FESA and the NCCPA, the Fish and wildlife agencies will revise the Milestones accordingly.

The Fish and wildlife agencies will not approve revisions to the Milestones that would cause or allow an effect to Covered Species or critical habitat designated under FESA that was not considered in the programmatic regulatory determinations, or would otherwise require the re-initiation of consultation under 50 CFR §402.16. Consequently, the USFWS and NMFS expect that their approved revisions to Milestones can be incorporated in each agency's programmatic biological opinions without re-initiating consultation under §7 of FESA. CDFG will incorporate its approved revisions to the Milestones by amending the CDFG Approval and Supporting Findings for the MSCS.

It will not be possible to gauge the progress of Milestone implementation for a few years, once Phase III begins. Consequently, over the first four years the Wildlife Agencies will base success of Program Implementation upon the criterion that the ERP is fully funded (at least \$150 million from dedicated funding sources annually through Stage 1 for the ERP, and an additional \$50 million EWA funding annually for the first four years). However, the criterion for success at the end of Stage 1 will be implementation of the Stage 1 Milestones.

The Program will submit an annual report to the Governor, the Secretary of the Interior, the State Legislature and the Congress that describes the status of implementation of all Program elements by December 15 of each calendar year. The report will document the status of all actions taken to meet Program objectives in Stage 1. Among the actions addressed in the report will be the completion of key projects and milestones identified in the ERP. Progress in achieving the ERP-MSCS Milestones will be included in the portion of the annual reports concerning the ERP.

#### Summary of Key Planned Actions

If key program actions are not implemented at this programmatic level, or new information becomes available, consultation would be reinitiated at the programmatic level to ascertain how the lack of implementation of any actions, or new information, effects the evaluation of effects upon listed species associated with the overall implementation of the suite of actions being considered and the subsequent conclusions made in this biological opinion. The following key actions are considered relevant to this biological opinion and part of the project description and, are therefore, requisite in conducting the effects analysis:

#### *Program-wide*

1. The conservation actions described in the Description of the Proposed Action will be implemented, including, but not limited to, the ERP Plan, the WQP Plan, the WP Plan, and

the MSCS and, where applicable, its strategy for addressing indirect, service area effects. The determination of whether and to what extent a specific action results in indirect effects will be made on a case by case basis in accordance with legal requirements. These actions will be implemented consistent with the Science Program and adaptive management, as described in the **Description of the Proposed Action**.

2. CALFED Agencies will obtain funding sufficient to implement the conservation elements and strategies, as necessary, to implement this biological opinion.
3. The various CALFED Program elements, strategies, and projects will be implemented in concert with the ERP, MSCS, EWA, and WQP to achieve the multiple goals of the CALFED Program. The CALFED programs will be implemented such that the net effects to species and their habitats are positive and are consistent and in conformance with State and Federal recovery goals.
4. To the extent that a CALFED action is not subject to Section 7 of the ESA and is likely to result in the take of listed species, a permit under section 10 of the ESA will be required
5. The CALFED Program will utilize comprehensive monitoring and adaptive management to assess projects and programs.
6. The CALFED Program will implement projects to achieve the milestones (Appendix C) established for the ERP, MSCS, and WQP.
7. Discharges into surface water bodies and waterways resulting from CALFED Program actions will comply with the standards set forth in the Description of the Proposed Action for the biological opinion on the Environmental Protection Agency's Promulgation of Numeric Criteria for Priority Toxic Pollutants for the State of California; California Toxics Rule (CTR) (USFWS File No. 1-1-98-F-21), in accordance with applicable implementation plans.
8. Entities implementing CALFED Program actions will comply with all applicable environmental laws.
9. DWR, to the extent required by law, and Reclamation will consult on all new and modified water contracts from a CALFED Program action that may affect listed species.

#### *Levee System Integrity Program*

10. Levee integrity improvement elements will be consistent with ERP actions and MSCS conservation measures, so that levee integrity and ecosystem and species recovery advance simultaneously.

11. The USFWS, NMFS, and CDFG will be involved in planning Levee System Integrity Program projects to ensure that ERP implementation is not impaired by levee program actions and adverse effects of levee actions are fully mitigated.
12. Development and implementation of CALFED Program plans for rehabilitating Suisun Marsh levees will be consistent with the goals of the ERP and MSCS, including State and Federal recovery plans.
13. Levee repair/improvements will be constructed using levee set-backs and soft-fixes (bio-technical solutions) to the extent practicable.

#### *Water Quality Program*

14. The CALFED Program will implement projects to achieve the milestones established for the WQP in Stage 1.

#### *Ecosystem Restoration Program*

15. The CALFED Program will implement projects to achieve the milestones established for the ERP in Stage 1.
16. The ERP will be implemented in a manner that will achieve species prescriptions and recovery goals of covered species by year 30 of the CALFED Program. Stage 1 milestones establish the trajectory for achieving recovery goals for the first 7 years.

#### *Water Use Efficiency Program*

17. Development and implementation of the WUEP will be consistent with the goals and objectives of the ERP and MSCS, including State and Federal recovery plans. Program actions and associated conservation measures will be planned in conjunction with the USFWS, NMFS, and CDFG, in compliance with FESA, CESA, and NCCPA, as appropriate. Program development will be coordinated with other CALFED Programs (WQP, ERP, MSCS, and Science Program).

#### *Water Transfers Program*

18. No water transfers resulting from CALFED Program actions will occur if they would result in adverse effects on fish and wildlife until consultation under section 7 is completed or section 10 permit is issued. Reclamation and DWR will consult on all proposed 3<sup>rd</sup> party water transfers that may affect listed species and their native habitats, as appropriate. Additionally, the EWA will not be charged for curtailed 3<sup>rd</sup> party transfer opportunities.

19. EWA, CVP, and Level 4 Refuge water supply transfers will have priority for conveyance over other transfer obligations (as consistent with the Operating Principles Agreement for the EWA).

#### *Watershed Program*

20. Development and implementation of the Watershed Program will be consistent with the goals of the ERP and MSCS, including State and Federal recovery plans. Program actions will be planned in conjunction with the USFWS, NMFS, and CDFG, in compliance with FESA, CESA, and NCCPA, as appropriate. Program development will be coordinated with other CALFED Programs (WQP, ERP, MSCS, and Science Program). Program actions will be funded so that it is assured that appropriate conservation measures for listed species will be included in program actions, as appropriate.

#### *Water Management Strategy*

Specific key actions are provided for storage, conveyance, EWA, and other programs.

#### *Storage*

21. Storage sites will be selected through a screening process which includes applicable environmental requirements.
22. Following the initiation of consultation, CALFED Agencies will comply with section 7(d) of the ESA, which prohibits making any irreversible or irretrievable commitment of resources, for any potential new storage site or modified storage site prior to achieving project-specific compliance under section 7(a)(2) of the ESA.
23. Tiered project specific analyses of potential storage improvements will identify and result in the selection of alternatives that are capable of being mitigated with appropriate mitigation sites and operational requirements; where the compensatory mitigation is highly likely to be successful; with the project specific compensatory mitigation implemented concurrent with, or in advance of, the adverse effects associated with construction and implementation of the project; where construction and operation of the project will not result in jeopardy to listed or proposed species or adverse modification of critical habitat; and where the project will not result in substantial degradation of the aquatic environment.
24. Conveyance structures (e.g., canals, pipelines), recreation, roads, and similar developments associated with or proposed in conjunction with proposed expansions of existing storage facilities or proposed new storage facilities will be evaluated thoroughly for their impacts to Federal or State listed species and those species evaluated consistent with the MSCS, as appropriate. If, through the informal or formal consultation process, it is determined by the USFWS, NMFS, and CDFG (for State listed species) that project-related impacts would threaten the long-term viability of Federal or State listed species or

those species evaluated under the MSCS, the proposed project(s) will be modified or dropped from consideration.

#### *Conveyance*

25. To the extent consistent with the Service's regulatory authority, any CALFED agency that proposes to develop water for delivery or application outside current contract service areas would comply with ESA requirements under section 7 or 10, as appropriate, if listed species may be affected.
26. In proceeding with the South Delta Improvement Program, CALFED Agencies shall implement ecosystem restoration in the lower San Joaquin river and south Delta (generally, south of Empire Cut) in advance of or concurrent with impacts resulting from south Delta facility improvements.
27. When the CDFG, NMFS and Service, in consultation with the CALFED Agencies, determine that a diversion requires screening, CALFED Agencies will secure written agreements from willing land owners to allow access for screening of agricultural and municipal diversions to protect fish consistent with the screening priorities established by the CALFED Program. The agreement will provide that if monitoring is necessary, access for monitoring will be allowed with reasonable notification. If the CALFED Program is not substantially achieving screening program objectives, the CALFED Agencies will reinitiate informal or formal consultation.
28. When implementing EWA export reductions, the water cost associated with decreased exports will be charged against current facilities capabilities as constrained by current regulation. Any future increases in exports resulting from CALFED conveyance improvements will have operational rules developed through consultation with the fish and wildlife agencies to ensure consistency with EWA Operating Principles, and the goals of restoration and recovery for aquatic species.
29. In the interim, prior to installation of permanent operable barriers, DWR will apply for and obtain permits to allow the continued operation of the temporary barriers.
30. Prior to increasing pumping above current authorized levels, operational rules for use of additional export capability will be determined through an open CALFED process and ESA consultation on the project-specific environmental documentation prepared for the various conveyance elements. To offset potential impacts and to provide for recovery of fishery populations, additional measures will be developed which would allow for protection of fish. These additional measures may include, which are phased over time, but are not limited to (a) screening, (b) new standards which limit the timing and magnitude of exports and water supply releases at key periods of fish concern, or (c) a combination of the two. ESA coverage for such actions would come from separate consultation for OCAP or in consultations tiered from this opinion.

31. An isolated conveyance facility will be evaluated as an alternative in the event it is determined that a through-Delta system will not accomplish the CALFED Programs' goals for restoration and recovery of listed species, or its WQP goals. The study will be developed through a peer-review process to ensure objective analysis.

#### *EWA*

32. All EWA fixed assets (i.e., purchases) are acquired each year.
33. The EWA Operational Principles Agreement is signed and fully implemented.
34. The project agencies shall request clarification with the USFWS, CDFG and NMFS on any points that appear to be ambiguous related to fishery actions for the EWA.
35. If EWA assets are depleted and the USFWS, NMFS, and CDFG determine Tier 3 is necessary, Tier 3 assets will be available to protect fish.
36. As new water storage and conveyance projects are being planned, potential fishery impacts will be assessed. If necessary, to offset potential impacts and to provide for recovery of fishery populations, operational rules will be developed which would allow for protection of fish. These operational rules may include but not limited to (a) limits on the timing and magnitude of exports and water supply releases at key periods of fish concern, and (b) new sharing formulae to increase EWA assets, which would allow the EWA to offset impacts and implement restoration actions. ESA coverage for such actions would come from separate consultation for OCAP or in consultations tiered from this opinion, as appropriate.

#### *Science Program*

37. The Science Program will complete annual reports describing program progress and compliance of all CALFED program actions within this biological opinion.

#### *Multi-Species Conservation Strategy*

38. CALFED agencies will consult with NMFS or request technical assistance, as appropriate, to determine whether any future CALFED Program actions (including water transfers and permanent assignment of water) may affect listed or proposed species before signing a ROD or a FONSI which is tiered from the PEIS. This determination will consider both direct and indirect effects, if any, of specific actions. Evaluation of whether and to what extent the specific action results in indirect effects will be made on a case by case basis in accordance with legal requirements.



39. The list of evaluated species will be reviewed and revised periodically by the USFWS, NMFS, and CDFG to add and remove species, as appropriate, and to review the recovery objective (R, r, or m) for species for their appropriateness.
40. NMFS will work closely with other CALFED agencies, water users and others, providing them with maps of listed species habitats within service areas. NMFS will guide entities through the consultation process or provide technical assistance, as appropriate, to address project-specific effects.
41. Entities implementing CALFED Program actions will complete tiered, project-specific consultation with the USFWS, NMFS, and CDFG, as appropriate, through completion of ASIPs, as described in the MSCS.
42. The CALFED agencies will closely coordinate with the USFWS, NMFS, and CDFG during development and implementation of all ASIPs.
43. To the extent that the CALFED Program actions result in changes to land use practices and the impact analysis required by the MSCS shows effects to listed species, ESA, CESA and NCCPA compliance, as appropriate, will occur. The strategy for addressing impacts as described in the MSCS includes appropriate tools such as: (1) assisting with or contributing to completion and implementation of HCPs that address service area effects, as described in section 10(a) of the ESA; (2) including measures to address indirect effects in ASIPs and completing project-specific section 7 consultations on the ASIPs; (3) contributing towards or developing and implementing a conservation program that addresses species critical needs; and implementing the applicable conservation measures, relative to service area impacts, already in the MSCS.
44. The CALFED Program will monitor the baselines of the species addressed in this opinion. Monitoring (for the life of the CALFED Program's Preferred Program Alternative) will be implemented immediately to test and track the CALFED Program's objective that species' baseline's are stable or increasing.
45. Any project-specific effects to listed species will be consulted upon following project-specific analysis and prior to the effect, and the CALFED agencies shall be adequately funded and staffed to complete tiered project-specific consultations from this opinion and track implementation of conservation actions.

## II. Status of Listed Species and Critical Habitat

The **Sacramento River winter-run chinook salmon** (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) are listed as endangered under the ESA (January 4, 1994, 50 FR 440). This Evolutionarily Significant Unit<sup>1</sup> (ESU) consists of the Sacramento River population in California's Central Valley. Designated critical habitat for Sacramento River winter-run chinook salmon includes the waterways, bottom, and water of the waterways and adjacent riparian zones of the Sacramento River from Keswick Dam, Shasta County (RM 302) to Chipps Island (RM 0) at the westward margin of the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta; all waters from Chipps Island westward to Carquinez Bridge, including Honker Bay, Grizzly Bay, Suisun Bay, and Carquinez Strait; all waters of San Pablo Bay westward of the Carquinez Bridge; and all waters of San Francisco Bay (north of the San Francisco/Oakland Bay Bridge) from San Pablo Bay to the Golden Gate Bridge (June 16, 1993, 58 FR 33212). This critical habitat designation includes the river water, river bottom (including those areas and associated gravel used by winter-run chinook salmon as a spawning substrate), and the adjacent riparian zone used by fry and juveniles for rearing. In areas westward from Chipps Island, including San Francisco Bay to the Golden Gate Bridge, it includes the estuarine water column, essential foraging habitat, and food resources used by the winter-run chinook salmon as part of their juvenile out-migration or adult spawning migration.

**Central Valley spring-run chinook salmon** (*O. tshawytscha*) are listed as threatened under the ESA (September 16, 1999, 64 FR 50394). This ESU consists of spring-run chinook salmon occurring in the Sacramento River Basin. Designated critical habitat for Central Valley spring-run chinook salmon includes all river reaches accessible to listed chinook salmon in the Sacramento River and its tributaries in California, except for reaches on Indian lands. Also included are river reaches and estuarine areas of the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta, all waters from Chipps Island westward to Carquinez Bridge, including Honker Bay, Grizzly Bay, Suisun Bay, and Carquinez Strait, all waters of San Pablo Bay westward of the Carquinez Bridge, and all waters of San Francisco Bay (north of the San Francisco/Oakland Bay Bridge) from San Pablo Bay to the Golden Gate Bridge (February 16, 2000, 65 FR 7764). This above critical habitat designation include all waterways, substrate, and adjacent riparian zones. Excluded are: (1) areas above specific dams identified in the Federal Register notice; (2) areas above longstanding, natural impassable barriers (i.e., natural waterfalls in existence for at least several hundred years); and (3) Indian tribal lands.

**Central Valley steelhead** (*O. mykiss*) are listed as threatened under the ESA (March 19, 1998, 63 FR 13347). This ESU consists of steelhead populations in the Sacramento and San Joaquin River Basins in California's Central Valley. Designated critical habitat for Central Valley steelhead includes all river reaches accessible to listed steelhead in the Sacramento and San Joaquin rivers and their tributaries in California, except for reaches on Indian lands. Also included are river reaches and estuarine areas of the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta, all waters from Chipps Island westward to Carquinez Bridge, including Honker Bay, Grizzly Bay, Suisun Bay, and Carquinez

---

<sup>1</sup>For purposes of conservation under the Endangered Species Act, an Evolutionarily Significant Unit (ESU) is a distinct population segment that is substantially reproductively isolated from other conspecific population units and represents an important component in the evolutionary legacy of the species (Waples 1991).

Strait, all waters of San Pablo Bay westward of the Carquinez Bridge, and all waters of San Francisco Bay (north of the San Francisco/Oakland Bay Bridge) from San Pablo Bay to the Golden Gate Bridge. Excluded are: (1) areas above specific dams identified in the Federal Register notice; (2) areas above longstanding, natural impassable barriers (i.e., natural waterfalls in existence for at least several hundred years); (3) Indian tribal lands; and (4) areas of the San Joaquin River upstream of the Merced River confluence (February 16, 2000, 65 FR 7764).

**Central California Coast steelhead** (*O. mykiss*) were listed as threatened by NMFS on August 18, 1997 (62 FR 43937). This ESU includes all naturally-produced steelhead (and their progeny) in coastal California streams from the Russian River to Aptos Creek, and the drainages of Suisun, San Pablo, and San Francisco Bays. Critical habitat was designated for the Central California Coast steelhead ESU on February 16, 2000 (65 FR 7764), and includes all river reaches and estuarine areas accessible to listed steelhead in coastal river basins from the Russian River to Aptos Creek, California (inclusive), and the drainages of San Francisco, San Pablo, and Suisun Bays. Also included are all waters from Chippis Island westward to Carquinez Bridge, including Honker Bay, Grizzly Bay, Suisun Bay, and Carquinez Strait, all waters of San Pablo Bay westward of the Carquinez Bridge, and all waters of San Francisco Bay to the Golden Gate Bridge. Excluded are areas above specific dams or above longstanding naturally impassable barriers

Following are descriptions of the general life histories and population trends of listed species that may be directly or indirectly affected by the proposed action.

#### A. Chinook Salmon

##### 1. General Life History

Chinook salmon historically ranged from the Ventura River in southern California north to Point Hope, Alaska, and in northeastern Asia from Hokkaido, Japan to the Anadyr River in Russia (Healey 1991).

Of the Pacific salmon, chinook salmon exhibit arguably the most diverse and complex life history strategies. Healey (1986) described 16 age categories for chinook salmon, 7 total ages with 3 possible freshwater ages. Two generalized freshwater life-history types were described by Healey (1991): "stream-type" chinook salmon reside in freshwater for a year or more following emergence, whereas "ocean-type" chinook salmon migrate to the ocean within their first year.

Chinook salmon mature between 2 and 6+ years of age (Myers *et al.* 1998). Freshwater entry and spawning timing are generally thought to be related to local water temperature and flow regimes (Miller and Brannon 1982). Runs are designated on the basis of adult migration timing; however, distinct runs also differ in the degree of maturation at the time of river entry, thermal regime and flow characteristics of their spawning site, and actual time of spawning (Myers *et al.* 1998). Spring-run chinook salmon tend to enter freshwater as immature fish, migrate far upriver, and finally spawn in the late summer and early autumn. Fall-run chinook salmon enter freshwater at an

advanced stage of maturity, move rapidly to their spawning areas on the mainstem or lower tributaries of the rivers, and spawn within a few days or weeks of freshwater entry (Healey 1991).

Central Valley spring-run chinook salmon adults are estimated to leave the ocean and enter the Sacramento River from March to July (Myers *et al.* 1998). Spring-run chinook spawning typically occurs between late-August and early October with a peak in September. Spawning typically occurs in gravel beds that are located at the tails of holding pools (USFWS 1995). Eggs are deposited within the gravel where incubation, hatching, and subsequent emergence takes place. The upper preferred water temperature for spawning adult chinook salmon is 55° F (Chambers 1956) to 57° F (Reiser and Bjornn 1979). Length of time required for eggs to develop and hatch is dependant on water temperature and is quite variable. In Butte and Big Chico creeks, emergence of spring-run chinook typically occurs from November through January. In Mill and Deer creeks, colder water temperature delay emergence to January through March (CDFG 1998).

Post-emergent fry seek out shallow, nearshore areas with slow current and good cover, and begin feeding on small terrestrial and aquatic insects and aquatic crustaceans. In Deer and Mill creeks, juvenile spring-run chinook usually spend 9-10 months in their natal streams, although some may spend as long as 18 months in freshwater. Most "yearling" spring-run chinook move downstream in the first high flows of the winter from November through January (USFWS 1995; CDFG 1998). In Butte and Big Chico creeks, spring-run chinook juveniles typically exit their natal tributaries soon after emergence during December and January, while some remain throughout the summer and exit the following fall as yearlings. In the Sacramento River and other tributaries, juveniles may begin migrating downstream almost immediately following emergence from the gravel with emigration occurring from December through March (Moyle, *et al.* 1989; Vogel and Marine 1991). Fry and parr may spend time rearing within riverine and/or estuarine habitats including natal tributaries, the Sacramento River, non-natal tributaries to the Sacramento River, and the Delta.

Chinook salmon spend between one and four years in the ocean before returning to their natal streams to spawn (Myers *et al.* 1998). Fisher (1994) reported that 87 percent of returning spring-run adults are three-years-old based on observations of adult chinook trapped and examined at Red Bluff Diversion Dam between 1985 and 1991.

Adult Sacramento River winter-run chinook salmon leave the ocean and migrate through the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta to the upper Sacramento River from December through June. Spawning generally occurs between mid-April and July, and occasionally into early August. The majority of winter-run chinook salmon spawning occurs upstream of Red Bluff Diversion Dam in the vicinity of Redding, California. The eggs are fertilized and buried in the river gravel where they incubate and hatch in approximately a two-month period.

Emergence of the fry from the gravel begins during early July and continues through September. Fall and winter emigration behavior by juveniles varies with streamflow and hydrologic conditions. Most juveniles redistribute themselves to rear in the Sacramento River through the fall and winter months. Some winter-run chinook salmon juveniles move downstream to rear in the

lower Sacramento River and Delta during the late fall and winter. Smolting and ocean entry typically occurs between January and April.

## 2. Population Trends - Sacramento River Winter-run Chinook Salmon

Historically, the winter run chinook salmon was abundant in the McCloud, Pit, and Little Sacramento rivers. Construction of Shasta Dam in the 1940s eliminated access to all of the historic spawning habitat for winter-run chinook salmon in the Sacramento River Basin. Since then, the ESU has been reduced to a single spawning population confined to the mainstem Sacramento River below Keswick Dam; although some adult winter-run chinook have been observed in Battle Creek, tributary to the upper Sacramento River, in recent years. The fact that this ESU is generally comprised of a single population with very limited spawning and rearing habitat increases its risk of extinction due to local catastrophe or poor environmental conditions. There are no other natural populations in the ESU to buffer it from natural fluctuations.

Quantitative estimates of run-size are not available for the period prior to the completion of Red Bluff Diversion Dam in 1966. CDFG estimated spawning escapement of Sacramento River winter-run chinook salmon at 61,300 (60,000 mainstem, 1,000 in Battle Creek, and 300 in Mill Creek) in the early 1960s, but this estimate was based on "comparisons with better-studied streams" rather than actual surveys. During the first 3 years of operation of the counting facility at Red Bluff Diversion Dam (1967-1969), the spawning run of winter-run chinook salmon averaged 86,500 fish. From 1967 through the mid-1990's, the population declined at an average rate of 18 percent per year, or roughly 50 percent per generation. The population reached critically low levels during the drought of 1987-1992; the 3-year average run size for period of 1989 to 1991 was 388 fish. However, the trend in the past 5 years indicates the population may be recovering. The most recent 3-year (1997-1999) average run-size was 2,220 fish.

Additional historical and recent published chinook salmon abundance information are summarized in Myers *et al.* (1998).

## 3. Population Trends - Central Valley Spring-run Chinook Salmon

Historically, spring-run chinook salmon were predominant throughout the Central Valley, occupying the upper and middle reaches of the San Joaquin, American, Yuba, Feather, Sacramento, McCloud, and Pit rivers, with smaller populations in most other tributaries with sufficient habitat for over-summering adults (Stone 1874; Rutter 1904; Clark 1929). The Central Valley drainage as a whole is estimated to have supported spring-run chinook salmon runs as large as 600,000 fish between the late 1880s and 1940s (CDFG 1998). Before the construction of Friant Dam, nearly 50,000 adults were counted in the San Joaquin River (Fry 1961). Following the completion of Friant Dam, the native population from the San Joaquin River and its tributaries was extirpated. Spring-run chinook salmon no longer exist in the American River due to the existence and operation of Folsom Dam.

Natural spawning populations of Central Valley spring-run chinook salmon are currently restricted to accessible reaches in the upper Sacramento River, Antelope Creek, Battle Creek, Beegum Creek, Big Chico Creek, Butte Creek, Clear Creek, Deer Creek, Feather River, Mill Creek, and Yuba River (CDFG 1998; USFWS, unpublished data). With the exception of Butte Creek and the Feather River, these populations are relatively small ranging from a few fish to several hundred. Butte Creek returns in 1998 and 1999 numbered approximately 20,000 and 3,600, respectively (CDFG unpublished data). On the Feather River, significant numbers of spring-run chinook, as identified by run timing, return to the Feather River Hatchery. However, coded-wire-tag information from these hatchery returns indicates substantial introgression has occurred between fall-run and spring-run chinook populations in the Feather River due to hatchery practices.

Additional historical and recent published chinook salmon abundance information are summarized in Myers *et al.* (1998).

## C. Steelhead

### 1. General Life History

Steelhead exhibit perhaps the most complex suite of life history traits of any species of Pacific salmonid. They can be anadromous or freshwater resident. Resident forms are usually called rainbow trout. Winter steelhead generally leave the ocean from August through April, and spawning occurs between December and May (Busby *et al.* 1996). The timing of upstream migration is generally correlated with higher flow events and associated lower water temperatures. Unlike Pacific salmon, steelhead are iteroparous, or capable of spawning more than once before death (Busby *et al.* 1996). However, it is rare for steelhead to spawn more than twice before dying; most that do so are females (Busby *et al.* 1996; Nickelson *et al.* 1992). Iteroparity is more common among southern steelhead populations than northern populations (Busby *et al.* 1996).

Steelhead spawn in cool, clear streams featuring suitable gravel size, depth, and current velocity. Intermittent streams may be used for spawning (Barnhart 1986; Everest 1973). The length of the incubation period for steelhead eggs is dependant on water temperature, dissolved oxygen concentration, and substrate composition. In late spring and following yolk sac absorption, alevins emerge from the gravel as fry and begin actively feeding in shallow water along perennial stream banks (Nickelson *et al.* 1992).

Summer rearing takes place primarily in higher velocity areas in pools, although young-of-the-year are also abundant in glides and riffles. Winter rearing occurs more uniformly at lower densities across a wide range of fast and slow habitat types. Productive steelhead habitat is characterized by complexity, primarily in the form of large and small wood. Some older juveniles move downstream to rear in larger tributaries and mainstem rivers (Nickelson *et al.* 1992). Juveniles feed on a wide variety of aquatic and terrestrial insects (Chapman and Bjornn 1969), and emerging fry are sometimes preyed upon by older juveniles. Juveniles live in freshwater from one to four years (usually two years in the California) (Barnhart 1986), then smolt and migrate to the sea from

February through April. Although some steelhead smolts may outmigrate during the fall and early winter months.

California steelhead typically reside in marine waters for one to two years prior to returning to their natal stream to spawn as three- or four-year olds (Busby *et al.* 1996).

## 2. Population Trends - Central Valley steelhead

Central Valley steelhead once ranged throughout most of the tributaries and headwaters of the Sacramento and San Joaquin basins prior to dam construction, water development, and watershed perturbations of the 19<sup>th</sup> and 20<sup>th</sup> centuries (McEwan and Jackson 1996; CALFED 2000). In the early 1960s, the California Fish and Wildlife Plan estimated a total run size of about 40,000 adults for the entire Central Valley including San Francisco Bay (CDFG 1965). The annual run size for this ESU in 1991-92 was probably less than 10,000 fish based on dam counts, hatchery returns and past spawning surveys (McEwan and Jackson 1996).

At present, all Central Valley steelhead are considered winter-run steelhead (McEwan and Jackson 1996), although there are indications that summer steelhead were present in the Sacramento River system prior to the commencement of large-scale dam construction in the 1940's (IEP Steelhead Project Work Team 1999). McEwan and Jackson (1996) reported wild steelhead stocks appear to be mostly confined to upper Sacramento River tributaries such as Antelope, Deer, and Mill creeks and the Yuba River. However, naturally spawning populations are also known to occur in Butte Creek, and the upper Sacramento mainstem, Feather, American, Mokelumne, and Stanislaus rivers (CALFED 2000). It is possible that other naturally spawning populations exist in Central Valley streams, but are undetected due to lack of monitoring and research programs. The recent implementation of new fisheries monitoring efforts has found steelhead in streams previously thought not to contain a population, such as Auburn Ravine, Dry Creek, and the Stanislaus River (IEP Steelhead Project Work Team 1999).

## 3. Population Trends - Central California Coast steelhead

Only two estimates of historic (pre-1960s) abundance specific to this ESU are available: an average of about 500 adults in Waddell Creek in the 1930s and early 1940s (Shapovalov and Taft 1954), and 20,000 steelhead in the San Lorenzo River before 1965 (Johnson 1964). In the mid-1960s, 94,000 adult steelhead were estimated to spawn in the rivers of this ESU, including 50,000 fish in the Russian River and 19,000 fish in the San Lorenzo River (CDFG 1965). Recent estimates indicate an abundance of about 7,000 fish in the Russian River (including naturally-produced steelhead) and about 500 fish in the San Lorenzo River. These estimates suggest that recent total abundance of steelhead in these two rivers is less than 15 percent of their abundance in the mid 1960s. Recent estimates for several other streams (Lagunitas Creek, Waddell Creek, Scott Creek, San Vicente Creek, Soquel Creek, and Aptos Creek) indicate individual run sizes of 500 fish or less. Steelhead in most tributaries to San Francisco and San Pablo bays have been virtually extirpated (McEwan and Jackson 1996). Fair to good runs of

steelhead still apparently occur in coastal Marin County tributaries. In a 1994 to 1997 survey of 30 San Francisco Bay watersheds, steelhead occurred in small numbers at 41 percent of the sites, including the Guadalupe River, San Lorenzo Creek, Corte Madera Creek, and Walnut Creek (Leidy 1997). Presence/absence data available since the proposed listing show that in a subset of streams sampled in the central California coast region, most contain steelhead (Adams et al. 1999). While there are several concerns with these data (e.g., uncertainty regarding origin of juveniles), NMFS believes it is generally a positive indicator that there is a relatively broad distribution of steelhead in smaller streams throughout the region.

Little information is available regarding the contribution of hatchery-produced fish to natural spawning of steelhead, and little information on present run sizes or trends for this ESU exists. However, given the substantial rates of declines for stocks where data do exist, the majority of natural production in this ESU is likely not self-sustaining (62 FR 43937).

Generally, life history characteristics and habitat requirements for Central California Coast steelhead are similar to those described for Central Valley steelhead. However, Central California Coast steelhead typically migrate shorter distances and spawn in smaller, rainfall-fed streams compared to the larger, snowmelt-fed spawning streams and rivers occupied by Central Valley steelhead. Adult Central California Coast steelhead spawn in tributaries to San Francisco, San Pablo, and Suisun Bays. Outmigrants may utilize tidal marsh areas, non-tidal freshwater marshes, and other shallow water areas in the bays as rearing areas for short periods prior to their emigration to the sea.

Additional historical and recent published steelhead abundance are summarized in NMFS west coast steelhead status review (Busby *et al.* 1996).

### **III. Environmental Baseline**

The environmental baseline is an analysis of the effects of past and ongoing human and natural factors leading to the current status of the species. The environmental baseline includes the past and present impacts of all federal, state, or private actions and other human activities in the action area (50 CFR §402.02). The action area includes a large portion of California's Central Valley. The following Central Valley streams below major water storage reservoirs are included in the action area: the Sacramento River downstream of Keswick Dam to the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta; Clear Creek downstream of Whiskeytown Dam to its confluence with the Sacramento River; the Feather River downstream of Oroville Dam to its confluence with the Sacramento River; the Yuba River downstream of Englebright Dam to its confluence with the Feather River; Stony Creek downstream of Black Butte Reservoir to its confluence with the Sacramento River; the Bear River downstream of Camp Far West Dam to its confluence with the Feather River; the American River downstream of Nimbus Dam to its confluence with the Sacramento River; the Mokelumne River downstream of Camanche Dam to the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta; the Calaveras River downstream of New Hogan Dam to the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta; the Stanislaus River downstream of New Melones Dam to its confluence with the San Joaquin River; the Tuolumne



River downstream of New Don Pedro Dam to its confluence with the San Joaquin River; the Merced River downstream of New Exchequer Dam to its confluence with the San Joaquin River, the San Joaquin River downstream of Friant Dam to the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta; and the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta. Additional watersheds within the action area include Mill Creek, Deer Creek, Paynes Creek, Battle Creek, Butte Creek, Big Chico Creek, Thomes Creek, Cottonwood Creek, and other watersheds from the valley floor to the boundaries of national forest lands. Central Valley Project (CVP) and State Water Project (SWP) service areas outside the Central Valley are also part of the action area.

Profound alterations to the riverine habitat of the Central Valley began with the discovery of gold in the middle of the last century. Dam construction, water diversion, and hydraulic mining soon followed, launching the Central Valley into the era of water manipulation and coincident habitat degradation. A number of documents have addressed the history of human activities, present environmental conditions, and factors contributing to the decline of salmon and steelhead species in the Central Valley. For example, NMFS has prepared range-wide status reviews for west coast chinook (Myers *et al.* 1998) and steelhead (Busby *et al.* 1996). Information is also available in Federal Register notices announcing ESA listing proposals and determinations for some of these species and their critical habitat (June 16, 1993, 58 FR 33212; January 4, 1994, 50 FR 440; March 19, 1998, 63 FR 13347; September 16, 1999, 64 FR 50394; February 16, 2000, 65 FR 7764). The final Programmatic Environmental Impact Statement/Report for the CALFED Bay-Delta Program (July 2000) (CALFED 2000) and the final PEIS for the CVPIA (October 1999) (DOI 1999a) provide an excellent summary of historical and recent environmental conditions for salmon and steelhead in the Central Valley. For the purposes of this document, a general description of the environmental baseline for Sacramento River winter-run chinook salmon, Central Valley spring-run chinook salmon, and Central Valley steelhead is based on a summarization of these documents.

In general, the human activities that have affected listed Central Valley anadromous salmonids and their habitats consist of: (1) dam construction that blocks previously accessible habitat; (2) water development activities that affect the water quantity, timing, and quality; (3) land use activities such as agriculture, flood control, urban development, mining, and logging that can degrade aquatic habitat; (4) hatchery operation and practices; (5) harvest activities; and (6) ecosystem restoration actions.

### 1. Habitat Blockage

Hydropower, flood control, and water supply dams of the CVP, SWP, and other municipal and private entities have permanently blocked or hindered salmonid access to historical spawning and rearing grounds. Clark (1929) estimated that originally there were 6,000 miles of salmon habitat in the Central Valley system and that 80 percent of this habitat had been lost by 1928. Yoshiyama *et al.* (1996) calculated that roughly 2,000 miles of salmon habitat was actually available before dam construction and mining, and concluded that 82 percent is not accessible today. Clark (1929) did not give details about his calculation. Whether Clark's or Yoshiyama's calculation is used, only remnants of their former range remain accessible today in the Central Valley (CDFG 1998).

In general, large dams on every major tributary to the Sacramento River, San Joaquin River, and Delta block salmon and steelhead access to the upper portions of the respective watersheds. On the Sacramento River Keswick Dam blocks passage to historic spawning and rearing habitat in the upper Sacramento, McCloud and Pit rivers. On the Feather River Oroville Dam and associated facilities block passage to the upper Feather River watershed. Nimbus Dam blocks access to most the American River Basin. On the San Joaquin River, water development projects in the 19<sup>th</sup> century eliminated fall-run chinook salmon that spawned in the mainstem of the river. Friant Dam construction in mid-1940's has been associated with the elimination of spring-run chinook salmon in the San Joaquin River upstream of the Merced River (DOI 1999a).

## 2. Water Development Activities

The diversion and storage of natural flows by dams and diversion structures on Central Valley waterways have depleted streamflows and altered the natural cycles by which juvenile and adult salmonids base their migrations. Depleted flows have contributed to higher temperatures, lower dissolved oxygen levels, and decreased recruitment of gravel and large woody debris. In addition, the altered flow regime below several Central Valley dams has impaired the regeneration of riparian vegetation. Historical seasonal flow patterns included high flood flows in the winter and spring with declining flows throughout the summer and early fall. As flows declined during the summer, the seeds from willows and cottonwood trees, deposited on the recently created sand bars, would germinate, sprout, and grow to maturity. The roots of these plants would follow the slowly receding water table, allowing the plants to become firmly established before the next rainy season. With the completion of upstream reservoir storage projects throughout the Central Valley, the seasonal distribution of flows differs substantially from historical patterns. The magnitude and duration of peak flows during the winter and spring are reduced by water impoundment in upstream reservoirs. Instream flows during the summer and early fall months have increased over historic levels for deliveries of municipal and agricultural water supplies. Overall, water management now reduces natural variability by creating more uniform flows year-round that diminish natural channel forming, riparian vegetation, and foodweb functions.

Water diversions for irrigated agriculture, municipal and industrial use, and managed wetlands are found throughout the Central Valley. Hundreds of small and medium size water diversions exist along the Sacramento River, San Joaquin River and their tributaries. Although efforts have been made in recent years to screen some of these diversions, many remain unscreened. Depending on the size, location, and season of operation, these unscreened intakes entrain many life stages of aquatic species, including juvenile salmonids. More than 2,000 unscreened diversions in the Delta entrain resident and anadromous fishes.

## 3. Land Use Activities

About 150 years ago, the Sacramento River was bordered by up to 500,000 acres of riparian forest, with bands of vegetation literally spreading four to five miles (Resources Agency 1989). By 1979, riparian habitat along the Sacramento River diminished to 11,000-12,000 acres or about 2 percent of historic levels (McGill 1979). More recently, about 16,000 acres of remaining

riparian vegetation has been reported (McGill 1987). The degradation and fragmentation of riparian habitat has resulted mainly from flood control and bank protection projects, together with the conversion of riparian land to agriculture (Jones and Stokes Associates 1993).

Increased sedimentation resulting from agricultural and urban practices within the Central Valley is a primary cause of salmonid habitat degradation. Sedimentation can adversely effect salmonids during all freshwater life stages by clogging, or abrading gill surfaces; adhering to eggs; inducing behavioral modifications; burying eggs or alevins; scouring and filling pools and riffles; reducing primary productivity and photosynthetic activity; and affecting intergravel permeability and dissolved oxygen levels. Embedded substrates can reduce the production of juvenile salmonids and hinder the ability of some over-wintering juveniles to hide in the gravels during high flow events.

Land use activities associated with road construction, urban development, logging, mining, agriculture, and recreation have significantly altered fish habitat quantity and quality through alteration of streambank and channel morphology; alteration of ambient stream water temperatures; degradation of water quality; elimination of spawning and rearing habitat; fragmentation of available habitats; elimination of downstream recruitment of gravel and large woody debris; and removal of riparian vegetation resulting in increased streambank erosion. Agricultural practices have eliminated large trees and logs and other woody debris that would have been otherwise recruited to the stream channel. Large woody debris influences stream morphology by affecting pool formation, channel pattern and position, and channel geometry.

Historically in the Sacramento/San Joaquin Delta, tidal marshes provided a highly productive estuarine environment for juvenile anadromous salmonids. During the course of their downstream migration, juvenile winter-run chinook, spring-run chinook, and steelhead utilize the Delta's estuarine habitat for seasonal rearing, and as a migration corridor to the sea. Since the 1850s, reclamation of Delta islands for agricultural purposes caused the cumulative loss of 94 percent of the Delta's tidal marshes (Monroe *et al.* 1992).

In addition to the degradation and loss of estuarine habitat, downstream migrant juvenile salmon in the Delta have been subject to adverse conditions created by water export operations of the CVP and SWP. Specifically, juvenile salmon have been adversely affected by: (1) water diversion from the mainstem Sacramento River into the Central Delta via the manmade Delta Cross Channel; (2) upstream or reverse flows of water in the lower San Joaquin River and southern Delta waterways; and (3) entrainment at the CVP/SWP export facilities and associated problems at Clifton Court Forebay. Juvenile salmonids are exposed to increased water temperatures in the Delta during the late spring and summer due to the loss of riparian shading, and by thermal inputs from municipal, industrial, and agricultural discharges.

#### 4. Hatchery Operation and Practices

Five hatcheries currently produce chinook salmon in the Central Valley and four of these also produce steelhead. Releasing large numbers of hatchery fish can pose a threat to wild chinook and

steelhead stocks through genetic impacts, competition for food and other resources between hatchery and wild fish, predation of hatchery fish on wild fish, and increased fishing pressure on wild stocks as a result of hatchery production (Waples 1991). The genetic impacts of artificial propagation programs in the Central Valley are primarily caused by the straying of hatchery fish and the subsequent hybridization of hatchery and wild fish. In the Central Valley, practices such as trucking smolts to distant sites for release and the transferring of eggs between hatcheries contribute to elevated straying levels (DOI 1999a).

## 5. Harvest

Extensive ocean recreational and commercial troll fisheries for chinook salmon exist along the Central California coast, and an inland recreational fishery exists in the Central Valley for chinook salmon and steelhead. Ocean harvest of Central Valley chinook is estimated using an abundance index, called the Central Valley Index (CVI). The CVI harvest rate is the ratio of salmon harvested south of Point Arena (where 85 percent of Central Valley chinook are caught) to the CVI escapement.

Since 1970, the CVI ocean harvest index for winter-run chinook salmon has generally ranged between 0.50 and 0.80. In 1990 when additional harvest restrictions to protect winter-run chinook were first imposed by NMFS and Pacific Fisheries Management Council (PFMC), the CVI harvest rate was near the highest level at 0.79. Through the early 1990's, the ocean harvest index was below this level: 0.71 in 1991, 0.71 in 1992, 0.72 in 1993, 0.74 in 1994, 0.78 in 1995 and 0.64 in 1996. In 1996 and 1997, NMFS issued biological opinions which concluded that incidental ocean harvest of winter-run chinook represented a significant source of mortality to the endangered population, even though ocean harvest was not a key factor leading to the decline of the population (National Marine Fisheries Service 1996, 1997). As a result of these opinions, measures were developed and implemented by the PFMC, NMFS, and CDFG to reduce ocean harvest impacts by approximately 50 percent.

There are limited data on spring-run chinook ocean harvest rates. An analysis using CWT spring-run from the Feather River Hatchery estimate harvest rates were 18 percent to 22 percent for age-3 fish, 57 percent to 85 percent for age-4 fish, and 97 percent to 100 percent for age-5 fish (CDFG 1998).

Historically, in California, almost half of the river sportfishing effort was in the Sacramento-San Joaquin River system, particularly upstream from the city of Sacramento (Emmett *et al.* 1991). Since 1987, the Fish and Game Commission has adopted increasingly stringent regulations to reduce and virtually eliminate the in-river sport fishery for winter-run chinook. Present regulations include a year-round closure to salmon fishing between Keswick Dam and the Deschutes Road Bridge and a rolling closure to salmon fishing on the Sacramento River between the Deschutes Road Bridge and the Carquinez Bridge. The rolling closure spans the majority of months adult winter-run chinook salmon are ascending the Sacramento River to their spawning grounds. These closures have virtually eliminated impacts on winter-run chinook by recreational angling in freshwater.

To address potential incidental take of chinook salmon that occurs in the recreational trout fishery, the California Fish and Game Commission adopted in 1992 gear restrictions (all hooks must be barbless and a maximum 2.25 inches in length) to minimize hooking injury and mortality caused by trout anglers incidentally catching winter-run chinook. That same year, the Commission also adopted regulations which prohibited any salmon from being removed from the water to further reduce the potential for injury and mortality to winter-run chinook from the trout and steelhead fishery.

Specific regulations for the protection of spring-run chinook salmon in Mill, Deer, Big Chico, and Butte creeks were added to the existing CDFG regulations in 1994. Existing regulations, including those developed for winter-run chinook provide some level of protection for Central Valley spring-run chinook (CDFG 1998).

There is little information on steelhead harvest rates in California. Hallock *et al.* (1961) estimated that harvest rates for Sacramento River steelhead from the 1953-54 through 1958-59 seasons ranges from 25.1 percent to 45.6 percent assuming a 20 percent non return rate of tags. Staley (1976) estimated the harvest rate in the American River during the 1971-72 and 1973-74 seasons to be 27 percent. The average annual harvest rate on adult steelhead above Red Bluff Diversion Dam for the three year period 1991-92 through 1993-94 is 16 percent (McEwan and Jackson 1996).

## 6. Ecosystem Restoration

Preliminary, significant steps towards the largest ecological restoration project yet undertaken in the United States have occurred during the past four years and continue to proceed in California's Central Valley. The CALFED Bay-Delta Program, in coordination with other Central Valley efforts including those implemented through the CVPIA, has implemented numerous habitat restoration actions that benefit Sacramento River winter-run chinook salmon, Central Valley spring-run chinook salmon, Central Valley steelhead, and their critical habitat. These restoration actions include the installation of fish screens, modification of barriers to improve fish passage, and habitat acquisition and restoration. The majority of these recent restoration actions address key factors for decline of these ESUs and emphasis has been placed in tributary drainages with high potential for winter-run chinook salmon, spring-run chinook salmon, and steelhead production. Additional actions that are currently underway that benefit Sacramento River winter-run chinook salmon, Central Valley spring-run chinook salmon, and Central Valley steelhead include new efforts to enhance fisheries monitoring and conservation actions to address artificial propagation. In the Delta, approximately 1,500 acres of land have been purchased for restoration activities since 1996. Restoration of these Delta areas primarily involves flooding lands previously used for agriculture, thereby creating additional wetland areas and rearing habitat for juvenile salmonids.

A beneficial action unrelated to the CALFED Program includes the Environmental Protection Agency's remedial actions at Iron Mountain Mine. The completion of a state-of-the-art lime neutralization plant is successfully removing significant concentrations of toxic metals in acidic

mine drainage from the Spring Creek Watershed. Containment loading into the upper Sacramento River from Iron Mountain Mine has shown measurable reductions since the early 1990's.

#### **IV. Effects of the Action**

The following section discusses the direct and indirect effects on Sacramento River winter-run chinook salmon, Central Valley spring-run chinook salmon, Central Valley steelhead, Central California Coast steelhead, and/or their designated critical habitat that are expected to result from the proposed action. Cumulative effects (effects of future State, local, or private actions on endangered and threatened species or critical habitat) are discussed separately at the end of this section.

##### *A. General Effects*

The CALFED Program is intended to increase water availability for agricultural and urban users while providing for recovery of anadromous salmonids and other species. Species recovery is to be accomplished largely through improvements to habitat, including increased water availability at key times to benefit particular species. The CALFED Program will affect species in the Sacramento River Basin, San Joaquin River Basin, Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta, and Suisun Marsh and Bay for a period of 30 years or more. Both beneficial and adverse impacts to Sacramento River winter-run chinook salmon, Central Valley spring-run chinook salmon, Central Valley steelhead, and Central California Coast steelhead are expected from the various component programs and strategies (see below). The huge scale and extended time frame of the CALFED Program implies that the overall effect of the CALFED Program will be determined not only by the implementation of specific actions, but by the order and location in which the actions are implemented and the successful use of adaptive management to modify actions to target a desired outcome.

##### *B. Specific Effects*

###### *Levee System Integrity Program (LSIP)*

The LSIP would reduce the risk to the ecosystem of catastrophic breaching of Delta levees by maintaining and improving the integrity of the levee system. Reduced likelihood of catastrophic breaching of Delta levees would reduce the likelihood of rapid hydrodynamic and salinity changes caused by sudden changes in Delta outflow and channel flow conditions. Although infrequently, species would benefit from the reduced frequency of sudden salinity shifts that could adversely affect habitat or delay transport to areas providing for specific species needs, such as spawning and rearing habitat. The change in flow and water quality conditions attributable to catastrophic breaching of levees also could increase entrainment in Delta diversions, depending on the change in the distribution of a species and the timing of breaches relative to the vulnerability of specific

life stages. Reduced risk of catastrophic breaching would reduce the risk of unexpected increased entrainment events.

Levee construction and maintenance actions will occur primarily under two of the five parts of the LSIP (i.e., the Delta Levee Base Level Protection Plan and Delta Levee Special Improvement Projects), plus the added plan for Suisun Marsh levees. These actions have the potential to adversely impact anadromous salmonids due to (1) noise, vibration, siltation, input of contaminants, or other impacts to aquatic habitat related to construction activities such as dredging, addition of material to achieve required cross section, installation of rip rap, or road repair; and (2) degradation or loss of shaded riverine aquatic habitat or shallow water habitat due to removal of vegetation or debris and installation, repair, or replacement of rip rap for bank protection. Disturbance and increased turbidity from in-channel construction may impair chinook salmon or steelhead feeding or cause avoidance of habitat in the immediate vicinity of the project site (Berg 1982; Feist et al. 1992; Knudsen et al. 1992). If inadequate cover remains, small fish may be more vulnerable to predation (Savino and Stein 1982). Many construction impacts and some of the other impacts to fish habitat can be avoided or minimized by using accepted construction time windows, best management practices, and habitat revegetation and restoration techniques. Plans for Delta Levee Special Improvement Projects must include explicit provisions for the protection of fish and wildlife habitat.

The inherent nature of levees used for flood control typically leads to poor-quality fish habitat that is channelized, relatively uniform with deep, fast-moving water, limited in productivity, and lacking vegetation, instream woody material, or other cover for fish (Michny and Hampton 1984; DeHaven 1999). Large, rip-rapped areas lacking riparian vegetation with shaded riverine aquatic habitat may limit the viability of the Sacramento River to support anadromous fish (Jones and Stokes 1993). Studies have shown high preference of juvenile salmonids for natural shoreline areas, indicating that continued suppression of shaded riverine aquatic habitat could hinder the successful rearing of juvenile salmonids (USFWS 1993). Continued maintenance of existing Delta levees will perpetuate poor-quality fish habitat. Therefore, major changes to levee design (i.e., in particular, using setback levees) will be required to truly improve habitat and minimize impacts to fish in leveed areas.

The ERP Plan and CALFED Stage 1 milestones call for the installation of setback levees and other measures to improve fish habitat in leveed river reaches and Delta channels and sloughs. Coordination of the LSIP with the ERP will allow for concurrent planning and implementation of significant habitat restoration along with levee improvements (see *Summary of Key Planned Actions and Ecosystem Restoration Program*).

The Delta Levee Emergency Management and Response Plan and Delta Levee Risk Assessment and Risk Management Strategy components of the LSIP primarily will focus on planning and funding issues related to emergency levee repairs and risks that may lead to levee failure, respectively. From NMFS' perspective, emergency levee repairs in the Delta are problematic in that they usually are required when flows are high in the winter. Juvenile anadromous salmonids are abundant in the Delta during this period, which is outside the construction time window usually

allowed by NMFS for in-channel work in the Delta. The Delta Levee Emergency Management and Response Plan will include environmental considerations in the planning process as a Stage 1 action. The risk assessment required as a Stage 1 action under the Delta Levee Risk Assessment and Risk Management Strategy may identify the levees that are most vulnerable to failure. If these levees are targeted for maintenance work during accepted construction time windows before they fail, the number of emergency levee repairs required in the Delta may decline during Phase III.

The Subsidence Control Plan is likely to only minimally affect anadromous salmonid fishes because it focuses on land use practices on the land side of Delta levees.

### *Water Quality Program (WQP)*

The WQP is intended to improve water quality primarily through the control of contaminant sources, increased enforcement of existing regulatory programs, and provision of incentives for action that goes beyond current regulatory programs. Potential actions would address contaminants from mine drainage, urban and industrial runoff, wastewater and industrial discharge, agricultural drainage and runoff, and unknown origins (e.g., toxicity events affecting aquatic organisms that cannot be attributed to specific causes).

Reducing the quantity of contaminants (e.g., metals and toxic elements, organics and pesticides, etc.) that enter the Bay-Delta and tributaries would be expected to benefit especially resident fishes, but also anadromous salmonids. Receiving contaminants from river inflow and bi-directional tidal flow from the Bay, the Delta would benefit from WQP elements implemented upstream in the Sacramento River and San Joaquin River Regions and downstream in the Bay Region. Reduced contaminants could substantially increase system productivity which should lead to increased survival, growth, and reproduction. Fish should benefit from reduced metabolic stress and increased survival. Vulnerable salmonid life stages such as eggs and larvae especially may benefit from reductions in localized inputs of pollutants or suspended sediments. The WQP will aggressively address at least three water quality issues that are of particular importance to anadromous salmonids: (1) mercury levels in Cache Creek, (2) mercury levels in the Delta, and (3) dissolved oxygen (DO) levels in the San Joaquin River near Stockton.

Cache Creek is designated critical habitat for Central Valley steelhead, although both fish passage and elevated mercury levels present significant problems in this drainage. The WQP includes actions focused on mercury evaluation and abatement in Cache Creek. Stage 1 actions include remediation (i.e., drainage control) of mercury mines as appropriate and development and implementation of a TMDL for mercury.

Mercury is common in sediment in the Bay-Delta system (USACE et al. 1998). Methylation of mercury, which increases its potential for bioaccumulation, tends to occur when inorganic mercury is exposed to air. This is likely to happen when dredged sediment is used for levee maintenance and repair, and in habitat restoration projects such as creation of wetlands or shallow water habitat that may be used by salmonids. The WQP includes management and research elements that will focus on the methylation process in the Delta, mapping sediment mercury concentration in areas



that would be dredged during levee maintenance work, and determining the potential impact of ecosystem restoration work on methyl mercury levels in lower and higher trophic level organisms. This work will be coordinated with both the ERP and the CMARP component of the SP.

The WQP will address low DO levels that occur in the Bay-Delta system, especially in the San Joaquin River near Stockton during the late summer and fall. This action is of particular pertinence to salmonid fishes, because the low DO may act as a water quality barrier to adult fall-run chinook salmon that migrate upstream to spawn in the Merced, Tuolumne, and Stanislaus Rivers between September and December. Fall-run chinook salmon is a candidate for listing under the ESA by NMFS, and is a major species targeted for recovery by CALFED. Under the WQP, CALFED will include completing studies of causes for DO depletion in San Joaquin River near Stockton, supporting finalization of Basin Plan Amendment and TMDL for constituents that cause low DO, and developing inter-substrate DO testing in conjunction with ERP.

Some actions proposed under the WQP to achieve program goals involve manipulating flow and water temperature (i.e., to influence DO), in-channel construction (e.g., installation of operable barriers in the south Delta and a screened diversion structure on the Sacramento River in the north Delta), and general flexibility in storage and operations as well as conveyance improvements to address drinking water quality problems. These actions may impact anadromous salmonids and are discussed in the *Levee System Integrity Program* and *Water Management Strategy* effects analyses.

#### *Ecosystem Restoration Program (ERP)*

The ERP is intended to achieve or contribute to the recovery of anadromous salmonids and several other species found in the Bay-Delta through the implementation of proactive restoration actions. The ERP Plan identifies over 600 programmatic actions addressing several ecosystem elements and that will be implemented throughout the Sacramento-San Joaquin River basin and Bay-Delta. These actions will be implemented in all ecological management zones. Several streams and rivers that are designated critical habitat for Sacramento River winter-run chinook salmon, Central Valley spring-run chinook salmon, and Central Valley steelhead, and are important habitat for Central Valley fall/late fall-run chinook salmon (e.g., Battle Creek, Clear Creek, Deer Creek, Cosumnes River, San Joaquin River, and Tuolumne River) specifically are targeted for large-scale restoration. ERP actions are expected to substantially improve conditions for chinook salmon and steelhead, and contribute to species recovery. Major categories of these actions and their effects on anadromous salmonids include the following:

*Protection, restoration, and management of diverse habitat types.* Restore tidal action to Delta sloughs; restore tidal and non-tidal wetlands; improve levee and berm management practices to protect and enhance riparian and shaded riverine aquatic habitat; protect and restore riparian vegetation; restore stream side-channel habitat where appropriate; terminate or modify programs that remove instream woody material from stream channels; improve land management and grazing practices in stream riparian zones; purchase streambank conservation easements from willing

sellers; and modify in-channel structures or features to eliminate predator habitat. These actions would improve habitat for salmonids by increasing shaded riverine aquatic habitat and Instream woody material, providing varied water depth and velocity, increasing ecosystem productivity and salmonid food supply, and reducing predatory and competitive interactions. This could lead to increased fish growth, fecundity, and survival (Miller and Simenstad 1997; DeHaven 1999).

*Provide instream flows and habitat conditions in Bay-Delta tributaries sufficient for fish protection and recovery.* Manage reservoirs (e.g., through establishing minimum cold-water pool size, installing temperature control devices, negotiating and implementing adequate flow release schedules, and using real-time management) and watersheds (e.g., through pumping groundwater, enhancing riparian vegetation, reducing drainage inputs of warm agricultural and urban runoff, developing and implementing watershed management plans, eliminating unpermitted diversions, and acquiring water from willing sellers) to ensure adequate streamflows and water temperatures. These actions would reduce mortality of chinook salmon and steelhead eggs and larvae, which are particularly vulnerable to elevated water temperatures and stranding; increase growth rates of rearing juvenile fish, improve juvenile and adult migration success, and decrease predatory and competitive interactions by increasing available habitat.

*Improve Delta outflow during key periods.* Prescribe the source, timing, and magnitude Delta outflow for key periods, and use real-time management. These actions would improve survival by promoting successful migration of juvenile and adult salmonids through the Delta, and reducing juvenile entrainment at the SWP/CVP export facilities.

*Reconnect Bay-Delta tributaries with their floodplains.* Maintain or restore stream meander configurations, install setback levees, develop and implement floodplain management plans, acquire flood easements, purchase floodplain lands from willing sellers, convert leveed lands to tidal wetland/slough complexes, remove levees that hinder tidal and floodflows, and conserve remaining natural floodplain topography. These actions would improve habitat for salmonids by increasing shaded riverine aquatic habitat and Instream woody material, providing varied water depth and velocity, increasing ecosystem productivity and salmonid food supply, and reducing predatory and competitive interactions. This could lead to increased fish growth, fecundity, and survival (DeHaven 1999).

*Assess and limit the negative effects of hatchery propagation on natural anadromous salmonid populations.* Limit hatchery stocking if populations of chinook salmon or steelhead can be sustained by natural production; adopt methods for selecting spawning adults for hatchery use from an appropriate cross section of the adult population; limit the stocking of steelhead and chinook salmon fry and smolts to natal watersheds; and select spawning adults of appropriate genetic makeup to minimize genetic contamination of existing hatchery and naturally-producing populations. These actions would help to maintain the genetic integrity of naturally spawning populations.

*Restore aspects of the sediment erosion and deposition regime.* Maintain, improve, or supplement gravel recruitment and natural sediment transport in streams; improve spawning gravel

and gravel availability in streams; relocate instream and floodplain gravel mining and artificially introduce gravels to compensate for sediment trapped by dams; and develop and implement appropriate land use plans that allow the natural recruitment of sediments. Spawning habitat abundance and gravel quality would improve as a result of implementing these actions. This may increase spawning success and egg and larval survival.

*Eliminate fish passage barriers, and reduce fish entrainment and stranding.* Remove dams to provide access to historical spawning and rearing habitat; install or upgrade fish passage facilities at dams; remove or modify culvert crossings or other barriers; install state-of-the-art, positive-barrier screens on water diversions; improve existing screens and bypass systems; eliminate or consolidate water diversions; and assess and develop recommendations to reduce stranding in floodplains, toe drains, shallow ponds, and levee borrow areas. These actions would reduce entrainment of juvenile fish and stranding of juvenile and adult fish. This would improve migration success and survival and increase adult spawning success.

Implementation of ERP actions that are intended to benefit other species may adversely affect anadromous salmonids. Such conflicts likely would be resolved through oversight by the Governance Plan or MSCS that would provide for prioritization of water needs (see *Summary of Key Planned Actions*). Preparation of ASIPs and consultation with the fish and wildlife agencies will be required prior to implementation of ERP actions.

#### *Water Use Efficiency Program (WUEP)*

The purpose of the WUEP is to increase water conservation and recycling primarily in the urban and agricultural sectors of California. Programmatic actions generally focus on expanding State and federal water recycling programs and providing planning, technical, and financial assistance to local water suppliers. This program is expected to benefit fish because water savings could reduce the demand for Delta exports, increase water available for transfers, delay the need for new water facilities, and improve water quality. Reduced demands could increase reservoir and diversion operation flexibility, and allow flow management to meet species needs or to more closely approximate the natural seasonal flow variability. Reestablishing natural seasonal flow variability (i.e., pattern and magnitude) could reactivate and maintain ecological processes and structures that sustain healthy fish, wildlife, and plant populations. Reduced contaminant delivery resulting from reduced applied water and subsequent reduced runoff would improve water quality, which could lead to improved fish health, survival, and productivity. Species also could benefit from reduced entrainment and impingement impacts due to reduced diversions, modifications in flow timing and reservoir releases, improved in-stream water quality, and increased water available for ecosystem purposes.

### *Water Transfer Program (WTP)*

The WTP proposes a framework of actions, policies, and processes that, collectively, will facilitate water transfers and the further development of a statewide water transfer market. Therefore, this program likely will increase the occurrence of water transfers in the Sacramento-San Joaquin drainage. This would affect fisheries and aquatic resources primarily through changes to riverine flow and export. Several factors, including the source of water for a transfer and the timing, magnitude, and pathway of each transfer, influence the likelihood for potentially significant impacts. To the extent that transfers are consistent with ecosystem needs and purposes, fisheries and aquatic ecosystems would benefit. The WTP may allow water to be obtained for the EWA (see *Water Management Strategy*), which by definition will benefit fish including steelhead and chinook salmon. Benefits could include reestablishing the natural seasonal flow and salinity variability, and reduced entrainment and impingement impacts associated with reduced or rescheduled diversions. Conversely, potentially significant adverse impacts may result from transfers for agricultural and urban uses if proper planning and management of specific transfers are not undertaken. Adverse effects on species could include reduced habitat abundance attributable to flow effects, reduced transport and attraction in response to flow effects, and increased entrainment attributable to flow effects on species movement and distribution relative to the location and volume of diversions. To address these potential adverse effects, water transfers facilitated through the WTP that may affect threatened or endangered salmonids or other species will require further consultation with the appropriate fish and wildlife agencies (see *Summary of Key Planned Actions*).

Implementing the WTP will affect water operations by increasing the availability of the SWP/CVP facilities for water transfers of non-project water. Therefore, the WTP may contribute to the need for modifications to the conveyance system. These may include in-channel construction activities which could adversely impact anadromous salmonids (see *Water Management Strategy*).

### *Watershed Program (WP)*

The WP will provide financial and technical assistance to local watershed programs that focus on achieving multiple objectives in the areas of water supply reliability, flood management, environmental restoration, and water quality. This assistance will benefit anadromous salmonids if it supports watershed level habitat restoration actions such as improving riparian habitat or fish passage, restoring wetlands, stream banks, or stream morphology, or reducing pollutant loads. Beneficial watershed-level impacts may also improve habitat conditions downstream.

Potential watershed activities that are expected to improve flows in upstream areas also would improve flows in the Delta. Ecosystem-level benefits could include a closer approximation of natural seasonal flow variability, restoration of natural sediment delivery and movement, reduced contaminant input, increased productivity, and restoration of the natural ecosystem structure, such as floodplain connectivity. Species benefits primarily would accrue from increased habitat

abundance due to improved flow conditions and increased survival, growth, and reproduction in response to improved water quality.

CALFED will promote local watershed stewardship and encourage watershed actions that include monitoring protocols and increase community learning and awareness. This should benefit fish if it encourages collection of data that may be used to make more informed fish and water management decisions, and discourages human behavior that adversely affects the watershed (e.g., destruction of fish habitat).

Flood control actions (e.g. levee construction or maintenance) implemented as part of the WP may adversely affect fish, as could construction associated with other in-channel or riparian zone actions. Impacts may occur due to disturbance of existing aquatic or riparian biological communities, mobilization of sediments, and input of contaminants. Impacts to anadromous salmonids may be avoided or minimized through the use of accepted construction time windows and best management practices (see *Levee System Integrity Program*). These activities would require further consultation with appropriate fish and wildlife agencies (see *Summary of Key Planned Actions*).

#### *Water Management Strategy (WMS)*

##### Storage

The ISI component of CALFED's WMS would be expected to benefit anadromous salmonids because it will contribute to increased flexibility in the timing, magnitude, and duration of reservoir releases and exports from the CVP/SWP pumps. This should provide increased opportunity for releases of water that would benefit steelhead and chinook salmon (e.g., to maintain adequate water temperature or reduce take at the export facilities). Large, long-term surface storage is suited to rapidly discharging or receiving large volumes of water, an advantage in real-time management of high river flow periods or environmental storage releases. Cold-water pool volume could increase with increased on-stream reservoir capacity. A portion of new storage may be allocated to environmental water supplies and could provide beneficial impacts through enhancement of seasonal flow needs for steelhead and chinook salmon. Species could benefit from increased productivity and improved conditions affecting movement. Total Delta outflow, however, would be reduced because total exports will increase. The diversion of water to required to fill additional storage would additionally reduce outflow. Adverse effects of reduced outflow would depend on timing and reduction in magnitude relative to base outflow conditions.

Filling in-Delta storage could adversely affect fish species, depending on the location of the storage and diversion facilities and the timing, magnitude, duration, and frequency of diversions. As discussed above, Delta outflow would be reduced. In addition, the magnitude of net reverse flow could increase in some Delta channels. Changes in Delta outflow and channel flow could affect the distribution of rearing or outmigrating chinook salmon and steelhead, potentially increasing entrainment in CVP/SWP export facilities and other Delta diversions. Depending on the location of the diversion intake, some species populations may be more affected than others. For

example, diversion from the Mokelumne channels or the San Joaquin River channel could result in potentially greater effects on Mokelumne River or San Joaquin River chinook salmon than on chinook salmon from the Sacramento River. Although the diversion into in-Delta storage would be screened, entrainment-related losses would occur, including predation, abrasion, and impingement. The operations flexibility of in-Delta storage, however, would provide the opportunity to avoid and minimize adverse effects on Delta fish species through diversions during periods when flow conditions would be minimally affected and when Delta species are least vulnerable to the effects of diversions. If diversions to in-Delta storage allow reoperation of other Delta diversions, lower diversions during periods of high fish vulnerability could benefit Delta fish species by reducing entrainment losses and potential adverse effects of Delta flows on species distribution.

For in-Delta storage, discharge directly to Delta export and diversion facilities could increase operational flexibility, potentially benefitting fish species present in the Delta by minimizing exports or diversions during periods of high fish vulnerability. Discharge for environmental benefits could, given appropriate timing, improve Delta flow conditions—reducing the magnitude of net reverse flow and increasing Delta outflow during periods of potentially high fish sensitivity. Export or diversion of in-Delta storage discharged to Delta channels, however, could result in adverse effects by increasing fish entrainment.

Simulated operations demonstrated that increased storage in and upstream of the Delta could enable average annual CVP and SWP exports to increase by 500-700 TAF (an 8-12% annual increase). The simulated increase primarily occurs during January-March and in September. Higher exports could adversely affect the population abundance of Delta species through increased entrainment-related losses, including losses of winter-, spring-, and fall-run chinook salmon. In addition, increased exports would increase the magnitude of net reverse flow conditions in Old and Middle Rivers and possibly in the lower San Joaquin River. Net reverse flow conditions are counter to natural net flow conditions in Delta channels and could reduce productivity, impair species movement, and increase entrainment in Delta diversions. Species adversely affected could include chinook salmon and steelhead. Increases of annual exports of this magnitude will require ongoing consultation with the fish and wildlife agencies.

All proposed new reservoir construction is off-stream, and consequently should not directly impede juvenile or adult salmonid migration. However, construction of storage facilities could cause short-term adverse impacts downstream due to mobilization of sediments and input of contaminants.

Implementation of the ISI will result in increased pumping of groundwater. Although the ISI also provides for actions such as groundwater monitoring and modeling, the intent is to develop the groundwater supply for agricultural, urban, and environmental uses. Under present use levels, groundwater overdrafts already occur in both Sacramento and San Joaquin Valleys during some years (CDWR 1998). Groundwater overdrafts may affect aquifer size and depth, and hence recharge to streams such as the San Joaquin River. However, the ISI will be implemented in

concert with the ERP, MSCS, EWA, and WQP and in such a way that the net effects to species and their habitats will be positive (see *Summary of Key Planned Actions and Governance Plan*).

## Conveyance

### South Delta

As with the ISI, the modifications to conveyance proposed under the WMS is expected to benefit anadromous salmonids because they will contribute to increased flexibility in the timing, magnitude, and duration of reservoir releases and exports from the CVP/SWP pumps. Many of the proposed modifications to conveyance in the south Delta will provide for either fully utilizing the existing export capacity or increasing the export capacity at the SWP Banks Pumping Plant (e.g., constructing a new screened intake at CCFB, implementing a SWP/CVP JPOD, changing the SWP pumping rules to increase expert pumping limits, and installing a barriers at the head of Old River). Increased export capacity will benefit anadromous salmonids because it will provide for wheeling and storage that otherwise would not be available for EWA or other environmental water. However, there is some question whether adequate storage of EWA water south of the Delta (e.g., in San Luis Reservoir, Metropolitan Water District's Diamond Valley Reservoir, or groundwater storage) will be available, which may limit the benefit of increased export capacity to anadromous salmonids. Total exports are expected to increase throughout Phase III and will be facilitated by increased export capacity at the SWP pumps, potentially reducing total outflow from the Delta or contribute to increased magnitude or frequency of reverse flows. This may adversely impact anadromous salmonids unless compensated for through the EWA or other environmental water releases.

Screening the intake at CCFB to NMFS criteria ultimately should decrease the take of juvenile salmonids by reducing or eliminating entrainment at the SWP export facilities. CALFED intends to secure permits by the middle of 2003 to increase SWP pumping up to 8,500 cfs and potentially 100 TAF per month. SWP pumping is intended to be increased to the maximum capacity of 10,300 cfs by the end of Stage 1 (i.e., 2007). Prior to increasing pumping above current authorized levels, operational rules for use of additional export capability will be determined through ESA consultation on the project-specific environmental documentation prepared for the various conveyance elements. To offset potential impacts and to provide for recovery of fishery populations, additional measures will be developed which would allow for protection of fish. These additional measures may include (a) screening, (b) new standards which limit the timing and magnitude of exports and water supply releases at key periods of fish concern, or a combination of the two. The agencies are discussing the installation of fish screen modules of 2,500 cfs each at Clifton Court Forebay. However, entrainment of fish at the pumps could increase during the interim period before the diversion is fully screened due to increased fish attraction to greater export flow. Other negative effects (e.g., increased predation, impingement, and abrasion) associated with water diversions also may increase with the greater volume of water exported. Both screening the intake and increasing water exports will require further consultation with the appropriate fish and wildlife agencies. Potential adverse impacts to fish populations will have to be monitored carefully throughout the 30-year period of Phase III.

Installation and closure of an operable barrier at the head of Old River would direct San Joaquin River flow down the main San Joaquin River channel and past Stockton. The barrier would benefit outmigrating juvenile chinook salmon and steelhead from the San Joaquin River Basin by directing their movement along the San Joaquin River pathway and away from the CVP and SWP south Delta export intakes. The likelihood of successful outmigration increases as juvenile salmonids are directed further downstream. The barrier may also benefit adult chinook salmon through improved dissolved oxygen and water temperature conditions that result from increased net flow past Stockton.

Alternatively, closure of the barrier without a concomitant reduction in exports would increase net flow toward the CVP/SWP pumps, primarily through Turner Cut, Middle River, and Old River. Net flow toward the export facilities counters the natural net flow conditions in Delta channels and could reduce productivity, impair species movement, and increase entrainment of anadromous salmonids and other species in Delta diversions. Installation and operation of this barrier will require ongoing consultation with the fish and wildlife agencies to minimize adverse effects.

Construction of barriers on other south Delta channels, such as Middle River and Old River near the CVP's Tracy fish facility, or their functional equivalent may be necessary to alleviate the reduced water levels caused by closure of the head of Old River barrier in combination with CVP and SWP export operation. The barriers would diminish tidal flow, reducing connectivity to other Delta channels and altering basic hydraulic features that affect sediment and nutrient movement, water quality conditions (for example, water temperature and dissolved oxygen), and productivity. Barriers are expected to affect water quality because circulation would be reduced for the area bounded by the barriers. Reduced circulation could change stratification patterns and flow movement that potentially affect dissolved oxygen and water temperature. Anadromous salmonids and other species could be adversely affected by loss of habitat, change in water quality conditions (including water temperature and dissolved oxygen), and impeded access to resources and conditions that allow a species to survive and reproduce. Construction and operation of the barriers likely will require ongoing consultation with the fish and wildlife agencies.

Dredging to enlarge south Delta channels, including Middle River and Old River, would increase the channel depth and further alter the natural structural features. In the short term, dredging would remove benthic communities and mobilize fine sediments. Maintenance dredging may be required over the long term, resulting in periodic short-term impacts. Dredging also may cause levee instability, which could require additional revetment and levee maintenance activities. Impacts to anadromous salmonids may be avoided or minimized through the use of accepted construction time windows and best management practices (see *Levee System Integrity Program*). These activities would require further consultation with appropriate fish and wildlife agencies. If channel enlargement is the result of setting back existing levees, salmonid habitat would potentially be increased. Installation of setback levees will be completed in coordination with the ERP (see *Summary of Key Planned Actions and Ecosystem Restoration Program*).



## North Delta

The proposed North Delta Improvements are designed to address flood control, water quality, fish, and water supply reliability. Actions include modification of the Delta Cross Channel gates, channel dredging and/or setback levees in the Mokelumne River, and the creation of additional floodplain, wildlife, and fish habitat. Under the Preferred Program, north Delta improvements also include the study and evaluation of a screened diversion facility on the Sacramento River with a range of diversion capacities up to 4,000 cfs. This diversion facility between the Sacramento and Mokelumne rivers would likely include a fish screen, pumps, and facilities for upstream fish passage.

Under the Preferred Program Alternative, the DCC may be closed from September through July and possibly all months, which would increase survival of juvenile salmon and steelhead entering the Delta from the Sacramento River during October-January and May 20-June 30 compared to DCC operation at the present. While the additional closure of the DCC relative to present operation is viewed as beneficial to Sacramento River origin juvenile salmon and steelhead, it may increase the frequency and magnitude of net reverse flow conditions in the lower San Joaquin River. This increase in net reverse flow could adversely affect juvenile salmon and steelhead entering the Delta through Georgian Slough and the San Joaquin river. A diversion channel on the Sacramento River could minimize this effect of DCC closures depending on the configuration of the various in delta barriers anticipated as part of the south Delta program .

Construction and operation of a screened diversion facility on the Sacramento River may be pursued during Stage 1 if the evaluations demonstrate that this facility is necessary to address drinking water quality concerns and it can be constructed without adversely affecting fish populations. The fish screens would be designed to prevent juvenile and adult fish from leaving the Sacramento River and entering the new channel with the flow diverted into the Mokelumne River. Although the fish screen facility would mitigate potential entrainment impacts, other potential adverse effects would have to be addressed prior to constructing this diversion. Existing relationships indicate that reduced flow in the Sacramento River (from flow exiting through the diversion) would cause an increase in the proportion of flow entering Georgiana Slough. Chinook salmon outmigration in the Sacramento River primarily occurs from December through May. The proportion of juveniles moving from the Sacramento River and into Georgiana Slough, therefore, is expected to increase with increased flow diverted through the Sacramento to Mokelumne River channel. Survival of chinook salmon that move into the Central Delta via the DCC and Georgiana Slough is less than survival of fish that continue down the Sacramento River toward Rio Vista. USFWS studies indicate that the survival of fish following the Sacramento River route toward Rio Vista may be several times higher than survival of fish entering the DCC and Georgiana Slough. The actual magnitude of survival, however, is uncertain and depends on other factors, including water temperature and flow or salinity. In addition, abrasion, increased predation, impingement on fish screens or other diversion structures, stress from being handled, and movement to inappropriate habitat would reduce the survival of fish contacting the fish screens.

Potential impacts to adult chinook salmon and steelhead could arise from a new channel which would direct additional Sacramento River water into the Mokelumne River channels and the central Delta. In combination with reduced flow down the Sacramento River channel, chinook salmon and steelhead adults migrating upstream to spawn may be attracted to the Mokelumne River channels and subsequently to the Sacramento River. The fish screen at the diversion facility on the Sacramento River would prevent movement of adult fish into the Sacramento River. Although fish ladders or other passage facilities may be constructed, the efficiency of moving fish to the Sacramento River will depend on many factors, some level of migration delay and blockage is likely. Adverse impacts may include mortality, reduced fecundity or reproductive success, and straying, potentially affecting the fitness of natural spawning and rearing populations in appropriated habitats. The addition of Sacramento River flow to the Mokelumne River channels could also confuse adult chinook salmon returning to spawn and delay outmigration of juveniles to the ocean. The flow reduction in the Sacramento River downstream of the diversion may reduce smolt survival, because there is a strong, positive flow-abundance relationship for juvenile chinook salmon in this reach of the Sacramento River (Brandes and McClain, in press).

The diversion of additional Sacramento River water into the Mokelumne River channels and the central Delta would increase the frequency and magnitude of natural channel net flow direction in the Lower San Joaquin River, but reduce the magnitude of natural net channel flow in the Sacramento River below the diversion, primarily during February to June. Natural net flow conditions in the Lower San Joaquin River channel could increase productivity, enhance species movement, and reduce entrainment in Delta diversions. The effects of reduced flow in the Sacramento River below the diversion could adversely affect habitat

Dredging to enlarge the Mokelumne River would increase the channel depth and further alter the natural structural features. In the short term, dredging would remove benthic communities and mobilize fine sediments. Maintenance dredging may be required over the long term, resulting in periodic short-term impacts. Dredging also may cause levee instability, which could require additional revetment and levee maintenance activities. Impacts to anadromous salmonids may be avoided or minimized through the use of accepted construction time windows and best management practices (see *Levee System Integrity Program*). These activities would require further consultation with appropriate fish and wildlife agencies. If channel enlargement is the result of setting back existing levees, salmonid habitat would potentially be increased. Installation of setback levees will be completed in coordination with the ERP (see *Summary of Key Planned Actions and Ecosystem Restoration Program*).

#### Environmental Water Account (EWA)

The EWA is part of CALFED's Water Management Strategy, designed to improve fisheries protection while providing improvements in water quality and waters supply reliability. The purpose of the EWA is to provide water for fisheries protection and recovery beyond that available through existing regulatory actions. The EWA will be managed by NMFS, FWS, and

DFG to address the real-time needs of the fisheries resources in the Central Valley, with an emphasis in the delta.

The EWA is currently designed to be implemented for four years and contains initial assets totaling 380,000 acre-feet of water available annually. During Stage 1, the EWA can be used to augment instream flows, augment delta outflows, improve delta hydrodynamics, and curtail CVP/SWP exports during key periods of fishery concern. The EWA is based upon the concept that flexible management of water will achieve fishery and ecosystem benefits more efficiently and to a greater degree than a completely prescriptive regulatory approach. Development and use of the EWA will require coordination with the other components of the WMS (i.e., conveyance and storage).

The ability of the EWA to provide for additional fisheries protection over pre-CALFED baseline conditions will depend to a large degree on its implementation. It is anticipated that EWA water will be available to reduce Delta exports during key rearing and outmigration periods for juvenile chinook salmon and steelhead. Additional EWA benefits to anadromous salmonids may include improved flow and temperature conditions for spawning, rearing, and migration in upstream areas. However, management of the EWA must also address potential adverse effects. Changes in reservoir release patterns may adversely affect anadromous salmonids by reducing reservoir carryover storage levels and increasing downstream water temperatures. Fluctuations in reservoir releases may dewater redds or strand juvenile fish. As the EWA managers, NMFS, FWS, and DFG must fully consider potential upstream effects during the implementation of EWA actions.

Implementation of the EWA is anticipated to significantly benefit anadromous salmonids, particularly rearing and outmigrating juveniles in the delta. A number of computer simulations conducted during the CALFED planning effort demonstrated benefits to juvenile anadromous salmonids can be realized in virtually all water years. In general, benefits to anadromous salmonids in the delta can be achieved by reducing water exports at times when fish are most vulnerable to pumping and exports can be increased when fish are less vulnerable.

If the EWA is not fully implemented, project operations will return to baseline operations as defined prior to CALFED: (the WQCP, 1993 winter-run chinook salmon biological opinion, 1995 biological opinion on OCAP for delta smelt and splittail, and CVPIA implementation including the 800,000 acre-feet supply of water pursuant to Section 3406(b)(2) in accordance with Interior's October 5, 1999 decision as clarified previously in the document). In addition, the following clarifications are set forth: 1) CVP/SWP will implement both the flow and export provisions of either VAMP or, in the absence of VAMP, the flows and export curtailments in the 1995 biological opinion on OCAP; 2) if or when the yellow light level in the incidental take statement is reached, as identified in the 1995 OCAP biological opinion, the CVP/SWP will immediately reinstate consultation and implement actions to reduce the amount or extent of take and reduce the indirect effects of project operations on fish as deemed necessary by the fishery resource agencies; 3) all new projects which may affect the environmental baseline identified in this opinion and the 1995 OCAP opinion will be subject to section 7 consultation to avoid and/or minimize the effects of those actions; and 4) other necessary regulatory provisions which may be required to meet the needs of listed species (e.g. spring run chinook salmon and steelhead).

## *Science Program*

Implementing the Science Program may adversely affect anadromous salmonids through take of fish during monitoring and research efforts. However, overall beneficial effects are expected because the Science Program will obtain, analyze, and interpret modeling results and data that will be used to guide implementation of the different CALFED programs and strategies. The success of programs and actions continually will be evaluated, and the Science Program will provide recommendations for adaptive management that is to promote species restoration. CALFED will use the Science Program to measure progress towards meeting prescriptions for MSCS evaluated species primarily by monitoring the distribution and abundance of habitat types over time. Many of the programs and actions proposed by CALFED have not been implemented previously on a large scale (e.g., installation of setback levees) or a statewide scale (e.g., the WUEP). The beneficial effects of implementing other more common actions, such as restoration of wetlands or shaded riverine aquatic habitat, are not well understood. Information obtained through the Science Program will lead to better understanding and greater ability to predict the effects of implementing particular actions on salmonids and other species.

Science program monitoring and research activities that should provide information used to promote restoration of anadromous salmonids include studies of food web and fish population dynamics in the Delta, real-time monitoring for enhanced fish protections and flexible operations for water suppliers, and water quality monitoring in the San Joaquin River. Many of the actions proposed under the ERP, WQP, and other CALFED programs involve monitoring and research components. These components will be implemented in coordination with the Science Program. Additionally, the Science Program likely will inherit several ongoing monitoring and research studies from the IEP. These studies may form the basis for long-term data sets that contain both pre- and post-CALFED data, which may prove critical for evaluating the overall success of CALFED.

Monitoring and research of juvenile salmonids in the Bay-Delta system likely will involve their collection during periodic fish sampling. Collection methods may include electroshocking in shallow, freshwater areas. Outmigrant trapping or trawling are commonly used in deeper or more saline locations. These collection methods all may lead to mortality of fish, although the greatest mortality likely would occur from trawling due to abrasion of fish while the trawl is in motion. Electroshocking and outmigrant trapping equipment and techniques have been improved in recent years to reduce fish mortality, but still would physically and physiologically stress fish. Delayed mortality or permanent injury may be incurred. Fright responses or minor injuries resulting from collection or handling may temporarily impair feeding or increase vulnerability to predation or injury once fish are released.

Sampling mortality of juvenile salmonids is expected to be acceptably low if normal precautions against it are taken. Electroshocking equipment may be adjusted to reduce mortality or injury. Stress or injury resulting from handling may be reduced if juvenile salmonids are anesthetized prior to handling, and allowed to recover from the effects of the anesthetic prior to release.

(Summerfelt and Smith 1990). Juvenile salmonids, if anesthetized and held in cool water, tend to be robust compared to larval salmonids or other species such as delta smelt. Monitoring and research that is to occur through the Science Program likely will be conducted by experienced crews using established sampling protocols that have explicit take limits established through consultation with the fish and wildlife agencies.

Data collected from adult steelhead and chinook salmon likely will be collected in upstream areas by observation only (e.g., by snorkeling, at fish passage facilities, or during redd counts). Snorkel observations may be the preferred method of data collection for juvenile salmonids in upstream areas as well. Because these methods do not involve physically handling the fish, their effects likely would be limited to minor, temporary fright responses. Carcass surveys may similarly disturb remaining live adult steelhead or chinook salmon that are preparing to spawn.

### *Multi-Species Conservation Strategy (MSCS)*

The MSCS encompasses all CALFED program elements and strategies and is the guiding document for species conservation throughout Phase III. Its implementation is expected to greatly benefit anadromous salmonids. In the MSCS, Sacramento River winter-run chinook salmon, Central Valley spring-run chinook salmon, Central Valley fall/late fall-run chinook salmon, and Central Valley steelhead have been assigned the conservation goal of recovery ("R"). With respect to anadromous salmonids within the MSCS focus area, recovery is equivalent, at a minimum, to completing the actions within the ERP Ecological Management Zones that are required for delisting a species under the federal and state ESAs. Central California Coast steelhead is expected to be minimally affected by CALFED, and therefore has been assigned a conservation goal of maintain ("m"). The MSCS also describes how goals will be achieved through species prescriptions, which are targets that describe the future expected changes in evaluated species' habitats and populations with full implementation of CALFED. If evaluated species prescriptions are achieved, CALFED goals for evaluated species will have been met. CALFED is expected to undertake all of the actions within the ERP Ecological Management Zones necessary to recover Sacramento River winter-run chinook salmon, Central Valley spring-run chinook salmon, Central Valley fall/late fall-run chinook salmon, and Central Valley steelhead, and is expected to avoid, minimize, and compensate for the adverse effects of its actions on Central California Coast steelhead.

The MSCS contains two types of conservation measures: (1) measures to avoid, minimize, and compensate for the adverse effects to evaluated species caused by individual CALFED actions, and (2) measures to enhance evaluated species that are not directly linked to CALFED's adverse effects, are consistent with the ERP, and may be milestones. Both types of measures will be implemented through the use of ASIPs that will be developed for specific CALFED actions or bundles of actions. The MSCS also allows for additional, project-specific conservation measures to be included in ASIPs.

The MSCS could adversely impact anadromous salmonids if their habitat requirements conflict with the conservation measures recommended for other species (e.g., releases of water at

inappropriate times or of inadequate temperature). Implementation of such measures could reduce the feeding, growth, spawning success, or survival of steelhead or chinook salmon. These types of adverse impacts likely will be avoided because the conservation measures will be included in ASIPs which will require consultation with the fish and wildlife agencies. CALFED will use the Science Program to ensure proper implementation of the MSCS.

### *Governance Plan*

The CALFED Program is to be implemented in stages over a period of 30 years. Project descriptions and funding sources have been most clearly identified for actions that are to occur during Stage 1 (i.e., the first 7 years of Phase III). However, the CALFED Governance Program provides a framework that includes the following provisions for oversight of both short- and long-term implementation:

- Grouping of actions to ensure beneficial impacts (i.e., resulting primarily from ERP actions) are concurrent in time and location with adverse impacts. Actions are intended to take place in an integrated framework and not independently of the other programs. The Governance Program is to establish reliable short-term and long-term funding for each program element and for each bundle of Stage 1 actions;
- Using ASIPs to ensure adequate, site-specific and tiered consultations with the resource agencies prior to the implementation of specific actions. The ASIPs will serve as the biological assessments for these actions, and NMFS will use the ASIPs to develop action-specific biological opinions that include incidental take statements. Compliance with the terms and conditions of existing biological opinions, and thus consistency with previous NMFS consultations, will be assured in the action-specific biological opinions.
- Using the Science Program to direct research and monitor impacts to species populations. Research and monitoring related to Stage 1 actions will be used to develop adaptive management strategies and direct implementation of later actions. CALFED objectives will remain fixed over time, but the actions may be adjusted to assure that the solution is durable. Adaptations are expected to be necessary as conditions change and as more is learned about the system and how it responds;
- Using species-specific, Stage 1 milestones to ensure that beneficial impacts of the CALFED Program are significant, broad, and occur at an acceptable pace. These milestones have been developed from the ERP/WQP targets and programmatic actions, and MSCS conservation measures. The milestones also include Science Program actions that are relevant for ERP, WQP, and MSCS implementation. Progress toward attaining all milestones will be continually reviewed by the resource agencies. Milestones may be revised to provide for the protection of species through adaptive management; and

- Using key planned actions for additional guidance in CALFED Program implementation.

Use of the above mechanisms to provide oversight would be expected to lead to an overall beneficial impact of implementation of the CALFED Program to chinook salmon and steelhead.

### *C. Overall Effects*

The CALFED Program is intended to increase water availability for agricultural and urban users over a period of 30 years while providing for recovery of anadromous salmonids and other species. Groundwater pumping, reservoir storage, and water exports for agricultural and urban use all are expected to increase. Although these actions could have substantial adverse effects on Sacramento River winter-run chinook salmon, Central Valley spring-run chinook salmon, Central Valley steelhead, and Central California Coast steelhead, more water is expected to be made available to benefit species at key times. Specifically, the increased development of water sources, combined with increased efficiency in water use under the WUEP, water transfers under the WTP, and in conveyance will allow assets to accrue in the EWA component of the WMS. The CALFED Program assures that additional environmental water will be available as needed under Tier 3 of the WMS, even during periods of drought. Lack of adequate Tier 3 water will trigger reinitiation of consultation with the fish and wildlife agencies at the programmatic level.

The ERP and WQP should provide overall beneficial impacts to anadromous salmonids by greatly improving fish habitat and water quality, respectively. Generally, negative impacts of in-channel construction actions implemented under the LSIP, ERP, WP, Storage, and Conveyance elements can be avoided and minimized using best management practices and appropriate time windows for construction, and coordination with the ERP. Projects involving levee construction and maintenance in particular will be coordinated with the ERP to not only minimize adverse impacts, but to restore fish habitat through installing setback levees where possible. The SWP/CVP export facilities, which constitute a major source of mortality for outmigrating juvenile salmonids, are to be screened.

Oversight of the CALFED Program is critical to assure that adverse impacts to anadromous are avoided and minimized, and that habitat restoration and species recovery occur as planned. This oversight will involve the active participation of the fish and wildlife agencies, and will be achieved through use of the Governance Program, ERP, Science Program, and MSCS. ASIPs will be used to evaluate the impacts of specific actions. Progress toward achieving ERP/WQP targets and programmatic actions, MSCS conservation measures, and Stage 1 milestones will continually be evaluated. Adaptive management will be used as needed.

## V. Cumulative Effects

Cumulative effects include the effects of future State, tribal, local or private actions that are reasonably certain to occur in the action area considered in this biological opinion. Future Federal actions that are unrelated to the proposed action are not considered in this section because they require separate consultation pursuant to section 7 of the Endangered Species Act.

Non-Federal actions which may affect listed species within the action area considered in this biological opinion include changes in State angling regulations, State hatchery practices, voluntary State or private sponsored habitat restoration activities, changes in agricultural practices or the demand for agricultural products, and increased population growth and urbanization.

State angling regulations are generally moving towards greater restrictions to protect listed fish species. Through seasonal and area closures, greater numbers of adult listed fish are expected to complete their migration to upstream spawning areas. Mass marking of juvenile anadromous fish produced at Central Valley hatcheries could allow for the implementation of selective ocean and in-river harvest. A selective fishery that targets only externally marked hatchery production and that releases unmarked naturally spawned fish may significantly reduce harvest rates on listed salmonids. In general, these changes in State angling regulations are expected to increase populations of listed salmonids.

State hatchery practices could reduce natural stocks of listed salmonids and their overall populations through competition, reduction in genetic diversity, and disease transmission resulting from hatchery introductions. However, whether hatchery practices adversely affect listed salmonids may also depend on other factors such as predation and habitat quantity and quality. Efforts are currently underway between NMFS and the State to modify existing hatchery practices in ways to augment salmon and steelhead populations without having detrimental effects on naturally spawning populations. Through the close evaluation of practices at all Central Valley salmon and steelhead hatcheries, the State is expected to determine the effects on wild populations and take steps to change these practices if needed.

State and/or privately sponsored habitat restoration activities may have short-term negative effects associated with in-water construction. The effects of such actions are expected to be temporary and localized. The overall outcome is expected to benefit listed salmonids. An exception is the potential increase in non-native species to levels detrimental to native species, including listed salmonids, as an outcome of the reestablishment of aquatic areas in the action area. Mitigation strategies for such activities are identified in the CALFED Bay-Delta Program.

Changes in agricultural practices or the demand for agricultural produces could adversely effect listed salmonids if they result in agricultural interests being less willing to sell water for fish and wildlife purposes. Changes in demand could change the ratio of permanent to annual crops such that water availability on an annual basis for certain CALFED Programs (e.g. the Environmental Water Account) is affected. This is particularly of concern if the opportunities to acquire water for



fish and wildlife purposes is decreased. CALFED Program efforts through the Water Use Efficiency and Conservation Program and Storage may minimize or mitigate these potential effects.

Increased population growth and urbanization in the action area may negatively impact water quality, riparian function, and stream productivity, adversely affecting listed salmonids. Population growth creates a demand for land for residential, commercial and infrastructure use. Current estimates anticipate that California's population will triple between the year 2000 and the year 2040. Not only is this expected to put tremendous pressure on agricultural land and public services but it will challenge CALFED's ability to provide quality aquatic habitat for listed salmonid species. CALFED program efforts through the Ecosystem Restoration Program (with its primary objective of long-term ecological benefits), and the Water Quality, Watershed, and Storage Programs, may minimize or mitigate these potential effects.

## **VI. Conclusion**

The Federal CALFED Co-Lead Agencies and the State of California have made commitments to uphold the ESA during implementation (Phase III) of the CALFED Bay-Delta Program by review of individual actions and initiation of Section 7 consultations on actions that may affect listed species under the jurisdiction of NMFS. By doing so along with implementing the program as described, including the key planned actions described previously in this biological opinion, combined with the current status of Sacramento River Winter-run chinook salmon, Central Valley spring-run chinook salmon, Central Valley steelhead, and Central California Coast steelhead, the environmental baseline for the action area, the anticipated direct, indirect, and cumulative effects of the proposed action, it is NMFS' biological opinion that implementation of the CALFED Bay-Delta Program's Preferred Program Alternative is not likely to jeopardize the continued existence of Sacramento River winter-run chinook salmon, Central Valley spring-run chinook salmon, Central Valley steelhead, or Central California Coast steelhead. NMFS has also determined that the action, as proposed, is not likely to destroy or adversely modify critical habitat for these species.

This no-jeopardy determination, at the programmatic scale, is not intended to, nor does it preclude NMFS from making future jeopardy determinations based on the effects analysis for action specific implementation programs.

Due to the programmatic nature of this biological opinion, the project- and action-specific information necessary to determine the amount and extent of incidental take of Sacramento River winter-run chinook salmon, Central Valley spring-run chinook salmon, Central Valley steelhead and/or Central California Coast steelhead associated with individual CALFED Bay-Delta Program activities/actions is lacking. Therefore, incidental take of these listed anadromous salmonids is not authorized in this programmatic biological opinion. Thus, the Federal CALFED CO-Lead Agencies will initiate individual Section 7 consultations with NMFS for action-specific implementation programs which may affect these listed anadromous salmonids. Future biological opinions that are tiered under this programmatic opinion will estimate, evaluate, and authorize the

amount and extent of incidental take associated with action specific plans that cannot be avoided or mitigated and will not preclude survival and recovery of the listed species.

### **VIII. Conservation Recommendations**

Section 7(a)(1) of the ESA directs Federal agencies to utilize their authorities to further the purposes of the ESA by carrying out conservation programs for the benefit of endangered and threatened species. Conservation recommendations are discretionary agency activities to minimize or avoid adverse effects of a proposed action on listed species or critical habitat, or to develop information. NMFS recommends that the CALFED Bay-Delta Program, through the Federal co-lead agencies:

1. Provide annual accomplishment reports to NMFS regarding implementation of CALFED Bay-Delta programs, activities, and actions.
2. In addition to the goals of ERP, incorporate the viable salmonid population (VSP)<sup>2</sup> concept (NMFS 1999) into the anadromous salmonid goals of the CALFED Bay-Delta Program.
3. Actions to restore and create waterfowl habitat along Central Valley waterways should be designed in a manner to avoid the creation of predatory fish holding habitat and prevent the entrapment of juvenile and adult salmonids.
4. CALFED action agencies should coordinate closely with non-federal action agencies on activities affecting listed species within the action area to assure avoidance and minimization of potential cumulative adverse effects.

### **IX. Reinitiation Notice**

This concludes the programmatic consultation on the implementation of the Preferred Program Alternative for the CALFED Bay-Delta Program as described in the July 2000 Final EIS/EIR. As provided in 50 CFR §402.16, reinitiation of formal consultation is required where discretionary Federal agency involvement or control over the actions has been retained (or is authorized by law) and if: (1) the amount or extent of incidental take is exceeded; (2) new information reveals effects of agency actions that may affect listed species or critical habitat in a manner or to an extent not considered in this opinion; or (4) a new species is listed or critical habitat designated that may be affected by the action. This programmatic biological opinion does not provide incidental take authorization. However, it is expected that the Federal co-leads for the CALFED Bay-Delta Program will initiate individual Section 7 consultations with NMFS for actions/activities which may affect listed anadromous salmonids.

---

<sup>2</sup>A *viable salmonid population* (VSP) is an independent population of any Pacific salmonid (genus *Oncorhynchus*) that has a negligible risk of extinction due to threats from demographic variation (random or directional), local environment variation, and genetic diversity changes (random or directional) over a 100-year time frame.

## X. References

- Adams, P.B., M.J. Bowers, H.E. Fish, T.E. Laidig, and K.R. Silberberg. 1999. Historical and current presence-absence of coho salmon (*Oncorhynchus kisutch*) in the Central California Coast Evolutionarily Significant Unit. National Marine Fisheries Service, Southwest Fisheries Science Center Administrative Report SC-99-02, Tiburon, California, 24 pages.
- Barnhart, R.A. 1986. Species profiles: Life histories and environmental requirements of coastal fishes and invertebrates (Pacific Southwest)--steelhead. U.S. Fish and Wildl. Serv. Biol. Rep. 82(11.60). 21 pages.
- Berg, L. 1982. The effect of exposure to short-term pulses of suspended sediment on the behavior in juvenile salmonids. Pages 177-196 in G.F Hartman, editor. Proceedings of Carnation Creek Workshop: a ten year review. Canadian Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Nanaimo, British Columbia.
- Brandes, P.L., and J.S. McClain. In press. Juvenile chinook salmon abundance, distribution, and survival in the Sacramento-San Joaquin Estuary. California Department of Fish and Game, Fish Bulletin 179.
- Busby, P.J., T.C. Wainwright, G.J. Bryant, L.J. Lierheimer, R.S. Waples, F.W. Waknitz, and I.V. Lagomarsino. 1996. Status review of west coast steelhead from Washington, Idaho, Oregon, and California. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NWFSC-27. 261 pages.
- CALFED Bay-Delta Program. 2000. Final Programmatic Environmental Impact Statement/Report. July 2000. + appendices
- CDFG (California Department of Fish and Game). 1965. California Fish and Wildlife Plan, Volume I: Summary. 110 p.; Volume II: Fish and Wildlife Plans, 216 p.; Volume III: Supporting Data, 1802 p. Sacramento, CA.
- \_\_\_\_\_. 1998. A report to the Fish and Game Commission: A status review of the spring-run chinook (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) in the Sacramento River drainage. Candidate Species Status Report 98-01. June 1998.
- CDWR (California Department of Water Resources). 1998. California water plan update. Bulletin 160-98. January 1998.
- Chambers, J. 1956. Fish passage development and evaluation program. Progress Report No. 5. U. S. Army Corps of Engineers, North Pacific Division, Portland, OR.

- Chapman, D.W., and T.C. Bjornn. 1969. Distribution of salmonids in streams, with special reference to food and feeding. P. 153-176. In T.G. Northcote (ed.), Symposium on Salmon and Trout in Streams. H.R. MacMillan Lectures in fisheries, Univ. B.C., Vancouver.
- Clark, G.H. 1929. Sacramento-San Joaquin salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*) and their crosses reared in confinement. *Aquaculture* 67:301-311.
- DeHaven, R.W. 1999. Impacts of bank protection to ecosystem functioning, lower Sacramento River, California. Unpublished manuscript dated December 1999.
- DOI (Department of the Interior). 1999. Final Programmatic Environmental Impact Statement for the Central Valley Project Improvement Act. October 1999. Technical Appendix, 10 volumes.
- \_\_\_\_\_. 2000. Draft CVPIA Six-Year Accomplishment Report. Prepared by Bureau of Reclamation and Fish and Wildlife Service for Congress. July 2000.
- Emmett, R.L., S.L. Stone, S.A. Hinton, and M.E. Monaco. 1991. Distribution and abundance of fishes and invertebrates in west coast estuaries, Volume II: specific life history summaries. ELMR Rep. No. 8. NOAA/NOS Strategic Environmental Assessments Division, Rockville, MD, pps 160-168.
- Everest, F.H. 1973. Ecology and management of summer steelhead in the Rogue River. Oregon State Game Comm. Fish. Res. Rep. No. 7, Corvallis. 48 pages.
- Feist, B.E., J.J. Anderson, and R. Miyamoto. 1992. Potential impacts of pile driving on juvenile pink (*Oncorhynchus gorbuscha*) and chum (*O. keta*) salmon behavior and distribution. Pound Sounds Final Report. May 1992. Seattle, WA.
- Fisher, F.W. 1994. Past and Present Status of Central Valley Chinook Salmon. *Conserv. Biol.* 8(3):870-873.
- Fry, D.H. 1961. King salmon spawning stocks of the California Central Valley, 1940-1959. *Calif. Fish Game* 47(1):55-71.
- Hallock, R.J., W.F. Van Woert and L. Shapavalov. 1961. An evaluation of stocking hatchery-reared steelhead rainbow trout (*Salmo gairdneri gairdneri*) in the Sacramento River system. *Calif. Fish Game Fish Bull.* 114, 73 p.
- Healey, M.C. 1986. Optimum size and age at maturity in Pacific salmon and effects of size-selective fisheries. *Can. Spec. Publ. Fish. Aquat. Sci.* 89:39-52.

- \_\_\_\_\_. 1991. The life history of chinook salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*). Pages 311-393 In: C. Groot and L. Margolis (eds.), Life history of Pacific salmon. Univ. B.C. Press, Vancouver, B.C.
- IEP (Interagency Ecological Program) Steelhead Project Work Team. 1999. Monitoring, Assessment, and Research on Central Valley Steelhead: Status of Knowledge, Review Existing Programs, and Assessment Needs. In Comprehensive Monitoring, Assessment, and Research Program Plan, Tech. App. VII.
- Johnson, M.L. 1964. San Lorenzo River System, Santa Cruz County. California Department Fish and Game, Region 3, unpublished report, 8p. Available from the Administrative Record for coho salmon in Scott and Waddell Creeks, National Marine Fisheries Service, Southwest Region Office, 501 W. Ocean Boulevard, Suite 4200, Long Beach, California 90802-4213.
- Jones and Stokes Associates, Inc. 1993. Strategies, potential sites, and site evaluation criteria for restoration of Sacramento River fish and wildlife habitats, Red Bluff to the Feather River. Prepared for the U. S. Army Corps of Engineers, Sacramento, California. 30 pp.
- Knudsen, F.R., P.S. Enger, and O. Sand. 1992. Awareness reactions and avoidance responses to sound in juvenile Atlantic salmon, *Salmo salar* L. Journal of Fish Biology 40:523-534.
- Leidy, R.A. 1997. Estuary Report June 1997. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency San Francisco Estuary Project.
- McEwan, D. and T.A. Jackson. 1996. Steelhead Restoration and Management Plan for California. California Dep. Fish Game, 234 p.
- McGill, R.R. Jr. 1979. Land use changes in the Sacramento River riparian zone, Redding to Colusa. Department of Water Resources, Northern District. 23p.
- \_\_\_\_\_. 1987. Land use changes in the Sacramento River riparian zone, Redding to Colusa. A third update: 1982-1987. Department of Water Resources, Northern District. 19p.
- Michny, F., and M. Hampton. 1984. Sacramento River Chico Landing to Red Bluff project, 1984 juvenile salmonid study. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Division of Ecological Services, Sacramento, California. October 1984.
- Miller, J.A., and C.A. Simenstad. 1997. A comparative assessment of a natural and created estuarine slough as rearing habitat for juvenile chinook and coho salmon. Estuaries 20:792-806.
- Miller, W.H., and E.L. Brannon. 1982. The origin and development of life-history patterns in Pacific salmon. In E.L. Brannon and E.O. Salo (eds.), Proceedings of the Salmon and Trout Migratory Behaviour Symposium, p. 296-309. Univ. Wash. Press, Seattle, WA.

- Monroe, M.J. Kelly, and N. Lisowski. 1992. State of the estuary, a report of the conditions and problems in the San Francisco Bay/Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta Estuary. June 1992. 269 p.
- Moyle, P.B., J.E. Williams, and E.D. Wikramanayake. 1989. Fish Species of Special Concern of California. Final Report submitted to State of Calif. Resources Agency, October 1989.
- Myers, J.M, R.G. Kope, G.J. Bryant, D. Teel, L.J. Lierheimer, T.C. Wainwright, W.S. Grant, F.W. Waknitz, K. Neely, S.T. Lindley, and R.S. Waples. 1998. Status review of chinook salmon from Washington, Idaho, Oregon, and California. U.S. Dept. Of Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo. NMFS-NWFSC-35. 443 pages.
- NMFS (National Marine Fisheries Service). 1996. Endangered Species Act Section 7 Consultation, Biological Opinion for commercial and recreational salmon fisheries off the coast of Washington, Oregon, and California. National Marine Fisheries Service, Washington D.C. March 8, 1996. 53 p. + appendices.
- \_\_\_\_\_. 1997. Reinitiated Section Section 7 Consultation on the Fishery Management Plan for commercial and recreational salmon fisheries off the coast of Washington, Oregon, and California as it affects the Sacramento River winter-run chinook salmon. February 18, 1997.
- \_\_\_\_\_. 1999. Draft Viable Salmonid Populations and the Recovery of Evolutionarily Significant Units. National Marine Fisheries Service. December 13, 1999.
- Nickelson, T.E., J.W. Nicholas, A.M. McGie, R.B. Lindsay, D.L. Bottom, R.J. Kaiser, and S.E. Jacobs. 1992. Status of anadromous salmonids in Oregon coastal basins. Unpublished manuscript. Oregon Dept. Fish Wildl., Research and Development Section, Corvallis, and Ocean Salmon Management, Newport. 83 pages.
- Reiser, D.W. T.C. Bjornn. 1979. Habitat requirements of anadromous salmonids. *In*: Influence of Forest and Rangeland Management on Anadromous Fish Habitat in the Western United States and Canada. W.R. Meehan, editor. U.S. Department of Agriculture Forest Service General Technical Report PNW-96.
- Resources Agency (State of California). 1989. Upper Sacramento River Fisheries and Riparian Management Plan. Prepared by an Advisory Council established by SB 1086, authored by State Senator Jim Nielson. 157 p.
- Rutter, C. 1904. Natural history of the quinnat salmon. Investigation on Sacramento River, 1896-1901. Bull. U.S. Fish Comm. 22: 65-141.

- Savino, J.F., and R.A. Stein. 1982. Predator-prey interaction between largemouth bass and bluegills as influenced by simulated, submersed vegetation. *Transactions of the American Fisheries Society* 111:255-266.
- Shapovalov, L., and A.C. Taft. 1954. The life histories of the steelhead rainbow trout (*Salmo gairdneri gairdneri*) and silver salmon (*Oncorynchus kisutch*) with special reference to Waddell Creek, California, and recommendations regarding their management. California Department of Fish and Game, Fish Bulletin No. 98. Sacramento.
- Staley, J.R. 1976. American River steelhead, *Salmo gairdnerii gairdnerii*, management, 1956-1974. Calif. Dept. Fish and Game, Environmental Services Branch, Admin. Report No. 83-3, 41 pp.
- Stone, L. 1874. Report of operations during 1972 at the U.S. salmon-hatching establishment on the McCloud River, and on the California salmonidae generally; with a list of specimens collected. Report of U.S. Commissioner of Fisheries for 1872-1873 2:168-215.
- Summerfelt, R.C., and L.S. Smith. 1990. Anesthesia, surgery, and related techniques. Pages 213-272 in C.B. Schreck and P.B. Moyle, editors. *Methods for Fish Biology*. American Fisheries Society, Bethesda, MD.
- USACE (U.S. Army Corps of Engineers), USEPA (U.S. Environmental Protection Agency), BDAC (San Francisco Bay Conservation and Development Commission), SFBRWQCB (San Francisco Bay Regional Water Quality Control Board), and SWRCB (State Water Resources Control Board). 1998. Long-term management strategy (LTMS) for the placement of dredged material in the San Francisco Bay region. Final Policy Environmental Impact Statement/Programmatic Environmental Impact Report. October 1998.
- USFWS (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service). 1993. Revised draft of the Fish and Wildlife Coordination Act, Section 2(B) Report for the Sacramento River Bank Protection Project, Contract 42A. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Ecological Services. Sacramento, California. 62 pages with appendices.
- USFWS (U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service). 1995. Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta Native Fishes Recovery Plan. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service, Portland, Oregon.
- Vogel, D.A., K.R. Marine, and J.G. Smith. 1988. Fish passage action program for Red Bluff Diversion Dam, final report on fishery investigations. U.S. Fish and Wildlife Service Report No. FR1/FAO-88-19. 77p. with appendices.
- Vogel, D.A., and K.R. Marine. 1991. Guide to Upper Sacramento River chinook salmon life history. Prepared for the U.S. Bureau of Reclamation, Central Valley Project. 55 pp. With references.

- Waples, R.S. 1991. Definition of "species" under the Endangered Species Act: Application to Pacific salmon. U.S. Dep. Commer., NOAA Tech. Memo., NMFS, F/NWC-194, 29 p.
- Yoshiyama, R. M., E. R. Gerstung, F. W. Fisher, and P. B. Moyle. 1996. Historical and present distribution of chinook salmon in the Central Valley Drainage of California. In: Sierra Nevada Ecosystem Project, Final Report to Congress, vol. III, Assessments, Commissioned Reports, and Background Information (University of California, Davis, Centers for Water and Wildland Resources, 1996).





APPENDIX A

# **CALFED BAY-DELTA PROGRAM**

## **ESSENTIAL FISH HABITAT CONSERVATION RECOMMENDATIONS (Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act - EFH Consultation)**



# CALFED BAY-DELTA PROGRAM

## ESSENTIAL FISH HABITAT CONSERVATION RECOMMENDATIONS (Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act - EFH Consultation)

The 1996 amendments to the Magnuson-Stevens Fishery Conservation and Management Act (MSFCMA) set forth new mandates for the National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS), regional fishery management councils, and federal action agencies to identify and protect important marine and anadromous fish habitat. The Councils, with assistance from NMFS, are required to delineate "essential fish habitat" (EFH) in fishery management plans (FMPs) or FMP amendments for all managed species. Federal action agencies which fund, permit, or carry out activities that may adversely impact EFH are required to consult with NMFS regarding potential adverse effects of their actions on EFH, and respond in writing to NMFS' conservation recommendations. In addition, NMFS is required to comment on any state agency activities that would impact EFH. Although the concept of EFH is similar to that of "Critical Habitat" under the Endangered Species Act, measures recommended to protect EFH are advisory, not proscriptive.

The Pacific Fisheries Management Council has delineated EFH for west coast groundfish (PFMC 1998a) and coastal pelagic species (PFMC 1998b) and is currently delineating EFH for Pacific Coast Salmon through amendment 14 to the Pacific Coast Salmon FMP (PFMC 1999). Species within the action area of the preceding biological opinion which require EFH consultation are Chinook Salmon (*Oncorhynchus tshawytscha*), Northern anchovy (*Engraulis mordax*), and Starry flounder (*Platichthys stellatus*).

### I. IDENTIFICATION OF ESSENTIAL FISH HABITAT

Essential fish habitat (EFH) is defined in the MSFCMA as "...those waters and substrate necessary to fish for spawning, breeding, feeding, or growth to maturity...". NMFS regulations further define "waters" to include aquatic areas and their associated physical, chemical, and biological properties that are used by fish and may include aquatic areas historically used by fish where appropriate; "substrate" to include sediment, hard bottom, structures underlying the waters, and associated biological communities; "necessary" to mean the habitat required to support a sustainable fishery and the managed species' contribution to a healthy ecosystem; and "spawning, breeding, feeding, or growth to maturity" to cover a species' full life cycle.

The geographic extent of EFH for coastal pelagic species and west coast groundfish includes waters, substrates and biological communities within bays and estuaries of the Pacific coast seaward from the high tide line (MHHW) or extent of upriver saltwater intrusion. This includes waters of Suisun Bay and Marsh which are within the action area of the preceding biological opinion.

For Pacific coast salmon, the geographic extent of EFH currently being considered includes both marine and freshwater habitat. For purposes of this consultation, Pacific coast salmon EFH corresponds to "Critical Habitat" designated under the Endangered Species Act for Sacramento River winter-run chinook (58 FR 33212), Central Valley Spring-run chinook salmon, and Central Valley Steelhead (65 FR 7764).

## LIFE HISTORY AND HABITAT REQUIREMENTS

### Northern Anchovy and Starry Flounder

Northern anchovy are small, short-lived fish typically found in schools near the surface. They rarely exceed four years of age and 18 cm total length. They eat phytoplankton and zooplankton by either filter feeding or biting, depending on the size of the food. Sexual maturity occurs at age two. Spawning occurs during every month of the year, increasing in late winter and early spring, peaking from February to April. Preferred spawning temperature is 14°C and eggs are most abundant at temperatures of 12°C to 16°C. Females spawning batches of eggs throughout the spawning season at intervals as short as seven to ten days. Both eggs and larvae are typically found near the surface.

Starry flounder are an important member of the inner continental shelf and shallow sublittoral communities. Most spawning occurs in estuaries or sheltered inshore bays, in less than 45 m of water. Eggs and larvae are epipelagic; juveniles and adults are demersal. Eggs occur at or near the surface over water 20-70 m deep. Larvae are found in estuaries to 37 km offshore. Juveniles are found in estuaries and the lower reaches of major coastal rivers. Adults also occur in estuaries or their freshwater sources year-round. Juveniles prefer sandy to muddy substrates, and adults prefer sandy to coarse substrates. Eggs are found in polyhaline to euhaline waters; juveniles are found in mesohaline to fresh water; adults and larvae are found in euhaline to fresh water. Starry flounder are not considered to be a migratory species, however, adults move inshore in late winter-early spring to spawn and offshore and deeper in the summer and fall, but these coastal movements are generally less than 5 km. Adults and juveniles are known to swim great distances up major coastal rivers (>120 km) but not following any migratory trend. In California, starry flounder spawn from November-February, peaking in December. Larvae are planktivorous. Juveniles and adults are carnivorous. Large fish fed on a wider variety of items, including crabs and other more mobile foods. In other areas, clams and benthic fishes are an important part of the starry flounder's diet.

### Chinook Salmon

General life history information for chinook salmon is summarized in the preceding biological opinion. Further detailed information on chinook salmon ESUs are available in the NMFS status review of chinook salmon from Washington, Idaho, Oregon, and California (Myers et al., 1998), and the NMFS proposed rule for listing several ESUs of chinook salmon (NMFS, 1998).

Population trends for Sacramento River winter-run and Central Valley Spring-run chinook salmon are also presented in the preceding biological opinion. Trends in abundance of fall- and late fall-run chinook within the Sacramento and San Joaquin River Basins and Delta are mixed, but the number of natural spawners has been quite high (5-year geometric mean was 190,000 natural spawners for the Sacramento River Basin). Populations in the San Joaquin Basin have experienced booms and busts but currently appear to be on an upward trend in abundance.

## **II. PROPOSED ACTION.**

The proposed action is described in Part I of the preceding biological opinion for the endangered Sacramento River winter-run chinook salmon, threatened Central Valley spring-run chinook salmon, and threatened Central Valley Steelhead.

## **III. EFFECTS OF THE PROJECT ACTION**

The following is a general description of the non-fishing related activities that directly or cumulatively, temporarily or permanently may threaten the physical, chemical and biological properties of the habitat utilized by west coast groundfish species (starry flounder), coastal pelagic species (northern anchovy) or Pacific coast salmon and their prey within the proposed project area. The direct result of these threats is that the function of EFH may be eliminated, diminished or disrupted.

Potential impacts to Pacific coast salmon EFH, specifically Sacramento River winter-run chinook salmon, Central Valley spring-run chinook salmon, and Central Valley steelhead, due to the proposed action have been described in the preceding biological opinion. These potential impacts would also apply to Central Valley fall and late-fall run chinook salmon.

Adverse effects of the proposed action on west coast groundfish (starry flounder) EFH and coastal pelagic species (northern anchovy) EFH may occur through water diversions, aquatic habitat restoration or enhancement activities, and changes in agricultural practices. Various life stages of coastal pelagic species or west coast groundfish may be effected by water diversions through entrapment or impingement on intake screens. Aquatic habitat restoration or enhancement activities may result in the loss of habitat upon which various life stages of coastal pelagic species or groundfish rely. Changes in agricultural practices may cause changes in water quality through the introduction of fertilizers, herbicides, insecticides, animal wastes, and other chemicals to the extent that EFH for coastal pelagic species and/or groundfish is affected.

## **IV. CONCLUSION**

Upon review of the anticipated effects of the CALFED Bay-Delta Preferred Program Alternative (the proposed action), including the Multi-Species Conservation Strategy (MSCS), NMFS believes that on a programmatic level the proposed action is not likely to adversely effect Pacific coast

salmon EFH. However, while the proposed project action includes efforts to increased aquatic habitat quality overall the potential still exists to imposes limited adverse affects on EFH for coastal pelagic species or west coast groundfish.

## **V. EFH CONSERVATION RECOMMENDATIONS**

Pursuant to Section 305(b)(4)(A) of the Magnuson-Stevens Act, NMFS recommends that the conservation recommendations included in the preceding programmatic biological opinion be adopted as EFH Conservation Recommendations for Pacific coast salmon. NMFS also recommends, as an additional EFH Conservation Recommendation, that action specific EFH consultations be completed for CALFED Program actions prior to their implementation in order to assess the effects on coastal pelagic species, west coast groundfish, and/or Pacific coast salmon EFH, as appropriate.

## **VI. CALFED FEDERAL CO-LEAD AGENCY STATUTORY REQUIREMENTS**

The Magnuson-Stevens Act (Section 305(b)(4)(B)) and Federal regulations (50 CFR Section 600.920(j)) to implement the EFH provisions of the MSFCMA require federal action agencies to provide a written response to EFH Conservation Recommendations within 30 days of its receipt. Federal action agencies included in this consultation are the CALFED Federal Co-Lead Agencies (Bureau of Reclamation, Fish and Wildlife Service, Army Corps of Engineers, Environmental Protection Agency, National Marine Fisheries Service, and Natural Resources Conservation Service). The appropriate federal agency implementing the CALFED action is responsible for responding to EFH Conservation Recommendations. A preliminary response is acceptable if final action cannot be completed within 30 days. The final response must include a description of measures proposed to avoid, mitigate, or offset the adverse impacts of the activity on delineated EFH. If the response is inconsistent with our EFH Conservation Recommendations, it must provide an explanation of the reasons for not implementing them. Because the EFH designation for Pacific coast salmon has yet to be approved, this regulation does not apply to this EFH until approved by the Secretary of Commerce at which time the 30 day period will commence.

## References

- Myers, J.M., R.G. Kope, G.J. Bryant, D. Teel, L.J. Liehr, T. C. Wainwright, W.S. Grant, F.W. Waknitz, K. Neely, S.T. Lindley, and R.S. Waples. 1998. Status review of chinook salmon from Washington, Idaho, Oregon, and California. U.S. Dept. Of Commerce, NOAA Tech Memo. NMFS-NWFSC-35, 443p.
- National Marine Fisheries Service (NMFS). 1998. Endangered and threatened species: Proposed endangered status for two chinook salmon ESUs and proposed threatened status for five chinook salmon ESUs; proposed redefinition, threatened status, and revision of critical habitat for one chinook salmon ESU; proposed designation of chinook salmon critical habitat in California, Oregon, Washington, Idaho. Federal Register 63 (45): 11482-11520. March 9, 1998.
- Pacific Fishery Management Council (PFMC). 1998a. Essential Fish Habitat - West Coast Groundfish. Modified from: Final Environmental Assessment/Regulatory Impact Review for Amendment 11 to the Pacific Coast Groundfish Fishery Management Plan. PFMC, Portland, OR., October 1998. 46pp.
- Pacific Fishery Management Council (PFMC). 1998b. Essential Fish Habitat - Coastal Pelagic Species. Modified from: Coastal Pelagic Species Fishery Management Plan [Amendment 8 to the Northern Anchovy Fishery Management Plan]. PFMC, Portland, OR., December 1998. 39pp.
- Pacific Fishery Management Council (PFMC). 1999. Description and identification of essential fish habitat, adverse impacts and recommended conservation measures for salmon. Amendment 14 to the Pacific Coast Salmon Plan, Appendix A. PFMC, Portland, OR.





APPENDIX B

**CALFED BAY-DELTA PROGRAM**

ENVIRONMENTAL WATER ACCOUNT OPERATING PRINCIPLES AGREEMENT

INSERT FINAL EWA OPERATING PRINCIPLES AGREEMENT

APPENDIX C

**CALFED BAY-DELTA PROGRAM**

**CALFED Ecosystem Restoration Program Stage 1 Milestones (Final August 25, 2000)**



**Table C-1. CALFED Ecosystem Restoration Program Stage 1 Milestones (Final August 25, 2000)**

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
Delta and East Side Tributaries		
<b><u>Ecological Processes</u></b>		
Develop a methodology for evaluating delta flow and hydrodynamic patterns and begin implementation of an ecologically based plan to restore conditions in the rivers and sloughs of the Delta sufficient to support targets for the restoration of aquatic resources.	Bay-Delta Hydrodynamics	Central Valley chinook salmon and steelhead, green sturgeon, delta smelt, longfin smelt, and Sacramento splittail
Develop and implement temperature management programs within major tributaries in the Eastside Delta Tributaries EMZ. The goal of the programs should be achievement of the ERP temperature targets for salmon and steelhead. The programs shall include provisions to: a) develop accurate and reliable water temperature prediction models; b) evaluate the use of minimum carryover storage levels and other operational tools; c) evaluate the use of new facilities such as temperature control devices; and d) recommend operational and/or physical facilities as a long-term solution.	Central Valley Stream Temperatures	Central Valley fall/late fall-run chinook salmon and steelhead
Provide a fall or early winter outflow that emulates the first "winter" rain through the Delta.	Central Valley Streamflow	all Central Valley salmonids
Complete a fluvial geomorphic assessment of coarse sediment supply needs and sources to maintain, improve, or supplement gravel recruitment and natural sediment transport processes linked to stream channel maintenance, erosion and deposition, maintenance of fish spawning areas, and the regeneration of riparian vegetation. Develop and implement a program to reduce erosion and maintain gravel recruitment on at least one tributary within the Eastside Delta Tributaries EMZ.	Coarse Sediment Supply	all races of chinook salmon, steelhead, splittail, delta smelt, green sturgeon, bank swallow, California yellow warbler, western yellow-billed cuckoo, Least Bell's vireo, valley elderberry longhorn beetle, Norther California black walnut

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
Develop floodplain management plans, including feasibility studies to construct setback levees, to restore and improve opportunities for rivers to inundate their floodplain on a seasonal basis for at least one tributary within the Eastside Delta Tributary EMZ.	Natural Floodplain and Flood Processes	all Central Valley salmonids, Sacramento splittail, delta smelt, longfin smelt, western yellow-billed cuckoo, California yellow warbler, Least Bell's vireo, San Joaquin Valley woodrat, Valley elderberry long-horn beetle, Northern California black walnut
<b><u>Habitats</u></b>		
In the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta EMZ, cooperatively enhance at least 15% of the ERP target for wildlife friendly agricultural practices.	Agricultural Lands	greater sandhill crane, giant garter snake, Swainson's hawk
Restore a minimum of 15 miles of slough habitat (widths less than 50 to 75 feet) in each of the North, East, South, Central and West Delta EMUs that allows for the colonization of delta mudwort and delta tule pea.	Delta Sloughs	all Central Valley salmonids, delta smelt, Sacramento splittail, Sacramento perch, giant garter snake, delta mudwort, delta tule pea
Restore a minimum of 500, 250, 1,000, and 2,500 acres of nontidal emergent wetland in the North, East, South, and Central and West Delta Ecological Management units respectively.  Establish at least one population of bristly sedge in each EMU.	Fresh Emergent Wetland (nontidal)	giant garter snake, California black rail, bristly sedge
Restore a minimum of 500, 500, 4,000, and 5,000 acres of tidal emergent wetland in the North, East, South, and Central and West Delta Ecological Management units respectively.	Fresh Emergent Wetland (tidal)	all Central Valley salmonids, green sturgeon, longfin smelt, delta smelt, Sacramento splittail, California black rail, Mason's lilaeopsis, delta mudwort, delta tule pea
Conduct surveys to locate potential habitat restoration sites capable of supporting Antioch dunes evening primrose, Contra Costa wallflower, and Lange's metalmark butterfly. Enhance 50 acres of low to moderate quality Antioch inland dune scrub habitat to support these species. Annually monitor establishment success.	Inland Dune Scrub	Lange's metalmark butterfly, Antioch dunes evening primrose, Contra Costa wallflower

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
Restore a minimum of 125 acres of channel islands and 125 acres of shoals in the Delta.	Midchannel Islands and Shoals	all Central Valley salmonids, Sacramento splittail, delta smelt, black rail
Develop and implement a program to establish, restore, and maintain riparian habitat to improve floodplain habitat, salmonid shaded riverine aquatic habitat, and instream cover along at least one tributary within the Eastside Delta Tributary EMZ	Riparian and Riverine Aquatic Habitats	Central Valley steelhead, fall/late fall-run chinook salmon, western yellow-billed cuckoo, Valley elderberry long-horn beetle, riparian brush rabbit, California yellow warbler, Least Bell's vireo, little willow flycatcher, delta coyote thistle
Implement 25 percent of the ERP target for diverse, self-sustaining riparian community for each EMU in the Sacramento-San Joaquin Delta EMZ.	Riparian and Riverine Aquatic Habitats	Central Valley fall/late fall-run chinook salmon, steelhead, western yellow-billed cuckoo, little willow flycatcher, California yellow warbler
Restore a minimum of 300 acres of self-sustaining or managed diverse natural riparian habitat along the Mokelumne River, Cosumnes River, and Calaveras River and protect existing riparian habitat.	Riparian and Riverine Aquatic Habitats	Central Valley fall/late fall-run chinook salmon, steelhead, western yellow-billed cuckoo, little willow flycatcher, California yellow warbler, Valley elderberry long-horn beetle
Enhance, protect and restore 1,000 to 1,500 acres of seasonal wetlands in the East Delta EMU for optimum greater sandhill crane habitat.	Seasonal Wetlands	greater sandhill crane, Swainson's hawk
Restore a minimum of 500, 250, 500, and 750 acres of tidal perennial aquatic habitat in the North, East, South, and Central and West Delta Ecological Management units respectively.	Tidal Perennial Aquatic Habitat	all Central Valley salmonids, delta smelt, Sacramento splittail, longfin smelt, green sturgeon
<b><u>Stressors Reduction</u></b>		



<b>Milestones</b>	<b>Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter</b>	<b>MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones</b>
Develop and implement a program to address inadequate instream flows for steelhead and chinook salmon on streams within Eastside Delta tributaries. Where appropriate provide adequate flows for Sacramento splittail and green sturgeon.	Dams and Other Structures	steelhead, fall/late fall-run chinook salmon, green sturgeon, Sacramento splittail
Provide unimpeded upstream and downstream passage for salmon and steelhead on Eastside Delta tributaries.	Dams and Other Structures	all Central Valley salmonids
Assist in the development and implementation of a black and clapper rail impact reduction program.	Disturbance	California black rail, California clapper rail
Develop and begin implementation of a program to reduce or eliminate the influx of non-native aquatic species in ship ballast water.	Invasive Aquatic Organisms	all covered fish species
Complete installation of fish passage facilities at Bellota Weir, Clements Dam, and Cherryland Dam on the Calaveras River and provide passage flows.	Dams and Other Structures	Central Valley fall/late fall-run chinook salmon and steelhead
Develop and begin implementation of a demonstration program to reduce invasive non-native plant abundance within at least one EMU in the Delta.	Invasive Aquatic Plants	Susun Marsh aster, Mason's lilaeopsis, delta mudwort, delta tule pea
Implement a program to improve fish passage and reduce predation on juvenile salmonids below Woodbridge Dam on the lower Mokelumne River that includes the following elements: (1) improving the form and function of the stream channel; (2) rebuilding the Woodbridge Dam fish passage and diversion screening facilities to minimize losses of downstream migrating salmon and steelhead; and (3) improving the fish bypass discharge.	Predation and Competition	Central Valley fall/late fall-run chinook salmon, steelhead
Consolidate and screen 50 small agricultural diversions in the Delta, prioritized according to size, location, and season of operation.	Water Diversions	all R and r covered fish

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
Upgrade screens at Southern Energy's Contra Costa power plants with screens acceptable to the Fish and wildlife agencies.	Water Diversions	all R and r covered fish
<p>Actions to minimize or eliminate low dissolved oxygen conditions (DO sag) in lower San Joaquin River near Stockton (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Complete studies of causes for DO sag in San Joaquin River near Stockton.</li> <li>• Define and implement corrective measures for DO sag.</li> <li>• Finalization of investigation of methods to reduce constituents that cause low DO for inclusion in total maximum daily load (TMDL) recommendation by the Central Valley RWQCB.</li> <li>• Finalization of Basin Plan Amendment and TMDL for constituents that cause low DO in the San Joaquin River.</li> <li>• Implement appropriate source and other controls and other management practices, as recommended in the TMDL, to reduce anthropogenic oxygen depleting substances loadings and minimize or eliminate low DO conditions.</li> </ul>	dissolved oxygen, oxygen depleting substances, nutrients, total organic carbon (TOC)	Salmonids, delta smelt, Sacramento splittail, longfin smelt, green sturgeon
Develop, implement, and support measures to reduce pollutant (oxygen depleting substances, nutrients, and ammonia) discharges from concentrated animal feeding operations. (from Phase II Report)	oxygen depleting substances, nutrients, TOC, ammonia	Salmonids, Sacramento splittail
Encourage regulatory activity to reduce discharge of oxygen reducing substances and nutrients by unpermitted dischargers. (from Phase II Report)	dissolved oxygen, oxygen depleting substances, nutrients	Salmonids, Sacramento splittail

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Actions to reduce fine sediment loading to streams, especially Tuolumne, Merced, Stanislaus, Cosumnes, Napa, and Petaluma Rivers, and Sonoma Creek, due to human activities (from Phase II Report and Water Quality Program Plan):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Participate in implementation of USDA sediment reduction program.</li> <li>• Implement sediment reduction BMPs in construction areas, on agricultural lands, for urban stormwater runoff, and other specific sites.</li> <li>• Implement stream restoration and revegetation work.</li> <li>• Quantify and determine ecological impacts of sediments in target watersheds, implement corrective actions.</li> </ul>	turbidity/ sedimentation	Salmonids
<p>Conduct the necessary research to determine no adverse ecological/biological effects threshold concentrations for mercury in sediments and key organisms in the Bay-Delta estuary and its watershed.</p>	mercury	Salmonids, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake, salt marsh harvest mouse, California clapper rail, California black rail
<p>Conduct the following mercury evaluation and abatement work in the Cache Creek watershed (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Support development and implementation of TMDL for mercury.</li> <li>• Determine bioaccumulation effects in creek and Delta.</li> <li>• Source, transport, inventory, mapping and speciation of mercury.</li> <li>• Participate in Stage 1 remediation (drainage control) of mercury mines as appropriate.</li> <li>• Determine sources of high levels of bioavailable mercury</li> </ul>	mercury	Salmonids, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Conduct the following mercury evaluation and abatement work in the Delta (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Determine methylization (part of bioaccumulation) process in Delta.</li> <li>• Determine sediment mercury concentration in areas that would be dredged during levee maintenance or conveyance work.</li> <li>• Determine potential impact of ecosystem restoration work on methyl mercury levels in lower and higher trophic level organisms.</li> </ul>	mercury	Salmonids, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake, salt marsh harvest mouse, California clapper rail, California black rail
<p>Conduct the following pesticide work (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Develop diazinon and chlorpyrifos hazard assessment criteria with CDFG and the Department of Pesticide Regulations.</li> <li>• Support development and implementation of a TMDL for diazinon.</li> <li>• Develop BMPs for dormant spray and household uses.</li> <li>• Determine the ecological significance of pesticide discharges.</li> <li>• Support implementation of BMPs.</li> <li>• Monitor to determine effectiveness of BMPs</li> </ul>	carbofurans, chloropyrifos, diazinon	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake, possibly other species depending on type of actions and specific sites.

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Conduct the following selenium work:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Conduct selenium research to fill data gaps in order to refine regulatory goals of source control actions; determine bioavailability of selenium under several scenarios (from Phase II Report).</li> <li>• Evaluate and, if appropriate, implement real-time management of selenium discharges (from Phase II Report).</li> <li>• Expand and implement source control, treatment, and reuse programs (from Phase II Report).</li> <li>• Coordinate with other programs; e.g., recommendations of San Joaquin Valley Drainage Implementation Program, CVPIA for retirement of lands with drainage problems that are not subject to correction in other ways (from Phase II Report).</li> <li>• Support development and implementation of TMDL for selenium in the San Joaquin River watershed (focus on Grassland area).</li> </ul>	selenium	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake, salt marsh harvest mouse, California clapper rail, California black rail
<p>Conduct the following actions in reduce organochlorine pesticide inputs to streams (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Participate in implementation of USDA sediment reduction program.</li> <li>• Implement sediment reduction BMPs on agricultural lands and other specific sites.</li> <li>• Implement BMPs for urban/industrial stormwater runoff and discharges to reduce PCB and organochlorine pesticides.</li> </ul>	chlorodane, DDT, PCBs, toxaphene	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Conduct the following trace metals work (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Determine spatial and temporal extent of metal pollution.</li> <li>• Determine ecological significance and extent of copper contamination.</li> <li>• Evaluate impacts of other metals such as cadmium, zinc, and chromium.</li> <li>• Participate in Brake Pad Partnership to reduce introduction of copper.</li> <li>• Partner with municipalities on evaluation and implementation of stormwater control facilities.</li> <li>• Participate in remediation of mine sites as part of local watershed restoration and Delta restoration.</li> </ul>	cadmium, copper, zinc	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake, salt marsh harvest mouse, California clapper rail, California black rail
<p>Conduct the following unknown toxicity work (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Conduct appropriate studies to identify unknown toxicity, and develop management actions as appropriate.</li> </ul>	toxicity of unknown origin	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon
<b>Suisun Marsh and North San Francisco Bay</b>		
<b><u>Habitats</u></b>		
Restore and maintain a minimum of three linear miles of riparian habitat along corridors of existing riparian scrub and shrub vegetation in each of the Ecological Management Units of the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Management Zone.	Riparian and Riverine Aquatic Habitats	Sacramento splittail, all Central Valley salmonids, Valley elderberry long-horn beetle, riparian brush rabbit, California yellow warbler, Least Bell's vireo, little willow flycatcher

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>In the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay EMZ, restore a minimum of 7,000 acres of Saline Emergent Wetland by restoring tidal action in the Suisun Bay and Marsh Ecological Management Unit (including 200 acres of muted tidal marsh along the Contra Costa shoreline) and a cumulative total of 1,000 acres in the Napa River, Sonoma Creek, Petaluma River, and San Pablo Bay Ecological Management Units. Restore high marsh and high-marsh upland transition habitat in conjunction with restoration of saline emergent wetland. Develop cooperative programs to acquire, in fee-title or through a conservation easement, the land needed for tidal restoration, and complete the needed steps to restore the wetlands to tidal action. Begin aggressive program of control of non-native plant species that are threatening the known populations of Suisun thistle, Suisun Marsh aster, soft bird's beak, and Point Reyes bird's beak.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Bring into protection at least 25% of currently occupied, but unprotected Suisun Marsh aster habitat, spread throughout the North, East, South Delta and Napa River Ecological Units, and ensure appropriate management.</li> <li>-Expand suitable tidal slough habitat for Suisun Marsh aster by 25 linear miles.</li> <li>-Identify at least three protected and managed sites for introduction of at least three additional populations of Suisun thistle; increase overall population size at least threefold.</li> <li>-Establish at least one new population of soft bird's beak with high likelihood of success in restored habitat in each of the Suisun Bay and Marsh EMU, the Napa River EMU, and the Petaluma River EMU.</li> <li>-Establish at least one new Point Reyes bird's beak population in the Petaluma River and San Pablo Bay EMUs.</li> </ul>	Saline Emergent Wetland	All Central Valley salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, Suisun song sparrow, San Pablo song sparrow, California Clapper rail, California black rail, Suisun thistle, soft bird's beak, Point Reyes bird's-beak, salt marsh harvest mouse, Suisun ornate shrew, San Pablo California vole, Suisun aster, salt marsh common yellow throat

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Restore suitable, occupied slough edge habitat for delta mudwort and delta tule pea by at least 5 miles in the Suisun Bay and Marsh EMU and by at least 10 miles in the Napa River EMUs.</p> <p>Bring at least 25% the currently existing but unprotected occurrences of delta mudwort and delta tule into protection through purchase or conservation agreement, and ensure appropriate management.</p>	Saline Emergent Wetland	all Central Valley salmonids, delta smelt, Sacramento splittail, California black rail, Mason's lilaeopsis, delta mudwort, delta tule pea
In the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Management Zone, restore and manage a minimum of 500 acres of seasonal wetland, and improve management of a minimum of 7,000 acres of existing, degraded seasonal wetland in a manner that provides suitable habitat for salt marsh harvest mouse, San Pablo California vole, and Suisun ornate shrew.	Seasonal Wetlands	salt marsh harvest mouse, San Pablo California vole, Suisun ornate shrew
Restore a minimum of 400 acres of tidal perennial aquatic habitat in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay Ecological Management Zone.	Tidal Perennial Aquatic Habitat	all Central Valley salmonids, delta smelt, Sacramento splittail, longfin smelt



Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Develop a cooperative program to acquire, manage and restore 100 acres of vernal pools and 500 to 1,000 acres of adjacent buffer areas in the Suisun Marsh/North San Francisco Bay EMZ.</p> <p>Protect all existing known occurrences of Crampton's tuctoria through conservation easement or purchase from willing sellers (including CNDDDB Element Occurrence #2 and any new populations that are found). Identify at least two protected and managed sites for introduction of additional populations; begin introduction and monitor for success.</p> <p>Manage at least 250 acres of the ERP target for vernal pools near the Jepson Prairie preserve as suitable habitat for alkali milk vetch. Establish new populations on protected and appropriately managed lands. Bring 50% of currently unprotected, existing populations into protection through purchase or conservation agreement, and ensure appropriate management.</p>	Vernal Pools	Delta green ground beetle, Crampton's tuctoria, Alkali milk- vetch
<b><u>Stressors Reduction</u></b>		
Develop a program to consolidate, screen, or eliminate 25% of the unscreened diversions in Suisun Marsh.	Water Diversions	all R and r covered fish
Develop, implement, and support measures to reduce pollutant (oxygen depleting substances, nutrients, and ammonia) discharges from concentrated animal feeding operations. (from Phase II Report)	oxygen depleting substances, nutrients, TOC, ammonia	Salmonids, Sacramento splittail

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
Encourage regulatory activity to reduce discharge of oxygen reducing substances and nutrients by unpermitted dischargers. (from Phase II Report)	dissolved oxygen, oxygen depleting substances, nutrients	Salmonids, Sacramento splittail
<p>Actions to reduce fine sediment loading to streams, especially Tuolumne, Merced, Stanislaus, Cosumnes, Napa, and Petaluma Rivers, and Sonoma Creek, due to human activities (from Phase II Report and Water Quality Program Plan):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Participate in implementation of USDA sediment reduction program.</li> <li>• Implement sediment reduction BMPs in construction areas, on agricultural lands, for urban stormwater runoff, and other specific sites.</li> <li>• Implement stream restoration and revegetation work.</li> <li>• Quantify and determine ecological impacts of sediments in target watersheds, implement corrective actions.</li> </ul>	turbidity/ sedimentation	Salmonids
Conduct the necessary research to determine no adverse ecological/biological effects threshold concentrations for mercury in sediments and key organisms in the Bay-Delta estuary and its watershed.	mercury	Salmonids, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake, salt marsh harvest mouse, California clapper rail, California black rail

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Conduct the following pesticide work (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Develop diazinon and chlorpyrifos hazard assessment criteria with CDFG and the Department of Pesticide Regulations.</li> <li>• Support development and implementation of a TMDL for diazinon.</li> <li>• Develop BMPs for dormant spray and household uses.</li> <li>• Determine the ecological significance of pesticide discharges.</li> <li>• Support implementation of BMPs.</li> <li>• Monitor to determine effectiveness of BMPs</li> </ul>	carbofurans, chloropyrifos, diazinon	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake, possibly other species depending on type of actions and specific sites.
<p>Conduct the following selenium work:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Conduct selenium research to fill data gaps in order to refine regulatory goals of source control actions; determine bioavailability of selenium under several scenarios (from Phase II Report).</li> <li>• Evaluate and, if appropriate, implement real-time management of selenium discharges (from Phase II Report).</li> <li>• Expand and implement source control, treatment, and reuse programs (from Phase II Report).</li> <li>• Coordinate with other programs; e.g., recommendations of San Joaquin Valley Drainage Implementation Program, CVPIA for retirement of lands with drainage problems that are not subject to correction in other ways (from Phase II Report).</li> <li>• Support development and implementation of TMDL for selenium in the San Joaquin River watershed (focus on Grassland area).</li> </ul>	selenium	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake, salt marsh harvest mouse, California clapper rail, California black rail

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Conduct the following actions in reduce organochlorine pesticide inputs to streams (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Participate in implementation of USDA sediment reduction program.</li> <li>• Implement sediment reduction BMPs on agricultural lands and other specific sites.</li> <li>• Implement BMPs for urban/industrial stormwater runoff and discharges to reduce PCB and organochlorine pesticides.</li> </ul>	<p>chlorodane, DDT, PCBs, toxaphene</p>	<p>Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake</p>
<p>Conduct the following trace metals work (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Determine spatial and temporal extent of metal pollution.</li> <li>• Determine ecological significance and extent of copper contamination.</li> <li>• Evaluate impacts of other metals such as cadmium, zinc, and chromium.</li> <li>• Participate in Brake Pad Partnership to reduce introduction of copper.</li> <li>• Partner with municipalities on evaluation and implementation of stormwater control facilities.</li> <li>• Participate in remediation of mine sites as part of local watershed restoration and Delta restoration.</li> </ul>	<p>cadmium, copper, zinc</p>	<p>Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake, salt marsh harvest mouse, California clapper rail, California black rail</p>

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
Conduct the following unknown toxicity work (from Phase II Report): <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Conduct appropriate studies to identify unknown toxicity, and develop management actions as appropriate.</li> </ul>	toxicity of unknown origin	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon
Sacramento River Basin		
<u>Ecological Processes</u>		

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Construct a network of channels totaling 20 miles within the Sutter and Yolo Bypasses that effectively drains flooded lands after floodflows stop entering the bypasses. The channels should be designed to allow juvenile anadromous and resident fish to move from rearing and migratory areas.</p> <p>Develop and begin implementation of a program in the Yolo Basin to restore channel-floodplain connectivity and floodplain processes. Design natural stream channel configurations and expand floodplain overflow areas in the lower Cache and Putah Creek floodplains, as well as in channels and sloughs of the upper Yolo Bypass to provide connections with the Delta in a manner consistent with flood control requirements. Diversions (water source) into the Yolo Basin should not result in direct or indirect adverse impacts to salmonids. Project design features would include sloughs and creek channels, setback levees, and wetlands, where feasible and consistent with flood protection.</p>	Natural Floodplain and Flood Processes	Central Valley chinook salmon and steelhead, Sacramento splittail
<p>Develop and implement temperature management programs within major tributaries in the Sacramento River Basin. The goal of the programs should be achievement of the ERP temperature targets for salmon and steelhead. The programs shall include provisions to: a) develop accurate and reliable water temperature prediction models; b) evaluate the use of minimum carryover storage levels and other operational tools; c) evaluate the use of new facilities such as temperature control devices; and d) recommend operational and/or physical facilities as a long-term solution.</p>	Central Valley Stream Temperatures	Central Valley fall/late fall-run chinook salmon and steelhead

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
Develop and implement a program to address the thermal impacts of irrigation return flows in the Sacramento River Basin. The goal of the program should be achieve Basin Plan objectives for water temperature. The program should include provisions to: a) identify locations of irrigation return flows with thermal impacts; b) develop measures to avoid or eliminate thermal impacts from irrigation return flows; and c) prioritize problem sites based on impacts to chinook salmon and steelhead. If feasible, proceed with implementation of some or all actions to address thermal impacts of irrigation return flows.	Central Valley Stream Temperatures	Central Valley fall/late fall-run chinook salmon and steelhead
Design and begin implementation of an ecologically based streamflow regulation plan for Yuba River, Butte Creek, Big Chico Creek, Deer Creek, Mill Creek , Antelope Creek, Battle Creek, Cottonwood Creek, and Clear Creek.	Central Valley Streamflow	all Central Valley salmonids, green sturgeon, Sacramento splittail, western yellow-billed cuckoo, yellow warbler, Least Bell's vireo
Complete a fluvial geomorphic assessment of coarse sediment supply needs and sources to maintain, improve, or supplement gravel recruitment and natural sediment transport processes linked to stream channel maintenance, erosion and deposition, maintenance of fish spawning areas, and the regeneration of riparian vegetation. Develop and implement a program to reduce erosion and maintain gravel recruitment on at least one tributary within each EMZ in the Sacramento River Basin.	Coarse Sediment Supply	all races of chinook salmon, steelhead, splittail, delta smelt, green sturgeon, bank swallow, California yellow warbler, western yellow-billed cuckoo, Least Bell's vireo, valley elderberry longhorn beetle, Norther California black walnut

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
Develop floodplain management plans, including feasibility studies to construct setback levees, to restore and improve opportunities for rivers to inundate their floodplain on a seasonal basis for at least one tributary within each of the EMZs in the Sacramento River Basin. Among the areas to be included are the lower 10 miles of Clear Creek, Antelope Creek, and Deer Creek, and the lower reach of Cottonwood Creek.	Natural Floodplain and Flood Processes	all Central Valley salmonids, Sacramento splittail, delta smelt, longfin smelt, western yellow-billed cuckoo, California yellow warbler, Least Bell's vireo, San Joaquin Valley woodrat, Valley elderberry long-horn beetle, Northern California black walnut
Protect 15,000 acres within the Inner River Zone areas between Red Bluff and Colusa reaches within identified the Sacramento River Conservation Area. Establish between 3 and 5 habitat preserves for bank swallows along the upper reaches of the Sacramento River capable of supporting 5000 bank swallow burrows between the towns of Colusa and Red Bluff.	Stream Meander	all Central Valley salmonids, steelhead, western yellow-billed cuckoo, Least Bell's vireo, Swainson's hawk, Valley elderberry longhorn beetle, bank swallow
<b><u>Habitats</u></b>		
In the American River Basin, Butte Basin, Colusa Basin, Feather River/Sutter Basin EMZs, cooperatively enhance at least 15 to 25% of the ERPP target for wildlife friendly agricultural practices.	Agricultural Lands	greater sandhill crane, giant garter snake, Swainson's hawk



Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Develop and implement a program to establish, restore, and maintain riparian habitat to improve floodplain habitat, salmonid shaded riverine aquatic habitat, and instream cover along at least one tributary within each of the following Ecological Management Zones: American River Basin, Butte Basin, Colusa Basin, Cottonwood Creek, Feather River/Sutter Basin, North Sacramento Valley, Sacramento River, and Yolo Basin. While restoring habitat conditions in the American River EMZ, maintain continuous corridors of suitable riparian habitat for valley elderberry longhorn beetle.</p> <p>Protect existing known occurrences of northern California black walnut native stands through conservation easement or purchase.</p> <p>Identify at least 3 protected and managed sites for introduction of additional populations of northern California black walnut; begin introduction and monitor for success. Population creation should be part of a broader effort to restore riparian areas which historically contained walnut.</p>	Riparian and Riverine Aquatic Habitats	all Central Valley salmonids, western yellow-billed cuckoo, Valley elderberry long-horn beetle, California yellow warbler, Least Bell's vireo, little willow flycatcher
In the Cottonwood Creek EMZ, complete (1) long-term agreements with local landowners to establish, restore, and maintain riparian communities along 25 percent of the upper and 25 percent of the lower reaches of Cottonwood Creek, and (2) the development of a comprehensive watershed management plan that supports local land use decisions to protect existing riparian and restore lost riparian.	Riparian and Riverine Aquatic Habitats	all Central Valley salmonids, California yellow warbler, western yellow-billed cuckoo, Least Bell's vireo, little willow flycatcher

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
Restore 2 miles of the 10 mile target of riparian habitat restoration along the lower reaches of each of the following tributaries: Battle, Clear, Deer, Mill, Butte, Big Chico, Antelope, Feather, Yuba, and Bear Rivers.	Riparian and Riverine Aquatic Habitats	all Central Valley salmonids, California yellow warbler, western yellow-billed cuckoo, little willow flycatcher, Least Bell's vireo, Valley elderberry long-horn beetle
Implement 25 percent of the ERP target for enhancing, protecting, and restoring seasonal wetlands in the following EMZs: American River Basin, Butte Basin, Colusa Basin, and Feather River/Sutter Basin.	Seasonal Wetlands	greater sandhill crane, Swainson's hawk, giant garter snake
<b><u>Stressors Reduction</u></b>		
Develop and implement a program to address inadequate instream flows for steelhead and chinook salmon on streams within Sacramento River Basin tributaries. Where appropriate provide adequate flows for Sacramento splittail and green sturgeon.	Dams and Other Structures	all Central Valley salmonids, green sturgeon, Sacramento splittail
Provide unimpeded upstream and downstream passage for salmon and steelhead on Sacramento River Basin tributaries.	Dams and Other Structures	all Central Valley salmonids, green sturgeon, Sacramento splittail
On Big Chico Creek, repair the Lindo Channel weir and fishway at the Lindo Channel box culvert at the Five Mile Diversion to improve upstream fish passage.	Dams and Other Structures	all Central Valley salmonids
Develop and implement a solution to improve passage of upstream migrant adult fish and downstream migrant juvenile fish Battle Creek.	Dams and Other Structures	all Central Valley salmonids, green sturgeon
Evaluate the feasibility of constructing fish passage facilities at the Grays Bend-Old River-Freemont weir complex at the upper end of the Yolo Bypass.	Dams and Other Structures	all Central Valley salmonids

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
Develop a program to reduce or eliminate fish stranding in the Sacramento, Feather and Yuba rivers and the Colusa Basin drain and Sutter Bypass in the active stream channels, floodplains, shallow ponds and borrow areas. Develop protocols for ramping flow reductions. Conduct surveys of stranding under a range of flow conditions and recommend solutions.	Stranding	all Central Valley salmonids, green sturgeon, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail
Install positive barrier fish screens on all diversions greater than 250 cfs in all EMZs and 25% of all smaller unscreened diversions in the Sacramento River Basin. Among those diversions to be screened are the DWR Pumping Plants and 50% of small diversion located on east side of Sutter Bypass, the Bella Vista diversion in the upper Sacramento River near Redding, East-West Diversion Weir, Weir 5, Weir 3, Guisti Weir and Weir 1 in the Sutter Bypass, White Mallard Dam, Morton Weir, Drivers Cut Outfall and Colusa Shooting/Tarke Weir Outfall and associated diversion screens in the Butte Sink..	Water Diversions	all R and r covered fish
Develop, implement, and support measures to reduce pollutant (oxygen depleting substances, nutrients, and ammonia) discharges from concentrated animal feeding operations. (from Phase II Report)	oxygen depleting substances, nutrients, TOC, ammonia	Salmonids, Sacramento splittail

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Actions to minimize or eliminate inter-substrate low dissolved oxygen conditions in salmonid spawning and rearing habitat, especially in the Mokelumne, Cosumnes, American, Merced, Tuolumne, and Stanislaus Rivers (from Phase II Report and Water Quality Program Plan):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Develop inter-substrate DO testing for salmonid spawning and rearing habitat.</li> <li>• Conduct comprehensive surveys to assess the extent and severity of inter-substrate low DO conditions.</li> <li>• Develop and begin implementing appropriate best management practices (BMPs), including reducing anthropogenic fine sediment loads, to minimize or eliminate inter-substrate low DO conditions.</li> </ul>	dissolved oxygen, turbidity/ sedimentation	Salmonids
Encourage regulatory activity to reduce discharge of oxygen reducing substances and nutrients by unpermitted dischargers. (from Phase II Report)	dissolved oxygen, oxygen depleting substances, nutrients	Salmonids, Sacramento splittail

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Actions to reduce fine sediment loading to streams, especially Tuolumne, Merced, Stanislaus, Cosumnes, Napa, and Petaluma Rivers, and Sonoma Creek, due to human activities (from Phase II Report and Water Quality Program Plan):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Participate in implementation of USDA sediment reduction program.</li> <li>• Implement sediment reduction BMPs in construction areas, on agricultural lands, for urban stormwater runoff, and other specific sites.</li> <li>• Implement stream restoration and revegetation work.</li> <li>• Quantify and determine ecological impacts of sediments in target watersheds, implement corrective actions.</li> </ul>	turbidity/ sedimentation	Salmonids
<p>Conduct the necessary research to determine no adverse ecological/biological effects threshold concentrations for mercury in sediments and key organisms in the Bay-Delta estuary and its watershed.</p>	mercury	Salmonids, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake, salt marsh harvest mouse, California clapper rail, California black rail
<p>Conduct the following mercury evaluation and abatement work in the Cache Creek watershed (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Support development and implementation of TMDL for mercury.</li> <li>• Determine bioaccumulation effects in creek and Delta.</li> <li>• Source, transport, inventory, mapping and speciation of mercury.</li> <li>• Participate in Stage 1 remediation (drainage control) of mercury mines as appropriate.</li> <li>• Determine sources of high levels of bioavailable mercury</li> </ul>	mercury	Salmonids, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Conduct the following mercury evaluation and abatement work in the Sacramento River (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Determine, inventory, and sources of high levels of bioavailable mercury</li> <li>• Refine mercury models.</li> <li>• Participate in remedial activities.</li> </ul>	mercury	Salmonids, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake
<p>Conduct the following pesticide work (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Develop diazinon and chlorpyrifos hazard assessment criteria with CDFG and the Department of Pesticide Regulations.</li> <li>• Support development and implementation of a TMDL for diazinon.</li> <li>• Develop BMPs for dormant spray and household uses.</li> <li>• Determine the ecological significance of pesticide discharges.</li> <li>• Support implementation of BMPs.</li> <li>• Monitor to determine effectiveness of BMPs</li> </ul>	carbofurans, chloropyrifos, diazinon	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake, possibly other species depending on type of actions and specific sites.
<p>Conduct the following actions in reduce organochlorine pesticide inputs to streams (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Participate in implementation of USDA sediment reduction program.</li> <li>• Implement sediment reduction BMPs on agricultural lands and other specific sites.</li> <li>• Implement BMPs for urban/industrial stormwater runoff and discharges to reduce PCB and organochlorine pesticides.</li> </ul>	chlorodane, DDT, PCBs, toxaphene	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Conduct the following trace metals work (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Determine spatial and temporal extent of metal pollution.</li> <li>• Determine ecological significance and extent of copper contamination.</li> <li>• Evaluate impacts of other metals such as cadmium, zinc, and chromium.</li> <li>• Participate in Brake Pad Partnership to reduce introduction of copper.</li> <li>• Partner with municipalities on evaluation and implementation of stormwater control facilities.</li> <li>• Participate in remediation of mine sites as part of local watershed restoration and Delta restoration.</li> </ul>	cadmium, copper, zinc	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake, salt marsh harvest mouse, California clapper rail, California black rail
<p>Conduct the following unknown toxicity work (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Conduct appropriate studies to identify unknown toxicity, and develop management actions as appropriate.</li> </ul>	toxicity of unknown origin	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon
San Joaquin River Basin		
<b><u>Ecological Processes</u></b>		

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Develop and implement temperature management programs within major tributaries in the San Joaquin River Basin. The goal of the programs should be achievement of the ERP temperature targets for salmon and steelhead. The programs shall include provisions to: a) develop accurate and reliable water temperature prediction models; b) evaluate the use of minimum carryover storage levels and other operational tools; c) evaluate the use of new facilities such as temperature control devices; and d) recommend operational and/or physical facilities as a long-term solution.</p>	<p>Central Valley Stream Temperatures</p>	<p>Central Valley fall/late fall-run chinook salmon and steelhead</p>
<p>Develop and implement a program to address the thermal impacts of irrigation return flows in the San Joaquin River Basin. The goal of the program should be achieve Basin Plan objectives for water temperature. The program should include provisions to: a) identify locations of irrigation return flows with thermal impacts; b) develop measures to avoid or eliminate thermal impacts from irrigation return flows; and c) prioritize problem sites based on impacts to chinook salmon and steelhead. If feasible, proceed with implementation of some or all actions to address thermal impacts of irrigation return flows.</p>	<p>Central Valley Stream Temperatures</p>	<p>Central Valley fall/late fall-run chinook salmon and steelhead</p>



Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Complete a fluvial geomorphic assessment of coarse sediment supply needs and sources to maintain, improve, or supplement gravel recruitment and natural sediment transport processes linked to stream channel maintenance, erosion and deposition, maintenance of fish spawning areas, and the regeneration of riparian vegetation. Develop and implement a program to reduce erosion and maintain gravel recruitment on at least one tributary within each EMZ within the San Joaquin River Basin. In the East San Joaquin Basin EMZ, complete fluvial geomorphic assessments on all tributaries.</p>	<p>Coarse Sediment Supply</p>	<p>all races of chinook salmon, steelhead, splittail, delta smelt, green sturgeon, bank swallow, California yellow warbler, western yellow-billed cuckoo, Least Bell's vireo, valley elderberry longhorn beetle, Northern California black walnut</p>
<p>Develop floodplain management plans, including feasibility studies to construct setback levees, to restore and improve opportunities for rivers to inundate their floodplain on a seasonal basis for at least one tributary within each of the EMZs in the San Joaquin River Basin. Among the areas to be included are at least 10 miles of stream channel in the West San Joaquin EMZ.</p>	<p>Natural Floodplain and Flood Processes</p>	<p>all Central Valley salmonids, Sacramento splittail, delta smelt, longfin smelt, western yellow-billed cuckoo, California yellow warbler, Least Bell's vireo, San Joaquin Valley woodrat, Valley elderberry long-horn beetle, Northern California black walnut</p>
<p>Develop a cooperative program to restore salmonid spawning and rearing habitat in the Tuolumne, Stanislaus, and Merced Rivers that includes the following elements: (1) reconstructing channels at selected sites by isolating or filling in inchannel gravel extraction areas; (2) increasing natural meander by removing riprap and relocating other structures that impair stream meander; and (3) restoring more natural channel configurations to reduce salmonid predator habitat and improve migration corridors.</p>	<p>Stream Meander (also Predation and Competition)</p>	<p>Central Valley fall/late fall-run chinook salmon, steelhead, western yellow-billed cuckoo, California yellow warbler, bank swallow</p>
<p>Restore and maintain a defined stream-meander zone and increase floodplain habitat on the San Joaquin River between Vernalis and the mouth of the Merced River.</p>	<p>Stream Meander</p>	<p>Sacramento splittail, Central Valley fall/late fall-run chinook salmon, steelhead, bank swallow</p>

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
Establish a river meander corridor between the Chowchilla Bypass and Mendota Pool to expand the floodway corridor to convey increased anticipated floodflows and restore floodplain habitat.	Stream Meander	Sacramento splittail, Central Valley fall/late fall-run chinook salmon, steelhead, bank swallow
<b><u>Habitats</u></b>		
In the San Joaquin River and West San Joaquin Basin EMZs, cooperatively enhance at least 15 to 25% of the ERPP target for wildlife friendly agricultural practices	Agricultural Lands	Swainson's hawk, greater sandhill crane, giant garter snake
In the West San Joaquin Basin EMZ, restoring or create 100 acres of fresh emergent wetland habitat.	Fresh Emergent Wetland	giant garter snake
In the West San Joaquin Basin EMZ, restore or enhance 1,000 acres of perennial grassland associated with existing or proposed wildlife corridors, wetlands, or floodplain habitats.	Perennial Grasslands	Swainson's hawk, greater sandhill crane
Develop and implement a program to establish, restore, and maintain riparian habitat to improve floodplain habitat, salmonid shaded riverine aquatic habitat and instream cover along at least one tributary within the East San Joaquin and San Joaquin River EMZs.	Riparian and Riverine Aquatic Habitats	Central Valley steelhead, fall/late fall-run chinook salmon, western yellow-billed cuckoo, Valley elderberry long-horn beetle, riparian brush rabbit, California yellow warbler, Least Bell's vireo, little willow flycatcher, delta coyote thistle

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Implement 25 percent of the ERP target for diverse, self-sustaining riparian community for all EMZs in the San Joaquin River Basin.</p> <p>Bring at least three of the currently existing but unprotected delta coyote thistle occurrences into protection through purchase or conservation agreement, and ensure appropriate management.</p> <p>Increase suitable habitat for delta coyote thistle by at least 20% and the number of populations and individuals by at least 10% through habitat management and protection.</p> <p>Establish two new riparian brush rabbit habitat preserves within the historical range of the species. Protect and enhance a minimum of 150 contiguous acres of mature, shrub-rich riparian forest and associated highwater refugia on the San Joaquin River, between the Merced River confluence and Vernalis, and on each of the east-side tributaries (the Stanislaus, Tuolumne and Merced rivers) for habitat values and as potential riparian brush rabbit re-introduction sites.</p>	Riparian and Riverine Aquatic Habitats	San Joaquin Valley woodrat, delta coyote thistle, western yellow-billed cuckoo, Valley elderberry long-horn beetle, riparian brush rabbit
<b><u>Stressors Reduction</u></b>		

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
Develop and implement a program to address inadequate instream flows for steelhead and chinook salmon on streams within San Joaquin River tributaries. Where appropriate provide adequate flows for Sacramento splittail and green sturgeon.	Dams and Other Structures	steelhead, fall/late fall-run chinook salmon, green sturgeon, Sacramento splittail
Provide unimpeded upstream and downstream passage for salmon and steelhead on San Joaquin River Basin tributaries.	Dams and Other Structures	steelhead, fall/late fall-run chinook salmon
Initiate a feasibility study of restoring steelhead migration into upper watershed areas (e.g., upstream of major low-elevation dams) in at least one San Joaquin River Basin EMZ Tributary.	Dams and Other Structures	steelhead
Install positive barrier fish screens on all diversions greater than 250 cfs in all EMZs and 25% of all smaller unscreened diversions in the San Joaquin River Basin. Among those diversions to be screened are the El Solyo, Patterson, and West Stanislaus irrigation district diversions.	Water Diversions	all R and r covered fish

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Actions to minimize or eliminate low dissolved oxygen conditions (DO sag) in lower San Joaquin River near Stockton (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Complete studies of causes for DO sag in San Joaquin River near Stockton.</li> <li>• Define and implement corrective measures for DO sag.</li> <li>• Finalization of investigation of methods to reduce constituents that cause low DO for inclusion in total maximum daily load (TMDL) recommendation by the Central Valley RWQCB.</li> <li>• Finalization of Basin Plan Amendment and TMDL for constituents that cause low DO in the San Joaquin River.</li> <li>• Implement appropriate source and other controls and other management practices, as recommended in the TMDL, to reduce anthropogenic oxygen depleting substances loadings and minimize or eliminate low DO conditions.</li> </ul>	<p>dissolved oxygen, oxygen depleting substances, nutrients, total organic carbon (TOC)</p>	<p>Salmonids, delta smelt, Sacramento splittail, longfin smelt, green sturgeon</p>
<p>Develop, implement, and support measures to reduce pollutant (oxygen depleting substances, nutrients, and ammonia) discharges from concentrated animal feeding operations. (from Phase II Report)</p>	<p>oxygen depleting substances, nutrients, TOC, ammonia</p>	<p>Salmonids, Sacramento splittail</p>

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Actions to minimize or eliminate inter-substrate low dissolved oxygen conditions in salmonid spawning and rearing habitat, especially in the Mokelumne, Cosumnes, American, Merced, Tuolumne, and Stanislaus Rivers (from Phase II Report and Water Quality Program Plan):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Develop inter-substrate DO testing for salmonid spawning and rearing habitat.</li> <li>• Conduct comprehensive surveys to assess the extent and severity of inter-substrate low DO conditions.</li> <li>• Develop and begin implementing appropriate best management practices (BMPs), including reducing anthropogenic fine sediment loads, to minimize or eliminate inter-substrate low DO conditions.</li> </ul>	dissolved oxygen, turbidity/ sedimentation	Salmonids
Assess the ecological effects of low DO conditions in Suisun Marsh due to adding oxygen-depleted water from anthropogenic sources (from Water Quality Program Plan).	dissolved oxygen, oxygen depleting substances, nutrients, TOC	Delta smelt, Sacramento splittail, longfin smelt, salmonids, green sturgeon
Encourage regulatory activity to reduce discharge of oxygen reducing substances and nutrients by unpermitted dischargers. (from Phase II Report)	dissolved oxygen, oxygen depleting substances, nutrients	Salmonids, Sacramento splittail

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Actions to reduce fine sediment loading to streams, especially Tuolumne, Merced, Stanislaus, Cosumnes, Napa, and Petaluma Rivers, and Sonoma Creek, due to human activities (from Phase II Report and Water Quality Program Plan):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Participate in implementation of USDA sediment reduction program.</li> <li>• Implement sediment reduction BMPs in construction areas, on agricultural lands, for urban stormwater runoff, and other specific sites.</li> <li>• Implement stream restoration and revegetation work.</li> <li>• Quantify and determine ecological impacts of sediments in target watersheds, implement corrective actions.</li> </ul>	turbidity/ sedimentation	Salmonids
<p>Conduct the necessary research to determine no adverse ecological/biological effects threshold concentrations for mercury in sediments and key organisms in the Bay-Delta estuary and its watershed.</p>	mercury	Salmonids, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake, salt marsh harvest mouse, California clapper rail, California black rail
<p>Conduct the following pesticide work (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Develop diazinon and chlorpyrifos hazard assessment criteria with CDFG and the Department of Pesticide Regulations.</li> <li>• Support development and implementation of a TMDL for diazinon.</li> <li>• Develop BMPs for dormant spray and household uses.</li> <li>• Determine the ecological significance of pesticide discharges.</li> <li>• Support implementation of BMPs.</li> <li>• Monitor to determine effectiveness of BMPs</li> </ul>	carbofurans, chloropyrifos, diazinon	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake, possibly other species depending on type of actions and specific sites.

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Conduct the following selenium work:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Conduct selenium research to fill data gaps in order to refine regulatory goals of source control actions; determine bioavailability of selenium under several scenarios (from Phase II Report).</li> <li>• Evaluate and, if appropriate, implement real-time management of selenium discharges (from Phase II Report).</li> <li>• Expand and implement source control, treatment, and reuse programs (from Phase II Report).</li> <li>• Coordinate with other programs; e.g., recommendations of San Joaquin Valley Drainage Implementation Program, CVPIA for retirement of lands with drainage problems that are not subject to correction in other ways (from Phase II Report).</li> <li>• Support development and implementation of TMDL for selenium in the San Joaquin River watershed (focus on Grassland area).</li> </ul>	selenium	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake, salt marsh harvest mouse, California clapper rail, California black rail
<p>Conduct the following actions in reduce organochlorine pesticide inputs to streams (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Participate in implementation of USDA sediment reduction program.</li> <li>• Implement sediment reduction BMPs on agricultural lands and other specific sites.</li> <li>• Implement BMPs for urban/industrial stormwater runoff and discharges to reduce PCB and organochlorine pesticides.</li> </ul>	chlorodane, DDT, PCBs, toxaphene	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake



Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
<p>Conduct the following trace metals work (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Determine spatial and temporal extent of metal pollution.</li> <li>• Determine ecological significance and extent of copper contamination.</li> <li>• Evaluate impacts of other metals such as cadmium, zinc, and chromium.</li> <li>• Participate in Brake Pad Partnership to reduce introduction of copper.</li> <li>• Partner with municipalities on evaluation and implementation of stormwater control facilities.</li> <li>• Participate in remediation of mine sites as part of local watershed restoration and Delta restoration.</li> </ul>	cadmium, copper, zinc	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon, giant garter snake, salt marsh harvest mouse, California clapper rail, California black rail
<p>Conduct the following unknown toxicity work (from Phase II Report):</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Conduct appropriate studies to identify unknown toxicity, and develop management actions as appropriate.</li> </ul>	toxicity of unknown origin	Salmonids, delta smelt, longfin smelt, Sacramento splittail, green sturgeon
<b>Research Milestones</b>		
<p>Develop and implement a comprehensive monitoring, assessment and research program (CMARP) for terrestrial and aquatic habitats and species populations acceptable to the fish and wildlife agencies.</p> <p>Conduct rangewide surveys for all "R" and "r" covered plants and animals in the MSCS Focus Area.</p>		

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
Develop and begin implementation of a study to determine appropriate conditions for the germination and establishment of riparian woody plants along the Sacramento River and San Joaquin River. Complete development of a cooperative program to plant vegetation on unvegetated riprapped banks consistent with flood control requirements.		
Conduct a study to investigate the effects of the road through Olcott Lake on vernal pool hydrology and impacts on vernal pool species.		
Conduct instream flow studies to determine the flows necessary to support all life stages of anadromous and estuarine fish species.		
Conduct an investigation of in-channel structures that focuses on the following issues: (1) habitat suitability for both predator and prey fishes; (2) predator-prey interactions; and (3) recommendations for reducing predation on juvenile salmonids.		
Conduct experimental introductions of Sacramento perch into nontidal perennial aquatic habitats		
Assess the impact of hatchery practices on naturally spawning populations of chinook salmon and steelhead and operate hatcheries in a manner consistent with safe genetic practices that will maintain genetic integrity of all Central Valley anadromous salmonid populations.		

Milestones	Ecosystem Element/Water Quality Parameter	MSCS "R" and "r" Covered Species that would Benefit from Achieving Milestones
Through the use of existing, expanded, and new programs, monitor adult anadromous salmonid returns to each watershed within the MSCS focus area. Monitoring techniques, data compilation and analysis, and reporting should be standardized among researchers and watersheds to the greatest extent possible.		

*Printed By*  
*Department of Water Resources*  
*Reprographic Services*

